DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 115 072 FL 004 866

AUTHOR Dearden, Jeannette; Stig-Nielsen, Karin
TITLE Spoken Danish. Book Two.
INSTITUTION American Council of Learned Societies, New York, N.Y.; Linguistic Society of America, Washington, D.C.
PUB DATE 46
NOTE 563p.; For related document, see FL 004 903
AVAILABLE FROM Spoken Language Services, Inc., P.O. Box 783, Ithaca, N.Y. 14850 (HC $8.50, Book 1 $7.00, Records $40.50, Complete Course: Book 1 and Records, $45.00, Accompanying Cassettes for Complete Course $50.50, Cassette Course: Book 1 and Cassettes $55.00)

EDRS PRICE MF-$0.92 Plus Postage. HC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS Audiolingual Skills; Autoinstructional Aids; Conversational Language Courses; Grammar; *Instructional Materials; *Language Instruction; Oral Communication; *Programed Texts; Pronunciation; *Second Language Learning; Speech Skills; *Textbooks; Uncommonly Taught Languages; Vocabulary
IDENTIFIERS *Danish

ABSTRACT

This is one of a series of self-teaching textbooks initially prepared for the Armed Forces and now offered to the public. The text is designed to be used with a native speaker of Danish or with the accompanying recordings. The textbook is divided into three major sections, each consisting of five learning units and one unit for review. Each unit is centered around some practical aspect of daily life, and covers basic sentences, pronunciation practice, word study, grammar and conversational situations. Each unit concludes with a "finder list" of vocabulary introduced in the unit. The emphasis is on speaking rather than on reading or writing. The text concludes with a list of useful words and phrases, spelling check lists, a Danish-English word list and English-Danish word list. Both word lists contain all the vocabulary introduced in the course. (CLK)

****
* Documents acquired by ERIC include many informal unpublished *
* materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort *
* to obtain the best copy available. Nevertheless, items of marginal *
* reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality *
* of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available *
* via the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not *
* responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions *
* supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original. *
****

ED115072

FL004866

Spoken Danish

BOOK TWO

by JEANNETTE DEARDEN and KARIN STIG-NIELSEN

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Spoken Lang. Services, Inc.
TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE COPYRIGHT OWNER

Spoken Language Services, Inc.

2

The Armed Forces edition of this book was published by the Linguistic Society of America and the Intensive Language Program of the American Council of Learned Societies.

Copyright, 1946, by Linguistic Society of America

31787—0416

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publisher.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART THREE

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Spelling	Page	Word Study	Page
13.	ALL ABOARD	321	More about the [*a*]-sound.	326	The Danish alphabet. General statements. Consonants. Vowels.	328	Two-part words. The past form of the auxiliaries. The days of the week. Special ways of saying things. Irregular verbs.	333
14.	FILL 'ER UP	352	More about the catch.	359	Spelling of the Danish endings. Doubling of certain consonants. Spelling of [*e*], [*o*], [*ø*], [*ɛ*], [*ɛ*:], [*ŋ*], and [*ər*].	361	Words like *jɛmˀ*, *jɛ́mə*, etc. More about pronouns. Verb forms used to talk about the future. Danish equivalents of "am leaving", "are going", etc. Nouns and verbs that are the same. Compounds. Irregular verbs. An irregular noun.	368
15.	KEEPING COOL	385	Review of the Danish [*r*]-sound.	393	Spelling of [*p*], [*t*], [*k*], [*b*], [*d*], [*g*].	394	Two-part sentences. Difference between *nɔ:ˀr* and *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr*. Difference between *dɛr* and *sɔm*. Difference between *dɛr* and *sɔm*, and *vɛmˀ*. Two ways to say "either". Special ways of saying things. Compounds. An irregular noun.	400

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Spelling	Page	Word Study	Page
16.	AN EVENING OUT	416	Review of [ð], [v], and [γ].	422	Spelling of [ɔ], [ɔ:], [æ], [σ:].	425	*dɛ́:ˀrfrà*, *hɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð*, etc. Terms for members of the family. "Getting up" and "sitting down". *kɔ́mə* as the equivalent of English "get". t-form of adjectives used with verbs. Compounds. Irregular verbs.	430
17.	THE NATIONAL SPORT	450	Review of [y], [ø], and [æ].	457	Spelling of [ɔj], [aj], [ð], [γ].	458	Review of the Danish words for "it". Danish equivalents of "that" and "those". Danish equivalents of "this" and "these". Danish equivalents of "as . . . as". Two ways to say "both". Special ways of saying things. Compounds. Irregular verbs. An irregular noun. An adjective to notice.	462
18.	REVIEW	484						

PART FOUR

Basic Unit Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Spelling	Page	Word Study	Page
19. AT THE POST OFFICE AND THE BANK	495	More about rapid, informal speech.	504	*nd, ld, rd, ds, dt, lv, hv, hj.*	506	Telling time. Other expressions of time. Adjective forms used in comparing things. More about adjectives. Compounds. Irregular verbs. Irregular nouns.	514
20. IN THE OFFICE	535	Surprise questions. [*ər*] and [*rə*].	542	*g* in the spelling but not in the pronunciation.	544	Danish equivalents of "first", "second", etc. The months of the year. More expressions of time. Difference between *da* and *nɔ:ˀr*. Compounds. Irregular verbs. An adjective to notice.	**547**
21. AT THE HOSPITAL	567	Stress.	575	Spelling of foreign words.	578	Danish equivalents of "was killed", "was examined", etc. Using *vέ:ər* instead of *ha:ˀ* in certain verb phrases. The use of *blí:ə. vὲ:ər vé ɔ* and *vὲ:ər lí:ə vé ɔ*. Use of *légə* and *sdɔ:ˀ*. Two ways to say "if". Danish equivalents of "another". Compounds. Irregular verbs.	**581**

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Spelling	Page	Word Study	Page
22.	LAYING IN SUPPLIES	600	More about [*p*], [*t*], [*k*], [*b*], [*d*], [*g*].	609	Words with irregular spelling.	611	More about *sgalʔ* and *sgúlə*. More about *mɔ:ʔ* and *mɔ́də*. Formation of words. Danish equivalents of "the grocer's", "the baker's", etc. Use of the past verb form instead of the present. The metric system of weights and measures. Compounds. Irregular verbs. An adjective to notice.	613
23.	ON THE FARM	635	More about the tone of voice used in Danish sentences.	643	Indication of long and short vowels in Danish spelling.	645	The position of words like *égə*, *gɛ́rnə*, etc. in a Danish sentence. More about the order of words. More about inverted word order. Difference between *ves* and *ɔmʔ*. Compounds. Irregular verbs. An irregular noun.	646
24.	REVIEW	666						

PART FIVE

Unit	Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Spelling	Page	Word Study	Page
25.	GOVERNMENT	678			Words to notice.	686	Passive forms ending in *s*. The basic form and the participle of the auxiliaries. *Komme til at*. *Man*, *ens* and *en*. Participles used as adjectives. Compounds. Irregular verbs.	687
26.	CULTURE	703			Words to notice.	713	Using "the" rather than "my", "your", etc. Omission of *en* or *et*. *Gennem*, *igennem*, etc. Difference between *bo* and *leve*. Special ways of saying things. Compounds. Irregular nouns. Irregular verbs. Three adjectives to notice.	713
27.	INDUSTRY	729			Words to notice.	735	Expressions like *bange for*, *ked af*, etc. Use of *at* and the basic form of the verb after *paa*, *ved*, *af*, etc. *Til*, *paa*, *i*, etc. Difference between *have* and *faa*. Compounds. An irregular verb. An irregular noun.	736

Unit Basic Sentences	Page	Pronunciation	Page	Spelling	Page	Word Study	Page
28. GEOGRAPHY	748			Words to notice.	757	Collection of sentences containing the words *jo*, *ogsaa*, *nu*, etc. Uses of *der*. Difference between *Bil* and *Vogn*. *Halv* as an adjective. Points of the compass. More about verbs used with *sig*. Compounds. An irregular verb.	758
29. THE MILITARY	776	Final statements about the catch.	785	Words to notice.	792	Verb forms ending in *-nde*. *Ind i* and *inde i*. *Ja* and *jo* used to begin a sentence. *Lykkes*. Difference between *Gang* and *Tid*. *Nogen*, *noget*, and *nogle*. Compounds. Irregular verbs. An adjective to notice. Summary of form changes.	793
30. REVIEW	811						
A FEW ADDITIONAL WORDS AND PHRASES	819						
SPELLING CHECK LISTS	820						
DANISH-ENGLISH WORD LIST	823						
ENGLISH-DANISH WORD LIST	858						

PART THREE

UNIT 13

ALL ABOARD

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

If you have a Guide, the procedure from now on will be exactly as before. The records, however, supply only the material for the first twelve units, so if you have no Guide, you will have to follow the plan of having one of the Group who is particularly good in his work play the Guide's role in the *Basic Sentences* and the *Listening In's*.

1. Basic Sentences

Bill Butler and Mr. Knudsen are in Bill's hotel room talking about a business trip Bill is taking. He is going to Aalborg, a city in north Jutland.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Mr. Knudsen		
away	*vɛk*	væk
How long are you going to be away?	*vɔr lɛ́ŋə sga di vɛ̀:ər vɛ́k?*	Hvor længe skal De være væk?
Bill Butler		
probably	*nɔk*	nok
weeks	*ú:ər*	Uger
I don't know for sure, but it'll probably be a couple of weeks.	*dé vé:ˀ jɛ égə bəsdɛ́mˀd, mɛn dé blìər nɔ́g ed par ú:ər.*	Det ved jeg ikke bestemt, men det bliver nok et Par Uger.

Mr. Knudsen		
ticket	*bilɛ́t*	Billet
Have you gotten your ticket?	*har di fɔ́:əð dɛ̀rəs bilɛ́t;*	Har De faaet Deres Billet?
Bill Butler		
reserved	*bəsdélˀt*	bestilt
round-trip ticket	*rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t*	Returbillet
pick up *or* go and get	*hɛ́ndə*	hente
No, but I've reserved a round-trip ticket that I'm going to pick up today.	*nájˀ, mɛn jɛ ar bəsdélˀd en rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀d, sɔm jɛ sga hɛ́ndə i dá:ˀ.*	Nej, men jeg har bestilt en Returbillet, som jeg skal hente i Dag.
seat	*plas*	Plads
the compartment	*kupé:ˀən*	Kupéen
I hope I get a good seat in the compartment.	*jɛ hɔ́:bər jɛ fɔ́:ˀr en gó:ˀ plás i kupé:ˀən.*	Jeg haaber, jeg faar en god Plads i Kupéen.
Mr. Knudsen		
travel(s) *or* leave(s)	*rájˀsər*	rejser
When are you leaving?	*vɔrnɔ́:ˀr rájˀsər dí?*	Hvornaar rejser De?
Bill Butler		
Saturday	*lœ́rda*	Lørdag
I'm not leaving till Saturday morning at eight o'clock.	*jɛ rájˀsər fœ́rsd pɔ: lœ́rda mɔ́rən klɔ̀gən ɔ́:də.*	Jeg rejser først paa Lørdag Morgen Klokken otte.
Mr. Knudsen		
luggage *or* baggage	*bagá:sjə*	Bagage
checked through	*énsgrè:ˀvəð*	indskrevet
Are you going to have your luggage checked through?	*sga di ha dɛ̀rəs bagá:sjə énsgrè:ˀvəð;*	Skal De have Deres Bagage indskrevet?

Bill Butler		
is needed	*bəhǿ:ˀvəs*	behøves
No, I won't need to do that.	*nájˀ dé bəhǿ:ˀvəs égə.*	Nej, det behøves ikke.
that	*dɛnˀ*	den
suitcase	*kófərt*	Kuffert
stand(s)	*sdɔ:ˀr*	staar
I only have that suitcase (that's standing) there in the corner.	*jɛ há:ˀr kón dɛ́nˀ kóf ərd dɛr sdɔ́:ˀr dɛ́:ˀr i jœ́rnəð;*	Jeg har kun den Kuffert, der staar der i Hjørnet.
I can take that right along with me.	*dɛ́nˀ ka jɛ sɛ́lˀ ta mɛ́.*	Den kan jeg selv tage med.
dining car	*sbí:səvɔ̀γˀn*	Spisevogn
the express	*lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγəð*	Lyntoget
Is there [a] dining car on the express?	*ɛr dər sbí:səvɔ̀γˀn i lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγəð;*	Er der Spisevogn i Lyntoget?
Mr. Knudsen		
ask about	*sbœ́rγə ɔ́mˀ*	spørge om
the conductor	*kondugtǿ:ˀərn*	Konduktøren
I don't know, but you can ask the conductor.	*dé vé:ˀ jɛ égə, mɛn dé ka di sbœ́rγə kondugtǿ:ˀərn ɔ́mˀ.*	Det ved jeg ikke, men det kan De spørge Konduktøren om.
people	*mɛ́nəsgər*	Mennesker
lunch	*frógɔst*	Frokost
the ferry	*fɛ́rγən*	Færgen
Lots of people have lunch on the ferry.[1]	*dɛr ər máŋə mɛ́nəsgər dɛr sbì:sər frógɔsd pɔ: fɛ́rγən.*	Der er mange Mennesker, der spiser Frokost paa Færgen.

---

[1] Trains from Copenhagen to Jutland are ferried across from the island of Zealand on which Copenhagen is located to the island of Fyn. There is a bridge between Fyn and Jutland.

Bill Butler		
Is there time for that?	*ɛr dɛr tí:ˀð te dé;*	Er der Tid til det?
Mr. Knudsen		
very *or* enormously	*mɛ́gdi*	mægtig
Yes, and the food's darn good.	*já dé ɛ́r dər, ɔ man sbí:ˀsər mɛ́gdi gɔ́t;*	Ja, det er der, og man spiser mægtig godt.
class	*klásə*	Klasse
Are you going first class?	*ràjsər di pɔ: fœ́rsdə klásə;*	Rejser De paa første Klasse?
Bill Butler		
Yes, I am.	*já dé gœ́r jɛ.*	Ja, det gør jeg.
look forward to the trip	*glɛ́:ðər maj tél* *tú:ˀərn*	glæder mig til Turen
I'm looking forward to the trip very much.	*jɛ glɛ́:ðər mə máəð te tú:ˀərn.*	Jeg glæder mig meget til Turen.
It's always interesting to see something new.	*dé ɛ álˀtìðˀ entrəsánˀd ɔ sé:ˀ nɔ́:əð nýt.*	Det er altid interessant at se noget nyt.
Mr. Knudsen		
by the way visit	*fɔrɛ́sdən* *bəsǿ:ˀɣə*	forresten besøge
By the way, I have some good friends in Aalborg that you could go and see if you have time.	*jɛ há:ˀr fɔrɛ́sdən no:n gó:ə vɛ́nər i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr səm di kùnə bəsǿ:ˀɣə ves di fɔr tí:ˀð;*	Jeg har forresten nogle gode Venner i Aalborg, som De kunde besøge, hvis De faar Tid.

address	*adrέsə*	Adresse
telephone number	*teləfó:ʔnnòmʔər*	Telefonnummer
I'll give you their address and telephone number.	*jɛ sga gí:ʔ dəm dέrəs adrέsə ɔ teləfó:ʔnnòmʔər.*	Jeg skal give Dem deres Adresse og Telefonnummer.
Then you can look them up if you want to.	*sɔ́ ka di gœ́:ər sɔm di vél.*	Saa kan De gøre, som De vil.
Bill Butler		
Thanks a lot, that's very good of you.	*máŋə tág, dé ɛ máəð vέnlid á dəm.*	Mange Tak, det er meget venligt af Dem.
Mr. Knudsen		
I have to go now.	*mɛn jɛ mɔ: gɔ́:ʔ nú.*	Men jeg maa gaa nu.
rang for *or* called for	*réŋəðə έfdər*	ringede efter
taxi	*tágsa*	Taxa
stop(s) *or* park(s)	*hɔ́lʔər*	holder
down	*né:ðə*	nede
I called a taxi and it's probably down there waiting for me.	*jɛ réŋəðə ὲfdər en tágsa, ɔ dɛn hɔ́lʔər nɔg né:ðə ɔ vέndər pɔ́: maj.*	Jeg ringede efter en Taxa, og den holder nok nede og venter paa mig.
down	*ne:ʔð*	ned
the platform	*pərɔ́ŋʔən*	Perronen
But I'm coming down to the train to say good-by to you.	*mɛn jέ kɔ̀mər né:ʔð pɔ: pərɔ́ŋʔən ɔ sìər farvél té dəm.*	Men jeg kommer ned paa Perronen og siger Farvel til Dem.
Bill Butler		
Thanks, that's very nice of you.	*tág dé ɛ pέ:ʔnd á dəm.*	Tak, det er pænt af Dem.

see each other	*se:ʔs*	ses
Hovedbanegaarden[1]	*hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ʔərn*	Hovedbanegaarden
Then I'll see you at the station.	*sɔ́ sé:ʔs vi pɔ: hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ʔərn.*	Saa ses vi paa Hovedbanegaarden.
Mr. Knudsen		
Yes.	*ja.*	Ja.
So long—see you soon!	*farvɛ́l ɔ pɔ: gɛ́nsỳnʔ.*	Farvel og paa Gensyn.
Bill Butler		
Good-by—it was nice to see you. ('Thanks because you came.')	*farvɛ́l, ɔ tág fɔrdí:ʔ di kɔ́mʔ.*	Farvel, og Tak fordi De kom.

Here are two more useful words:

drá:γər, -ən, -ə (Drager, -en, -e) porter
pɔrtjé:ʔ, -ən, -ər (Portier, -en, -er) desk clerk (*at a hotel*)

2. Pronunciation Drill

You remember that the Danish *a* and *a:* sounds have different pronunciations depending upon what sounds come before or after them. We pointed out in Unit 8 that the short *a* is pronounced like the *a* in English *father* when it comes before *m*, *ŋ*, *γ*, *j*, and *v* and either before or after *r*, even before an *r* in the next syllable. Otherwise it is pronounced more like the *a* in *hat*. And we pointed out that the long *a:* is generally pronounced like the *a* in *man*, but that when it comes right after an *r* or right before *r* or *ər*, then it is pronounced like the *a* in *father*. As you know, we have been writing an underline in the *Aids to Listening* under all those *a*'s and *a:*'s which are pronounced like the *a* in *father*.

---

[1] The main railroad station in Copenhagen.

Here are some examples of *a*'s with both pronunciations to refresh your memory:

*bag**á**:sjə*	Bagage	luggage
*t**á**:lə*	tale	speak
*biogr**á̱**:ˀf*	Biograf	movie
*f**a̱**:r*	Far	father
*kl**á**sə*	Klasse	class
*m**á**nˀda*	Mandag	Monday
*s**a**g*	sagt	said
*h**a**lˀ*	halv	half
*h**a̱**m*	ham	him
p[illegible]joná:ˀt	Pensionat	boarding house
*s**á̱**γfø̀:ər*	Sagfører	lawyer
*d**á̱**jli*	dejlig	pleasant
*h**á̱**vfrù:ə*	Havfrue	mermaid
*r**á̱**jsə*	rejse	travel
*v**a̱**r*	var	was, were
***á̱**ldri*	aldrig	never

Here are two more points to note about the short *a*.

1. We have said that the short *a* is pronounced as in *father* before *r*, even when that *r* is in the next syllable; for example, *d**á̱**dər*, ***á̱**ndrə*, ***á̱**ldri*.[1] This means that certain nouns and verbs have *a* as in *hat* in some forms and *a* as in *father* in those other forms which have an added *r*, namely the plural of the noun and the present form of the verb. Here are some examples:

*p**á**sə* (passe) basic form : *p**á̱**sər* (passer) present form, 'fit' or 'suit'

*kl**á**sə* (Klasse) 'class' : *kl**á̱**sər* (Klasser) 'classes'

*pl**a**s* (Plads) seat : *pl**á̱**sər* (Pladser) 'seats'

2. You will find that some Danish speakers pronounce the *a* before *m* or *j* more like the *a* in *hat*, while others, like the speaker on the records, pronounce it more like the *a* in *father*. Either pronunciation is all right. Listen to your Guide say the following words and imitate him:

*h**a**m*	ham	him
*k**a**mˀ*	Kam	comb
*l**á**məsd**à**jˀ*	Lammesteg	roast lamb
*m**a**j*	mig	me
*d**á**jli*	dejlig	pleasant

---

[1] You will find that some speakers pronounce the *a* as in *father* only when the *r* follows directly, not when it comes in the next syllable.

You will also find that many speakers pronounce *a* before *k* or *g* a little like the *a* in *father*. Compare, for instance,

tak	Tak	thank you
smágdə	smagte	tasted
págə	Pakke	package

with

glas	Glas	glass
káfə	Kaffe	coffee
álə	alle	all

In other words, the Danish short *a* has a whole series of different pronunciations, ranging from one quite a lot like the *a* in English *hat* to one very much like the *a* in English *father*. You hear the pronunciation that is most like the *a* in *hat* when the *a* comes before *t*, *d*, *p*, *b*, *l*, *n*, *ð*, *f* and *s*, and the one most like the *a* in *father* when the *a* comes before *r*, *v*, *γ*, and *ŋ* or after *r*. Before the sounds *k*, *g*, *m* and *j* you hear a pronunciation somewhere in between the two extremes.

You can see that you really don't need the underline under *a* and *a:* to tell you when to pronounce them like the *a* in *father*. You can easily tell for yourself by just noticing the sounds before and after, as explained above. Consequently from this unit on we will omit the underlines.

3. Hints on Spelling

Up to now we have asked you to concentrate your attention on the *Aids to Listening* as you went through the *Basic Sentences*, but from now on you should begin to notice the regular Danish spelling. If you have looked at it at all, you must have observed that it often does not correspond very closely to the Danish pronunciation you have been learning. The result of this lack of correspondence is that if you know how to pronounce a Danish word you can't be sure how that word is spelled, and if you know how to spell a Danish word, you can't be sure of the pronunciation. This being true, it's quite a task to learn how to spell Danish. Since the main purpose of this book is to teach you spoken Danish, we don't want to emphasize the spelling too much; but it is handy to be able at least to recognize the words you know when you see them written. Therefore, in these sections called *Hints on Spelling* we'll try to give you as much of an idea as we can of how Danish spelling works. For this group of units from 13-17, you had better continue to work with the *Aids to Listening* as you go through the *Basic Sentences*. After that you will be ready to use the regular spelling.

The important thing to keep in mind as you look at Danish spelling is that **you already know how to pronounce Danish.** Don't under any circumstances change your pronunciation just because the words look different in the regular spelling. They're pronounced the same no matter how they're spelled.

In these *Hints on Spelling* we will enclose letters which designate sounds in square brackets [ ] when necessary, to keep them apart from letters used in the regular spelling.

1. Here are the letters of the Danish alphabet with the pronunciation given in the *Aids to Listening*.

Letter	*Aids to Listening*
a	*a:ʔ*
b	*be:ʔ*
c	*se:ʔ*
d	*de:ʔ*
e	*e:ʔ*
f	*ɛf*
g	*ge:ʔ*
h	*hɔ:ʔ*
i	*i:ʔ*
j	*jɔð*
k	*kɔ:ʔ*
l	*ɛl*
m	*ɛm*
n	*ɛn*
o	*o:ʔ*
p	*pe:ʔ*
q	*ku:ʔ*
r	*ɛr*
s	*ɛs*
t	*te:ʔ*
u	*u:ʔ*
v	*ve:ʔ*
w	*dɔ́bəldvè:ʔ*
x	*ɛgs*
y	*y:ʔ*
z	*sɛt*
æ	*ɛ:ʔ*
ø	*ø:ʔ*
aa	*ɔ:ʔ*

2. General statements

a. Danish spelling does not indicate which words have the catch, which syllable of a word is accented, nor which vowels are long and which short.

b. Every Danish noun begins with a capital letter.

3. Consonants

The sounds represented by [*l*], [*m*], [*n*], [*r*], [*s*], [*j*], [*f*], [*v*] and [*h*] in the *Aids to Listening* are written with these same letters in the regular spelling. Double [*l*], [*m*], [*n*], [*r*], [*s*] and [*f*] in the regular spelling have the same value as the single letters.

The sounds [*p*], [*t*] and [*k*] are, with few exceptions, written with the letters *p*, *t* and *k* in the regular spelling. The sounds [*b*], [*d*] and [*g*] are always written with the letters *b*, *d* and *g* when they come at the beginning of a word or stressed syllable and occasionally so in the middle of a word.

4. Vowels

The sounds listed below are written with the same letters in both the *Aids to Listening* and the regular spelling, except that, as we noted above, there is no indication of long and short vowels in the regular spelling.

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
iː, i	i
eː	e
aː, a *ɑː, ɑ*	a
uː, u	u
oː	o
yː, y	y
øː	ø

The [ə]-sound is generally spelled with the letter *e* in the regular Danish spelling.

The following words contain sounds represented by the letters mentioned above. Consequently you will find that you can read them easily when you see them written in the regular Danish spelling.

Danish Spelling	*Aids to Listening*	*English Equivalent*
ni	*niːʔ*	nine
ti	*tiːʔ*	ten
Is	*iːʔs*	ice cream
min, mine	*miːʔn, míːnə*	my, mine
Vin	*viːʔn*	wine
firs	*fiːʔrs*	eighty
vise	*víːsə*	show

Danish Spelling	*Aids to Listening*	*English Equivalent*
Time	*tí:mə*	hour
blive[1]	*blí:və/blí:ə*	become
i	*i*	in
vi	*vi*	we
hilse	*hílsə*	greet
lille	*lílə*	little
Te	*te:ˀ*	tea
tre	*tre:ˀ*	three
se	*se:ˀ*	see
ses	*se:ˀs*	see each other
sne	*sne:ˀ*	snow
hel	*he:ˀl*	whole
en	*e:ˀn*	one
ren	*re:ˀn*	clean
blev	*ble:ˀv/ble:ˀ*	became
dele	*dé:lə*	share
Barber	*barbé:ˀr*	barber
ja	*jæ*	yes
al, alle	*alˀ, álə*	all
man	*man*	you, people
han	*han*	he
hans	*hans*	his
ham	*ham*	him
Kam	*kamˀ*	comb
kan	*kanˀ/ka*	can
var	*vɔ*	was, were
Par	*par*	few, pair
Glas	*glas*	glass, glasses
traf	*traf*	met
Navn	*navˀn*	name
varm	*varˀm*	warm
Barn	*barˀn*	child
Kaffe	*káfə*	coffee
Klasse	*klásə*	class
passe	*pásə*	fit, suit
Hansen	*hánˀsən*	Hansen
Larsen	*lársən*	Larsen

---

[1] You should pay special attention to the spelling of those words that have more than one pronunciation. You will find that the spelling corresponds to the slow, careful pronunciation.

Danish Spelling	*Aids to Listening*	*English Equivalent*
gav	*ga:ʔv/ga:ʔ*	gave
har	*ha:ʔr/har*	has, have
fra	*fra:ʔ/fra*	from
Far	*fa:r*	father
tale	*tá:lə*	speak
betale	*bətá:ʔlə*	pay
Amerika	*amé:ʔrika*	America
Amerikaner	*amərikáːʔnər*	American
Have[1]	*há:və*	garden
Hus[1]	*hu:ʔs*	house
Tur	*tu:ʔr*	trip
brun	*bru:ʔn*	brown
Frue[1]	*frú:ə*	woman, wife
Havfrue	*hávfrù:ə*	mermaid
du	*du*	you
nu	*nu*	now
fru	*fru*	Mrs.
Bus	*bus*	bus
hun	*hun*	she
Kupé	*kupé:ʔ*	compartment

Danish Spelling	*Aids to Listening*	*English Equivalent*
to	*to:ʔ*	two
bo	*bo:ʔ*	live
jo	*jo:ʔ*	yes
tro	*tro:ʔ*	think
Sol	*so:ʔl*	sun
Mor	*mo:r*	mother
Bror	*bro:r*	brother
Kone	*kó:nə*	wife
Krone	*kró:nə*	crown
By	*by:ʔ*	city
ny	*ny:ʔ*	new
lys	*ly:ʔs*	light
dyr	*dy:ʔr*	expensive
tyve	*tý:və*	twenty
synes	*sýnəs/syns*	think
syv	*syvʔ*	seven
løs	*lø:ʔs*	loose
købe	*kø:bə*	buy
prøve	*prø:və*	try
behøves	*bəhø:ʔvəs*	is needed

---

[1] See *Word Study*, page 333-335

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

1. Two-part words

Look at the words in heavy type in these sentences.

nú glɛ́mdə jɛ ɔ fɔ́:ˀ en **tánbœ̀rsdə.**	Nu glemte jeg at faa en Tandbørste.	Oh, I forgot to get a toothbrush.
ɛr dəɹ **sbí:səvɔ̀ɣˀn** *i lý:nlɔ̀:ˀɣəð;*	Er der Spisevogn i Lyntoget?	Is there a dining car on the express?

Notice that the nouns *tánbœ̀rsdə* and *sbí:səvɔ̀ɣˀn* are made up of a combination of two words. *tánbœ̀rsdə* is made up of the noun *tanˀ*, 'tooth' and the noun *bœ́rsdə*, 'brush'. *sbí:səvɔ̀ɣˀn* is made up of the verb *sbí:sə*, 'eat' and the noun *vɔɣˀn*, 'car'. We have the same sort of combined words, of course, in English "toothbrush" and "dining car", even though we don't always write the two parts together as one word. Words like this that are made up of two or more other words are called **compounds.** Danish, like English, has many compounds. In the following list we'll show you the makeup of some of the compound nouns you know.

Group 1 noun + noun

barbé:ˀrblà:ðə (Barberblade) razor blades = **barbé:ˀr** (Barber) barber + **blá:ðə** (Blade) blades

barbé:ˀrmasgì:nə (Barbermaskine) razor = **barbé:ˀr** (Barber) barber + **masgí:nə** (Maskine) machine

gɔ́ àjˀər (Gaardejer) farmer = **gɔ:ˀr** (Gaard) farm + **ájˀər** (Ejer) owner

hávfrù:ə (Havfrue) mermaid = **hav** (Hav) sea + **frú:ə** (Frue) woman

hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn (Hovedbanegaarden) 'the Main Railroad Station' = **hó:ðə** (Hoved) head + **bá:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn** (Banegaarden) the railroad station

bá:nəgɔ̀:ˀr (Banegaard) railroad station = **bá:nə** (Bane) railroad, train + **gɔ:ˀr** (Gaard) yard

lánmànˀ (Landmand) farmer = **lanˀ** (Land) country + **manˀ** (Mand) man
lý:ntɔ̀:ˀɣ (Lyntog) express train = **ly:ˀn** (Lyn) lightning + **tɔ:ˀɣ** (Tog) train
menýkɔ̀rt (Menukort) menu = **mený** (Menu) menu + **kɔrt** (Kort) card
rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t (Returbillet) round-trip ticket = **rətú:ˀr** (Retur) return + **bilɛ́t** (Billet) ticket
rɔ́ðhusplàsən (Raadhuspladsen) the Town Hall Square = **rɔ́ðhù:ˀs** (Raadhus) 'town hall' + **plásən** (Pladsen) the square
rɔ́ðhù:ˀs (Raadhus) town hall = **rɔ:ˀð** (Raad) council + **hu:ˀs** (Hus) house
sáɣfø:ər (Sagfører) lawyer = **sa:ˀɣ** (Sag) case + **fø:ər** (Fører) leader
sbórvɔ̀ɣˀn (Sporvogn) streetcar = **sbo:ˀr** (Spor) track + **vɔɣˀn** (Vogn) car
sɛ́:bəhù:ˀs (Sæbehus) soap house = **sɛ́:bə** (Sæbe) soap + **hu:ˀs** (Hus) house
teləfó:ˀnnɔ̀mˀər (Telefonnummer) telephone number = **teləfó:ˀn** (Telefon) telephone + **nómˀər** (Nummer) number
tømrərmɛ̀sdər (Tømrermester) carpenter = **tømrər** (Tømrer) carpenters + **mɛ́sdər** (Mester) master

Group 2 verb (basic form) + noun

bá:ðəvɛ̀:ərlsə (Badeværelse) bathroom = **bá:ðə** (bade) bathe + **vɛ́:ərlsə** (Værelse) room
drégəpɛ̀ŋə (Drikkepenge) tip = **drégə** (drikke) drink + **pɛ́ŋə** (Penge) money
hágəbøf (Hakkebøf) hamburg steak = **hágə** (hakke) chop + **bøf** (Bøf) beefsteak

Group 3 adjective + noun

rø:ˀðgrø̀:ˀð (Rødgrød) fruit pudding = **rø:ˀð** (rød) red + **grø:ˀð** (Grød) porridge
smɔ́pɛ̀ŋə (Smaapenge) small change = **smɔ:ˀ** (smaa) small + **pɛ́ŋə** (Penge) money
ɛ́ŋˀgəldvɛ̀:ərlsə (Enkeltværelse) single room = **ɛ́ŋˀgəlt** (enkelt) single + **vɛ́:ərlsə** (Værelse) room

Group 4 noun + ə + noun

agúrgəsalà:ˀt (Agurkesalat) cucumber salad = **agúrk** (Agurk) cucumber + **ə** + **salá:ˀt** (Salat) salad

lámәsdàjˀ (Lammesteg) roast lamb = **lamˀ** (Lam) lamb + **ə** + **sdajˀ** (Steg) roast

smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð (Smørrebrød) open sandwiches = **smœr** (Smør) butter + **ə** + **brø:ˀð** (Brød) bread

The compound *dý:ərhà:vən* (Dyrehaven), the name of a park outside Copenhagen, also belongs in this group. It is made up of the noun *dy:ˀr*, (Dyr) 'animal' plus *ə* (which after a long vowel is added before the *r*) plus *há:vən* (Haven) 'the garden' (*há:və, -n, -r*), and so means literally "the animal garden".

Group 5 miscellaneous

ɛ́fdərɔ̀:ˀr (Efteraar) fall = **ɛ́fdər** (efter) after + **ɔ:ˀr** (Aar) year

fɔ́rɔ̀:ˀr (Foraar) spring = **fɔr-** (for-) before + **ɔ:ˀr** (Aar) year

ónərtɔ̀j (Undertøj) underwear = **ónˀər** (under) under + **tɔj** (Tøj) clothes

Notice:

1. that when two words are put together to make one, the accented syllable of the first word has the strongest stress (is said most emphatically) while the accented syllable of the second word has a slightly weaker stress (is said a little less emphatically).
2. that a catch in the first word is sometimes left out as in *lánmànˀ*.
3. that a long vowel in the first word is sometimes shortened as in *smɔ́pɛ̀ŋə, gɔ́rdàjˀər, sáɣfø̀:ər*.
4. that the first part may be a noun, verb, adjective, etc., but the last part of a compound noun is always a noun.
5. that *bá:ðəvɛ̀:ərlsə* like *vɛ́:ərlsə* is an et-noun with the plural made by adding *r*. Any compound noun takes ***en*** or ***et*** and makes its the-form and plural form the way the last part of the compound does.

It's not safe to go ahead and make up your own Danish compounds by putting two words together, but when you hear them in conversation it's generally easy to tell what they mean, if you know the meaning of the two parts. And it will help you to increase your vocabulary in Danish if you notice the parts which make up the compounds. In learning the above nouns, for instance, you have at the same time learned the nouns which form the last part of them; you know whether they're *en* or *et* nouns, how they make their plural, etc. Among the useful nouns which you have added to your vocabulary in this way are *hu:ʔs* (Hus) 'house', *salá:ʔt* (Salat) 'salad', *masgí:nə* (Maskine) 'machine', *manʔ* (Mand) 'man', *kɔrt* (Kort) 'card', *bøf* (Bøf) 'beef', *péŋə* (Penge) 'money'. Such nouns will be given in the *Finder Lists* at the end of each unit.

2. The past form of the auxiliaries

vá várʔəð du sá:ə du **sgu** *há?*	Hvad var det, du sagde, du skulde have?	What was it you said you were going to get?

Notice that *sgúlə* (*sgu*) in this sentence corresponds to English "were going to". Since you know that *sgalʔ* corresponds to "am, is, are going to", you can see that here *sgúlə* acts as the past form of *sgalʔ*. *sgalʔ* also, as you have learned, means "have to" and you will find that the past form *sgúlə* thus sometimes corresponds to "had to".

The other three auxiliaries that you know have the following irregular past forms:

Present form			*Past form*		
kanʔ	kan	can	**kúnə**	kunde	could, was *or* were able to
mɔ:ʔ	maa	has *or* have to	**mɔ́də**	maatte	had to
vel	vil	want *or* wants to	**vélə**	vilde	wanted to

You know, of course, that *sgúlə* and *vélə* also correspond to English "should" and "would".

3. The days of the week

In this unit you had the Danish word for "Saturday", *lœ́rda* (Lørdag). Here are the other days of the week:

sœ́nʔda	Søndag	Sunday
mánʔda	Mandag	Monday
tí:ʔrsda	Tirsdag	Tuesday
ónʔsda	Onsdag	Wednesday
tɔ́:ʔrsda	Torsdag	Thursday
fré:ʔda	Fredag	Friday

These words are all en-nouns. The the-forms are *mánʔda:ʔən, tí:ʔrsda:ʔən, ónʔsda:ʔən*, etc. The plural forms are *mánʔda:ə, tí:ʔrsda:ə*, etc. Here are some new sentences to show you how they are used. They are made up of words you know but are not taken from the *Basic Sentences*.

jɛ rájʔsər **pɔ: mánʔda** *áfdən.*	Jeg rejser paa Màndag Aften.	I'm leaving Monday evening.
jɛ sga sbì:sə méda i bý:ʔən **pɔ: tí:ʔrsda,** *ɔ bá:ʔɛ̀fdər sga jɛ i biográ:ʔfən;*	Jeg skal spise Middag i Byen paa Tirsdag, og bagefter skal jeg i Biografen.	I'm going to eat dinner in town on Tuesday and then go to the movies.
jɛ árbajʔdər égə **ɔm lœ́rda:ʔən.**	Jeg arbejder ikke om Lørdagen.	I don't work Saturdays.
vá tí:ʔð sbì:sər di méda **ɔm sœ́nʔda:ʔən?**	Hvad Tid spiser De Middag om Søndagen?	What time do you eat dinner on Sunday?

Notice that when you mean one particular Monday or Tuesday, as in the first two sentences, you say *pɔ: mánʔda, pɔ: tí:ʔrsda*, etc., but when you mean Saturdays in general or Sundays in general, as in the last two sentences, then you say *ɔm lœ́rda:ʔən, ɔm sœ́nʔda:ʔən*, etc., using *ɔm* followed by the the-form.

4. Special ways of saying things

A

Observe the following:

jɛ rájˀsər fœ́rsd pɔ: lœ́rdɑ mɔ́rən klɔ̀gən ɔ́:də.	Jeg rejser først paa Lørdag Morgen Klokken otte.	I'm not leaving till Saturday morning at eight o'clock.

Notice how you express the idea of "not until" in Danish. As you see, what you really say in the above sentence is "I'm leaving first on Saturday morning at eight o'clock." Here are some additional examples, made up of words you know but not taken from the *Basic Sentences*.

vi gɔr fœ́rsd i biográ:ˀfən nɔr di ándrə kɔ́mˀər.	Vi gaar først i Biografen, naar de andre kommer.	We won't go to the movies until the others come.
tɔ́:ˀɣəð hɔ́lˀər fœ́rsd nɔr vi kɔ́mˀər te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr.	Toget holder først, naar vi kommer til Aalborg.	The train doesn't stop till we get to Aalborg.
jɛ fɔrsdó:ˀð fœrsd bá:ˀɛ̀fdər vá han hà:ðə ságt.	Jeg forstod først bagefter, hvad han havde sagt.	I didn't understand what he'd said till afterwards.
hun gœ́r de fœ́rsd nɔr jɛ sɩər hun sgálˀ.	Hun gør det først, naar jeg siger, hun skal.	She won't do it until I tell her to.

These sentences show how you express the idea of "not until" in Danish. To correspond to English "until" without the "not", Danish has the word *te* (til). Here are some sentences in which it is used:

jɛ vɛ́ndər hɛ́:ˀr te du kɔ́mˀər.	Jeg venter her, til du kommer.	I'll wait here till you come.
han árbajˀdər te klɔ̀gən fɩ:ər.	Han arbejder til Klokken fire.	He works till four o'clock.
jɛ bó:ˀr hɛ́:ˀr pɔ: hotɛ́lˀəð te jɛ ka fɔ́:ˀ ed vɛ́:ərlsə i ed paŋsjoná:ˀt.	Jeg bor her paa Hotellet, til jeg kan faa et Værelse i et Pensionat.	I'm living here at the hotel till I can get a room in a boarding house.

B

Look at these sentences:

jɛ ka **gɔ́d** *lí:ˀ di lý:sə nɛ́dər di há:ˀr hɛ́:ˀr i dánmark.*	Jeg kan godt lide de lyse Nætter, De har her i Danmark.	I like the light nights you have here in Denmark.
ka di vɛ́gslə dɛ́nˀ;	Kan De veksle den?	Can you change it?
já dé ká jɛ **gɔ́t.**	Ja, det kan jeg godt.	Yes, I can.
ves di ve há:ˀ en frágə ɛ̀lər ed sɛd tɔ́j, vé:ˀ jɛ **gɔ́d,** *vɔ́r di sga gɔ: hɛ́n.*	Hvis De vil have en Frakke eller et Sæt Tøj, ved jeg godt, hvor De skal gaa hen.	If you're going to get a coat or a suit, I know where you should go.

The Danish word *gɔ́t*, as you know, corresponds to English "good" or "well", but notice that in these three sentences it doesn't really have a meaning of its own, but rather serves to make the statements more emphatic. *vé:ˀ gɔ́t* is stronger than just *ve:ˀ*, *kánˀ gɔ́t* than just *kanˀ*, and *ka gɔ́d lí:ˀ* than just *ka lí:ˀ*. We generally do the same thing in English by using an emphatic tone of voice rather than a special word.

C

Observe these sentences:

jɛ́ tror **hɛ́lərə** *jɛ́ ve ha kýleŋ mɛ ɛ́rdər, ɔ ed glas øl.*	Jeg tror hellere, jeg vil have Kylling med Ærter og et Glas Øl.	I think I'd rather have chicken with peas and a glass of beer.
di mɔ: **hɛ́lərə** *vɛ̀:ər fɔr sdó:ər ɛn fɔr smɔ́:ˀ.*	De maa hellere være for store end for smaa.	I'd rather have them too large than too small.
mɛn sga vi égə **hɛ́lərə** *bətá:ˀlə nú ɔ gɔ́:ˀ.*	Men skal vi ikke hellere betale nu og gaa?	Hadn't we better pay now and go?

Notice how the word *hɛ́lərə* is used in these sentences. In the first two sentences, as you see, it corresponds to English "rather". Notice, though, that what the Danish really says is "I think *rather* I'll have . . . " and "They must *rather* be too large than too small." Notice, too, that in the last sentence *sga vi égə hɛ́lərə* corresponds to English "hadn't we better".

5. Irregular verbs

The following new verbs which you had in this unit are irregular:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
sdɔ:ʔ (staa) stand	*sdo:ʔð* (stod) stood	*sdɔ́:əð* (staaet) stood
énsgrì:ʔvə (indskrive) check	*énsgrè:ʔv* (indskrev) checked	*énsgrè:ʔvəð* (indskrevet) checked
hɔ́lə (holde) stop, park	*hɔlʔt* (holdt) stopped, parked	*hɔlʔt* (holdt) stopped, parked
sbœ́rγə (spørge) ask	*sbórdə* (spurgte) asked	*sborʔt* (spurgt) asked
bəsø:ʔγə (besøge) visit	*bəsøgdə* (besøgte) visited	*bəsøgt* (besøgt) visited

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. Decide what you would say to answer the following questions and be prepared to give your answers at the next group meeting.

1. *sga di há:ʔ nɔ̀:əð nýd sɔ́mərtɔ̀j i ɔ́:ʔr.*	Skal De have noget nyt Sommertøj i Aar?
2. *ve du ha en frógɔsdpàgə mέ, nɔr du rájʔsər te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr, ὲlər sbí:ʔsər du pɔ: fέrγən.*	Vil du have en Frokostpakke med, naar du rejser til Aalborg, eller spiser du paa Færgen?
3. *har di sé:ʔd sné:mànʔən ú:ðənfɔr hotέlʔəð;*	Har De set Snemanden uden for Hoteliet?
4. *købdə di en ný:ʔ vénʔdərfràgə sísdə ɔ́:ʔr;*	Købte De en ny Vinterfrakke sidste Aar?
5. *jε har tó:ʔ biográ:ʔfbilὲdər, ve du mέ;*	Jeg har to Biografbilletter. Vil du med?
6. *ve di sí:ə maj vɔ́:ʔr jε ka fɔ́:ʔ ed hotέlʔvὲ:ərlsə dεr égə εr fɔr dý:ʔrt;*	Vil De sige mig, hvor jeg kan faa et Hotelværelse, der ikke er for dyrt?
7. *ve di ha kartɔ́fəlsalà:ʔd ὲlər agúrgəsalà:ʔd te lámәsdàjʔən.*	Vil De have Kartoffelsalat eller Agurkesalat til Lammestegen?
8. *vi sga ha έrdəsòbə te méda; ka di lí:ʔ də;*	Vi skal have Ærtesuppe til Middag. Kan De lide det?
9. *há:ʔr di ed jǽrnəvὲ:ərlsə jε ka fɔ́:ʔ;*	Har De et Hjørneværelse, jeg kan faa?
10. *vá tí:ʔð sbí:ʔsər di mɔ́rənmàð ɔm sǿnʔda:ʔən?*	Hvad Tid spiser De Morgenmad om Søndagen?
11. *tror di vi fɔr rájnvὲ:ʔr pɔ: sǿnʔda;*	Tror De, vi faar Regnvejr paa Søndag?
12. *di gá:ʔ maj adrέsən pɔ: dὲrəs vέnər, mεn égə gá:ðənòmʔərəð.*	De gav mig Adressen paa Deres Venner, men ikke Gadenummeret.
ka di sí:ə maj vá de έr;	Kan De sige mig, hvad det er?

13. *dé ɛr ed dájli vɛ́:ərlsə di har fɔ́:əð.*	Det er et dejligt Værelse, De har faaet.
di ka sé:ˀ amá:ˀljənbɔ̀:ˀr fra dɛ́də jœ́rnəvèndu, égə;	De kan se Amalienborg fra dette Hjørnevindue, ikke?
14. *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr sga di flǿdə ú:ˀð i dɛ́rəs sɔ́mərhù:ˀs?*	Hvornaar skal De flytte ud i Deres Sommerhus?

B. Read the following sentences about Danish trains and then decide how you would answer the questions that follow.

álə tɔ́:ˀγ i købənhávˀn kɔ́mˀər ɔ gɔ́:ˀr fra hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn.	Alle Tog i København kommer og gaar fra Hovedbanegaarden.
dé ɛr en pɛ́:ˀn sdó:ˀr býgneŋ i nɛ́rhèðˀən a rɔ́ðhusplàsən.	Det er en pæn, stor Bygning i Nærheden af Raadhuspladsen.
di ka bəsdélˀə dɛ̀rəs bilɛ́d nɔr di vé:ˀ vɔrnɔ́:ˀr di sga rájsə.	De kan bestille Deres Billet, naar De ved, hvornaar De skal rejse.
mɛn di ka ɔ́sə kó:bə dən dɛ́nˀ dá:ˀ di rájˀsər.	Men De kan ogsaa købe den den Dag, De rejser.
ves man égə sga vè:ər vɛ́g mé:ər ɛn en mɔ́:nəð, ɛr de bíliərə ɔ tá:ˀ rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t.	Hvis De ikke skal være væk mere end en Maaned, er det billigere at tage Returbillet.
bœ́rˀn rájˀsər álˀtìðˀ bíliərə, fɔr dí ka rájsə pɔ: bárnəbilɛ̀t.	Børn rejser altid billigere, for de kan rejse paa Barnebillet.
dɛr ər tó:ˀ klásər pɔ: tɔ́:γənə i dánmarg, ɔ dɛr ər kupé:ˀər vɔr man mɔ́:ˀ rý:ə ɔ ándrə vɔr man égə mɔ́:ˀ.	Der er to Klasser paa Togene i Danmark, og der er Kupéer hvor man maa ryge og andre, hvor man ikke maa.
i nó:n tɔ́:ˀγ ɛr dər ɔ́sə sbí:səvɔ̀γˀn.	I nogle Tog er der ogsaa Spisevogn.
di ka énsgrì:ˀvə dɛ̀rəs bagá:sjə ɛ̀lər ta dɛ̀rəs kófərdər mɛ́ énˀ i kupé:ˀən, ves di égə ɛr fɔr sdó:ər.	De kan indskrive Deres Bagage eller tage Deres Kufferter med ind i Kupéen, hvis de ikke er for store.

fɔr ɔ fɔ: plás i lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγəð, mɔ: di ha plásbilɛ̀t.	For at faa Plads i Lyntoget, maa De have Pladsbillet.
kondugtø:ˀərn sé:ˀr bilédərnə nɔr di gɔr né:ˀð pɔ: pərɔ́ŋˀən.	Konduktøren ser Billetterne, naar De gaar ned paa Perronen.
bá:ˀɛ̀fdər sé:ˀr en ánən kondugtø:ˀr bilédərnə i tɔ́:ˀγəð.	Bagefter ser en anden Konduktør Billetterne i Toget.
ves di har vɛ́nər sɔm gérnə ve sì:ə farvél té dəm, ka di kø:bə en pərɔ́ŋbilɛ̀d fɔr fémˀ ɔ tý:və ø:ər ɔ gɔ: né:ˀð pɔ: pərɔ́ŋˀən.	Hvis De har Venner, som gerne vil sige Farvel til Dem, kan de købe en Perronbillet for fem og tyve Øre og gaa ned paa Perronen.

Questions

1. *vá hɛ́ðˀər sdasjó:ˀnən i købənhávˀn vɔr álə tɔ́:ˀγ kɔ́mˀər énˀ?*	Hvad hedder Stationen i København, hvor alle Tog kommer ind?
2. *ɛr de bíliərə ɔ ta rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t;*	Er det billigere at tage Returbillet?
3. *vɔr máŋə klásər ér dər pɔ: di dánsgə tɔ́:ˀγ?*	Hvor mange Klasser er der paa de danske Tog?
4. *mɔ: man rý:ə i tɔ́:ˀγəð;*	Maa man ryge i Toget?
5. *vá ka man gǿ:ər mɛ bagá:sjən?*	Hvad kan man gøre med Bagagen?
6. *vɛ́mˀ sé:ˀr bilédərnə?*	Hvem ser Billetterne?
7. *mɔ: man ha biléd fɔr ɔ kɔ̀mə né:ˀð pɔ: pərɔ́ŋˀən;*	Maa man have Billet for at komme ned paa Perronen?
8. *vá mɔ: man há:ˀ fɔr ɔ fɔ: plás i lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγəð?*	Hvad maa man have for at faa Plads i Lyntoget?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Bill speaks to the desk clerk at his hotel.*

bel	*Bill*
ve di réŋə ɛ́fdər en tágsa; jɛ sga vɛ́:ər pɔ: hó:ðəba:nəgɔ́:ˀərn ɔm tí:ˀ minúdər;	Vil De ringe efter en Taxa? Jeg skal være paa Hovedbanegaarden om ti Minutter.
di ka fɔrɛ̀sdən ɔ́sə fɔ: mi:n kófərd hɛ̀ndəð né:ˀð fra mid vɛ́:ərlsə.	De kan forresten ogsaa faa min Kuffert hentet ned fra mit Værelse.
pɔrtjé:ˀ	*Portier*
já gɛ́rnə hɛ́r.	Ja, gerne Herr.

A few minutes later

pɔrtjé:ˀ	*Portier*
tágsa:ˀən hɔ́lˀər né:ðə ɔ vɛ́ndər pɔ́: dəm hɛ́r.	Taxaen holder nede og venter paa Dem, Herr.
bel	*Bill*
tág úðmɛrg̊əð.	Tak udmærket.
jɛ blìər nɔ́g vég ed par ú:ər.	Jeg bliver nok væk et Par Uger.

2. *At the station Bill speaks to a porter.*

bel

jέ sga mε lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγəð te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr klɔ̀gən tí:ˀ;

vá pərɔ́ŋ εr de pɔ́:ˀ?

drá:γər

dé ε lí:ə hέ:ˀr pɔ: pərɔ́ŋ fέmˀ;

εr dὲrəs bagá:sjə énsgrè:ˀvəð;

bel

nájˀ jε há:ˀr kon dέnˀ kófərd dεr sdɔ́:ˀr dέ:ˀr, sɔ dé bəhǿ:ˀvəs égə.

εr dər máŋə mέnəsgər mε dé tɔ́:ˀγ;

drá:γər

já jε tró:ˀr égə di fɔr kupé:ˀən fɔr dεm sέlˀ;

dεr ər i ré:ˀələn égə sɔ gó:ˀ plás ɔm lœ́rda:ˀən.

mεn dí ráj ˀsər mɔ:sgé:ˀ pɔ: fœ́rsdə klásə;

bel

já jε har bəsdélˀd en bilέd te fœ́rsdə klásə.

ɔ́: dέ:ˀr έr di sàγfø̀:ər knúsen.

har di vέndəð lέŋə;

Bill

Jeg skal med Lyntoget til Aalborg Klokkèn ti.

Hvad Perron er det paa?

Drager

Det er lige her paa Perron fem.

Er Deres Bagage indskrevet?

Bill

Nej, jeg har kun den Kuffert, der staar der, saa det behøves ikke.

Er der mange Mennesker med det Tog?

Drager

Ja, jeg tror ikke, De faar Kupéen for Dem selv.

Der er i Regelen ikke saa god Plads om Lørdagen.

Men De rejser maaske paa første Klasse?

Bill

Ja, jeg har bestilt en Billet til første Klasse.

Aah, der er De Sagfører Knudsen!

Har De ventet længe?

sàγfø̀:ər knúsən

nájˀ jɛ kɔ́mˀ lí:ə nú;

di mɔ: hɛ́lərə fɔ́:ˀ mì:nə vɛ́nərs adrɛ́sə ɔ teləfó:ˀnnɔ̀mˀər, sɔ di ka bəsø̀:ˀγə dəm ves di fɔr tí:ˀð;

bel

já tág, dé glɛ́:ðər jɛ mə tél.

sɔ́, nú gɔ́:ˀr tɔ́:ˀγəð;

sàγfø̀:ər knúsən

já farvɛ́l sɔ lɛ́ŋə ènsjənjør bɔ́dlər, ɔ gó:ˀ tú:ˀr;

bel

já tág sga di há:ˀ.

sɔ́ sé:ˀs vi nɔ́g ɔm ed par ú:ər;

de var pɛ́:ˀnd á dəm ɔ kɔ̀mə né:ˀð ɔ sì:ə farvɛ́l té maj.

3. *On the train*

kondugtø̀:ˀr

mɔ: jɛ sé:ˀ dèrəs bilɛ́d hɛ́r;

bel

já vɛ́rs gó:ˀ.

jɛ har rətú:ˀrbilèd te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr;

Sagfører Knudsen

Nej, jeg kom lige nu.

De maa hellere faa mine Venners Adresse og Telefonnummer, saa De kan besøge dem, hvis De faar Tid.

Bill

Ja Tak, det glæder jeg mig til.

Saa nu gaar Toget.

Sagfører Knudsen

Ja, Farvel saa længe Ingeniør Butler, og god Tur!

Bill

Ja, Tak skal De have.

Saa ses vi nok om et Par Uger.

Det var pænt af Dem at komme ned at sige Farvel til mig!

Konduktør

Maa jeg se Deres Billet, Herr?

Bill

Ja, værsaagod.

Jeg har Returbillet til Aalborg.

kondugtǿ:ˀr	*Konduktør*
tág vɛ́rs gó:ˀ.	Tak, værsaagod.

Bill speaks to another passenger.

bel	*Bill*
vɔrnɔ́:ˀr kɔ́mˀər vi te fɛ́rɣən?	Hvornaar kommer vi til Færgen?
hɛr ɛ́gs	*Herr X*
ɔm en tí:mə, tró:ˀr jɛ.	Om en Time, tror jeg.
bel	*Bill*
ɛr dər sbí:səvɔ̀ɣˀn hɛ́:ˀr i tɔ́:ˀɣəð;	Er der Spisevogn her i Toget?
hɛr ɛ́gs	*Herr X*
dé vé:ˀ jɛ ɛ́gə;	Det ved jeg ikke.
dé mɔ: di sbǿ́rɣə kondugtǿ:ˀərn ɔ́mˀ.	Det maa De spørge Konduktøren om.
mɛn di ka álˀtìðˀ sbì:sə frógɔsd pɔ: fɛ́rɣən;	Men De kan altid spise Frokost paa Færgen.
dɛ́:ˀr sbí:ˀsər man mɛ́gdi gɔ́t.	Der spiser man mægtigt godt.
bel	*Bill*
já sɔ́ tró:ˀr jɛ hɛ́lərə jɛ ve vɛ́ndə;	Ja, saa tror jeg hellere, jeg vil vente.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and a ticket-seller in the railroad station.

You call him on the phone and say that you want to reserve a round-trip ticket to Aalborg. He asks if you want to go first class and you tell him you do. He asks when you're going and you tell him Saturday morning. You ask him what time the train leaves and he tells you it goes at 11:30. You say you'd like a seat ticket (*plásbilèt*). He tells you that you'll have 'seat ticket' number 5 in car number 608. He asks if you want to have your baggage checked through. You tell him no, you have only one suitcase so you won't need to. You ask him when you should pick up the ticket and he tells you to get it on Thursday.

2. You and a friend.

As you go to get your train you meet a friend of yours in the station. He notices your suitcase and asks where you're going. You tell him you're going to Aalborg. He says that'll be interesting—you've never been there, have you? You say no, that you're looking forward to the trip very much. He asks if your train leaves from track (platform) 3. You tell him it does. He says he'll come down and say good-by to you—his train doesn't leave until twelve o'clock. You tell him that's very nice of him. Then he tells you he's going to England on business. You're surprised because he doesn't have any suitcase with him. He tells you he had his baggage checked through. Then he suggests that you'd better hurry if you're going to make your train.

3. You and the conductor on the train.

The conductor comes through the train and asks for your ticket. When he looks at it he tells you that this is not your seat. Your seat's in car number 608 and this is car number 607. You ask where car 608 is and he tells you that if you'll come with him he'll show you. You ask him if there's a diner on the train. He says there isn't, but that you can eat on the ferry. Lots of people do that and you get awfully good food there. You ask what time you get (come) there. He tells you one o'clock. You thank him and he leaves.

4. You and a man on the train

The man sitting in the compartment with you asks where you're going. You tell him you're going to Aalborg. He asks how long you're going to be there. You say that you'll probably be there a week. You're going to visit some friends. He asks you if you've ever been to Aalborg. You say no, you haven't. You tell him you have the address and telephone number of your friends but you don't know how to get there from the railroad station. He suggests that you call a taxi and you say yes, you're going to do that.

Finder List

adrɛ́sə, -n, -r (Adresse, -n, -r) address

ájˀər, -ən, -ə (Ejer, -en, -e) owner

bagá:sjə, -n (Bagage, -n) luggage, baggage

bəhǿ:ˀvəs (behøves) is needed

bəsdélˀə, -də (bestille, bestilte) reserve

bəsǿ:ˀɣə, bəsǿgdə (besøge, -te) visit

bilɛ́t, -ən, -ər (Billet, -ten, -ter) ticket

blað, blá:ˀðəð, blá:ðə (Blad, -et, -e) blade

bøf, -ən, -ər (Bøf, -fen, -fer) beefsteak

dɛnˀ (den) that

drá:ɣər, -ən, -ə (Drager, -en, -e) porter

énsgrì:ˀvə, énsgrè:ˀv, énsgrè:ˀvəð (indskrive, indskrev, indskrevet) check through (*of baggage*)

fɛ́rɣə, -n, -r (Færge, -n, -r) ferry

fré:ˀda, fré:ˀda:ˀən, fré:ˀda:ə (Fredag, -en, -e) Friday

frógɔst, -ən, -ər (Frokost, -en, -er) lunch

frú:ə, -n, -r (Frue, -n, -r) woman, wife

fǿ:ər, -ən, -ə (Fører, -en, -e) leader

fɔrɛ́sdən (forresten) by the way

glɛ́:ðə saj tel, glɛ́:ðəðə saj tel (glæde sig til, -de sig til) look forward to

grø:ˀð, -ən (Grød, -en) porridge

gɔ:ˀr, gɔ́:ˀərn, gɔ́:ər (Gaard, -en, -e) yard

há:və, -n, -r (Have, -n, -r) garden

hɛ́ndə, -ðə (hente, -de) pick up, go and get

hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn (Hovedbanegaarden) *the main railroad station in Copenhagen*

hu:ˀs, -əð, hú:sə (Hus, -et, -e) house

hɔ́lə, hɔ́lˀər, hɔlˀt, hɔlˀt (holde, holdt, holdt) stop, park

klásə, -n, -r (Klasse, -n, -r) class

kófərt, -ən, -ər (Kuffert, -en, -er) suitcase

kondugtǿ:ˀr, kondugtǿ:ˀərn, kondugtǿ:ˀər (Konduktør, -en, -er) conductor

kúnə/ku (kunde) could, was (were) able to

kupé:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Kupe, -en, -er) compartment

kɔrt, -əð, — (Kort, -et, —) card

lý:ntɔ̀:ˀɣ, -əð, — (Lyntog, -et, —) express train

lœ́rda, lœ́rda:ˀən, lœ́rda:ə (Lørdag, -en, -e) Saturday

mánˀda, mánˀda:ˀən, mánˀda:ə (Mandag, -en, -e) Monday

masgí:nə, -n, -r (Maskine, -n, -r) machine

mɛ́gdi (mægtig) very *or* enormously

mɛ́nəsgə, mɛ́nsgə/-ð, -r (Menneske, -t, -r) person, human being; in the plural, 'people'

mɛ́sdər, -ən, mɛ́sdrə (Mester, -en, Mestre) master

mɔ́də (maatte) had to

ne:ˀð, né:ðə (ned, nede) down

nɔk (nok) probably

ónˀsda, ónˀsda:ˀən, ónˀsda:ə (Onsdag, -en, -e) Wednesday

pərɔ́ŋ, pərɔ́ŋˀən, pərɔ́ŋˀər (Perron, -en, -er) platform

plas, -ən, -ər (Plads, -en, -er) seat, square

pɔrtjé:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Portier, -en, -er) desk clerk (*in a hotel*)

rájsə, rájˀsər, rájsdə (rejse, -te) travel

réŋə, -ðə (ringe, -de) ring, call (*on the telephone*)
  réŋə ɛ́fdər (ringe efter) call for *or* ring for

rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t, -ən, -ər (Returbillet, -ten, -ter) round-trip ticket

salá:ˀt, -ən, -ər (Salat, -en, -er) salad

sbí:səvɔ̀ɣˀn, -ən, sbí:səvɔ̀ɣnə (Spisevogn, -en, -e) dining car

sbœ́rɣə/sbœ́rə, sbórdə (spørge, spurgte) ask
  sbœ́rɣə ɔ́mˀ (spørge om) ask about

sdɔ:ˀ, sdo:ˀð, sdɔ́:əð (staa, stod, staaet) stand

se:ˀs (ses) see each other

sœ́nˀda, sœ́nˀda:ˀən, sœ́nˀda:ə (Søndag, -en, -e) Sunday

tágsa, tágsa:ˀən, tágsa:ˀər[1] (Taxa, -en, -er) taxi

---

[1] The *a:* here is pronounced like the *a* in English *man*, even though before *ər* an *a:* in Danish is generally pronounced like the *a* in English *father*. This unusual pronunciation is due to the fact that *tágsa* is not a native Danish word.

tel/te (til) until, till

teləfó:ˀnnòmˀər, -əð, teləfó:ˀnnòmrə (Telefonnummer, -et, Telefonnumre) telephone number

tí:ˀrsda, tí:ˀrsda:ˀən, tí:ˀrsda:ə (Tirsdag, -en, -e) Tuesday

tu:ˀr, tú:ˀərn, tú:ər (Tur, -en, -e) trip

tɔ́:ˀrsda, tɔ́:ˀrsda:ˀən, tɔ́:ˀrsda:ə (Torsdag, -en, -e) Thursday

ú:ə, -n, -r (Uge, -n, -r) week

vélə (vilde) wanted to

vɛk (væk) away

ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr (Aalborg) *a city in north Jutland*

FILL 'ER UP

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Tom is staying with Peter Andersen and his family in the country. It is evening and the Andersens and Tom are going out for a ride.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Mr. Andersen		
you	*i*	I
ready	*pará:ˀdə*	parate
Are you ready?	*ɛr i pará:ˀdə;*	Er I parate?
go(es)	*ta:ˀr*	tager
place	*sdɛð*	Sted
away	*a sdɛ́ð*	af Sted
We're leaving in five minutes.	*vì tar a sdɛ́ð ɔm fɛ́mˀ minúdər;*	Vi tager af Sted om fem Minutter.
Don't forget to bring your coat along, Tom.	*tɔ́mˀ, glɛ́mˀ ég ɔ ta dɛ̀rəs frágə mɛ́;*	Tom, glem ikke at tage Deres Frakke med.
It can get pretty cold here in the evening.	*de ka gɔ́d blí:ə kɔ́lˀd hɛ́:ˀr ɔm áfdənən;*	Det kan godt blive koldt her om Aftenen.

Peter (as they drive off)		
Where shall we go?	*vɔ́:ˀr sga vi ta hɛ́nˀ?*	Hvor skal vi tage hen?
Mr. Andersen		
drive	*kø:ər*	køre
up	*ɔp*	op
along	*laŋˀs*	langs
the shore *or* coast	*køsdən*	Kysten
the sound	*sónˀəð*	Sundet
Let's drive up along the shore and look at the sound.	*la əs kǿ:ər ɔ́b láŋˀs køsdən ɔ sé:ˀ pɔ: sónˀəð;*	Lad os køre op langs Kysten at se paa Sundet.
through	*gɛ́nˀəm*	gennem
the country	*lánˀəð*	Landet
Then we can come home through the country.	*sɔ́ ka vi jo: kǿ:ər jɛ́mˀ gɛ́nˀəm lánˀəð;*	Saa kan vi jo køre hjem gennem Landet.
Mrs. Andersen		
Yes, that's a good idea.	*já dé sýns jɛ vi sgál.*	Ja, det synes jeg, vi skal.
It's a beautiful evening.	*dé ɛ en dájli áfdən;*	Det er en dejlig Aften.
gas	*bɛnsí:ˀn*	Benzin
Have you got enough gas in the car, Christian?	*har du nɔ́g bɛnsí:ˀn pɔ: vɔ́γˀnən krésijan.*	Har du nok Benzin paa Vognen, Kristian?
Mr. Andersen		
I don't know.	*dé vé:ˀ jɛ fɔrɛ́sdən ɛ́gə.*	Det ved jeg forresten ikke.

(He looks at the gas gage.)

gas station *or* gas pump	*bɛnsɩ:ʔntàŋʔk*	Benzintank
No, I guess I haven't—tell me when you see a gas station.	*nájʔ dé tró:ʔr jɛ égə, sɔ si: tél, nɔr i sé:ʔr en bɛnsɩ:ʔntàŋʔk.*	Nej, det tror jeg ikke, saa sig til, naar I ser en Benzintank.
Tom		
over there	*dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vrə*	derovre
side	*sɩ:ðə*	Side
There's one right over there on the other side.	*já dɛ́r ər ɛ́:ʔn lɩ:ə dɛrɔ̀vrə pɔ: dɛn ánən sɩ:ðə.*	Der er en lige derovre paa den anden Side.
Mr. Andersen		
No, I don't want to go over there.	*nájʔ dɛ́:ʔr ve jɛ égə ɔ̀vʔər.*	Nej, der vil jeg ikke over.
Can't you try and find one on this side?	*ka i égə prǿ:və ɔ fénə ɛ́:ʔn pɔ: dɛ́nə sɩ:ðə;*	Kan I ikke prøve at finde en paa denne Side?

(They finally find one on the right side of the street and drive in.)

The man		
Yes, sir?	*já hɛ́r.*	Ja, Herr!
Mr. Andersen		
liter *or* liters (*a little over a quart*)	*lɩdər*	Liter
Let me have twenty liters.	*la mə fɔ́:ʔ tý:və lɩdər.*	Lad mig faa tyve Liter.
How much is it?	*vɔr máəð ɛr dé?*	Hvor meget er det?

The man		
Five crowns and forty, please.	*dé blíər fɛ́mʔ kró:nər ɔ fœ́rə ták.*	Det bliver fem Kroner og fyrre, Tak.
Tom (as they start off again)		
fast	*hórdit*	hurtigt
How fast can you drive here?	*vɔr hórdi mɔ: man kǿ:ər hɛ́:ʔr?*	Hvor hurtigt maa man køre her?
Peter		
kilometer *or* kilometers (5/8 *of a mile*)	*kilomé:ʔdər*	Kilometer
per hour	*i tí:mən*	i Timen
You're never supposed to go over sixty kilometers an hour, and here you can only go thirty.	*man mɔ: áldri kǿ:ər ɔ́vʔər trés kilomé:ʔdər i tí:mən, mɛn hɛ́:ʔr mɔ: man kón kǿ:ər trɛ́ðvə;*	Man maa aldrig køre over tres Kilometer i Timen, men her maa man kun køre tredive.
interest(s)	*entrəsé:ʔər*	interesserer
That doesn't make any difference to my father, though.	*dé entrəsé:ʔər nu égə mi:n fá:r;*	Det interesserer nu ikke min Far.
He goes as fast as he pleases.	*hán kǿ:ʔr[1] sɔ hórdi de pásər hám.*	Han kører saa hurtigt, det passer ham.
Mrs. Andersen		
husband	*manʔ*	Mand
Yes, my husband always drives very fast.	*já mi:n mánʔ kǿ:ər[1] álʔtiðʔ máəð hórdit.*	Ja, min Mand kører altid meget hurtigt.
Can't you slow down a little, Christian?	*ka du ég kǿ:ər led láŋsɔmʔərə kréstjan.*	Kan du ikke køre lidt langsommere, Kristian?

---

[1] The present form of this verb is either *kǿ:ər* or *kø:ʔr.*

Peter		
listen!	*hø:ˀr*	hør!
look out!	*pas pɔ́:ˀ*	pas paa!
for heaven's sakes	*dɔɣ*	dog
Father! For heaven's sakes, look out!	*hø:ˀr fá:r, pas dɔɣ pɔ́:ˀ!*	Hør Far, pas dog paa!
were on the point of *or* were about to	*var lí:ə véð at*	var lige ved at
run down	*kø:ər né:ˀð*	køre ned
You almost ran that man down.	*dɛ́r var du lí:ə ve ɔ kø:ər dɛ́nˀ mánˀ né:ˀð.*	Der var du lige ved at køre den Mand ned.
Mrs. Andersen (rather upset)		
Why don't you let Peter drive?	*já vɔ́rfɔr lar du ɛ́g pé:ˀdər kø:ər?*	Ja, hvorfor lader du ikke Peter køre?
Mr. Andersen		
Peter!	*pé:ˀdər;*	Peter!
speech	*tá:lə*	Tale
That's out of the question.	*ɛ́gə tá:lə ɔ́mˀ.*	Ikke Tale om!
Why should he drive?	*vɔ́rfɔr sgu hán kø:ər?*	Hvorfor skulde han køre?
Mrs. Andersen		
driver's license	*kø:ərkɔ̀rt*	Kørekort
Do you have your license with you?	*har du did kø:ərkɔ̀rd mɛ́ daj;*	Har du dit Kørekort med dig?
Mr. Andersen		
My license?	*mid kø:ərkɔ̀rt;*	Mit Kørekort?

(He feels in his pocket.)

completely	*he:ˀlt*	helt
Oh no, I forgot all about it.	*ɔ́: nájˀ, dé ar jɛ hé:ˀld glɛ́mˀt.*	Aah nej, det har jeg helt glemt.
lie(s)	*légər*	ligger
It's (lying) at home on the table.	*dé légər jɛ́mə pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	Det ligger hjemme paa Bordet.
Peter		
Then it's a good thing I have mine.	*sɔ́ ɛr de jo: gɔ́d a jɛ́ har míd mɛ́ð.*	Saa er det jo godt, at jeg har mit med.
Mrs. Andersen		
hear	*hø:ər*	hører
Do you hear what he says, Christian?	*hø:ər du va han síər kréstjan.*	Hører du, hvad han siger, Kristian?
Mr. Andersen		
What?	*va bəhá:ˀr;*	Hvad behager?
Mrs. Andersen		
his (own)	*sit*	sit
Peter says he has *his* license with him.	*pé:ˀdər síər a hán ar síd kø:rəkɔ̀rd mɛ́ð.*	Peter siger, at han har sit Kørekort med.
Mr. Andersen		
the police	*polətí:ˀəð*	Politiet
stop	*sdánsə*	standse
Why should the police stop *me?*	*vɔ́rfɔr sgu polətí:ˀəð sdánsə máj?*	Hvorfor skulde Politiet standse mig?
Everything's O.K.	*dé gɔ́:ˀr jo: úðmɛrgəð;*	Det gaar jo udmærket.

the steering wheel	*rádəð*	Rattet
boy	*drɛŋˀ*	Dreng
But if you're so anxious to drive, then *take* the wheel, son.	*mɛn ves du sɔ gɛ́rnə ve kǿ:ər, sɔ́ tá:ˀ dɔɣ rádəð drɛ́ŋˀ.*	Men hvis du saa gerne vil køre, saa tag dog Rattet, Dreng.
	(A few minutes later a policeman stops them.)	
Policeman		
young	*óŋə*	unge
Can I see your license, young man?	*mɔ: jɛ sé:ˀ dɛ̀rɔs kǿ:ərkɔ̀rd óŋə*[1] *mánˀ.*	Maa jeg se Deres Kørekort, unge Mand?
Peter		
Yes, here you are.	*já vɛ́rs gó:ˀ.*	Ja, værsaagod.
Policeman		
Thanks.	*tak.*	Tak.
Nice evening, isn't it?	*dájli áfdən, égə;*	Dejlig Aften, ikke?
Peter and the others		
Yes.	*jo:ˀ.*	Jo.
Policeman		
ride	*kǿ:ərtù:ˀr*	Køretur
I see you have the family out for a little ride.	*dɪ́ har nɔ́g famɪ́:ˀljən ú:ðə pɔ: en lɪ́lə kǿ:ərtù:ˀr ka jɛ sé:.*	De har nok Familien ude paa en lille Køretur, kan jeg se.
bother	*uláj ˀliə*	ulejlige
But I won't bother you any more.	*mɛn jɛ́ sga ɛ́g ulájˀliə dɛm mɛ́:ər.*	Men jeg skal ikke ulejlige Dem mere.

---

[1] Notice that you use the ə-form of the adjective when you're addressing someone.

I know you want to be on your way.	*dí ve nɔ́g gɛ́rnə a sdɛ́ð.*	De vil nok gerne af Sted.
Mrs. Andersen (as they drive away)		
certainly	*sgam*	skam
I must say—that was certainly a close call!	*dé var sgám lí:ə te ǿlˀəð mɔ: jɛ sí:ə.*	Det var skam lige til Øllet, maa jeg sige!

2. Pronunciation Drill

The catch is one of the most characteristic features of the Danish language and one of the first things that people notice when they hear Danish spoken. Many people who learn to speak Danish don't bother to make the catches. It is perfectly true that Danes will understand you if you don't put them in, but they'll know at once that you're a foreigner and will think that you "speak with an accent". So, if you want not merely to make yourself understood but also to make your pronunciation as nearly like that of a Dane as possible, you should learn to make the catch and remember to put it in when you talk. If you do this, you will have gone a long way toward making your Danish really sound like Danish.

You will find that some Danish speakers make the catch much stronger than others do. It doesn't matter how strong or weak you make it as long as you get it in.

You will find, too, that a word which ordinarily has a catch may be pronounced without it when not strongly emphasized in the sentence. For example, the present form of the verb *tá:lə*, 'speak' is *tá:ˀlər*, with a catch, but in the sentence *tà:lər di dánˀsk;* where the verb is not emphasized, the catch is often left out.

You may have noticed that when a word has a long vowel, the catch seems to come in the middle of that vowel or between it and the following consonant. But when a word has a short vowel, then the catch seems to come in the middle of or after the following consonant. Listen for this as your Guide reads the following words:

e:ˀn	een	one
enˀ	ind	in
sgɔ:ˀl	Skaal	*drinking toast*
tɔlˀ	tolv	twelve

mi:ˀn	min	my
vanˀ	Vand	water
ta:ˀl	tal!	speak!
halˀ	halv	half
pɛ:ˀn	pæn	nice
dɛnˀ	den	that, it

Now repeat the following sentences after the Guide, being sure that you put in the catches just as he does.

jɛ hɔ́:bər jɛ fɔ́:ˀr en gó:ˀ plás i tɔ́:ˀɣəð.	Jeg haaber, jeg faar en god Plads i Toget.	I hope I get a good seat on the train.
jɛ vé:ˀ égə bəsdɛ́mˀd vɔrnɔ́:ˀr lý:ntɔ̀:ˀɣəð gɔ́:ˀr.	Jeg ved ikke bestemt, hvornaar Lyntoget gaar.	I don't know exactly when the express leaves.
de ɛ álˀtìðˀ entrəsánˀd ɔ sé:ˀ nɔ́:əð nýt.	Det er altid interessant at se noget nyt.	It's always interesting to see something new.
hans teləfó:ˀnnɔ̀mˀər ɛr bý:ˀən tó:ˀ ɔ fí:ˀrs, ní:ˀ ɔ halfɛ́mˀs.	Hans Telefonnummer er Byen 8299.	His telephone number is Byen 8299.
ve di égə bəsǿ̸:ˀɣə mi:n vɛ́n hánˀs dɛr bó:ˀr i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr;	Vil De ikke besøge min Ven Hans, der bor i Aalborg?	Don't you want to go and see my friend Hans who lives in Aalborg?
tú:ˀərn te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr tó:ˀ kon ni:tí:ˀ tí:mər.	Turen til Aalborg tog kun ni-ti Timer.	The trip to Aalborg only took nine or ten hours.
dɛr var kɔ́lˀd sɔm í:ˀs i tɔ́:ˀɣəð i gɔ́:ˀr.	Der var koldt som Is i Toget i Gaar.	It was as cold as ice on the train yesterday.

3. Hints on Spelling

1. Here is the regular Danish spelling for the various endings you have learned about:

Function	*Pronunciation*	*Spelling*
the-form of en-nouns	*-ən, -n*	**-en, -n**
	Example: **Isen,** [*í:ˀsən*], 'the ice cream' **Timen,** [*tí:mən*], 'the hour'	
the-form of et-nouns	*-əð/-ət, -ð/-t*	**-et, -t**
	Example: **Navnet,** [*návˀnəð*], 'the name'	
plural of nouns	*-ə*	**-e**
	Example: **Huse,** [*hú:sə*], 'houses'	
	-ər, -r	**-er, -r**
	Example: **Klasser,** [*klásər*], 'classes'	
plural the-form of nouns	*-nə, -ənə*	**-ne, -ene**
	Example: **Husene,** [*hú:sənə*], 'the houses'	
t-form of adjectives	*-t/-d*	**-t**
	Example: **varmt,** [*varˀmt*], 'warm'	
ə-form of adjectives	*-ə*	**-e**
	Example: **varme,** [*vármə*], 'warm'	

Function	*Pronunciation*	*Spelling*
present form of verbs	*-r* Example: **taler,** [*tá:ʔlər*], 'speak, speaks'	**-r**
past form of regular verbs	*-də* Example: **talte,** [*tá:ldə*], 'spoke'	**-te**
	-ðə, -əðə Example: **passede,** [*pásəðə*], 'suited, fit'	**-de, -ede**
participles of verbs	*-t/-d* (after a consonant) Example: **talt,** [*ta:ʔlt*], 'spoken'	**-t**
	-ð/-t, -əð/-ət (after a vowel) Example: **passet,** [*pásəð*], 'suited, fit'	**-t, -et**

2. If a noun ends in a short vowel followed by the letters *p*, *t*, *k*, *b*, *g*, *m*, *n*, or *r*, those letters are written double when the endings of the the-form, the plural, and the plural the-form are added:

Glas, Glasset, Glassene	*glas, glásəð, glásənə*	glass
Par, Parret, Parrene	*par, párʔəð, párənə*	pair
Kam, Kammen, Kamme, Kammene	*kamʔ, kámʔən, kámə, kámənə*	comb

3. The short sounds [*e*], [*o*] and [*ø*] each have two different spellings.

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
e	e, i
o	o, u
ø	ø, y

Here are the examples you've had so far:

en	*en*	a, an
tres	*tres*	sixty
Telefon	*teləfó:ˀn*	telephone
til	*tel/te*	to
vil	*vel/ve*	will
hos	*hos*	with
mon	*mon*	I wonder
Biograf	*biográ:ˀf*	movie
Tivoli	*tívoli*	Tivoli
kun	*kon*	only
Nummer, Numre	*nómˀər, nómrə*	number numbers
Telefonnummer	*teləfó:ˀnnòmˀər*	telephone number
truffet	*tróf əð*	met
Øl	*øl*	beer
Bøf	*bøf*	beef
København[1]	*købənháv ˀn*	Copenhagen

---

[1] You will find examples of the [*ø*]-sound spelled with the letter *y* in Unit 15.

4. The long and short [ɛ]-sounds are both spelled with two different letters:

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
ɛ:	æ, e
ɛ	e, æ

You will find that the long [ɛ:] is more often spelled with the letter *æ*, the short [ɛ] more often with the letter *e*.

Here are the examples you have had so far.

Sæbe	*sɛ́:bə*	soap
Sæbehus	*sɛ́:bəhù:ˀs*	'soap house'
blæse	*blɛ́:sə*	blow
pæn	*pɛ:ˀn*	nice
her	*hɛ:ˀr/hər*	here
herfra	*hɛ́:ˀrfrà*	from here
hertil	*hɛ́:ˀrtèl*	here
der	*dɛ:ˀr/dɛr/dər*	there
derfra	*dɛ́:ˀrfrà*	from there
dertil	*dɛ́:ˀrtèl*	there
Tjener	*tjɛ́:nər*	waiter
Ven	*vɛn*	friend
men	*mɛn*	but
den	*dɛnˀ, dɛn*	that, it, the
hen, henne	*hɛnˀ, hɛ́nə*	there
fem	*fɛmˀ*	five
Dem	*dɛm*	you

dem	*dɛm*	them
er	*ɛr/ər*	am, is, are
Herr, Hr.	*hɛr*	Mr., sir
der	*dɛr*	who, which, that
jer	*jɛr*	you
jeres	*jɛ́rəs*	your, yours
Deres	*dɛ́rəs*	your, yours
deres	*dɛ́rəs*	their, theirs
glemme, glemte, glemt[1]	*glɛ́mə, glɛ́mdə, glɛmʔt*	forget
denne	*dɛ́nə*	this
eller	*ɛ́lər*	or
ellers	*ɛ́lʔərs*	else, otherwise
hellere	*hɛ́lərə*	rather
gerne	*gɛ́rnə*	gladly
gennem	*gɛ́nʔəm*	through
Farvel	*farvɛ́l*	good-by
Hotel	*hotɛ́lʔ*	hotel
Adresse	*adrɛ́sə*	address
Renseri	*rɛnsəríːʔ*	cleaner
Jensen	*jɛ́nsən*	Jensen
desværre	*desvɛ́rə*	unfortunately

---

[1] When the basic form of a verb has a double consonant before the *e*, one of those consonants is dropped when the endings *-te* and *-t* are added.

5. The [*ŋ*]-sound is spelled with the letters *ng* except when it comes before the [*k*]-sound or the [*g*]-sound; then the combination [*ŋk*] or [*ŋg*] is spelled with the letters *nk*. (For examples of *nk* see Unit 15.) Below are examples of the spelling *ng*.

mange	*máŋə*	many
lang	*laŋʔ*	long
langs	*laŋʔs*	along
Ting	*teŋʔ*	thing
ingen	*éŋən*	not any
ringe	*réŋə*	call, ring
Dreng	*drɛŋʔ*	boy
længe	*lɛ́ŋə*	long
ung	*oŋʔ*	young
Kylling	*kýleŋ*	chicken

6. We have explained in the *Hints on Pronunciation* that in everyday speech after a long vowel a Danish speaker pronounces [*ər*], but not [*rə*]. In regular Danish spelling, however, some of these [*ər*] sequences are spelled *re* while others are spelled *er*. If the word in question is the basic form, the past form, or the participle of a verb, the spelling will always be *re*, as in the following examples:

høre	*hǿ:ər*	hear, listen
køre	*kǿ:ər*	drive
være, været	*vɛ́:ər, vɛ́:ərð*	be, been
barbere, barberede, barberet	*barbé:ʔər, barbé:ʔərðə, barbé:ʔərð*	shave, shaved

In the case of other words, however, you just have to learn whether the spelling is *er* or *re*. The following examples all have *re:*

mere	*mɛ́:ər*	more
fire	*fí:ər*	four
Øre	*ǿ:ər*	Øre
Værelse	*vɛ́:ərlsə*	room
Køretur	*kǿ:ərtù:ˀr*	ride
Dyrehaven	*dý:ərhà:vən*	Dyrehaven (name of park)

In the case of nouns ending in a long vowel followed by *r*, like [*barbɛ́:ˀr*], you know that the the-form is pronounced [*barbɛ́:ˀərn*], with the *ə* of the ending *-ən* added before the [*r*] rather than after it. In the regular spelling, however, the *-en* is added after the *r: Barberen.*

You will find, too, that in some cases a sequence [*ər*] in the pronunciation will be spelled *rer;* for instance,

Fører	*fǿ:ər*	leader
Barberer	*barbɛ́:ˀər*	barbers
hører[1]	*hǿ:ər*	hear, hears

7. Here are five more new words from this Unit that you can read easily:

I	*í*	you
sin	*sí:ˀn*	his, her, hers
Tale	*tá:lə*	speech
krone[2]	*kró:nə*	crown (verb)
Sne[2]	*sne:ˀ*	snow (noun)

---

[1] Here and in the present form of all other verbs whose basic form ends in [*ər*].

[2] See *Word Study*, page 374.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study (Individual Study)

1. Words like *jɛmʔ*, *jɛ́mə*, etc.

Go through these sentences, paying special attention to the words in heavy type.

sɔ́ ka vi jo: kø̀:ər **jɛ́mʔ** *gɛ́nʔəm lánʔəð;*	Saa kan vi jo køre hjem gennem Landet.	Then we can come home through the country.
dé légər **jɛ́mə** *pɔ: bó:ʔərð.*	Det ligger hjemme paa Bordet.	It's at home on the table.
hán sga flø̀də **ú:ʔð** *i mɔ́rən.*	Han skal flytte ud i Morgen.	He's going to move out tomorrow.
jɛ́ var **ú:ðə** *ɔ sé:ʔ pɔ: ed vɛ́:ərlsə i gɔ́:ʔr.*	Jeg var ude at se paa et Værelse i Gaar.	I was out looking at a room yesterday.
jɛ réŋəðə ɛ̀fdər en tágsa, ɔ dɛn hɔ́lʔər nɔg **né: ðə** *ɔ vɛ́ndər pɔ́: maj.*	Jeg ringede efter en Taxa, og den holder nok nede og venter paa mig.	I called a taxi and it's probably down there waiting for me.
mɛn jɛ́ kɔ̀mər **né:ʔð** *pɔ: pərɔ́ŋʔən ɔ sìər farvɛ́l té dəm.*	Men jeg kommer ned paa Perronen og siger Farvel til Dem.	But I'm coming down to the train to say good-by to you.

In Danish there is a small group of words like *jɛmʔ* and *jɛ́mə*, *u:ʔð* and *ú:ðə*, *ne:ʔð* and *né:ðə*, which have a basic form ending in a consonant and another form with *ə* added. Here are the two forms of all those you know:

Basic form			*ə-form*		
jɛmʔ	hjem	home	**jɛ́mə**	hjemme	at home
u:ʔð	ud	out	**ú:ðə**	ude	out
ne:ʔð	ned	down	**né:ðə**	nede	down

Basic form			*ə-form*		
ɔp	op	up	**ɔ́bə**	oppe	up
enˀ	ind	in	**énə**	inde	in
hɛnˀ	hen	there	**hɛ́nə**	henne	there
ɔ́vˀər	over	over	**ɔ́vrə**	ovre	over
hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər	herover	over here	**hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə**	herovre	over here
dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər	derover	over there	**dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə**	derovre	over there

Notice:

1. that the ə-forms have no catch even when the basic forms do. In *hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə* and *dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə* the catch in the first part is kept, but the catch in the second part, in *-ɔ̀vrə*, is left out.
2. that the *p* of *ɔp* changes to a *b* when the *ə* is added.
3. that the *ə* between the *v* and the *r* of *ɔ́vˀər* is dropped out in the ə-form *ɔ́vrə*.
4. that, with the exception of *jɛmˀ*, *jɛ́mə*, both forms have the same English equivalents.

Go back to the sentence examples at the beginning of this comment and notice how the two forms are used. The basic form, as you can see, is used when the sentence involves movement to the place or in the direction indicated by one of the words in question. The sentences with *jɛmˀ* and *ne:ˀð* speak of someone "coming home" and "coming down" and the sentence with *u:ˀð* speaks of someone "moving out". The ə-form, on the other hand, is used when the sentence doesn't involve such movement. The sentence with *jɛ́mə* speaks of something "lying at home", the sentence with *ú:ðə* speaks of someone "having been out", and the sentence with *né:ðə* speaks of something "stopping and waiting".

Here are some more sentences showing how the two forms are used:

nú mɔ: jɛ **jɛ́mˀ.**	Nu maa jeg hjem.	I have to go home now.
han vɛ́ndər pɔ́: maj **jɛ́mə.**	Han venter paa mig hjemme.	He's waiting for me at home.
vi ka kǿ:ər **ú:ˀð** *láŋˀs sónˀəð.*	Vi kan køre ud langs Sundet.	We can drive out along the sound.
di bó:ˀr **ú:ðə** *pɔ: lánˀəð.*	De bor ude paa Landet.	They live out in the country.
jɛ́ kɔ̀mər **né:ˀð** *ɔ siər farvɛ́l.*	Jeg kommer ned og siger Farvel.	I'm coming down to say good-by.
vɔ́ɣˀnən hɔ́lˀər **né:ðə** *pɔ: gá:ðən.*	Vognen holder nede paa Gaden.	The car's parked down on the street.
la əs kǿ:ər **ɔ́b** *láŋˀs kǿsdən.*	Lad os køre op langs Kysten.	Let's drive up along the coast.
dé légər **ɔ́bə** *pɔ: mid vɛ́:ərlsə.*	Det ligger oppe paa mit Værelse.	It's up in my room.
jɛ sga **énˀ** *te bý:ˀən.*	Jeg skal ind til Byen.	I'm going in town.
hún bó:ˀr **énə** *i bý:ˀən.*	Hun bor inde i Byen.	She lives in town.
vɔ́:ˀr sga di **hɛ́nˀ?**	Hvor skal De hen?	Where are you going?
kófərdən sdɔ́:ˀr **hɛ́nə** *i jœ́rnəð.*	Kufferten staar henne i Hjørnet.	The suitcase is standing there in the corner.
kɔm **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər** *néls.*	Kom herover, Niels.	Come over here, Niels.
dər légər é:ˀn **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə** *pɔ: dɛ́nə sí:ðə a gá:ðən.*	Der ligger en herovre paa denne Side af Gaden.	There's one over here on this side of the street.
kɔ́m, la əs gɔ: **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər.**	Kom lad os gaa derover.	Come on, let's go over there.
de ɛ **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə** *i dɛ́nˀ býgneŋ.*	Det er derovre i den Bygning.	It's over there in that building.

Notice in these sentences that you have the basic form with verbs like *kǿ:ər*, 'drive', *kɔ́mə*, 'come', *gɔ:ˀ*, 'go', etc. which involve movement and with the auxiliaries *mɔ:ˀ* and *sgalˀ* when the verb of movement is left out. And you have the ə-form with verbs like *vέndə*, 'wait', *bo:ˀ*, 'live', *hɔ́lə*, 'be parked', *légə*, 'lie', *sdɔ:ˀ*, 'stand', etc., which don't involve movement.

Generally in English we don't make any such difference as this. We say "up" or "down" whether the sentence talks about movement or not. But we sometimes do make a difference in the case of "home" which is used like *jέmˀ* and "at home" which is used like *jέmə*. Compare, for instance, "I'm going home" and either "I'll be home all day", or "I'll be *at* home all day".

2. More about pronouns

A

Look at the word *i* in this sentence.

εr **i** *pará:ˀdə;*	Er I parate?	Are you ready?

Here is another Danish pronoun that corresponds to English "you". *i* is the plural form going with *du;* that is, you use *i* when you're talking to two or more children or people you know very well. The object form going with *i* is *jεr* and the form corresponding to "your", "yours" is *jérəs.*

B

Look at the words in heavy type in these sentences. The first one is taken from the *Basic Sentences;* the second is new, but you know all the words.

pé:ˀdər síər a hán ar **síd** *kø:ərkɔ̀rd mέð.*	Peter siger, at han har sit Kørekort med.	Peter says he has his license with him.
har di sé:ˀd **hans** *ný:ə frágə;*	Har De set hans nye Frakke?	Have you seen his new coat?

Both *sit* and *hans* correspond to English "his" but they work somewhat differently. The first has three forms, *si:ˀn* used with en-nouns, *sit* used with et-nouns and *sí:nə* used with plural nouns, while the second, as you know, has only the one form *hans* which is used with all nouns.

In addition, *sí:ʔn* means either "his own" or "her own" and always refers to the same person that the subject of the sentence does. In the first sentence, for example, *hán*, the subject of the second part of the sentence, and *sít* both refer to the same person, namely "Peter".

háns, on the other hand, means only "his", never "her", and refers to someone other than the subject of the sentence. In the second example, for instance, *di*, the subject, and *hans* refer to two different people. Here are some more examples:

hán há:ʔr si:n frágə pɔ́:ʔ.	Han har sin Frakke paa.	He has his (own) coat on.
hán há:ʔr hans frágə pɔ́:ʔ.	Han har hans Frakke paa.	He has his (someone else's) coat on.
har kírsdən sέnʔd sid snávsətɔ̀j pɔ: vasgərí:ʔəð;	Har Kirsten sendt sit Snavsetøj paa Vaskeriet?	Has Kirsten sent her (own) clothes to the laundry?
har kírsdən sέnʔd hènəs snávsətɔ̀j pɔ: vasgərí:ʔəð;	Har Kirsten sendt hendes Snavsetøj paa Vaskeriet?	Has Kirsten sent her (someone else's) clothes to the laundry?

3. Verb forms used to talk about the future

Observe these sentences:

di sga égə vέndə pɔ: máj, fɔr jɛ tró:ʔr de **tá:ʔr** *led tí:ʔð;*	De skal ikke vente paa mig, for jeg tror, det tager lidt Tid.	Don't wait for me, because I think it'll take a little time.
tror di vi **fɔr** *gɔ́d vέ:ʔr i mɔ́rən;*	Tror De, vi faar godt Vejr i Morgen?	Do you think we'll have good weather tomorrow?
dé **fɔr** *vi égə tí:ʔð te i mɔ́rən;*	Det faar vi ikke Tid til i Morgen.	We won't have time for that tomorrow.
dέ:ʔr **mɔ:** *vi hέn en ánən dá:ʔ.*	Der maa vi hen en anden Dag.	We'll have to go there some other day.

The verbs in heavy type in these sentences, as you see, all talk about something that will happen in the future. But notice that in Danish you use the present form of the verb, although in the English equivalents you have "will" or "won't" plus another verb. English and Danish often correspond quite closely in the way they talk about things in the future. You know that English frequently uses a verb phrase made up of "will" or "shall" or "is (are) going to" plus another verb, and you saw in Unit 8 that Danish has similar verb phrases made up of *vel* or *sgal?* plus the basic form of another verb. Moreover, both English and Danish often use present forms to talk about future events if the rest of the sentence makes it clear that the future is meant. For example:

vi **tar** *a sdɛ́ð ɔm fɛ́mˀ minúdər;*	Vi tager af Sted om fem Minutter.	We're leaving in five minutes.

But sometimes, as in the four sentences given above, the two languages differ and Danish has the present form, while English has a verb phrase with "will".

4. Danish equivalents of "am leaving", "are going", etc.

jɛ **rájˀsər** *fœ́rsd pɔ: lœ́rda mɔ́rən klɔ̀gən ɔ́:də.*	Jeg rejser først paa Lørdag Morgen Klokken otte.	I'm not leaving till Saturday morning at eight o'clock.
ràjsər *di pɔ: fœ́rsdə klásə;*	Rejser De paa første Klasse?	Are you going first class?
jɛ **glɛ́:ðər** *mə máəð te tú:ˀərn.*	Jeg glæder mig meget til Turen.	I'm looking forward to the trip very much.
vi tar *a sdɛ́ð ɔm fɛ́mˀ minúdər;*	Vi tager af Sted om fem Minutter.	We're leaving in five minutes.

Danish, as you see, doesn't have anything corresponding to English verb phrases made up of a form of the verb "be" plus another verb ending in "ing". Where we use such a verb phrase in English, in Danish you often use just the regular verb forms you've learned about—the present or the past or a phrase with *ha:ˀr*, as the case may be (You'll learn about other Danish equivalents of such English verb phrases in Unit 21.)

5. Nouns and verbs that are the same

ve di **tá:lə** *led láŋsɔmʔərə.*	Vil De tale lidt langsommere?	Will you speak a little more slowly?
égə **tá:lə** *ɔ́mʔ.*	Ikke Tale om.	That's out of the question.

You learned early in this course the verb *tá:lə* meaning "speak", and in this unit you had the noun *tá:lə*, 'speech', used in the expression *égə tá:lə ɔ́mʔ*. Just as English has words like "walk", "drink", "wish", etc. which are both nouns and verbs, so Danish has words like *tá:lə* which are both nouns and verbs. Below are the most common ones you've had so far. You'll find that you've learned most of them as verbs.

Verbs	*Nouns*
rájsə (rejse) travel	*rájsə*, *-n*, *-r* (Rejse, -n, -r) trip
árbajʔdə (arbejde) work	*árbajʔdə*, *-ð*, *-r* (Arbejde, -t, -r) work
mø̂:ðə (møde) meet	*mø̂:ðə*, *-ð*, *-r* (Møde, -t, -r) meeting
sne:ʔ (sne) snow	*sne:ʔ*, *-ən* (Sne, -en) snow
págə, -*ðə* (pakke, -de) pack	*págə* (Pakke) package
kró:nə, -*ðə* (krone, -de) crown	*kró:nə* (Krone) crown

6. Compounds

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit:

noun + noun

bɛnsí:ʔntàŋʔk (Benzintank) gas pump, gas station = **bɛnsí:ʔn** (Benzin) gas + **taŋʔk** (Tank) tank

verb + noun

kø̂:ərkɔ̀rt (Kørekort) driver's license = **kø̂:ər** (køre) drive + **kɔrt** (Kort) card
kø̂:ərtù:ʔr (Køretur) ride = **kø̂:ər** (køre) drive + **tu:ʔr** (Tur) trip

7. Irregular verbs

The only new irregular verbs in this unit are *légə* (ligge) 'lie', which has the past form *lɔ:ʔ* (laa) and the participle *légəð* (ligget) and *ta:ʔ/ta* (tage) 'go', which has the past form *to:ʔ* (tog) and the participle *tá:əð* (taget).

However, you should also notice the verbs ***kø:ər***, ***hø:ər*** and *entrəsé:ʔər*. Because of the Danish habit of pronouncing *ər* but not *rə* after a long vowel, the forms cited here are both basic forms and present forms, as is true of all verbs whose basic forms end in *ər* (except, of course, *vέ:ər*). In very careful, precise speech, the basic forms of these verbs would be ***kø:rə***, ***hø:rə***, and *entrəsé:ʔrə*. The present form of the verb ***kø:ər*** is also sometimes pronounced ***kø:ʔr***.

8. An irregular noun

The noun ***manʔ*** meaning "man" and "husband" has the irregular plural form ***mεnʔ***.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

Change the English words given in parentheses into Danish and then practice reading the complete sentences aloud.

1. *jɛ glɛ́:ðər maj te ɔ kɔ̀mə* (home) *i dá:ˀ.*
2. *jɛ sga* (out) *te méda i áfdən.*
3. *jɛ ràjsər* (up) *te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr ɔm ed par dá:ə.*
4. *hán bó:ˀr* (down) *pɔ: gɔ́:ˀərn.*
5. *vɔr tíðli ɛr dú* (up) *ɔm mɔ́rənən?*
6. *ka du sé:ˀ, han sdɔ́:ˀr lí:ə* (over there) *pɔ: jǽrnəð.*
7. *tɔ́:ˀɣəð kɔ̀mər* (in) *pɔ: pərɔ́ŋˀən klɔ̀gən fí:ər.*
8. *jɛ ve máɛð gɛ́rnə ràjsə* (over) *te amé:ˀrika.*
9. *jɛ sga vɛ̀:ər* (home) *hé:lə áfdənən.*
10. *vi var* (out) *te méda i gɔ́:ˀr.*
11. *jɛ ràjsər* (down) *pɔ: lánˀəð i mɔ́rən.*
12. *jɛ sga lí:ə* (in) *ɔ hɛ́ndə mi:n frágə i kupé:ˀən.*
13. *jɛ sga mø̂:ðə ham* (there—use *hɛnˀ* or *hɛ́nə*) *pɔ: hotɛ́lˀəð klɔ̀gən tré:ˀ.*
14. *har du tí:ˀð te ɔ kɔ̀mə* (over here) *i áfdən;*
15. *jɛ har áldri vɛ̀:ərð i amé:ˀrika, mɛn jɛ vèlə gɛ́rne* (over there).
16. *pé:ˀdər var* (over here) *i gɔ́:ˀr.*
17. *han sdɔ́:ˀr lí:ə* (over there) *i vɛ́ndu:ˀəð.*
18. *jɛ haʳ lí:ə vɛ̀:ərð* (up) *ɔ tá:lə mɛ dɛ̀rəs mánˀ.*
19. *han vɛ́ndər pɔ: jɛr* (down) *pɔ: gá:ðən.*
20. *kɔm* (over here) *pɔ: dɛ́nə sí:ðə a gá:ðən.*

Jeg glæder mig til at komme (*home*) i Dag.
Jeg skal (*out*) til Middag i Aften.
Jeg rejser (*up*) til Aalborg om et Par Dage.
Han bor (*down*) paa Gaarden.
Hvor tidligt er du (*up*) om Morgenen?
Kan du se, han staar lige (*over there*) paa Hjørnet.
Toget kommer (*in*) paa Perronen Klokken fire.
Jeg vil meget gerne rejse (*over*) til Amerika.
Jeg skal være (*home*) hele Aftenen.
Vi var (*out*) til Middag i Gaar.
Jeg rejser (*down*) paa Landet i Morgen.
Jeg skal lige (*in*) at hente min Frakke i Kupéen.
Jeg skal møde ham (*there*) paa Hotellet Klokken tre.

Har du Tid til at komme (*over here*) i Aften?
Jeg har aldrig været i Amerika, men jeg vilde gerne (over there).
Peter var (*over here*) i Gaar.
Han staar lige (*over there*) i Vinduet.
Jeg har lige været (*up*) at tale med Deres Mand.
Han venter paa jer (*down*) paa Gaden.
Kom (*over here*) paa denne Side af Gaden.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give the answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Mrs. Andersen suggests going for a ride.*

fru ánərsən	*Fru Andersen*
pé:ˀdər ɔ tɔ́mˀ, há:ˀr i égə lø̸sd te ɔ kø̸:ər en tú:ˀr ɔ́b láŋˀs kø̸sdən i áfdən.	Peter og Tom, har I ikke Lyst til at køre en Tur op langs Kysten i Aften?
pé:ˀdər	*Peter*
jó:ˀ ták; vɛ́:ˀərð ɛr jo: dájlit;	Jo Tak. Vejret er jo dejligt.
vi ka ta ɔ́b láŋˀs sónˀəð ɔ sé:ˀ só:ˀlən gɔ: né:ˀð;	Vi kan tage op langs Sundet og se Solen gaa ned.

2. *As they drive along.*

fru ánərsən	*Fru Andersen*
kréstjan, vɔr kø̸:ər du dɔγ hórdit.	Kristian, hvor kører du dog hurtigt.
du mɔ: pàsə pɔ́:ˀ a polətí:ˀəð égə ɔ́sə sdánsər ɔs i dá:ˀ;	Du maa passe paa, at Politiet ikke ogsaa standser os i Dag.

pé:ʔdər

já fá:r, dé mɔ́:ʔ du sgám.

ɔ jε sga égə glémə a du var lí:ə vé ɔ kø:ər en mánʔ né:ʔð i gɔ́:ʔr.

hεr ánərsən

hø:ʔr mi:n dréŋʔ, mɔ: jε sbœ́rγə, εr de dáj ὲlər di:n mó:r dεr kø:ər dénə vɔ́γʔn.

pé:ʔdər

de ε dáj fá:r, mεn dú kø:ər fɔr hórdit.

du mɔ: égə kø:ər mé:ər εn tréðvə kilomé:ʔdər hέ:ʔr.

mɔ: jáj égə tá:ʔ rádəð;

hεr ánərsən

nájʔ dé mɔ́:ʔ du égə.

i dá:ʔ εr de máj dεr kø:ər.

jέ εr fɔrέsdən máəð súlʔdən;

har i løsd te ɔ fɔ́:ʔ led smœ́rəbrø:ʔð;

tɔmʔ

já dé ka di tró:ʔ.

pé:ʔdər

jε tró:ʔr vi kɔ́mʔər te ed gɔ́d hotέlʔ ɔm ed par minúdər.

Peter

Ja Far, det maa du skam.

Og jeg skal ikke glemme, at du var lige ved at køre en Mand ned i Gaar.

Herr Andersen

Hør min Dreng! Maa jeg spørge, er det dig eller din Mor, der kører denne Vogn?

Peter

Det er dig, Far, men du kører for hurtigt.

Du maa ikke køre mere end tredive Kilometer her.

Maa jeg ikke tage Rattet?

Herr Andersen

Nej, det maa du ikke.

I Dag er det mig, der kører.

Jeg er forresten meget sulten.

Har I Lyst til at faa lidt Smørrebrød?

Tom

Ja, det kan De tro.

Peter

Jeg tror, vi kommer til et godt Hotel om et Par Minutter.

tɔ́mˀ, ha:ˀr dú en sigərɛ́t;	Tom, har du en Cigaret?
jɛ ar hé:ˀld glɛ́mˀd mí:nə;	Jeg har helt glemt mine.
tɔmˀ	*Tom*
já jɛ́ há:ˀr en págə hɛ́:ˀr. vɛ́rs gó:ˀ.	Ja, jeg har en Pakke her. Værsaagod.
3. *In the hotel.*	
hɛr ánərsən	*Herr Andersen*
naj sé:ˀ, dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə há:ˀr vi jo: hé:lə famì:ljən lársən;	Nej se, derovre har vi jo hele Familien Larsen.
fru ánərsən	*Fru Andersen*
nájˀ, vɔr hýgəlit;	Nej, hvor hyggeligt.
godá:ˀ dɔ̀gdər lársən ɔ fru lársən.	Goddag Dr. Larsen og Fru Larsen.
vɔrdán ha:ˀr dí də éŋə?	Hvordan har De det Inge?
jɛ ar égə sé:ˀd dəm lɛ́ŋə;	Jeg har ikke set Dem længe.
éŋə	*Inge*
tág, jɛ́ há:ˀr də úðmɛrgəð;	Tak, jeg har det udmærket.
dí ɛr nɔg ɔ́sə ú:ðə pɔ: en lílə kǿ:ərtù:ˀr.	De er nok ogsaa ude paa en lille Køretur!
hɛr ánərsən	*Herr Andersen*
já dé ɛ́r vi.	Ja, det er vi.
tjɛ́:nər, har di ed bó:ˀr te fí:ər;	Tjener! Har De et Bord til fire?
tjɛ́:nər	*Tjener*
nájˀ vi há:ˀr desvɛ́rə kon dɛ́də bó:ˀr te tó:ˀ;	Nej, vi har desværre kun dette Bord til to.

dɔ̀gdər lársən

já mɛn ve di égə kɔ́mə hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər te vɔ́rəs bó:ˀr;

ví ka gɔ́d vè:ər sýv ˀ hɛ́:ˀr.

4. *As they finish eating.*

hɛr ánərsən

klɔ́gən ɛ máŋə;

jɛ́ tró:ˀr vi mɔ: sé:ˀ ɔ kɔ́mə jɛ́mˀ.

fru ánərsən

vɔ́rfɔr égə la di óŋə mɛ́nəsgər fɔ́:ˀ vɔ́rəs vɔ́ɣˀn?

pé:ˀdər ka jo: kǿ:ər dən, hán har síd kǿ:ərkɔ̀rd mɛ́.

dɔ̀gdər lársən

já sɔ́ ka ví jo: kǿ:ər dɛ́m ɔ dèrəs mánˀ jɛ́mˀ.

ví ər pará:ˀdə, nɔr de pásər dɛ́m ɔ ta a sdɛ́ð;

hɛr ánərsən

vi tar jɛ́mˀ gɛ́nˀəm lánˀəð pé:ˀdər, ves de ka entrəsé:ˀər jɛr.

pé:ˀdər

já úðmɛrgəð fá:r.

farvɛ́l ɔ pɔ: gɛ́nsỳnˀ.

Dr. Larsen

Ja, men vil De ikke komme herover til vores Bord?

Vi kan godt være syv her.

Herr Andersen

Klokken er mange.

Jeg tror, vi maa se at komme hjem.

Fru Andersen

Hvorfor ikke lade de unge Mennesker faa vores Vogn.

Peter kan jo køre den, han har sit Kørekort med.

Dr. Larsen

Ja, saa kan vi jo køre Dem og Deres Mand hjem.

Vi er parate, naar det passer Dem at tage af Sted.

Herr Andersen

Vi tager hjem gennem Landet, Peter, hvis det kan interessere Jer.

Peter

Ja udmærket Far.

Farvel og paa Gensyn.

dɔ̀gdər lársən	*Dr. Larsen*
jɛ ar fɔrɛ̀sdən kón ed par lìdər bɛnsí:ˀn pɔ: vɔ́ɣˀnən.	Jeg har forresten kun et Par Liter Benzin paa Vognen.
ves jɛ kɔ̀mər jɛ́mˀ pɔ: dé, blìər de kon lí:ə te ǿlˀəð, sɔ vi mɔ: hɛ́lərə fénə en bɛnsí:ˀntàŋˀk;	Hvis jeg kommer hjem paa det, bliver det kun lige til Øllet, saa vi maa hellere finde en Benzintank.
fru lársən	*Fru Larsen*
jɛ vé:ˀ dɛr légər é:ˀn pɔ: dɛ́nə sí:ðə.	Jeg ved, der ligger en paa denne Side.
jɛ sga sì:ə tél, nɔr jɛ sé:ˀr dən;	Jeg skal sige til, naar jeg ser den.

5. *Outside the Andersens' farm.*

fru ánərsən	*Fru Andersen*
har di ẹ́gə lǿsd te ɔ kɔ́mə mɛ ɔs énˀ;	Har De ikke Lyst til at komme med os ind?
dɔ̀gdər lársən	*Dr. Larsen*
nɛ́: ẹ́gə tá:lə ɔ́mˀ.	Næh, ikke Tale om.
ví ve sgam égə ulájˀliə dəm pɔ: dɛ́nə tí:ˀð a dá:ˀən.	Vi vil skam ikke ulejlige Dem paa denne Tid af Dagen.
jɛ́ sga ɔ́sə tíðli ɔ́b i mɔ́rən, fɔr jɛ há:ˀr sɔ máəð ɔ gǽ:ər.	Jeg skal ogsaa tidligt op i Morgen, for jeg har saa meget at gøre.
fru lársən	*Fru Larsen*
iá sɔ́ síər vi gonád fru ánərsən, ɔ tág fɔr i áfdən;	Ja, saa siger vi Godnat Fru Andersen, og Tak for i Aften.
fru ánərsən	*Fru Andersen*
já gonád ɔ tág fɔr kǿ:ərtù:ˀərn.	Ja, Godnat og Tak for Køreturen.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and a policeman

A policeman stops you as you're driving along and asks for your name and address. You tell him. He asks to see your driver's license. You can't find it anywhere so you tell him you think you forgot it. It must be at home on the table in your room. He asks if you don't know that you have to have a driver's license with you. You say yes, you know, but unfortunately you don't have it. Just then you find it and give it to him. He tells you that you're driving too fast, you can't go over thirty miles an hour here. He says he won't bother you any longer, but you must drive more slowly and don't forget your license. You tell him you won't.

2. You and a girl

You call up a girl you know and ask her if she doesn't want to go for a little ride. She says she'd like to. You ask her what time she can be ready. She says she'll be ready in half an hour. You call for her, say hello, how are you, etc. You ask her where she'd like to go. She suggests driving up along the shore and looking at the sound. As you drive, you and she talk about this and that—the weather, the "light nights" that are so pleasant, her family, your family, etc., etc.

3. You and your aunt

You're taking a rather fussy aunt out for a ride. She complains about everything—she doesn't like to drive through the country, she'd rather drive down along the shore. She asks if you have enough gas. Even though you say you do, she thinks you'd better get some more and says she'll tell you when she sees a good gas station. She sees one but it's on the other side (of the street) and she thinks you don't want to drive over there. She sees another on this side, but she thinks it's too small. She wants to know how fast you're driving. When you tell her you're going forty kilometers an hour, she says that's too fast. The police will stop you, if you drive so fast. She shouts at you to look out, you almost ran a man down, even though you saw him all the time and didn't come anywhere near hitting him. Finally you loose your temper. You ask her why she doesn't drive herself, and tell her to take the wheel. She says that's out of the question, she can't drive, she doesn't have her license with her.

Finder List

árbajˀdə, -n, -r (Arbejde, -n, -r) work

bɛnsí:ˀn, -ən (Benzin, -en) gas

bɛnsí:ˀntàŋˀk, -ən, bɛnsí:ˀntàŋgə (Benzintank, -en, -e) gas station, gas pump

dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀wˀər/dɛrɔ̀wˀər, dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀wrə/dɛrɔ̀wrə (derover, derovre) over there

drɛŋˀ, -ən, drɛ́ŋə (Dreng, -en, -e) boy

dɔɣ (dog) for heaven's sakes

entrəsé:ˀər, -ðə (interessere, -de) interest. The present form is the same as the basic form.

eŋə (Inge) *girl's name*

gɛ́nˀəm (gennem) through

he:ˀlt (helt) completely

hórdi (hurtig) fast

hǿ:ər, hǿ:rdə (høre, -te) hear, listen. The present form is the same as the basic form.

i (I) you

jɛr (jer) you

jɛ́rəs (jeres) your, yours

kilomé:ˀdər, -ən, — (Kilometer, -en, —) kilometer (⅝ *of a mile*)

kró:nə, -ðə (krone, -de) crown

kǿ:ər, kǿ:rdə (køre, -te) drive. The present form is either *kǿ:ər* or *kø:ˀr*.

kǿ:ər né:ˀð (køre ned) run down

kǿ:ərkɔ̀rt, -əð, — (Kørekort, -et, —) driver's license

kǿ:ərtù:ˀr, kǿ:ərtù:ˀərn, kǿ:ərtù:ər (Køretur, -en, -e) ride, drive

køst, -ən, -ər (Kyst, -en, -er) coast, shore

lanˀ, -əð, lánə (Land, -et, -e) country

laŋˀs (langs) along

légə, lɔ:ˀ, légəð (ligge, laa, ligget) lie

lídər, -ən, — (Liter, -en, —) liter (*1.06 quarts*)

lí:ə : vɛ̀:ər lí:ə véð at/vɛ̀:ər lí:ə vé ɔ (være lige ved at) be on the point of, be about to

vɛ̀:ər lí:ə te ǿlˀəð (være lige til Øllet) be a close call

manˀ, -ən, mɛnˀ (Mand, -en, Mænd) husband, man

mǿ:ðə, -ð, -r (Møde, -t, -r) meeting

oŋˀ (ung) young

págə, -ðə (pakke, -de) pack

pará:ˀt, -ə (parat, -e) ready

pàsə (-ðə) pɔ́:ˀ (passe) (-de) (paa) look out (for) *poləti:ˀ, -əð* (Politi, -et) police

rájsə, -n, -r (Rejse, -n, -r) trip

rat, -əð, — (Rat, -tet, —) steering wheel

sdánsə, -ðə (standse, -de) stop

sdɛð, sdɛ́ðˀəð, sdɛ́:ðə (Sted, -et, -e) place
a sdɛ́ð (af Sted) away

sgam (skam) certainly

sí:ðə, -n, -r (Side, -n, -r) side

si:ˀn, sit, sí:nə (sin, sit, sine) his (own), her (own)

sonˀ, -əð, — (Sund, -et, —) sound (*body of water*)

sne:ˀ, -ən (Sne, -en) snow

ta:ˀ/ta, to:ˀ, tá:əð (tage, tog, taget) go

tá:lə, -n, -r (Tale, -n, -r) speech
égə tá:lə ɔ́mˀ. (Ikke Tale om.) That's out of the question.

taŋˀk, -ən, táŋgə (Tank, -en, -e) tank

uláj ˀliə, -ðə (ulejlige, -de) bother, disturb

ɔp, ɔ́bə (op, oppe) up

UNIT 15

KEEPING COOL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Inge Larsen and Tom are on their way out to the beach on bicycles.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Inge		
have you?	*vɛl*	vel
bathing things (*includes bathing suit, towel, bathrobe, etc.*)	*báːðətɔ̀j*	Badetøj
You haven't forgotten your bathing suit, have you, Tom?	*nú ar dí vɛl égə glɛ́mʔd dɛ̀rəs báːðətɔ̀j tɔ́mʔ.*	Nu har De vel ikke glemt Deres Badetøj, Tom?
Tom		
of course	*sɛfølǝli*	selvfølgelig
No, of course not.	*nájʔ sɛfølǝli har jɛ égə dé.*	Nej, selvfølgelig har jeg ikke det.
What are you going so fast for?	*mɛn vɔ́rfɔr køːʔr di sɔ hórdi?*	Men hvorfor kører De saa hurtigt?

Inge		
I like to go fast.	*fɔrdí:ˀ jɛ gɔ́d ka lí:ˀ ɔ kǿ:ər hórdi.*	Fordi jeg godt kan lide at køre hurtigt.
swim	*svœ́mə*	svømme
Aren't you looking forward to going swimming?	*glɛ̀:ðər dí dəm égə ɔ́sə te ɔ kɔ̀mə ú:ˀð ɔ svœ́mə.*	Glæder De Dem ikke ogsaa til at komme ud at svømme?
Tom		
really	*vírgli*	virkelig
Yes. Can you really swim?	*jó:ˀ mɛn ka dí vírgli svœ́mə;*	Jo, men kan De virkelig svømme?
I didn't think you could.	*dé tró:ðə jɛ égə.*	Det troede jeg ikke.
Inge		
You'll see all right!	*jó: dé sga di nɔ́g fɔ́:ˀ ɔ sé:ˀ.*	Jo, det skal De nok faa at se.
Tom		
Where do you think we can get some sandwiches?	*vɔ́:ˀr tror di vi ka fɔ́:ˀ nɔ̀:əð smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð?*	Hvor tror De, vi kan faa noget Smørrebrød?
Inge		
We can get them at Raadhuspladsen.	*dé ka vi fɔ́:ˀ pɔ: rɔ́ðhusplàsən.*	Det kan vi faa paa Raadhuspladsen.
Tom		
since go bicycling	*sí:ðən* *síglə*	siden cykle
You know, it's an awful long time since I've been out bicycling.	*jɛ ve sí:ə dəm, de ɛ máəð lέŋə sí:ðən jɛ ar vɛ̀:ərð ú:ðə ɔ síglə;*	Jeg vil sige Dem, det er meget længe siden, jeg har været ude at cykle.

far	*laŋʔt*	langt
Is it far?	*ɛr de láŋʔt;*	Er det langt?
Inge		
No, it isn't.	*nájʔ dé ɛ́r də égə.*	Nej, det er det ikke.
We can eat lunch at Dyrehaven and afterwards. . .	*ví ka sbì:sə frógɔsd i dý:ərhà:vən ɔ bá:ʔɛ̀fdər*	Vi kan spise Frokost i Dyrehaven, og bagefter. . .
Tom		
What? Did you say Dyrehaven?	*va bəhá:ʔr; sá:ə di dý:ərhà:vən.*	Hvad behager? Sagde De Dyrehaven?
I can't bike that far!	*sɔ́ láŋʔd ka jɛ égə síglə.*	Saa langt kan jeg ikke cykle.
Inge		
Of course you can.	*ɔ́ sɛfǿləli ká di dé.*	Aah, selvfølgelig kan De det.
the beach	*sdránʔən*	Stranden
from there	*dərfrá:ʔ*	derfra
The beach is only five minutes from there.	*sdránʔən ɛr kon fɛ́mʔ minúdər dərfrá:ʔ.*	Stranden er kun fem Minutter derfra.
Look at the sound!	*sɛ́:ʔ sónʔəð;*	Se Sundet!
Isn't it lovely!	*vɔr sɛ́:ʔr de dájlid ú:ʔð.*	Hvor ser det dejligt ud!
Tom		
moment	*ɔ́jəblèk*	Øjeblik
Yes, but wait a minute!	*já men vɛ́nʔd lí: ed ɔ́jəblèk.*	Ja, men vent lige et Øjeblik!

wrong	*i vájʔən*	i Vejen
bicycle	*sígəl*	Cykel
I think there's something wrong with my bicycle.	*jɛ tró:ʔr dɛr ər nɔ́:əð i vájʔən mɛ mi:n sígəl.*	Jeg tror, der er noget i Vejen med min Cykel.
Inge		
What?	*va síər di;*	Hvad siger De?
punctured	*poŋté:ʔərð*	punkteret
You don't have a flat, do you?	*di ɛ vɛl égə poŋté:ʔərð.*	De er vel ikke punkteret?
Tom (looking around at his back tire)		
I'll see.	*nú sga jɛ sé:ʔ.*	Nu skal jeg se.
flat	*fla:ʔð*	flad
Oh, yes I do—it's flat as a pancake.	*ɔ́ jó:ʔ dé ér jɛ. dɛn ɛ hé:ʔld flá:ʔð.*	Aah jo, det er jeg, den er helt flad.
Inge		
Hey, look out for that man!	*hø:ʔr, pas dɔɣ pɔ: dénʔ mánʔ;*	Hør, pas dog paa den Mand!
Tom (still looking around at his back tire)		
What did you say?	*va bəhá:ʔr;*	Hvad behager?
The man (as Tom just misses hitting him)		
What the devil!	*vá pɔ́gər;*	Hvad Pokker!
look in front of you *or* look where you're going	*sé:ʔ dɔm fɔ́r*	se Dem for

Can't you look where you're going, man?	*ka di égə sé:ʔ dəm fɔ̃r mánʔ;*	Kan De ikke se Dem for, Mand?
eyes	*ɔ̃jnə*	Øjne
the head	*hó:ðəð*	Hovedet
What have you got eyes in your head for?	*vá ar di ɔ̃jnə i hó:ðəð fɔ̃r?*	Hvad har De Øjne i Hovedet for?
after	*ɛ́fdər*	efter
fixed *or* repaired	*gjord i sdánʔ*	gjort i Stand
bicycle repairman	*sígəlsmèð*	Cykelsmed
After having the bicycle fixed by a bicycle repairman, they go out to Dyrehaven where they eat lunch.	*ɛ́fdər a ha fɔ̀:əð síglən gjord i sdánʔ hos en sígəlsmèð, kø̀:ər di ú:ʔð i dý:ərhà:vən vɔ̃:ʔr di sbì:sər frógɔst.*	Efter at have faaet Cykelen gjort i Stand hos en Cykelsmed, kører de ud i Dyrehaven, hvor de spiser Frokost.
Then they go down to the beach.	*bá:ʔɛ̀fdər kø̀:ər di né:ʔð te sdránʔən.*	Bagefter kører de ned til Stranden.
Inge		
My, but I'll be glad to get in the water.	*vɔ̃r jɛ glɛ́:ðər maj te ɔ kɔ̃mə i vánʔəð.*	Hvor jeg glæder mig til at komme i Vandet.
Won't you?	*gær di égə;*	Gør De ikke?
Tom		
I don't know.	*dé vé:ʔ jɛ égə.*	Det ved jeg ikke.
probably	*vest*	vist
It's probably much too cold for me.	*dé ɛ vésd alʔd fɔr kɔ̃lʔd fɔr máj.*	Det er vist alt for koldt for mig.

grand *or* wonderful	*hέrlit*	herligt
But it's wonderful here in the sun.	*mεn de ε hέrlid hέ:ʔr i só:ʔlən.*	Men det er herligt her i Solen.
before	*énən*	inden
We'll be good and brown by the time we get home.	*vi blìər nɔ́g gɔ́d brú:nə énən vi kɔ́mʔər jέmʔ.*	Vi bliver nok godt brune, inden vi kommer hjem.
Inge		
Yes, I hope so.	*dé ve jε ɔ́sə hɔ́:bə;*	Det vil jeg ogsaa haabe.
Come on, let's go in now.	*mεn kɔ́m, la əs gɔ: ɩ:ʔ[1] nú;*	Men kom, lad os gaa i nu.
Tom		
Do you really think we should?	*syns di vɩ́rgli;*	Synes De virkelig?
yet *or* still	*enú*	endnu
Don't you think we ought to wait a little longer?	*syns di égə vi sgu vέndə léd enú;*	Synes De ikke, vi skulde vente lidt endnu?
Inge		
more excuses	*flé:ər* *ónsgỳlʔneŋʔər*	flere Undskyldninger
Now, don't try to find any more excuses.	*nέ: nú mɔ: di ég fénə pɔ: flé:ər ónsgỳlʔneŋʔər.*	Næh, nu maa De ikke finde paa flere Undskyldninger.
Come on.	*kɔ́m nú;*	Kom nu.
Tom (as they come out of the water)		
That was pretty cold!	*dé var fɔrέsdən kɔ́lʔt.*	Det var forresten koldt.

---

[1] Another pronunciation of *ɩ*, 'in'.

I'm certainly not going in any more today.	*jɛ sga bəsdɛ́mˀd égə mé:ˀr*[1] *i vánˀəð i dá:ˀ.*	Jeg skal bestemt ikke mere i Vandet i Dag.
Inge		
fortunate *or* lucky	*hɛ́ldiə*	heldige
Yes, it was cold, but I must say we've been very lucky with the weather.	*já dé var kɔ́lˀd, mɛn jɛ mɔ: sí:ə vi ar vɛ̀:ərð máəð hɛ́ldiə mɛ vɛ́:ˀərð;*	Ja, det var koldt, men jeg maa sige, vi har været meget heldige med Vejret.
Tom		
Yes, we have.	*jó dé há:ˀr vi.*	Ja, det har vi.
wish	*ønsgə*	ønske
I wish we could take the S-train home.	*jɛ vel ønsgə vi ku tá:ˀ ɛ́stɔ̀:ˀɣəð jɛ́mˀ;*	Jeg vilde ønske, vi kunde tage S-Toget hjem.
think(s) of	*tɛ́ŋgər pɔ́:ˀ*	tænker paa
out here	*hɛrú:ˀð*	herud
ever	*nó:ən sénə*	nogen Sinde
When I think of the trip out here, I don't see how I'm ever going to get home.	*nɔr jɛ tɛ́ŋgər pɔ: tú:ˀərn hərú:ˀð, vé:ˀ jɛ égə vɔrdán jɛ nó:ən sénə sga kɔ́mə jɛ́mˀ.*	Naar jeg tænker paa Turen herud, ved jeg ikke, hvordan jeg nogen Sinde skal komme hjem.
Inge		
nothing	*éŋəntèŋˀ*	ingenting
Oh, that was nothing to speak of.	*ɔ́ dé var éŋəntèŋˀ ɔ tá:lə ɔ́mˀ.*	Aah, det var ingenting at tale om.

---

[1] Another pronunciation of *mé:ər*, 'more'.

around *or* about	*ɔmkréŋˀ*	omkring
It's only about ten kilometers from Raadhuspladsen.	*de ɛ jo: kón ɔmkréŋˀ tí:ˀ kilomé:ˀdər fra rɔ́ðhusplàsən.*	Det er jo kun omkring ti Kilometer fra Raadhuspladsen.
happen	*sge:ˀr*	sker
the way	*vájˀən*	Vejen
less	*méndrə*	mindre
If nothing happens on the way home, we can do it in less than two hours.	*ves dər égə sgé:ˀr nɔ́:əð pɔ: vájˀən jɛ́mˀ, ka vi gœ́:ər de pɔ: méndrə ɛn tó:ˀ tí:mər.*	Hvis der ikke sker noget paa Vejen hjem, kan vi gøre det paa mindre end to timer.
Tom		
mean	*mé:ˀnər*	mener
You must mean *you* can do it in less than two hours.	*di mé:ˀnər vésd a dí ka gœ́:ər de pɔ: méndrə ɛn tó:ˀ tí:mər.*	De mener vist, at De kan gøre det paa mindre end to Timer.
either	*hɛ́lˀər*	heller
But I can't, and I won't either.	*mɛn dé ka jáj égə, ɔ jɛ vél hɛ́lˀər égə.*	Men det kan jeg ikke, og jeg vil heller ikke.
Inge		
Well then, I guess we'd better leave now.	*já sɔ́ mɔ: vi vɛl hɛ́lərə ta a sdɛ́ð nú.*	Ja, saa maa vi vel hellere tage af Sted nu.
I'd like to be home for dinner.	*jɛ́ ve gɛ́rnə vɛ̀:ər jɛ́mə te méda.*	Jeg vil gerne være hjemme til Middag.

2. Pronunciation Drill

By this time you are probably quite used to making the Danish *r*-sound way back in your throat, but if you are now working without a Guide, be sure that you don't slip into making American *r*'s instead of Danish ones.

Here are two additional points to note about the Danish *r*-sound:

1. The Danish *r* is generally voiced—you can hear a buzzing sound if you put your hands over your ears as you say it. However, we mentioned in Unit 9 that when it comes right after *p*, *t*, or *k*, the *r* is voiceless—you hear no buzzing sound if you put your hands over your ears. The *r* is also voiceless, as you may have noticed, after a short vowel at the end of a word when that word is said alone or at the end of a sentence. Pay special attention to the voiceless *r*'s in the following words:

prǿ:və	prøve	try
tro:ʔ	tro	think, believe
kréstjan	Kristian	Christian
par	Par	pair
fɔr	for	for, too
ɛr	er	am, is, are

2. In Units 3 and 8 we pointed out that an *r*-sound coming before or after the vowels *a* and *ɔ* causes those two vowels to have a pronunciation slightly different from their ordinary one; the *a* is said like the *a* in *father* and the *ɔ* like the *o*-sound in *for*. You may have noticed that the *r*-sound also has an effect on certain other of the Danish vowels. When the vowels *e*, *ɛ*, *ø*, or *æ* come before or after an *r*, the *e* sounds a little like *ɛ*, and the *ɛ* a little like *a* (as in *hat*); the *ø* sounds a little like *æ* and the *æ* a little like *ɔ*.

Compare the two slightly different pronounciations in the following pairs of words:

drégə	drikke	drink
égə	ikke	not
desvɛ́rə	desværre	unfortunately
vɛ́nər	Venner	friends
rɛt	ret	quite
mɛt	mæt	full
brǿðrə	Brødre	brothers
mǿðrə	Mødre	mothers
grœ́nsà:γər	Grønsager	vegetables
sœ́nər	Sønner	sons
fœrst	først	first
sœn	Søn	son

The same thing is true of the corresponding long vowels when they come after but not before *r*; for example:

tre:ʔ	tre	three
te:ʔ	Te	tea
prø:və	prøve	try
mø:ðə	møde	meet

3. Hints on Spelling

1. The sounds [*p*], [*t*] and [*k*] are spelled with the letters *p*, *t* and *k*, as we said in Unit 13. You know, of course, that any word having [*p*], [*t*] or [*k*] at the end is pronounced with [*b*], [*d*] or [*g*] when said in the middle of a sentence. You know, too, that in the case of nouns and adjectives ending in [*p*], [*t*] or [*k*], these sounds are changed to [*b*], [*d*] or [*g*] when the endings [*ən*], [*əð*], [*ə*] and [*ər*] are added. In such cases the spelling does not change.

There are a few Danish words in which the [*p*]-sound at the end is spelled with the letter *b*, and a very few words in which the [*t*]-sound and the [*k*]-sound at the end are spelled with the letters *d* and *g*. We will call your attention to those having *d* or *g* at the end in succeeding units.

The spelling of the sounds [*b*], [*d*] and [*g*] is a little more complicated. They are spelled:

1. with the letters *b*, *d* and *g* at the beginning of a word, occasionally in the middle of a word, and rarely at the end of a word when that word is said in the middle of a sentence. (When the word is said alone or at the end of a sentence, of course, the *b*, *d* and *g* correspond to [*p*], [*t*] and [*k*], as mentioned in the paragraph above.
2. with the letters *p*, *t* and *k*
   (a) after *s*
   (b) at the end of a word when that word is said in the middle of a sentence
3. with the letters *p*, *t* and *k* or *pp*, *tt* and *kk* in the middle of a word.
4. occasionally with *bb*, *dd*, and *gg* in the middle of a word.

Here are the examples which you can read easily:

Flip, Flipper	*flep, flébər*	collar, collars
Slips	*slebs*	tie
sbise	*sbí:sə*	eat
klippe	*klébə*	cut
Suppe	*sóbə*	soup
mit	*mit*	my, mine
dit	*dit*	your, yours
sit	*sit*	his, her, hers
vist	*vest*	probably
et	*et*	a, an, one
set	*se:ʔt*	seen
ret	*rεt*	quite
Billet	*bilέt*	ticket
Returbillet	*rətú:ʔrbilὲt*	round-trip ticket
Dessert	*desέ:ʔrt*	dessert
Sæt	*sεt*	set
mæt, mætte-	*mεt, mέdə*	full
Ært	*εrʔt*	pea
Rat	*rat*	steering wheel
Nat, Nætter	*nat, nέdər*	night, nights

---

[1] Adjectives ending in a short vowel followed by one of the consonants listed in section 2 on page 362 double that consonant in the regular spelling when the *e* is added.

Salt	*salˀt*	salt
haft	*haft*	had
Salat	*salá:ˀt*	salad
parat	*pará:ˀt*	ready
gjort	*gjorˀt*	done
Kuffert	*kófərt*	suitcase
Minut	*minút*	minute
Lyst[1]	*løst*	wish, desire
Kyst[1]	*køst*	coast
efter	*ɛ́fdər*	after
Aften	*áfdən*	evening
Vinter, Vintre	*vénˀdər, vénˀdrə*	winter
fjorten	*fjórdən*	fourteen
femten	*fɛ́mˀdən*	fifteen
sulten	*súlˀdən*	hungry
hente	*hɛ́ndə*	pick up, get
vente	*vɛ́ndə*	wait
Kirsten	*kírsdən*	Kirsten
Mester, Mestre	*mɛ́sdər, mɛ́sdrə*	master
Peter	*pé:ˀdər*	Peter
Petersen	*pé:ˀdərsən*	Petersen
Kilometer	*kilomé:ˀdər*	kilometer

---

[1] Examples of [ø] spelled with the letter *y*. See page 363.

Liter	*lídər*	liter
venstre	*vénsdrə*	left
bestille, bestilte, bestilt	*bəsdélˀə, bəsdélˀdə, bəsdélˀt*	do, reserve
bestemt	*bəsdɛ́mˀt*	certainly
stor	*sdo:ˀr*	large
flytte	*flǿdə*	move
dette	*dɛ́də*	this
tretten	*trɛ́dən*	thirteen
sytten	*sø̀dən*	seventeen
atten	*ádən*	eighteen
nitten	*nédən*	nineteen
Datter, Døtre	*dádər, dø̀drə*	daughter, daughters
Nætter	*nɛ́dər*	nights
væk	*vɛk*	away
fik	*fek*	got, had
gik	*gik*	went
Blik	*blek*	glance
Tak	*tak*	thank you
drak	*drak*	drank
Fisk	*fesk*	fish
dansk	*danˀsk*	Danish
engelsk	*ɛ́ŋˀəlsk*	English
amerikansk	*àmərikáːˀnsk*	American

Danmark	*dánmark*	Denmark
Erik	*é:rik*	Eric
Tank[1]	*taŋˀk*	tank
seks	*sɛgs*	six
Frøken	*frø:ˀgən/frøgən*	miss, young lady
Kirke	*kírgə*	church
Agurkesalat	*agúrgəsalà:ˀt/ agórgəsalà:ˀt*	cucumber salad
veksle	*vɛ́gslə*	change
tænke[2]	*tɛ́ŋgə*	think
Enkeltværelse[2]	*ɛ́ŋˀgəldvɛ̀:ərlsə*	single room
Konduktør	*kondugtø:ˀr*	conductor
ske, skete, sket	*sge:ˀ, sgé:də, sge:ˀt*	happen
Sko	*sgo:ˀ*	shoe
skal	*sgalˀ/sga*	shall
skam	*sgam*	certainly
Skjorte	*sgjórdə*	shirt
ønske	*ønsgə*	wish
Maskine	*masgí:nə*	machine
Barbermaskine	*barbé:ˀrmasgì:nə*	razor
Menneske	*mɛ́nəsgə*	person, human being

---

[1] Example of [*ŋk*] spelled with the letters *nk*.

[2] Examples of [*ŋg*] spelled with the letters *nk*.

Vaskeri	*vasgərí:ʔ*	laundry
Pakke, pakke	*págə*	package, pack
Frakke	*frágə*	coat
Hakkebøf	*hágəbø̀f*	hamburg steak
Stykke	*sdǿgə*	piece
Stykket	*sdǿgəð*	apiece
ikke	*égə*	not
drikke, drukket	*drégə, drógəð*	drink, drunk
Drikkepenge	*drégəpɛ̀ŋə*	tip
Sukker	*sógər*	sugar
Slags	*slags*	kind
Bygning	*býgneŋ*	building
ligge, ligget	*légə, légəð*	lie, lain

2. Here are a few more new words from this unit that you can read easily:

mene	*mé:nə*	mean
flere	*flé:ər*	more
vel	*vɛl*	have you?
heller	*hɛ́lʔər*	either
ingenting	*éŋəntèŋʔ*	nothing
Inge	*éŋə*	Inge (*girl's name*)

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

1. Two-part sentences

Observe these sentences:

mɛn sá:ə fá:r/ vɔrnɔ́:ʔr han kɔ̀mər jɛ́mʔ i áfdən;	Men sagde Far, hvornaar han kommer hjem i Aften?	But did father say when he's coming home tonight?
jɛ ar áldri sé:ʔd ed vɛ́:ərlsə,/dɛr var sɔ́ lílə.	Jeg har aldrig set et Værelse, der var saa lille.	I've never seen a room that was so small.
nɔr hán kɔ́mʔər,/ ka vi gɔ: hɛ́nʔ ɔ sé:ʔ pɔ: ed paŋsjoná:ʔt;	Naar han kommer, kan vi gaa hen at se paa et Pensionat.	When he comes, we can go and look at a boarding house.
vi blìər nɔ́g gɔ́d brú:nə/ énən vi kɔ́mʔər jɛ́mʔ.	Vi bliver nok godt brune, inden vi kommer hjem.	We'll be good and brown by the time we get home.
nɔr jɛ tɛ́ŋgər pɔ: tú:ʔərn hərú:ʔð, /vé:ʔ jɛ ēgə/ vɔrdán jɛ nó:ən sénə sga kɔ́mə jɛ́mʔ.	Naar jeg tænker paa Turen herud, ved jeg ikke, hvordan jeg nogen Sinde skal komme hjem.	When I think of the trip out here, I don't see how I'm ever going to get home.

Notice that these sentences all have two or more parts separated here by a slanting line, and that each part contains a subject and a verb and sometimes an object. Look at the first sentence. In the first part, *fá:r* is the subject, the person doing the saying, and *sá:ə* is the verb. In the second part, *han* is the subject, the person doing the coming, and *kɔ̀mər* is the verb. Now look at the second sentence. In the first part *jɛ* is the subject, the person doing the seeing, *har sé:ʔd* is the verb phrase, and *ed vɛ́:ərlsə* is the object, the thing seen. In the second part, *dɛr* is the subject, since it refers to the thing that *was*, and *var* is the verb. Such parts of sentences which have subjects and verbs of their own are called **clauses.** Notice that the last sentence above is a three-part sentence with three clauses.

2. Difference between *nɔ:ˀr* and *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr*

1. **vɔrnɔ́:ˀr** *bəgǿnˀər biográ:ˀfən?*	Hvornaar begynder Biografen?	When does the movie begin?
2. *mɛn* **vɔrnɔ́:ˀr** *sga di flǿdə?*	Men hvornaar skal De flytte?	But when are you going to move?
3. *mɛn sá:ə fá:r* / **vɔrnɔ́:ˀr** *han kɔ̀mər jémˀ i áfdən;*	Men sagde Far, hvornaar han kommer hjem i Aften?	But did father say when he's coming home tonight?
4. *jɛ vé:ˀ égə* / **vɔrnɔ́:ˀr** *biográ:ˀfən bəgǿnˀər.*	Jeg ved ikke, hvornaar Biografen begynder.	I don't know when the movie begins.
5. **nɔr** *hán kɔ́mˀər, / ka vi gɔ: hɛ́nˀ ɔ sé:ˀ pɔ: ed paŋsjoná:ˀt;*	Naar han kommer, kan vi gaa hen at se paa et Pensionat.	When he comes, we can go and look at a boarding house.
6. *jɛ flǿdər,* / **nɔr** *bél fénˀər ed ɛ́ŋˀgəldvɛ̀:ərlsə.*	Jeg flytter, naar Bill finder et Enkeltværelse.	I'll move when Bill finds a single room.
7. *dé vé jɛ ɔ́sə,* / **nɔr** *jɛ fɔr tí:ˀð;*	Det vil jeg ogsaa, naar jeg faar Tid.	I want to when I have time.

Both *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr* and *nɔ:ˀr*, as you see, correspond to English "when", but they are always used differently.

Notice in the above sentences that *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr* is a word used in asking questions, a **question word**. It means "when" in the sense of "(at) what time". It is used both in simple questions, as in the first two examples above, and at the beginning of a clause in two-part sentences, either statements or questions, as in the third and fourth examples above.

Now notice that *nɔ:ˀr*, on the other hand, is not a question word. It means "when" in the sense of "at the time when". It is never used to ask a simple question, but *is* used at the beginning of a clause in two-part sentences, as in the last three examples above.

Notice the difference in meaning between *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr* and *nɔ:ˀr* in the fourth and fifth sentences where both are used at the beginning of a clause. The fourth really means "I don't know **(at) what time** the movie begins", and the fifth really means "**(At the time) when** he comes, we can go look at a boarding house." Remember—if you mean "when", "at what time", you use *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr*, but if you mean "at the time when", you use *nɔ:ˀr*.

3. Difference between *dɛr* and *sɔm*

jɛ ar áldri sé:ʔd ed vɛ́:ərlsə, / **dɛr** *var sɔ́ lílə.*	Jeg har aldrig set et Værelse, der var saa lille.	I've never seen a room that was so small.
fɔrdí:ʔ tɔ́mʔ sga flǿdə ú:ʔð te pé:ʔdərs famí:ʔljə, / **dɛr** *bó:ʔr pɔ: en gɔ́:ʔr lí:ə ú:ðənfɔr bý:ʔən.*	Fordi Tom skal flytte ud til Peters Familie, der bor paa en Gaard lige uden for Byen.	Because Tom's going to move out with Peter's family who live on a farm just outside town.
sɔ́:ʔ di nɔ́:əð / **dɛr** *var pɛ́:ʔnt;*	Saa De noget, der var pænt?	Did you see anything that was good?
há:ʔr di égə nó:n / **dɛr** *ər bíliərə;*	Har De ikke nogle, der er billigere?	Don't you have any that are cheaper?
jɛ há:ʔr kon dɛ́nʔ kófərd / **dɛr** *sdɔ́:ʔr dɛ́:ʔr i jœ́rnəð;*	Jeg har kun den Kuffert, der staar der i Hjørnet.	I only have that suitcase that's (standing) there in the corner.
jɛ há:ʔr en àmərikά:ʔnsg vɛ́n hɛ́:ʔr, / **sɔm** *gɛ́rnə ve sé:ʔ pɔ: ed vɛ́:ərlsə.*	Jeg har en amerikansk Ven her, som gerne vil se paa et Værelse.	I have an American friend here who'd like to look at a room.
jɛ́ há:ʔr en vɛ́n, / **sɔm** *bó:ʔr i amé:ʔrika.*	Jeg har en Ven, som bor i Amerika.	I have a friend who lives in America.
ɔ vi har égə di lý:sə nɛ́dər / **sɔm** *di ha:ʔr hɛ́:ʔr ɔm sɔ́mərən.*	Og vi har ikke de lyse Nætter, som De har her om Sommeren.	And we don't have the light nights that you have here in the summer.
nájʔ, mɛn jɛ ar bəsdélʔd en rətú:ʔrbilɛ̀d, / **sɔm** *jɛ sga hɛ́ndə i dá:ʔ.*	Nej, men jeg har bestilt en Returbillet, som jeg skal hente i Dag.	No, but I've ordered a round-trip ticket that I'm going to pick up today.

Look at the words in heavy type above. In these two-part sentences you can see that the words *dɛr* and *sɔm* really tie the two clauses together. They come at the beginning of and form part of the second clause and, at the same time, they refer back to words in the first clause. In the first sentence, for instance, *dɛr* is the first word of the second clause and it also refers back to *ed vɛ́:ərlsə* in the first clause.

Notice that both *dɛr* and *sɔm* correspond to either "who" or "that". In English sentences like these we use "who" and sometimes "that" to refer to people, and "that" and (more rarely) "which" to refer to things. Both Danish *sɔm* and *dɛr* work like English "that"; that is, they refer to both people and things.

In some Danish sentences you use either *dɛr* or *sɔm*, but in other sentences, you always use *sɔm*. Study the examples carefully and you will see when each is used. If you look at the first group of sentences, you will notice that *dɛr* is always the subject of the second clause. If you look at the second group of sentences, you will notice that *sɔm* is the subject of the second clause in the first two sentences and the object in the last two sentences.

So you see that you use either *sɔm* or *dɛr* as the subject of a clause. Danish speakers often prefer one to the other because it makes a sentence sound smoother to them, but either is really all right. As the object of a clause, however, you use only *sɔm*.

4. Difference between *sɔm* and *dɛr*, and *vɛmʔ*

mɛ́ **vɛ́mʔ?**	Med hvem?	Who with?
vɛ́mʔ *ɛ tɔ́mʔ smétʔ*	Hvem er Tom Smith?	Who's Tom Smith?
jɛ vé:ʔ égə **vɛ́mʔ** *han ɛ́r.*	Jeg ved ikke, hvem han er.	I don't know who he is.
jɛ́ há:ʔr en vɛ́n, **sɔm** *bó:ʔr i amé:ʔrika.*	Jeg har en Ven, som bor i Amerika.	I have a friend who lives in America.
fɔrdí:ʔ tɔ́mʔ sga flø̀də ú:ʔð te pé:ʔdərs famí:ʔljə, **dɛr** *bó:ʔr pɔ: en gɔ́:ʔr lí:ə ú:ðənfɔr bý:ʔən.*	Fordi Tom skal flytte ud til Peters Familie, der bor paa en Gaard lige uden for Byen.	Because Tom's going to move out with Peter's family, who live on a farm just outside town.

vɛmʔ, *sɔm* and *dɛr* all correspond in these sentences to English "who", but notice that *vɛmʔ*, on the one hand, and *sɔm* and *dɛr* on the other hand, are never used in the same way. The difference is like that between *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr* and *nɔ:ʔr* which you learned about in the second comment. *vɛmʔ* means "who" in the sense of "what person" or "what people" and is a question word, while *sɔm* and *dɛr* mean "who" in the sense of "the person who" and are not question words.

5. Two ways to say "either"

Look at the following sentence:

mɛn dé ka jáj égə, ɔ jɛ vél **hɛ́lˀər égə.**	Men det kan jeg ikke, og jeg vil heller ikke.	But I can't, and I won't either.

As you see, the word *hɛ́lˀər*, which is printed in heavy type in this sentence, corresponds to English "either". There is another Danish word, *ɛ́ndən* (enten) which also corresponds to "either". Notice how it is used in the following new sentences:

jɛ vé:ˀ égə vɛ́mˀ to: di:n sígəl, mɛn de var **ɛ́ndən** *kírsḍən* **ɛ́lər** *ánə.*	Jeg ved ikke, hvem tog din Cykel, men det var enten Kirsten eller Anne.	I don't know who took your bicycle, but it was either Kirsten or Anne.
ɛ́ndən *mɔ: du ta tɔ́:ˀɣəð te klámbənbɔ̀:ˀr* **ɛ́lər** *fɔ: néls te ɔ kǿ:ər daj dərtél.*	Enten maa du tage Toget til Klampenborg, eller faa Niels til at køre dig dertil.	You'll either have to take the train to Klambenborg or get Niels to drive you there.

If you compare these two sentences with the one above, you will see that *hɛ́lˀər* is used in combination with *égə - hɛ́lˀər égə*, 'not either', while *ɛ́ndən* is used in combination with *ɛ́lər - ɛ́ndən . . . ɛ́lər*, 'either . . . or'.

6. Special ways of saying things

A

nú ar dí **vɛl** *égə glɛ́mˀd dèrəs bá:ðətɔ̀j tɔ́mˀ.*	Nu har De vel ikke glemt Deres Badetøj, Tom?	You haven't forgotten your bathing suit, have you, Tom?
di ɛ **vɛl** *égə poŋté:ˀərð.*	De er vel ikke punkteret?	You don't have a flat, do you?
sɔ́ mɔ: vi **vɛl** *hɛ́lərə ta a sdɛ́ð nú.*	Saa maa vi vel hellere tage af Sted nu.	Well, then, I guess we'd better leave now.

hø:ʔr fá:r, pas **dɔɣ** *pɔ́:ʔ;*	Hør Far, pas dog paa!	Father, for heaven's sakes, look out!
hø:ʔr, pas **dɔɣ** *pɔ: dɛ́nʔ mánʔ;*	Hør, pas dog paa den Mand!	Hey, look out for that man!
mɛn ves du sɔ gɛ́rnə ve kø:ər, sɔ́ tá:ʔ **dɔɣ** *rádəð drɛ́ŋʔ.*	Men hvis du saa gerne vil køre, saa tag dog Rattet, Dreng.	But if you're so anxious to drive, then *take* the wheel, son.
jɛ há:ʔr **fɔrɛ́sdən** *no:n gó:ə vɛ́nər i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr.*	Jeg har forresten nogle gode Venner i Aalborg.	By the way, I have some good friends in Aalborg.
dé var **fɔrɛ́sdən** *kɔ́lʔt.*	Det var forresten koldt.	That was cold.
dé vé:ʔ jɛ **fɔrɛ́sdən** *égə.*	Det ved jeg forresten ikke.	I don't know.

Here are three more Danish words that give a special meaning to the whole sentence: *vɛl*, *dɔɣ* and *fɔrɛ́sdən*.

First look at the sentences with *vɛl* and notice that in the first two examples it serves to make the statements into questions, while in the third example it makes the statement less definite and is used roughly the way "I guess" is in English.

Now notice that *dɔɣ* in the second group of examples is used where in English we would use either an exclamation like "for heaven's sakes" or sometimes just a special tone of voice.

Finally, observe that *fɔrɛ́sdən* corresponds to English "by the way" in the first example and that it has much the same meaning in the second example, even though we probably wouldn't say "by the way" in English in the same situation. In the third example, which in the *Basic Sentences* is the answer to Mrs. Andersen's question, *har du nɔ́g bɛnsí:ʔn pɔ: vɔ́ɣʔnən kréstjan* the use of *fɔrɛ́sdən* makes the sentence mean "I don't know" in the sense of "I really haven't thought about it."

By now you have seen that there are quite a lot of Danish words like these that are used to give fine shades of meaning to a sentence, to indicate something about the way the speaker feels, to express uncertainty or enthusiasm or sarcasm. It's rather difficult for a foreigner to learn just how these words are used. You can see that it's impossible to give an exact English equivalent for most of them, since so often we do the same thing not by using a special word but by using a special tone of voice. As you go through the *Basic Sentences*, the *Listening In's* and the *What*

Would You Say exercises you should watch for all the words we have mentioned and will mention that are used in this way and pay special attention to them. Thus you will gradually become familiar with the exact shade of meaning which they give to a sentence.

B

dé ɛ vesd **álˀd fɔr kɔ́lˀd** *fɔr máj.*	Det er vist alt for koldt for mig.	It's probably much too cold for me.

Notice that the phrase *álˀd fɔr kɔ́lˀd* in the above sentence corresponds to English "much too cold". So *álˀd fɔr várˀmt* corresponds to "much too warm", *álˀd fɔr bílit* to "much too expensive", etc.

C

vɔr séːˀr de dájlid úːˀð.	Hvor ser det dejligt ud!	Isn't it lovely!
vɔ́r jɛ glɛ́ːðer maj te ɔ kɔ́mə i vánˀəð.	Hvor jeg glæder mig til at komme i Vandet!	My, but I'll be glad to get in the water!

You learned in Unit 9 that the Danish equivalent of "how" is generally *vɔrdán*, but that in phrases like *vɔr máəð*, *vɔr lɛ́ŋə*, etc., it is just *vɔr*. Notice now that in exclamations like those above it is also *vɔr*, not *vɔrdán*. English equivalents using the word "how"—"How lovely it looks!" and "How I'm looking forward to getting in the water!" are, of course, closer to the Danish but they sound a little affected and bookish. The Danish exclamations with *vɔr* are perfectly natural.

6. Compounds.

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit:

noun + noun

ɔ́jəblèk (Øjeblik) moment = **ɔ́jə** (Øje) eye + **blek** (Blik) glance
sígəlsmèð (Cykelsmed) bicycle repairman = **sígəl** (Cykel) 'bicycle' + **smeð** (Smed) blacksmith

verb + *noun*

bá:ðətɔ̀j (Badetøj) bathing things = **bá:ðə** (bade) bathe + **tɔj** (Tøj) clothing

7. An irregular noun

The noun *ɔ́jə* (Øje), 'eye' has the irregular plural form *ɔ́jnə* (Øjne), which you learned in this unit.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with *nɔ:ʔr, vɔrnɔ́:ʔr, vɛmʔ, dɛr* or *sɔm*, whichever fits in the particular sentence.

1. *la mɛ hǿ:ər ——— du kɔm jɛ́mʔ i gɔ́:ʔr.*	Lad mig høre, ——— du kom hjem i Gaar.
2. *jɛ vé:ʔ égə ——— han ɛ́r.*	Jeg ved ikke, ——— han er.
3. *mɔ:sgé:ʔ kɛ́nər du ham, ——— du sé:ʔr ham;*	Maaske kender du ham, ——— du ser ham.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Peter and Tom are visiting Bill, and Tom is telling them about his bicycle trip with Inge Larsen.

tɔmˀ	*Tom*
dé ve jɛ sí:ə dɑj bél, du sga áldri ta ú:ˀð pɔ: sígəl mɛ en dánˀsg pí:ə.	Det vil jeg sige dig Bill, du skal aldrig tage ud paa Cykel med en dansk Pige.
bel	*Bill*
dé har jɛ hélˀər égə téŋˀd pɔ́:ˀ.	Det har jeg heller ikke tænkt paa.
mɛn vɔ́rfɔr égəˀ	Men hvorfor ikke?
vá pɔ́gər ka dər sgé:ˀ?	Hvad Pokker kan der ske?
tɔmˀ	*Tom*
ɔ́:, di kø:ər sɔ hórdi sɔ hórdi.	Aah, de kører saa hurtigt saa hurtigt.
ɔ jɛ tró:ˀr áldri nó:ən sénə jɛ har kø:ˀrd sɔ láŋˀt.	Og jeg tror aldrig nogen Sinde, jeg har kørt saa langt.
sɔ́ poŋté:ˀərðə jɛ pɔ: vájˀən ú:ˀð, ɔ vi mɔ̀də fénə en sígəlsmèð sɔm feg síglən gjord i sdánˀ;	Saa punkterede jeg paa Vejen ud, og vi maatte finde en Cykelsmed, som fik Cykelen gjort i Stand.

nájʔ jɛ sga égə ú:ʔð pɔ: flé:ər kø̣:ərtù:ər a dɛ́nʔ slágs ka du tró:ʔ.	Nej, jeg skal ikke ud paa flere Køreture af den Slags, kan du tro.
jɛ var ɔ́sə lí:ə ve ɔ kø̣:ər en mánʔ né:ʔð;	Jeg var ogsaa lige ved at køre en Mand ned.
pé:ʔdər	*Peter*
kun du égə sé:ʔ daj fɔ́r;	Kunde du ikke se dig for?
du ar vɛl ɔ́jnə i hó:ðəð.	Du har vel Øjne i Hovedet!
tɔmʔ	*Tom*
sga dú nu ɔ́sə sí:ə dé.	Skal du nu ogsaa sige det?
pé:ʔdər	*Peter*
vá mé:ʔnər du?	Hvad mener du?
vá ɛ́r dər i vájʔən?	Hvad er der i Vejen?
tɔmʔ	*Tom*
éŋəntèŋʔ.	Ingenting.
pé:ʔdər	*Peter*
i var fɔrɛ̀sdən hɛ́ldiə mɛ vɛ́:ʔərð;	I var forresten heldige med Vejret.
vɔ́:ʔr kø̣:rdə i hɛ́nʔ	Hvor kørte I hen?
tɔmʔ	*Tom*
vi sígləðə ɔ́b laŋʔs sónʔəð ɔ sbì:sdə fróɡɔsd i dý:ərhà:vən.	Vi cyklede op langs Sundet og spiste Frokost i Dyrehaven.
vi hà:ðə købd smœ́rəbrø̣:ʔð pɔ: rɔ́ðhusplàsən énən vi kø̣:rde fra bý:ʔən;	Vi havde købt Smørrebrød paa Raadhuspladsen, inden vi kørte fra Byen.

mɛn de smágdə égə gɔ́d, fɔr má:ˀðən var blèəð hé:ˀld flá:ˀð ɔ várˀm a só:ˀlən.

bá:ˀɛ̀fdər kø̀:rdə vi né:ˀð te sdránˀən;

bel

hà:ðə i bá:ðətɔ̀j mɛ́;

tɔmˀ

já sɛfø̀ləli.

du ka tró:ˀ frø̀gən lársən svœ́mər gɔ́t.

hun svœ́mər sɔm en fésk:

mɛn jɛ́ var égə ɩ:ˀ réd lɛ́ŋə, fɔr vánˀəð var sɔ kɔ́lˀt.

bel

hà:ðə i tí:ˀð te ɔ légə i só:ˀlən ɛ́fdər i hà:ðə vɛ̀:ərð i vánˀəð;

tɔmˀ

já dé var hɛ́rlit.

vi to: dərfrá:ˀ klɔ̀gən fɛ́mˀ, ɔ kø̀:rdə jɛ́mˀ pɔ: méndrə ɛn tó:ˀ tí:mər.

pé:ˀdər

tó:ˀ tí:mər!

jɛ́ ka kø̀:ər fra dý:ərhà:vən te rɔ́ðhusplàsən pɔ: méndrə ɛn é:ˀn tí:mə.

Men det smagte ikke godt, for Maden var blevet helt flad og varm af Solen.

Bagefter kørte vi ned til Stranden.

Bill

Havde I Badetøj med?

Tom

Ja selvfølgelig.

Du kan tro, Frøken Larsen svømmer godt.

Hun svømmer som en Fisk.

Men jeg var ikke i ret længe, for Vandet var saa koldt.

Bill

Havde I Tid til at ligge i Solen, efter I havde været i Vandet?

Tom

Ja, det var herligt.

Vi tog derfra Klokken fem og kørte hjem paa mindre end to Timer.

Peter

To Timer!

Jeg kan køre fra Dyrehaven til Raadhuspladsen paa mindre end en Time.

bel	*Bill*
dé ɛ vésd lɛ́ŋə sí:ðən. váʔ	Det er vist længe siden, hvad?
pé:ʔdɔr	*Peter*
nájʔ dé ɛ́r də vírgli égə. *nɔr jɛ tɛ́ŋgər ɔ́vʔər də, var də fɔrèsdən i sísdə ú:ə;*	Nej, det er det virkelig ikke. Naar jeg tænker over det, var det forresten i sidste Uge.
bel	*Bill*
lí: ed ɔ́jəblèk. *de var vésd teləfó:ʔnən dɛr réŋəðə.*	Lige et Øjeblik. Det var vist Telefonen, der ringede.

He comes back.

já dé var sàɣfø̀:ər knúsən, han kɔ́mʔər hərú:ʔð i áfdən, ɔ vi sga ú:ʔð ɔ sbì:sə méda.	Ja, det var Sagfører Knudsen, han kommer herud i Aften, og vi skal ud at spise Middag.
jɛ vèlə ø̂nsgə jɛ hà:ðə en ónsgỳlʔneŋ fɔr égə ɔ gɔ: ú:ʔð i áfdən.	Jeg vilde ønske, jeg havde en Undskyldning for ikke at gaa ud i Aften.
jɛ́ har sɔ máəð ɔ gœ́:ər.	Jeg har saa meget at gøre.
tɔmʔ	*Tom*
sɔ́ mɔ: vi vesd hɛ́lərə gɔ́:ʔ.	Saa maa vi vist hellere gaa.
bel	*Bill*
nájʔ égə tá:lə ɔ́mʔ. *i mɔ: égə gɔ́:ʔ enú.* *hán kɔ́mʔər jo fœ́rsd ɔmkréŋʔ sɛ́gs;*	Nej, ikke Tale om. I maa ikke gaa endnu. Han kommer jo først omkring seks.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and a friend.

You remark that the sun's nice and warm today. Your friend agrees and suggests going out to the beach. You say you'd like to and ask whether you'll take the bus. He prefers to go by bicycle. You ask how long it takes to get there and he says that if nothing happens you can do it in less than an hour—it's only about 5 kilometers. You ask what could happen. He replies that you can always have a flat tire ('be punctured'). You say that you can always find a bicycle repairman and have the bicycle fixed. Your friend says that he'll go home and get (*hɛ́ndə*) his bathing things and some sandwiches and his bicycle and will be back in ten minutes. You tell him that's fine, you'll be ready then.

2. You and a girl at the beach.

You've just finished lunch and are lying in the sun talking. You say that the sun's so warm that you should be nice and brown by the time you get home. The girl says she doesn't want to get brown. You ask her if she isn't looking forward to getting into the water. She says no, the water's always awfully cold when the sun's so warm. You say that you like to swim in cold water and suggest going in now. She thinks you should wait a little longer because you've just eaten lunch. You tell her that it's a long time since you ate, it must be an hour ago. She decides she'd like to smoke a cigarette first. Then when you've finished your cigarettes, you suggest going in again. This time she says she thinks maybe there isn't time to go in today. It's late and she has to be home for dinner, and you rode too fast on the way out. She doesn't like to bike that fast. You tell her not to look for any more excuses. If she doesn't want to go in the water, she doesn't have to. But you're going to. It'll only take a few minutes and then you'll leave.

3. Plan a bicycle trip with one of the other members of the group.

Talk about where you'll go, how far it is, how long it'll take, what you'll take with you—bathing things, food, etc.

Finder List

bá:ðətɔ̀j, bá:ðətɔ̀jˀəð (Badetøj, -et) bathing things
blek, *-əð*, *-ə* (Blik, -ket, -ke) glance
dɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ/dɛrfrá:ˀ (derfra) from there
énən (inden) before
enú (endau) still, yet
éŋəntèŋˀ (ingenting) nothing
ɛ́fdər (efter) after
ɛ́ndən (enten) either
  ɛ́ndən . . . ɛ́lər (enten . . . eller) either . . . or
fla:ˀð, flat, flá:ðə (flad) flat
flé:ər (flere) more
hɛ́ldi (heldig) lucky, fortunate
hɛ́lˀər (heller) either
  hɛ́lˀər égə (heller ikke) not either
hɛ́rli (herlig) wonderful
hɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð/ hɛrú:ˀð, *-ə* (herud, -e) out here
hó:ðə, *-ð*, *-r* (Hoved, -t, -r) head
laŋˀ (lang) far
méndrə (mindre) less

mé:nə, mé:ˀnər, *-də* (mene, -te) mean
nó:ən sénə (nogen Sinde) ever
ónsgỳlˀneŋ, ónsgỳlˀneŋˀən, ónsgỳlˀneŋˀər (Undskyldning, -en, -er) excuse
pɔ́gər: vá pɔ́gər (Hvad Pokker) what the devil
poŋté:ˀərð: vɛ̀:ər poŋté:ˀərð (være punkteret) have a flat tire
sdanˀ: gæ̀:ər (*gær, gjɔ̀:ər, gjord*) *ɩ sdánˀ* (gøre) (gør, gjorde, gjort) (i Stand) fix, repair
sdranˀ, *-ən*, *sdránə* (Strand, -en, -e) beach
sé:ˀ (*sɔ́:ˀ, sé:ˀd*) *saj fɔ́r* (se) (saa, set) (sig for) look in front of you, look where you're going
sɛfǿləli (selvfølgelig) of course
sge:ˀ, *sgé:də*, *sge:ˀt* (ske, -te, -t) happen
sɩ́:ðən (siden) since
sɩ́gəl, sɩ́glən, sɩ́glər (Cykel, -n, Cykler) bicycle
sɩ́gəlsmèð, sɩ́gəlsmèðˀən, sɩ́gəlsmè:ðə (Cyklesmed, -en, -e) bicycle repairman
sɩ́glə, *-ðə* (cykle, -de) ride a bicycle
smeð, *smɛ́ðˀən*, *smé:ðə* (Smed, -en, -e) blacksmith

svœ́mə, *-ðə* (svømme, -de) swim

tɛ́ŋgə, *-də* (tænke, -te) think

tɛ́ŋgə pɔ: (tænke paa) think of

vajʔ, *-ən*, *vájə* (Vej, -en, -e) way

i vájʔən mɛ (i Vejen med) wrong with

vest (vist) probably

vɛl (vel) have you?, do you?, I guess, etc.

vírgli (virkelig) really

ǿnsgə, *-ðə* (ønske, -de) wish

ɔ̈jə, *-ð*, *ɔ̈jnə* (Øje, -t, Øjne) eye

ɔ̈jəblə̀k, *-əð*, *-ə* (Øjeblik, -ket, -ke) moment

ɔmkréŋʔ (omkring) around, about

UNIT 16

AN EVENING OUT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Peter is visiting Bill in his hotel room. Bill has been out the evening before with the Knudsens.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Peter		
When did you get back from Aalborg?	*vɔrnɔ́:ʔr kɔm di tebá:γə fra ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr?*	Hvornaar kom De tilbage fra Aalborg?
Bill		
ago	*fɔr . . . sí:ðən*	for . . . siden
A couple of days ago.	*jɛ kɔ́mʔ fɔr ed par dá:γə sí:ðən.*	Jeg kom for et Par Dage siden.
Peter		
tired	*trɛt*	træt
You look a little tired.	*jɛ sýns di sé:ʔr led trɛ̂d ú:ʔð.*	Jeg synes, De ser lidt træt ud.
hangover	*tømərmɛ̀nʔ*	Tømmermænd
Have you got a hangover?	*har di tømərmɛ̀nʔ;*	Har De Tømmermænd?
Bill		
I'll say I have.	*já dé ka di tró:ʔ.*	Ja, det kan De tro.

raise	*rájsə*	rejse
stand up	*rájsə sə ɔ́p*	rejse sig op
Excuse me for not getting up.	*di mɔ: máəð ónsgỳlˀ a jɛ égə rájˀsər mə ɔ́p.*	De maa meget undskylde, at jeg ikke rejser mig op.
you see	*némli*	nemlig
guest	*gɛst*	Gæst
last evening	*i gɔr áfdəs*	i Gaar Aftes
You see, I went out with Mr. Knudsen last evening.	*ié var nèmli sàγfø̀:ər knúsəns gésd i gɔr áfdəs;*	Jeg var nemlig Sagfører Knudsens Gæst i Gaar Aftes.
late	*se:ˀnt*	sent
anyway	*alɩ:əvɛ̀lˀ*	alligevel
I got home awfully late, but it was a wonderful evening just the same.	*jɛ kɔm máəð sé:ˀnd jémˀ, mɛn de var en hérli áfdən alɩ:əvɛ̀lˀ.*	Jeg kom meget sent hjem, men det var en herlig Aften alligevel.
the Apollo Theatre	*apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð*	Apolloteateret
We went to the Apollo Theatre.	*vɩ var i apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð.*	Vi var i Apolloteateret.
Peter		
Where did you eat?	*mɛn vɔ́:ˀr sbɩ:s*[1] *di?*	Men hvor spiste De?
Bill		
opposite	*ɔ́vˀərfɔ̀r*	overfor
We had dinner in a restaurant across the street from *Hovedbanegaarden*.	*vi sbɩ:sdə pɔ: en resdoráŋ lɩ:ə̀ ɔ́vˀərfɔr hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn.*	Vi spiste paa en Restaurant lige overfor Hovedbanegaarden.

---

[1] Rapid pronunciation of *sbɩ:sdə* before *di*.

candy *or* chocolate	*sjogolá:ðə*	Chokolade
By the way, won't you have a piece of candy?	*hø:ʔr, ve di égə há:ʔ ed sdøg sjogolá:ðə;*	Hør, vil De ikke have et Stykke Chokolade?
box	*ɛ́sgə*	Æske
There's a box there by the window.	*dər sdɔ́:ʔr en ɛ́sgə hɛ́nə ve véndu:ʔəð.*	Der staar en Æske henne ved Vinduet.
Peter		
Thanks, I will. It's awfully good.	*jó:ʔ máŋə ták. dɛ́nʔ ɛ fɔrɛ́sdən gó:ʔ.*	Jo, mange Tak, den er forresten god.
sat	*sa:ʔð*	sad
Did you have good seats at the theatre?	*sá:ʔð di gɔ́d i teá:ʔdərəð;*	Sad De godt i Teateret?
Bill		
Yes, they were fine.	*já vi sá:ʔð úðmɛ́rgəð.*	Ja, vi sad udmærket.
Peter		
then	*da*	da
impossibly	*umú:ʔlit*	umuligt
But you didn't really ('couldn't possibly') understand it all?	*mɛn di kun da umú:ʔli fɔrsdɔ́:ʔ de hé:lə.*	Men De kunde da umuligt forstaa det hele.
Bill		
had a good time ('amused me')	*mó:ərðə maj*	morede mig
No, of course not, but I had a good time anyway.	*nɛ́: dé kú jɛ sɛfǿləli égə, mɛn jɛ mó:ərðə mə gɔ́d alí:ævèlʔ.*	Næh, det kunde jeg selvfølgelig ikke, men jeg morede mig godt alligevel.

Peter		
royal	*kɔ́ŋəliə*	kongelige
opens	*ɔ́:bnər*	aabner
Then maybe we can go to the royal theatre when it opens.	*sɔ́ ka vi mɔ:sgé:ˀ gɔ: i de kɔ́ŋəliə teá:ˀdər, nɔr dé ɔ́:bnər.*	Saa kan vi maaske gaa i det kongelige Teater, naar det aabner.
Bill		
amusing *or* interesting	*mórsɔmˀt*	morsomt
Yes, that'd be fun.	*iá dé vèlə vè:ər mórsɔmˀt;*	Ja, det vilde være morsomt.
Peter		
tell	*fɔrtέlˀə*	fortælle
But tell me some more about last evening.	*mεn di mɔ: fɔrtέlˀə maj led mé:ər ɔm dèrəs áfdən i gɔ́:ˀr.*	Men De maa fortælle mig lidt mere om Deres Aften i Gaar.
How many of you were there?	*vɔr máŋə vár di?*	Hvor mange var De?
Bill		
gentlemen	*hέrə*	Herrer
ladies	*dá:mər*	Damer
There were four of us in all—two men and two women.	*vi var fí:ər i de hé:lə, tó:ˀ hέrə ɔ tó:ˀ dá:mər.*	Vi var fire i det hele—to Herrer og to Damer.
sister	*sφsdər*	Søster
There was Mr. Knudsen and his wife and her sister.	*dər var sàγfφ̀:ər knúsən ɔ hans kó:nə ɔ hénəs sφsdər.*	Der var Sagfører Knudsen og hans Kone og hendes Søster.
Peter		
married	*gift*	gift
Is she married?	*εr hún gíft;*	Er hun gift?

4. *dé ε mí:ˀn kófərd ——— sdɔ́:ˀr dɛ́:ˀr i jǽrnəð.*	Det er min Kuffert, ——— staar der i Hjørnet.
5. *jε har tó:ˀ ándrə kófərdər jέmə ——— jε áldri brú:ər.*	Jeg har to andre Kufferter hjemme, ——— jeg aldrig bruger.
6. *——— jε rájˀsər, ràjsər jε álˀtiðˀ pɔ: fǽrsdə klásə.*	——— jeg rejser, rejser jeg altid paa første Klasse.
7. *——— εr dé ——— sdɔ́:ˀr dɛ́:ˀr i jǽrnəð?*	——— er det, ——— staar der i Hjørnet?
8. *há:ˀr du nɔ̀:əð tɔ́j ——— sga te rεnsərí:ˀəð;*	Har du noget Tøj, ——— skal til Renseriet?
9. *jε har tó:ˀ sεd tɔ́j ——— jε gérnə ve ha sέnˀd te rεnsərí:ˀəð i dá:ˀ.*	Jeg har to Sæt Tøj, ——— jeg gerne vil have sendt til Renseriet i Dag.
10. *——— sýns di han sga kɔ́mə i áfdən?*	——— synes De, han skal komme i Aften?
11. *jε tró:ˀr fǽrsd han kɔ́mˀər, ——— han har sbi:sd méda;*	Jeg tror først han kommer, ——— han har spist Middag.
12. *jε vé:ˀ égə ——— jε ràjsər tebá:γə te amé:ˀrika;*	Jeg ved ikke, ——— jeg rejser tilbage til Amerika.
13. *——— sga vi sbí:sə?* *vi'ka sbí:sə ——— di:n fá:r kɔ̀mər jέmˀ.*	——— skal vi spise? Vi kan spise, ——— din Far kommer hjem.
14. *——— bó:ˀr pɔ: dérəs gɔ́:ˀr ——— dí εr i københávˀn?*	——— bor paa Deres Gaard, ——— De er i København.
15. *pas pɔ́:ˀ, de ε polətí:ˀəð ——— kǿ:ər έfdər ɔs.*	Pas paa! Det er Politiet, ——— kører efter os.
16. *jε har bəsdélˀd en biléd ——— jε sga hέndə i dá:ˀ.*	Jeg har bestilt en Billet, ——— jeg skal hente i Dag.
17. *de ε égə álə resdoráŋˀər i københáuˀn ——— εr sɔ dý:ər sɔm dέnə hɛ́:ˀr;*	Det er ikke alle Restauranter i København, ——— er saa dyre som denne her.

Bill		
Yes, she is.	*iá dé ɛ́r hun;*	Ja, det er hun.
Fyn (*the island between Jutland and Zealand*)	*fý:ˀn*	Fyn
this week	*i dɛ́nə ú:ə*	i denne Uge
Her husband's on Fyn this week.	*mɛn hènəs mánˀ ɛr pɔ: fý:ˀn i dɛ́nə ú:ə.*	Men hendes Mand er paa Fyn i denne Uge.
danced	*dánsəðə*	dansede
After the theatre we went dancing.	*ɛ́fdər teá:ˀdərəð gíg vi ú:ˀð ɔ dánsəðə.*	Efter Teateret gik vi ud og dansede.
at *or* by	*vɛð*	ved
side of	*ve sí:ðən á:ˀ*	ved Siden af
sat down	*sádə saj*	satte sig
It was a good place, but unfortunately a man and a woman came in and sat down at the table next to us.	*de var en pɛ́:ˀn resdoráŋ, mɛn desvɛ́rə kɔ́mˀ dər en hɛ́rə ɔ en dá:mə énˀ ɔ sádə saj ve bó:ˀrəð ve sí:ðən a ɔ́s.*	Det var en pæn Restaurant, men desværre kom der en Herre og en Dame ind og satte sig ved Bordet ved Siden af os.
homely	*grɛmˀ*	grim
extremely dull	*døðkèðəli*	dødkedelig
The woman was awfully homely and—*you* know—terribly dull-looking.	*dá:mən var móəð grɛ́mˀ, ɔ dí vé:ˀ døðkeðəli ɔ sé:ˀ pɔ́:ˀ.*	Damen var meget grim og—du ved—dødkedelig at se paa.
loud	*hɔjˀt*	højt
finally	*te sist*	til sidst
again	*ɪgɛ́n*	igen

She talked so loud we couldn't hear what we were saying, so finally we had to leave.	*hun tá:ldə sɔ hɔ́jˀd a vi ég ku hø̂:ər va vi sɛ́lˀ sá:ə, sɔ te sísd mɔ́d vi gɔ́:ˀ igɛ́n.*	Hun talte saa højt, at vi ikke kunde høre, hvad vi selv sagde, saa til sidst maatte vi gaa igen.
Peter		
What did you do then?	*vá gjó:ər di sɔ́?*	Hvad gjorde De saa?
Bill		
We went to another place and danced.	*sɔ́ gíg vi hɛ́nˀ ed ánəð sdɛ́ð ɔ dánsəðə.*	Saa gik vi hen et andet Sted og dansede.
when ordered aquavite	*da* *bəsdélˀdə* *snabs*	da bestilte Snaps
And then at one o'clock Mr. Knudsen ordered sandwiches and *Snaps*.	*ɔ da klɔ́gən var éd, bəsdèldə sàɣfø̀:ər knúsən smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð ɔ snábs.*	Og da Klokken var et, bestilte Sagfører Knudsen Smørrebrød og Snaps.
Peter		
well	*nɔ*	naa
Snaps? Well, what do you think of it?	*snábs! nɔ́, vá sýns di ɔm dé?*	Snaps? Naa, hvad synes De om det?
Did you like it?	*ku di lí:ˀ de;*	Kunde De lide det?
Bill		
bad	*dɔ́rlit*	daarligt
It's not so bad!	*já dé var ég sɔ dɔ́rlit;*	Ja, det var ikke saa daarligt.

at least	*menˀst*	mindst
I had at least four glasses.	*jɛ feg ménˀsd fɨ:ər glás.*	Jeg fik mindst fire Glas.
After that we went home.	*ɛ̀fdər dé gɨ́g vi jɛ́mˀ.*	Efter det gik vi hjem.
imagine	*tɛ́ŋgə saj*	tænke sig
the maid	*pɨ:ən*	Pigen
suddenly	*plúsli*	pludselig
before	*fœ:ˀr*	før
clean	*gœ̀:ər ré:ˀnt*	gøre rent
And believe it or not, the maid came bursting in here this morning before eight to clean!	*ɔ ka di tɛ́ŋgə dəm, sɔ́ kɔ̀mər pɨ:ən plúsli énˀ hɛ́:ˀr i mɔ̀rəs fœ́:ˀr klɔ̀gən ɔ́:də fɔr ɔ gœ̀:ər ré:ˀnt.*	Og kan De tænke Dem, saa kommer Pigen pludselig ind her i Morges før Klokken otte for at gøre rent!
honest	*ɛ́rli*	ærlig
frankly	*ɛ́rli tá:ˀlt*	ærlig talt
furious	*rá:sənə*	rasende
And was I mad!	*dá blé:ˀ jɛ ɛ́rli tá:ˀld ɔ́sə rá:sənə.*	Da blev jeg ærlig talt ogsaa rasende.

2. Pronunciation Drill

In this unit we will review the sounds *ð*, *v* and *γ*. The Danish *ð* probably doesn't cause you much trouble. Be sure, though, that you remember to make it much weaker than our English *th*-sound in *then*. You will find that many Danes in Copenhagen use a *j*-sound in place of the *ð*.

Notice in the following examples that the vowels *i:*, *e:*, *u:* and *o:* sound a little different when they come before *ð* than they do before other sounds.

ti:ˀð	Tid	time	*u:ˀð*	ud	out
vi:ˀn	Vin	wine	*hu:ˀs*	Hus	house
ne:ˀð	ned	down	*sdo:ˀð*	stod	stood
se:ˀt	set	seen	*so:ˀl*	Sol	sun

As for the *v*, remember that the letter *v* in the *Aids to Listening* stands for a *w*-sound, not a real *v*-sound, when it comes after a short vowel. Thus, the word *hav*, 'sea', which you have had in the first part of *hávfrù:ə*, 'mermaid', sounds a lot like our word "how", only it is not drawled out so much. After a long vowel you'll find that some Danes pronounce a *w*-sound, while others pronounce a *v*-sound, especially in slow, careful speech. Here are examples of *v*'s after both long and short vowels:

købənhávʔn	København	Copenhagen
sgɔvʔ	Skov	park *or* wood
syvʔ	syv	seven
ɔ̀vʔər	over	over, across
tý:və	tyve	twenty
prǿ:və	prøve	try
bəhǿ:ˀvəs	behøves	be needed
dý:ərhà:vən	Dyrehaven	Dyrehaven

The γ, as you remember, is made by starting to raise your tongue up in the back of your mouth to make a *g*-sound, but stopping before you cut off the air completely. Here are a number of examples:

lέ:γə	Læge	doctor
da:ˀγ	Dag	day
dá:γə	Dage	days
grǿnsà:γər	Grønsager	vegetables
tebá:γə	tilbage	back
bá:ˀγὲfdər	bagefter	afterwards
bəsǿ:ˀγə	besøge	visit

fέrγə	Færge	ferry
sbǿrγə	spørge	ask
vɔγʔn	Vogn	car
ɔγ	og	and
dɔγ	dog	for heaven's sakes
tɔ:ˀγ	Tog	train
sáγfø̀:ər	Sagfører	lawyer

Now go over these examples again with your Guide and notice that some of the *γ*'s are pronounced more like a *j*-sound and others more like a *w*. The *γ*'s that come after *a:* and *ɛ:* generally sound more like *j*[1] and in rapid everyday speech some Danes do say a regular *j*-sound in such cases rather than *γ*. The *γ*'s that come after *a*, *ɔ*, and *ɔ:*, on the other hand, generally sound more like *w* and in rapid speech some Danes make very little difference between *γ*'s like this and *v*'s.

You should also note that in certain words the *γ* is often left out entirely in rapid speech; for example, *da:ʔ*, 'day', *dá:ə*, 'days', *bá:ʔɛ̀fdər*, 'afterwards', *ɔ*, 'and', *sbœ́rə*, 'ask'.

Pay special attention to the *ð*'s, *v*'s and *γ*'s as you go through the following sentences:

han bó:ðə i en gá:ðə i nɛ́rhɛ̀ðʔən a hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ʔərn.	Han boede i en Gade i Nærheden af Hovedbanegaarden.	He lived on a street near Hovedbanegaarden.
vi feg smœ́rəbrø̀:ʔð ɔ øl ɔ dɛn gó:ðɔ dánsgə desɛ́:ʔrt dɛr hɛ̀ðər rø̀:ʔðgrø̀:ʔð mɛ flø̀:ðə.	Vi fik Smørrebrød og Øl og den gode danske Dessert, der hedder Rødgrød med Fløde.	We had open sandwiches and beer and that good Danish dessert that's called fruit pudding with cream.
dý:ərhà:vən ɛr en sgɔ́wʔ ú:ðənfɔr købənháwʔn.	Dyrehaven er en Skov uden for København.	Dyrehaven is a park outside of Copenhagen.
de kɔ́sdəðə sýwʔ ɔ tý:və kró:nər.	Det kostede syv og tyve Kroner.	It cost twenty-seven crowns.
grœ́nsà:γərnə smá:γər dájlid, égə;	Grønsagerne smager dejligt, ikke?	The vegetables taste good, don't they?
di mɔ: sbœ́rγə ɔm dɛr ər sbí:səwɔ̀γʔn i tɔ́:ʔγəð.	De maa spørge, om der er Spisevogn i Toget.	You'll have to ask if there's a dining car on the train.
bá:ʔγɛ̀fdər sga jɛ bəsø̀:ʔγə mi:n vɛ́n sɔm ɛr lɛ́:γə.	Bagefter skal jeg besøge min Ven, som er Læge.	Afterwards I'm going to visit my friend, who's a doctor.

---

[1] You may remember, however, that the speaker on the records says the word *bá:ʔγɛ̀fdər* with a rather *w*-like *γ*.

3. Hints on Spelling

1. The short *ɔ* and the long *ɔ:* are each spelled in two different ways:

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
ɔ	o, aa
ɔ:	aa, o

You will find that the short *ɔ* is spelled most commonly with the letter *o*, and the long *ɔ:* most commonly with the letters *aa*. Here are the examples which you can read easily:

os	*ɔs*	us
op, oppe	*ɔp, ɔ́bə*	up
derop, deroppe[1]	*dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p, dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə*	up there
herop, heroppe[1]	*hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p, hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə*	up here
om	*ɔmˀ*	around, in
som	*sɔm*	who, as
nok	*nɔk*	enough, probably
Sok	*sɔk*	sock
Kop	*kɔp*	cup
for	*fɔr*	for, because, too
fordi	*fɔrdí:ˀ*	because
fortælle, fortalte	*fɔrtɛ́lˀə, fɔrtálˀdə*	tell, told
forresten	*fɔrɛ́sdən*	by the way
Forretning	*fɔrɛ́dneŋ*	store, business
Slot	*slɔt*	castle
Skov	*sgɔwˀ*	wood, park
kort	*kɔrt*	short

---

[1] See *Word Study*, page 431.

Kort	*kɔrt*	card
Kørekort	*kø:ərkɔ̀rt*	driver's license
vores	*vɔ́rəs*	our
komme, kom, kommet	*kɔ́mə, kɔmʔ, kɔ́məð*	come, came, come
Velbekomme	*vɛ́lbəkɔ̀mʔə*	*said by head of family at end of meal*
Konge	*kɔ́ŋə*	king
Sommer, Somre	*sɔ́mər, sɔ́mrə*	summer, summers
koste	*kɔ́sdə*	cost
over, ovre	*ɔ́vʔər, ɔ́vrə*	over
overfor	*ɔ́vʔərfɔ̀r*	opposite
derover, derovre	*dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vʔər, dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vrə*	over there
herover, herovre	*hɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vʔər, hɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vrə*	over here
Klokke	*klɔ́gə*	bell
Pokker	*pɔ́gər*	*in exclamation vá pɔ́gər 'what the devil!'*
Moster, Mostre[1]	*mɔ́sdər, mɔ́sdrə*	aunt, aunts
morsom	*mórsɔmʔ*	amusing, interesting
langsom	*láŋsɔmʔ*	slow
omkring	*ɔmkréŋʔ*	about, around
Frokost	*frógɔst*	lunch
Kartoffel, Kartofler	*kartɔ́fəl, kartɔ́flər*	potato, potatoes
Apolloteateret	*apɔ̂loteà:ʔdərəð*	the Apollo Theatre
saa	*sɔ*	so, then
naa	*nɔ*	well

---

[1] See *Word Study*, page 433.

maatte	*mɔ́də*	had to, might
Smaapenge	*smɔ́pɛ̀ŋə*	small change
faa, faaet	*fɔ:ʔ, fɔ́:əð*	get, have; gotten had
saa	*sɔ:ʔ*	saw
staa, staaet	*sdɔ:ʔ, sdɔ́:əð*	stand, stood
gaa, gaaet	*gɔ:ʔ, gɔ́:əð*	go, gone
naa	*nɔ:ʔ*	reach, make
smaa	*smɔ:ʔ*	small
laa	*lɔ:ʔ*	lay
maa	*mɔ:ʔ*	must, may
maaske	*mɔ:sgé:ʔ*	maybe
paa	*pɔ:ʔ*	on, to
Paa Gensyn	*pɔ: gɛ́nsỳnʔ*	see you again
forstaa, forstaaet	*fɔrsdɔ́:ʔ, fɔrsdɔ́:ʔəð*	understand, understood
Skaal	*sgɔ:ʔl*	*drinking toast*
Aar	*ɔ:ʔr*	year
Foraar	*fɔ́rɔ̀:ʔr*	spring
Efteraar	*ɛ́fdərɔ̀:ʔr*	fall
i Aar	*i ɔ́:ʔr*	this year
naar	*nɔ:ʔr*	when
i Gaar	*i gɔ́:ʔr*	yesterday
haabe	*hɔ́:bə*	hope
aabne	*ɔ́:bnə*	open
otte	*ɔ́:də*	eight
Morbror[1]	*mɔ́:ʔrbrò:r*	uncle

---

[1] See *Word Study*, p. 433.

Morfar[1]	*mɔ́:ˀrfà:r*	grandfather
Mormor[1]	*mɔ́:ˀrmò:r*	grandmother

2. The long and short [*æ*]-sounds are both spelled with the letter *ø*.

Søn	*sæn*	son
Dattersøn[1]	*dádərsæ̀n*	grandson
Sønnedatter[1]	*sǽnədàdər*	granddaughter
Sønnesøn[1]	*sǽnəsæ̀n*	grandson
Smør	*smær*	butter
gør	*gær*	do, does
Børn	*bærˀn*	children
først	*færst*	first
Størrelse	*sdǽrəlsə*	size
svømme	*svǽmə*	swim
før	*fæ:ˀr*	before
gøre	*gǽ:ər*	do

3. Here are a number of new words from this unit which you can read easily:

da	***da***	when
Snaps	*snabs*	*Snaps*, aquavite
sent	*se:ˀnt*	late
grim	*gremˀ*	ugly, homely
gift	*gift*	married
Gæst	*gɛst*	guest
Fyn	*fy:ˀn*	Fyn

---

[1] See *Word Study*, p. 432, 433.

træt, trætte	*trɛt, trɛ́də*	tired
Dame	*dá:mə*	lady
Herre	*hɛ́rə*	gentleman
Æske	*ɛ́sgə*	box
danse	*dánsə*	dance
Tante[1]	*tándə*	aunt
Søster, Søstre	*sǿsdər, sǿsdrə*	sister, sisters
Faster, Fastre[1]	*fásdər, fásdrə*	aunt, aunts
Onkel, Onkler[1]	*óŋˀgəl, óŋˀglər*	uncle, uncles
igen	*igɛ́n*	again
more	*mó:ər*	entertain
Farbror[1]	*fá:ˀrbrò:r*	uncle
Farfar[1]	*fá:ˀrfà:r*	grandfather
Farmor[1]	*fá:ˀrmò:r*	grandmother
Datterdatter[1]	*dódərdàdər*	granddaughter
Barnebarn[1]	*bárnəbàrˀn*	grandchild
Teater, Teatre	*teá:ˀdər, teá:ˀdrə*	theatre, theatres

---

[1] See *Word Study*, p. 432, 433.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

1. *dɛ́ːˀrfrà, hɛ́ːˀrùːˀð*, etc.

Observe these sentences:

A

sdránˀən ɛr kon fɛ́mˀ minúdər **dərfráːˀ**.	Stranden er kun fem Minutter derfra.	The beach is only five minutes from there.
nɔr jɛ tɛ́ŋgər pɔː túːˀərn **hərúːˀð**, *véːˀ jɛ égə vɔrdán jɛ nóːən sénə sga kɔ́mə jɛ́mˀ.*	Naar jeg tænker paa Turen herud, ved jeg ikke, hvordan jeg nogen Sinde skal komme hjem.	When I think of the trip out here, I don't see how I'm ever going to get home.
dɛ́r ər éːˀn **dɛrɔ́vrə** *pɔː dən ánən síːðə.*	Der er en derovre paa den anden Side.	There's one over there on the other side.
kɔ́m **hɛ́ːˀrɔ̀vˀər** *néls.*	Kom herover, Niels.	Come over here, Niels.
kɔ̀mər man **dɛ́ːˀrtè** *mɛ bús;*	Kommer man dertil med Bus?	Do you go there by bus?

Look at the words in heavy type above. Danish has a number of compounds like the ones in these sentences, made up of *hɛːˀr* or *dɛːˀr* plus some other word.

AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS
hɛ́ːˀrùːˀð/hɛrúːˀð, hɛ́ːˀrùːðə/hɛrúːðə	herud, herude	out here
dɛ́ːˀrùːˀð/dɛrúːˀð, dɛ́ːˀrùːðə/dɛrúːðə	derud, derude	out there
hɛ́ːˀrɔ̀vˀər/hɛrɔ́vˀər, hɛ́ːˀrɔ̀vrə/hɛrɔ́vrə	herover, herovre	over here
dɛ́ːˀrɔ̀vər/dɛrɔ́vˀər, dɛ́ːˀrɔ̀vrə/dɛrɔ́vrə	derover, derovre	over there

hɛ́:ˀrènˀ/hɛrénˀ, hɛ́:ˀrènə/hɛrénə	herind, herinde	in here
dɛ́:ˀrènˀ/dɛrénˀ, dɛ́:ˀrènə/dɛrénə	derind, derinde	in there
hɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ/hɛrhɛ́nˀ, hɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nə/hɛrhɛ́nə	herhen, herhenne	to here, here
dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ/dɛrhɛ́nˀ, dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nə/dɛrhɛ́nə	derhen, derhenne	to there, there
hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p/hɛrɔ́p, hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə/hɛrɔ́bə	herop, heroppe	up here
dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p/dɛrɔ́p, dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə/dɛrɔ́bə	derop, deroppe	up there
hɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð/hɛrné:ˀð, hɛ́:ˀrnè:ðə/hɛrné:ðə	herned, hernede	down here
dɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð/dɛrné:ˀð, dɛ́:ˀrnè:ðə/dɛrné:ðə	derned, dernede	down there
hɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ/hɛrfrá:ˀ	herfra	from here
dɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ/dɛrfrá:ˀ	derfra	from there
hɛ́:ˀrtèl/hɛrtél	hertil	to here
dɛ́:ˀrtèl/dɛrtél	dertil	to there

Notice:

1. that each compound has two pronunciations, one in which the *hɛ́:ˀr-* or *dɛ́:ˀr-* is stressed and another in which it isn't. The unstressed *hɛr-* and *dɛr-* are often pronounced as *hər-* and *dər-*.
2. that, with the exception of the last four, each compound has a basic form, used in sentences which involve movement to or from the place indicated, and an ə-form, used in sentences which don't involve any such movement.
3. that these Danish compounds correspond to English expressions of two words, like "up here", "down there", "over here", "out there", etc.

dɛ́:ˀr *ve jɛ égə* **ɔ́vˀər.**	Der vil jeg ikke over.	I don't want to go over there.
dɛ́:ˀr *mɔ: vi* **hɛ́nˀ** *en ánən dá:ˀ.*	Der maa vi hen en anden Dag.	We'll have to go there some other day.

Notice that in these sentences the compounds *dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər* and *dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ* are split up into their two separate parts and *dɛ:ˀr* is put at the very beginning in order to emphasize it. Any of the compounds in the list above can be split up and the *hɛ:ˀr* and *dɛ:ˀr* put first in the sentence for emphasis. Here are some more examples:

dɛ́:ˀr mɔ: du égə gɔ: né:ˀð nú.	Der maa du ikke gaa ned nu.	You mustn't go down *there* now.
dɛ́:ˀr fɔr vi égə tí:ˀð te ɔ kǿ:ər ú:ˀð i dá:ˀ.	Der faar vi ikke Tid til at køre ud i Dag.	We won't have time to drive out *there* today.
hɛ́:ˀr sga du égə kɔ́mə ɔ́p.	Her skal du ikke komme op.	You mustn't come up *here*.
hɛ́:ˀr ka i gɔ́d kɔ́mə énˀ.	Her kan I godt komme ind.	You can come in *here*.

2. Terms for members of the family

Of the Danish nouns which are used to refer to the members of one's family, you have already had *fa:r*, 'father', *mo:r*, 'mother', *sœn*, 'son', *dádər*, 'daughter', *barˀn*, 'child', *manˀ*, 'husband', *kó:nə*, 'wife', *bro:r*, 'brother', and now in this unit *sǿsdər*, 'sister'. There are, however, a number of others you should know, many of them compounds made up of nouns you are already familiar with.

Danish has quite a lot more terms referring to members of the family than English does. It has, for instance, besides a general word for "grandmother", two other words, one referring to your father's mother and the other referring to your mother's mother. Here are the most important of them:

grandmother	*bɛ́sdəmò:r*	Bedstemor
'mother's mother'	*mɔ́:ˀrmò:r*	Mormor
'father's mother'	*fá:ˀrmò:r*	Farmor
grandfather	*bɛ́sdəfà:r*	Bedstefar
'mother's father'	*mɔ́:ˀrfà:r*	Morfar
'father's father'	*fá:ˀrfà:r*	Farfar

grandchild	*bárnəbàrˀn*	Barnebarn
grandchildren	*bǽrnəbæ̀rˀn*	Børnebørn
'son's son'	*sǽnəsæ̀n*	Sønnesøn
'daughter's son'	*dádərsæ̀n*	Dattersøn
'son's daughter'	*sǽnədàdər*	Sønnedatter
'daughter's daughter'	*dádərdàdər*	Datterdatter
uncle ((*by marriage*)	*óŋˀgəl, óŋˀglən, óŋˀglər*	Onkel,-en, Onkler
'father's brother'	*fá:ˀrbrò:r*	Farbror
'mother's brother'	*mɔ́:ˀrbrò:r*	Morbror
aunt (*by marriage*)	*tándə, -n, -r*	Tante, -n, -r
'father's sister'	*fásdər, -ən, fásdrə*	Faster, -en, Fastre
'mother's sister'	*mɔ́sdər, -ən, mɔ́sdrə*	Moster, -en, Mostre
brothers and sisters	*søsgənə*	Søskende

Notice:

1. that the nouns *fa:r* and *mo:r* have the catch when they are used as the first part of one of these compounds, and that *mo:r* is pronounced with *ɔ:* rather than *o:*.
2. that *bárnəbàrˀn, bǽrnəbæ̀rˀn, sǽnəsæ̀n* and *sǽnədàdər* have the *ə* between the two parts of the compound.
3. that the terms for 'mother's sister' and 'father's sister' are not compounds, but the special words *mɔ́sdər* and *fásdər.*
4. that there is one Danish word meaning 'brothers and sisters'. So, if you want to ask someone how many brothers and sisters he has, you say: *vɔr máŋə [illegible]gənə há:ˀr di?*

The compounds in this list have the-forms and plural forms like those of the noun which forms the second part of the compound.

3. "Getting up" and "sitting down"

A.

di mɔ: máəð ónsgỳlʔə a jɛ égə **ɾájʔsər mə ɔ́p.**	De maa meget undskylde, at jeg ikke rejser mig op.	Excuse me for not getting up.

Look at the words in heavy type. The expression *rájsə saj ɔ́p* means "get up from a chair", "stand up". The expression meaning "get up out of bed" is *sdɔ: ɔ́p*.

B.

sá:ʔð *di gɔ́d i teá:ʔdərəð;*	Sad De godt i Teateret?	Did you have good seats at the theatre?
desvɛ́rə kɔ́mʔ dər en hɛ́rə ɔ en dá:mə énʔ ɔ **sádə saj** *ve bó:ʔərð ve sí:ðən a ɔ́s.*	Desværre kom der en Herre og en Dame ind og satte sig ved Bordet ved Siden af os.	Unfortunately a man and woman came in and sat down at the table next to us.

First notice how you ask someone if they had good seats at the theatre in Danish. What you say really is, "Did you sit well at the theatre?" You might compare this with the sentence in Unit 13 which says that on the ferry *man sbí:ʔsər mɛ́gdi gɔ́t*. Just as you talk about "sitting well" meaning "to have good seats" in Danish, so you talk about "eating well" meaning "to get good food".

Now notice in the two sentences above that *sɛ́də saj*, 'sit' (past form *sádə saj*) refers specifically to the act of moving from a standing position to a sitting position, while *séðə*, 'sit' (past form *sa:ʔð*) refers to the state of being in a sitting position. Sometimes this difference between the two verbs is expressed in English by the difference between "sit down" and "sit". Look, for instance, at the following pair of new sentences:

di sádə saj lí:ə ve sí:ðən a ɔ́s i teá:?dərəð.	De satte sig lige ved Siden af os i Teateret.	They sat down right next to us at the theatre.
di sá:?ð lí:ə ve sí:ðən a ɔ́s i teá:?dərəð.	De sad lige ved Siden af os i Teateret.	They sat right next to us at the theatre.

This is not always true, however. Both *sɛ́də saj* and *séðə* are used with *ne:?ð*, so they both correspond to English "sit down" in certain cases. Here are some more examples, made up of words you know but not taken from the *Basic Sentences*. Go through them carefully.

han sádə saj né:?ð ɔ prǿ:vəðə sgó:?ənə.	Han satte sig ned og prøvede Skoene.	He sat down and tried on the shoes.
vi hà:ðə lí:ə sad ɔs né:?ð da di bəgǿn?də ɔ dánsə.	Vi havde lige sat os ned, da de begyndte at danse.	We'd just sat down when they began to dance.
han sɛ́ð?ər ɔ́bə pɔ: sid vɛ́:ərlsə ɔ rý:?ər.	Han sidder oppe paa sit Værelse og ryger.	He's sitting up in his room smoking.
vi vɛ́ndəðə tó:? tí:mər pɔ: biográ:?fbilɛ̀dərnə, sɔ de var gɔ́d ɔ séðə né:?ð.	Vi ventede to Timer paa Biograf-billetterne, saa det var godt at sidde ned.	We waited two hours for the movie tickets, so it was good to sit down.
dɛr ər ál?tìð? en mán? dɛr ráj?sər saj ɔ́b fɔr hénə i sbórvɔ̀ɣ?nən, sɔ hún ka séðə né:?ð.	Der er altid en Mand, der rejser sig op for hende i Sporvognen, saa hun kan sidde ned.	There's always a man who gets up in the street-car so she can sit down.

Notice that you use *séðə né:?ð* in the last two sentences, since you're referring, not to the act of sitting down itself, but to the state of sitting down that follows the act.

Now look at the following two sentences.

kɔm énʔ ɔ séðʔ né:ʔð.	Kom ind og sid ned.	Come in and sit down.
kɔm énʔ ɔ séd dəm né:ʔð.	Kom ind og sæt Dem ned.	

In this case when you're inviting someone to sit down, you can use either verb, but the second expression is a little more polite than the first.

4. *kɔ́mə* as the equivalent of English "get"

vɔrnɔ́:ʔr **kɔm** *di tebá:ɣə fra ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr?*	Hvornaar kon De tilbage fra Aalborg?	When did you get back from Aalborg?
jɛ **kɔm** *máəð sé:ʔnd jɛ́mʔ.*	Jeg kom meget sent hjem.	I got home awfully late.
vɔ́r jɛ glɛ́:ðər maj te ɔ **kɔ́mə** *i vánʔəð.*	Hvor jeg glæder mig til at komme i Vandet!	My, I'll be glad to get in the water!
vi blìər nɔ́g gɔ́d brú:nə énən vi **kɔ́mʔər** *jɛ́mʔ.*	Vi bliver nok godt brune, inden vi kommer hjem.	We'll be good and brown by the time we get home.

Notice that in these sentences the Danish verb *kɔ́mə* corresponds to English "get" in the sense of "getting to a place".

5. *t*-form of adjectives used with verbs

hán kø̀:ʔr sɔ **hɔ́rdi** *de pásər ham.*	Han kører saa hurtigt, det passer ham.	He goes as fast as he pleases.
mi:n mánʔ kø̀:ər álʔtìðʔ máəð **hórdit.**	Min Mand kører altid meget hurtigt.	My husband always drives very fast.

ɔ́: náj?, dé ar jɛ **hé:ˀld** *glɛ́m?t.*	Aah nej, det har jeg helt glemt.	Oh, no, I forgot all about it.
vɔr sé:ˀr de **dájlid** *ú:ˀð.*	Hvor ser det dejligt ud!	Isn't it lovely!
jɛ kɔm máəð **sé:ˀnd** *jɛ́m?.*	Jeg kom meget sent hjem.	I got home awfully late.
man sbí:ˀsər mɛ́gdi **gɔ́t;**	Man spiser mægtig godt.	The food's darn good. ('You'll eat awfully well.')
sga di gɔ́:ˀ sɔ́ **tíðlit;** or *sga di gɔ́:ˀ sɔ́* **tíðli;**	Skal De gaa saa tidligt?	Do you have to leave so early?

Look at the basic forms and *t*-forms of the adjectives in these sentences. Notice that they are used here, not to describe nouns or words standing for nouns. Instead they are used with verbs to describe how or when the action indicated by the verb takes place. For instance, *hórdi* and *hórdit* describe how the man drives, *he:ˀlt* describes how I forgot, *dájlit* describes how it looks, *se:ˀnt* describes when I came home, etc. In Danish, as you see, when you use an adjective to describe the action of a verb, you use the *t*-form, but when the adjective ends in *i* you often use the basic form instead; for example, *hórdi* in the first sentence, and *tíðli* in the last sentence.

You know that in English we have pairs like "quick" and "quickly", "complete" and "completely", etc., where the first word is used to describe nouns and the second to describe verbs. For instance, you say "a quick lunch" but "run quickly". Consequently Danish adjectives when they end in *t* and are used to describe verbs often correspond to English adjectives with "-ly" added. *he:ˀl*, for example, means, as you know, "whole" or "complete", but in the third sentence above *he:ˀlt* corresponds to "completely", if the English equivalent is given as "Oh, no, I forgot it completely". Don't be surprised then when you find the English equivalent of a Danish adjective you know ending in "-ly" when that adjective is used to describe the action of a verb.

6. Compounds

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit.

noun + noun

apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð (*Apolloteateret*) the Apollo Theatre = **apɔ́lo** (Apollo) Apollo + **teá:ˀdərəð** (Teateret) the theatre

tømərmɛ̀nˀ (Tømmermænd) hangover = **tømər** (Tømmer) lumber + **mɛnˀ** (Mænd) men. The word *tømərmànˀ* is another term for "carpenter". The idea may be that having a hangover is like having a lot of carpenters working on your head.

7. Irregular verbs

Here are the new irregular verbs you had in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
fɔrtɛ́lˀə (fortælle) tell	*fɔrtálˀdə* (fortalte) told	*fɔrtálˀt* (fortalt) told
sɛ́də saj (sætte sig) sit down	*sádə saj* (satte sig) sat down	*sád saj* (sat sig) sat down
sɛ́ðə (sidde) sit	*sa:ˀð* (sad) sat	*sɛ́ðəð* (siddet) sat

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. Read the following paragraph about a Dane named Jensen and then answer the questions given below.

i gɔr áfdəs gíg mi:n kó:nə ɔ jáj ɔ vɔ̀rəs tré:ʔ bǽrʔn te en famí:ʔljəmèda hos mi:n kó:nəs fá:r ɔ mó:r.	I Gaar Aftes gik min Kone og jeg og vores tre Børn til en Familiemiddag hos min Kones Far og Mor.
hé:lə famí:ʔljən vár dər.	Hele Familien var der.
dɛr var mi:n kó:nəs søsdər, hénəs mánʔ, ɔ dɛ́rəs sœ́n ɔ dádər.	Der var min Kones Søster, hendes Mand og deres Søn og Datter.
mi:n kó:nəs tó:ʔ brøðrə var dər ɔ́sə;	Min Kones to Brødre var der ogsaa.
é:ʔn á dəm ɛr gífd, ɔ háns kó:nə ɔ dádər var mɛ́.	En af dem er gift, og hans Kone og Datter var med.
ɔ ví var sɛ́lʔ fɛ́mʔ, mi:n kó:nə ɔ jáj, vɔ̀rəs dádər, ɔ vɔ̀rəs tó:ʔ smɔ́:ʔ drɛ́ŋə.	Og vi var selv fem, min Kone og jeg, vores Datter og vores to smaa Drenge.
i de hé:lə var vi fɛ́mʔdən mɛ́nəsgər.	I det hele var vi femten Mennesker.
mi:n kó:nəs søsdər ɔ hènəs mánʔ hà:ðə vɛ̀:ərð i amé:ʔrika i fɛ́mʔ ɔ́:ʔr, sɔ vɔ̀rəs lílə pí:ə sɔm kón ɛr fí:ər ɔ́:ʔr hà:ðə áldri sé:ʔd si:n mɔ́sdər fœ́:ʔr.	Min Kones Søster og hendes Mand havde været i Amerika i fem Aar, saa vores lille Pige, som kun er fire Aar, havde aldrig set sin Moster før.

Questions

1. *vɔr máŋə sǿsgənə há:ʔr jɛ́nsəns kó:nə?*	Hvor mange Søskende har Jensens Kone?
2. *vɔ́:ʔr var famí:ʔljəmèda:ʔən?*	Hvor var Familiemiddagen?
3. *vɔr máŋə bœ́rnəbæ̀rʔn há:ʔr jɛ́nsəns kó:nəs fá:r ɔ mó:r?*	Hvor mange Børnebørn har Jensens Kones Far og Mor?
4. *vɔr máŋə mɔ́:ʔrbrø̀ðrə há:ʔr jɛ́nsəns bœ́rʔn?*	Hvor mange Morbrødre har Jensens Børn?
5. *vɔr máŋə mɔ́sdrə?*	Hvor mange Mostre?
6. *vɔr máŋə mɛ́nəsgər vár dər i de hé:lə?*	Hvor mange Mennesker var der i det hele?

B. Match up the sentences given on the left and the words given on the right so that the completed statements make good sense.

1. *mi:n fá:ʔrbrò:r ɔ mi:n fásdər ɛr* ———.
(Min Farbror og min Faster er ———.)
2. *mi:n mɔ́:ʔrmò:r ɔ mi:n mɔ́:ʔrfà:r ɛr* ———.
(Min Mormor og min Morfar er ———.)
3. *mi:n sœ́nəsæ̀n ɔ mi:n sœ́nədàdər ɛr* ———.
(Min Sønnesøn og min Sønnedatter er ———.)
4. *mi:n dádər ɔ mi:n dádərsæ̀n ɛr* ———.
(Min Datter og min Dattersøn er ———.)
5. *mi:n mó:r ɔ mi:n mɔ́sdər ɛr* ———.
(Min Mor og min Moster er ———.)

sǿsdrə
(Søstre)

sǿsgənə
(Søskende)

fá:r ɔ dádər
(Far og Datter)

bárnəbàrʔn ɔ bɛ́sdəfà:r
(Barnebarn og Bedstefar)

mó:r ɔ sœ́n
(Mor og Søn)

6. *mi:n dádərsæ̀n ɔ mi:n mán? ɛr* ———.
(Min Dattersøn og min Mand er ———.)

7. *mi:n fá:?rbrò:r ɔ mi:n fá:?rmò:r ɛr* ———.
(Min Farbror og min Farmor er ———.)

8. *mi:n mɔ́:?rfà:r ɔ mi:n mɔ́sdər ɛr* ———.
(Min Morfar og min Moster er ———.)

mán? ɔ kó:nə
(Mand og Kone)

søsgənə
(Søskende)

mó:r ɔ sæ̂n
(Mor og Søn)

C. Change the English words in the following sentences into Danish.

1.	*ka di égə kɔ́mə* (up here) *pɔ: sæ̂n?da.*	Kan De ikke komme (*up here*) paa Søndag?
2.	*nɔr di* (get) *te hotɛ́l?əð, ka di sbæ̂rγə ɔ́m? de dɛ́:?r.*	Naar De (*get*) til Hotellet, kan De spørge om det der.
3.	*di ka kón* (get out here) *mɛ sbórvɔ̀γ?n.*	De kan kun (*get out here*) med Sporvogn.
4.	*nɔr di* (get) *te rɔ́ðhusplàsən, ɛr de kón fɛ́m? kilomé:?dər* (from there).	Naar De (*get*) til Raadhuspladsen, er det kun fem Kilometer (*from there*).
5.	*vi* (sat) *lí:ə ɔ́v?ərfɔr dəm hé:lə áfdənən, mɛn vi sɔ́:? dəm égə.*	Vi (*sat*) lige overfor dem hele Aftenen, men vi saa dem ikke.
6.	*da jɛ var i teá:?dərəð i gɔr áfdəs, kɔ́m? mi:n bró:r én? ɔ* (sat) *lí:ə né:?ð ve sí:ðən á maj.*	Da jeg var i Teateret i Gaar Aftes, kom min Bror ind og (*sat*) lige ned ved Siden af mig.
7.	*han vɛ́ndər pɔ́: maj* (down there).	Han venter paa mig (*down there*).
8.	*han* (sat) *né:?ð pɔ: sdrán?ən, ɔ dɛ́r* (sat) *han sɔ hé:lə mɔ́rənən.*	Han (*sat*) ned paa Stranden, og der (*sat*) han saa hele Morgenen.
9.	*vɔr lɛ́ŋə har i bó:?əð* (out here) *pɔ: gɔ́:?ərn?*	Hvor længe har I boet (*out here*) paa Gaarden?
10.	*vi* (sat) *ɔ tá:ldə ɔm amé:?rika hé:lə áfdənən.*	Vi (*sat*) og talte om Amerika hele Aftenen.

SECTION D —LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercises as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Mr. and Mrs. Knudsen are talking the morning after their evening out with Bill and Mrs. Knudsen's sister.*

hun *nɔ hǿ:ˀr nú mɔ: du vírgli sé:ˀ ɔ barbé:ˀər daj, sɔ pí:ən ka kɔ̀mə énˀ ɔ gǽ:ər ré:ˀnt;*	*hun* Naa hør, nu maa du virkelig se at barbere dig, saa Pigen kan komme ind at gøre rent.
han *jɛ har ɛ́rli tá:ˀld tǿmərmɛ̀nˀ ɛ́fdɛr i gɔ́:ˀr.* *mɛn dé var nu en hɛ́rli áfdən alí:əvɛ̀lˀ.*	*han* Jeg har ærlig talt Tømmermænd efter i Gaar. Men det var nu en herlig Aften alligevel.
hun *de vár vɛl nɔ́g en dájli ɛ́sgə sjogolá:ðə bél sɛ́ndə maj.*	*hun* Det var vel nok en dejlig Æske Chocolade, Bill sendte mig.
han *já dé var pɛ́:ˀnd á ham.* *tror du bél ɔ di:n sǿsdər mó:ərðə saj;*	*han* Ja, det var pænt af ham. Tror du, Bill og din Søster morede sig?

hun	*hun*
já dé gjó:ər di bəsdɛ́mʔt.	Ja, det gjorde de bestemt.
han	*han*
jɛ mɔ: sí:ə a bél kun sgam lí:ʔ snábsən;	Jeg maa sige, at Bill kunde skam lide Snapsen.
hun	*hun*
já vɛ́mʔ ka égə dé?	Ja, hvem kan ikke det?
jɛ́ vé:ʔ da égə nɔ́:əð bɛ́ðrə.	Jeg ved da ikke noget bedre.
de var mórsɔmʔd ɔ hø̀:ər ham fɔrtɛ́lʔə ɔm amé:ʔrika;	Det var morsomt at høre ham fortælle om Amerika.
han	*han*
vórdən dánsər hán?	Hvordan danser han?
hun	*hun*
égə sɔ dɔ́rlit;	Ikke saa daarligt.
mɛn nɔr jɛ́ sga i teá:ʔdərəð igɛ́n, ve jɛ nu alí:əvɛl hɛ́lərə lí:ə jɛ́mʔ.	Men naar jeg skal i Teateret igen, vil jeg nu alligevel hellere lige hjem.
nɔr man sga ú:ʔð ɔ dánsə bá:ʔγɛ̀fdər, blí:ʔr de nɛ̀mli álʔtiðʔ sɔ sé:ʔnt.	Naar man skal ud at danse bagefter, bliver det nemlig altid saa sent.
han	*han*
já jɛ́ vɛ̀lə ɛ̀rli ta:ʔld ɔ́sə gɛ́rnə ha vɛ̀:ərð lí:ə jɛ́mʔ.[1]	Ja, jeg vilde ærligtalt ogsaa gerne have været lige hjem.

---

[1] Notice that in this sentence *jɛmʔ* rather than *jɛ́mə* is used with the verb *vɛ́:ər*, since there is movement involved. Compare the first sentence in Mrs. Knudsen's next speech.

mɛn vi sgu jo ví:sə bél léd a bý:ˀən, ɔ han glɛ́:ðəðə saj sɔ máəð te ɔ kɔ́mə i apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð.

jɛ́ vɛ̀lə hɛ́lərə ha vɛ̀:ərð i de kɔ́ŋəliə teá:dər, mɛn de ɔ́:bnər jo égə fœ́:ˀr ɔm éd par dá:ə.

hun

ɛr de égə dájli a ví sga vɛ̀:ər jɛ́mə i áfdən.

vi har vɛ̀:ərð ú:ðə ménˀsd fí:ər áfdnər i dɛ́nə ú:ə.

han

jó:ˀ dé ɛ́rˀəð sgám.

ɔ ves dɛr sgu kɔ̀mə gɛ́sdər, mɔ: pí:ən síər a vi ɛ́g ɛ jɛ́mə.

jɛ́ ɛ́r sɔ́ trɛ́t.

2. *An Embarassing Moment.*

en áfdən fɔr máŋə ɔ́:ˀr sí:ðən var mi:n kó:nə ɔ jáj ú:ðə fɔr ɔ mó:ər ɔs i ny jɔ́rk.

vi var fœ́rsd i teá:ˀdərəð ɔ gig bá:ˀɛ̀fdər hɛ́n pɔ: en hýgəli lílə resdoráŋ.

vi hà:ðə lí:ə bəsdélˀd desɛ́:ˀrdən, da en hɛ́rə ɔ en dá:mə kɔm énˀ.

dɛ́r var égə rɛ́d máŋə bó:ər, ɔ te sísd mɔ̀də di sɛ́də saj ve bó:ˀərð ve sí:ðən á ɔs, hán te vɛ́nsdrə fɔ́r maj, ɔ hún lí:ə ɔ́vˀərfɔ́r.

Men vi skulde jo vise Bill lidt af Byen, og han glædede sig saa meget til at komme i Apolloteateret.

Jeg vilde hellere have været i det kongelige Teater, men det aabner jo ikke før om et Par Dage.

hun

Er det ikke dejligt, at vi skal være hjemme i Aften?

Vi har været ude mindst fire Aftener i denne Uge.

han

Jo, det er det skam.

Og hvis der skulde komme Gæster, maa Pigen sige, at vi ikke er hjemme.

Jeg er saa træt!

En Aften for mange Aar siden, var min Kone og jeg ude for at more os i New York.

Vi var først i Teateret og gik bagefter hen paa en hyggelig lille Restaurant.

Vi havde lige bestilt Desserten, da en Herre og en Dame kom ind.

Der var ikke ret mange Borde, og til sidst maatte de sætte sig ved Bordet ved Siden af os, han til venstre for mig og hun lige overfor.

hún vár sɔ grémʔ a du égə vélə tró:ʔ de var sánʔt.	Hun var saa grim, at du ikke vilde tro, det var sandt.
hénəs ɔ́jnə var sɔ sdó:ər sɔm té:ʔkɔ̀bər, sɛ́lʔ var hun lɪ́lə ɔ sɔ: ɛ́rli tá:ʔld døðkeʔðəli ú:ʔð.	Hendes Øjne var saa store som Tekopper, selv var hun lille og saa ærlig talt dødkedelig ud.
vi sá:ʔð sɛlføləli ɔ tà:ldə dánʔsg sɔm álʔtiðʔ, ɔ tró:ðə égə a di ku fərsdɔ́:ʔ va vi sá:ə.	Vi sad selvfølgelig og talte Dansk som altid, og troede ikke, at de kunde forstaa, hvad vi sagde.
ɔ jɛ ka énu hø:ər mi:n kó:nə sɪ́:ə hɔ́jʔt,	Og jeg kan endnu høre min Kone sige højt:
nɛ́: vɔr ɛ́r hun dɔɣ grémʔ.	„Næh, hvor er hun dog grim.
hún ka da umú:ʔli vɛ́:ər gɪ́ft.	Hun kan da umulig være gift!"
dé tró:ʔr jɛ hɛ́lʔər égə hun ɛ́r sá:ə jɛ.	„Det tror jeg heller ikke, hun er," sagde jeg.
du sga sé:ʔ, dé ɛ nɔ́g hènəs bró:r dɛr ɛr ú:ðə fɔr ɔ prø:və ɔ mó:ər hénə lét.	„Du skal se, det er nok hendes Bror, der er ude for at prøve at more hende lidt."
mɛn tɛ́ŋʔg daj, plúsli rájʔsər dá:mən saj ɔ́b ɔ sɪ́ər rá:sənə pɔ: dánʔsk,	Men tænk dig, pludselig rejser Damen sig op og siger rasende paa Dansk:
nɛ́: han ɛ́r nu mi:n mánʔ.	„Næh, han *er* nu min Mand!"

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and a girl

You make a date with her for the following evening. Talk about what you'll do—dancing, the Apollo Theater, the Royal Theater. She says that you speak Danish awfully well, but if you go to the theater she doesn't think you could possibly understand it all. You say you'd like to try and that you'll have a good time anyway. You've never been to the theatre in Denmark. You finally decide to go to the Royal Theater first and afterwards to go out dancing.

2. You and the same girl

You've been to the Royal Theater and are now going into a restaurant to have something to eat and dance for a little while. You ask the waiter for a table for two. He says he has only this little table by the window and asks if that suits you. You tell him it's O. K., sit down and ask for a menu. You ask the girl what she wants and decide on open sandwiches, beer and *Snaps*. When you've ordered them, you ask the girl to dance. As you dance you talk about anything that interests you.

3. You and a friend

The two of you talk about what you've done the previous evening. He asks you what you did. You say that you had a wonderful evening. You went to the Royal Theater and then to a restaurant right across the street from the theatre for a glass of *Snaps* and some beer and open sandwiches. You got home quite early—it was only twelve o'clock. He asks who you went with. You tell him her name is Kirsten Andersen—you don't think he knows her, but she's a very cute *(sø:ʔð)* girl. Then you ask if he had a good time. He says no, he certainly didn't. He went out with the sister of a friend of his, whom he'd never been out with before. He wanted to go to the Royal Theater but she preferred to go dancing. She was sort of homely and awfully dull, and she talked all evening very loudly. She couldn't dance very well either. He says that he drank too much *Snaps* so now he has a hangover. He got home awfully late and then his mother came in at 7:30 this morning to clean. That made him really mad.

4. Ask questions around the group about one another's families—uncles and aunts, grandparents, etc.

alí:əvɛ̀lˀ/alí:əvɛl (alligevel) anyway

apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð (Apolloteateret) the Apollo Theatre

bárnəbàrˀn, -əð bǿrnəbø̀rˀn (Barnebarn, -et, Børnebørn) grandchild, grandchildren

bɛ́sdəfà:r (Bedstefar) grandfather. The-form and plural as for *fa:r.*

bɛ́sdəmò:r (Bedstemor) grandmother. The-form and plural as for *mo:r.*

bəsdélˀə, -də (bestille, bestilte) order

da (da) then, when

dádərdàdər (Datterdatter) granddaughter (*'daughter's daughter'*) The-form and plural as for *dádər.*

dádərsø̀n (Dattersøn) grandson (*'daughter's son'*) The-form and plural as for *søn.*

dánsə, -ðə (danse, -de) dance

dá:mə, -n, -r (Dame, -n, -r) lady

dǿðkèðəli (dødkedelig) extremely dull, very boring

dɔ́rli (daarlig) bad

dɛ́:ˀrènˀ/dɛrénˀ, -ə (derind, -e) in there

dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ/dɛrhɛ́nˀ, -ə (derhen, -ne) there

dɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð, dɛrné:ˀð, -ə (derned, -e) down there

dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p/dɛrɔ́p, -ə (derop, -pe) up there

dɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð/dɛrú:ˀð, -ə (derud, -e) out there

ɛ́rli (ærlig) honest

ɛ́rli tá:ˀlt (ærlig talt) frankly

ɛ́sgə, -n, -r (Æske, -n, -r) box

fásdər, -ən, fásdrə (Faster, -en, Fastre) aunt, (*'father's sister'*)

fá:ˀrbrò:r (Farbror) uncle (*'father's brother'*) The-form and plural as for *bro:r.*

fá:ˀrfà:r (Farfar) grandfather (*'father's father'*) The-form and plural as for *fa:r.*

fá:ˀrmò:r (Farmor) grandmother (*'father's mother'*) The-form and plural as for *mo:r.*

fy:ˀn (Fyn) Fyn (*island between Zealand and Jutland*)

fœ:ˀr (før) before

fɔr . . . sí:ðən (for . . . siden) ago

fɔrtɛ́lˀə, fɔrtálˀdə (fortælle, fortalte) tell

gɛst, -ən, -ər (Gæst, -en, -er) guest

gift (gift) married

gremˀ (grim) homely

gœ̀:ər (gjò:ər, gjord) ré:ʔnt (gøre) (gjorde, gjort) (rent) clean

hɛ́rə, -n, — (Herre, -n, -r) gentleman

hɛ́:ʔrènʔ, hɛrénʔ, -ə (herind, -e) in here

hɛ́:ʔrfrà:ʔ/hɛrfrá:ʔ (herfra) from here

hɛ́:ʔrhènʔ/hɛrhɛ́nʔ, -ə (herhen, -ne) to here, here

hɛ́:ʔrnè:ʔð/hɛrné:ʔð, -ə (herned, -e) down here

hɛ́:ʔrtèl/hɛrtél (hertil) to here

hɛ́:ʔrɔ̀p/hɛrɔ́p, -ə (herop, -pe) up here

hɔjʔ (høj) loud

igɛ́n (igen) again

kɔ́ŋəli (kongelig) royal

menʔst (mindst) at least

mórsɔmʔ (morsom) amusing, interesting

mó:ər, -ðə (more, -de) amuse, entertain

mó:ər saj (more sig) enjoy yourself, have a good time

mɔ́sdər, -ən, mɔ́sdrə (Moster, -en, Mostre) aunt (‘*mother’s sister*’)

mɔ́:ʔrbrò:r (Morbror) uncle (‘*mother’s brother*’) The-form and plural as for *bro:r.*

mɔ́:ʔrfà:r (Morfar) grandfather (‘*mother’s father*’) The-form and plural as for *fa:r.*

mɔ́:ʔrmò:r (Mormor) grandmother (‘*mother’s mother*’) The-form and plural as for *mo:r.*

nɛ́mli (nemlig) you see

nɔ (naa) well

óŋʔgəl, óŋʔglən, óŋʔglər (Onkel, -en, Onkler) uncle (*by marriage*)

pí:ə, -n, -r (Pige, -n, -r) maid

plúsli (pludselig) suddenly

rájsə, -đə (rejse, -te) raise

rájsə saj ɔ́p (rejse sig op) get up (*from a seat*)

rá:sənə (rasende) angry, furious

sdɔ: (sdò:ʔð, sdɔ̀:əð) ɔ́p (staa) (stod, staaet) (op) get up (*out of bed*)

sɛ́ðə, sa:ʔð, sɛ́ðəð (sidde, sad, siddet) sit

se:ʔnt (sent) late

sɛ́də (sádə, sád) saj (sætte) (satte, sat) (sig) sit down

sist: te síst (til sidst) finally

sjogolá:ðə, -n, -r (Chokolade, -n, -r) chocolate

snabs, -ən, - ə (Snaps, -en, -e) aquavite

søsdər, -ən, søsdrə (Søster, -en, Søstre) sister *sœ́nədàdər* (Sønnedatter) granddaughter (*'son's daughter'*) The-form and plural as for *dádər.*

sœ́nəsœ̀n (Sønnesøn) grandson (*'son's son'*) The-form and plural as for *sœn.*

tándə, -n, -r (Tante, -n, -r) aunt (*by marriage*)

teá:ˀdər, -əð, teá:ˀdrə (Teater, -et, Teatre) theatre

tɛ́ŋgə, (-də) saj (tænke,) (-te) (sig) imagine

trɛt, -ə (træt, -te) tired

tǿmərmɛ̀nʔ (Tømmermænd) hangover

umú:ˀli (umulig) impossible

veð/ve (ved) at, by

ve sí:ðən á:ʔ /ve sí:ðən a (ved Siden af) beside, next to

ɔ́:bnə, -ðə (aabne, -de) open

ɔ́vˀərfɔ̀r/ɔ́vˀərfɔr (overfor) opposite, across from

UNIT 17

THE NATIONAL SPORT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Tom and Peter are on their way to the Stadium to see the annual soccer game between the Danes and the Swedes.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Tom		
How far is it?	*vɔr láŋˀd ɛ́r dər?*	Hvor langt er der?
soon	*sna:ˀrt*	snart
Aren't we almost there?	*ɛr vi dər égə sná:ˀrt;*	Er vi der ikke snart?
Peter		
only	*bá:ər*	bare
by	*fɔrbɩ́:ˀ*	forbi
Yes, we just have to go by those houses there.	*jó:ˀ vɩ́ sga bá:ər fɔrbɩ́:ˀ dɩ́ hú:sə dɛ́:ˀr.*	Jo, vi skal bare forbi de Huse der.
Tom (as they go inside)		
full	*fulˀt*	fuldt
Gosh, it's packed!	*nɛ́: vɔr ɛ́r dər fúlˀd a mɛ́nəsgər.*	Næh, hvor er der fuldt af Mennesker.

It's good we have tickets, isn't it?	*de ɛ vɛl nɔ́g gɔ́d ví ar bilɛ́dər.*	Det er vel nok godt, vi har Billetter.
Peter (as they sit down)		
Swedish	*svɛ́nsgə*	svenske
team	*hɔ́lˀ*	Hold
Look, here comes the Swedish team!	*sé:ˀ dɛ́r kɔ́mˀər de svɛ́nsgə hɔ́lˀ.*	Se, der kommer det svenske Hold!
as soon as	*sɔ sná:ˀrt*	saa snart
plays	*sbélər*	spiller
the orchestra	*ɔrkɛ́sdərəð*	Orkesteret
the national anthem	*nasjoná:ˀlsàŋˀən*	Nationalsangen
the game	*kámˀbən*	Kampen
As soon as the king comes, the orchestra'll play the national anthem and then the game'll begin.	*sɔ sná:ˀrd kɔ́ŋən kɔ́mˀər, sbélər ɔrkɛ́sdərəð nasjoná:ˀlsàŋˀən, ɔ sɔ́ bəgø̂nˀər kámˀbən.*	Saa snart Kongen kommer, spiller Orkesteret Nationalsangen, og saa begynder Kampen.
Tom		
soccer	*fóðbɔ̀lˀt*	Fodbold
against	*imó:ˀð*	imod
Sweden	*svɛ́rˀi*	Sverrig
each *or* every	*vɛ:ˀrt*	hvert
single	*è:nəsdə*	eneste
Do you play (soccer against) Sweden every single year?	*sbèlər i fóðbɔ̀lˀd imɔ̀ð svɛ́rˀi vɛ:rd è:nəsdə ɔ́:ˀr;*	Spiller I Fodbold imod Sverrig hvert eneste Aar?
Peter		
Norway	*nɔ́rɣə*	Norge
Yes, and (against) Norway too.	*já ɔ ɔ́sə imɔ̀ð nɔ́rɣə;*	Ja, og ogsaa imod Norge.

Tom		
players	*sbéləra*	Spillere
How many players are there on a team?	*vɔr máŋə sbéləra ɛr dər pɔ: vɛ́:ˀrd hɔ́lˀ?*	Hvor mange Spillere er der paa hvert Hold?
Peter		
There are eleven.	*dɛ́r ər ɛ́lvə;*	Der er elleve.
explain	*fɔrklá:ˀər*	forklare
I'll tell you more about it after they've started to play	*jɛ sga fɔrklá:ˀər daj led mé:ˀr ɔ́mˀ de, nɔr di ɛ bəgø̀nˀd ɔ sbélə.*	Jeg skal forklare dig lidt mere om det, naar de er begyndt at spille.
Tom (after the game has started)		
sports	*sbɔrt*	Sport
otherwise	*ɛ́lˀərs*	ellers
What other kinds of sports do you have?	*vá slágs sbɔ́rd há:ˀr i ɛ́lˀərs?*	Hvad Slags Sport har I ellers?
Peter		
both . . . and	*bɔ́:ðə . . . ɔ*	baade . . . og
swimming	*svǽmneŋ*	Svømning
sailing	*sájlsbɔ̀rt*	Sejlsport
bicycle races	*sígəllø̀:ˀp*	Cykelløb
We have swimming and sailing and bicycle races.	*vi ar bɔ́:ðə*[1] *svǽmneŋ sájlsbɔ̀rd ɔ sígəllø̀:ˀp.*	Vi har baade Svømning, Sejlsport og Cykelløb.

---

[1] Notice that you say *bɔ́:ðə . . . ɔ*, 'both . . . and' in this sentence in Danish even though you're speaking of three things.

tennis	*tɛ́nes*	Tennis
And then of course we play tennis . . .	*ɔ sɔ́ sbélər vi sɛfø̀ləli tɛ́nes;*	Og saa spiller vi selvfølgelig Tennis . . .
Look at that!	*mɛn sé*[1] *nu dɛ́:ʔr;*	Men se nu der!
goal	*mɔ:ʔl*	Maal
We're going to make a goal!	*nú ɛr vi lí:ə vé ɔ fɔ: mɔ́:ʔl;*	Nu er vi lige ved at faa Maal!
because of	*fɔr*	for
soldier	*soldá:ʔt*	Soldat
I can't see around that soldier, can you?	*iɛ ka égə sé:ʔ fɔr dɛ́nʔ soldá:ʔd, ka dú;*	Jeg kan ikke se for den Soldat, kan du?
Tom		
No, I can't.	*nájʔ dé ká jɛ égə;*	Nej, det kan jeg ikke.
The soldier		
hurrah	*hurá:*	Hurra
Hurrah, we made a goal!	*hurá: ví fég mɔ́:ʔl;*	Hurra, vi fik Maal!
Peter		
Tom, did you see that?	*tɔ́mʔ sɔ́:ʔ du dé;*	Tom, saa du det?
Now the Swedish team'll try to make one.	*sɔ nú prø̀:vər de svɛ́nsgə hɔ́lʔ ɔ fɔ: mɔ́:ʔl.*	Saa nu prøver det svenske Hold at faa Maal.
time	*gaŋʔ*	Gang
No, it didn't work this time.	*nɛ́: de gíg égə dɛ́nə gáŋʔ.*	Næh, det gik ikke denne Gang.

---

[1] Rapid pronunciation of *se:ʔ*, 'see'.

Tom		
Peter, take a look at that girl over there!	*du pé:ˀdər, sé:ˀ dέnˀ pɪ:ə dέ:ˀrɔ̀vrə.*	Du Peter! Se den Pige derovre!
exciting	*sbέnənə*	spændende
She's not bad!	*hún sé:ˀr vεl nɔ́g sbέnənə ú:ˀð.*	Hun ser vel nok spændende ud!
those	*di*	de
Look at those eyes!	*har du sé:ˀd dɪ ɔ́jnə;*	Har du set de Øjne?
Peter		
Do you think I paid all that money for tickets so you could stand there and look over the girls?	*tror du jáj har købd dý:ər bilέdər fɔr ɔ du sga sdɔ́:ˀ dέ:ˀr ɔ sé:ˀ ὲfdər pɪ:ərnə;*	Tror du, jeg har købt dyre Billetter, for at du skal staa der og se efter Pigerne?
No, my friend! There's a time and place for everything.	*nέ: mi:n vέn, vέ:ˀr téŋˀ te sɪ́:ˀn tɪ́:ˀð.*	Næh min Ven, hver Ting til sin Tid.
I'm hungry!	*jέ εr fɔrέsdən súlˀdən;*	Jeg er forresten sulten.
frankfurt	*pølsə*	Pølse
I think I'll have a hot dog.	*jε tró:ˀr jε ve há:ˀ en pølsə.*	Jeg tror, jeg vil have en Pølse.
What do you say?	*vá sɪər dú?*	Hvad siger du?
surely bottle	*ségərt* *flásgə*	sikkert Flaske
I'm sure we can get a bottle of beer, too.	*vi ka ségərd ɔ́sə fɔ́:ˀ en flásgə øl.*	Vi kan sikkert ogsaa faa en Flaske Øl.
Tom		
Yes, let's.	*iá dé sýns jε vi sgál.*	Ja, det synes jeg, vi skal.

I've been thirsty for the past hour.	*ié ar vè:ərð tœ́rsdi dɛn sísdə tí:mə.*	Jeg har været tørstig den sidste Time.
Peter		
the Danes	*dánsgərnə*	Danskerne
wins	*vén?ər*	vinder
If the Danes win the game today, I'll treat you to a good dinner.	*ves dánsgərnə vén?ər kám?bən i dá:?, gí:?r jɛ en gó:? méda.*	Hvis Danskerne vinder Kampen i Dag, giver jeg en god Middag.
Tom		
You will?	*gœr du dé;*	Gør du det?
That's swell.	*dé var da dájlit;*	Det var da dejligt.
I'll be looking forward to that!	*dé glɛ́:ðər jɛ maj mɛ́gdi te;*	Det glæder jeg mig mægtigt til.
Peter		
soccer game	*fóðbɔldkàm?p*	Fodboldkamp
Incidentally is this the first time you've seen a soccer game?	*sí:? maj en téŋ?, ɛr de fœ́rsdə gáŋ? du sé:?r en fóðbɔldkàm?p;*	Sig mig en Ting—er det første Gang, du ser en Fodboldkamp?
Tom		
Yes, it is.	*já dé ɛ́r?əð.*	Ja, det er det.
We generally play another kind of football that you probably don't know about.	*vi sbélər sɔm rɛ́:?əl en ánən slágs fóðbɔ̀l?d sɔm dú mɔ:sgè: égə kɛ́nər.*	Vi spiller som Regel en anden Slags Fodbold, som du maaske ikke kender.
Peter		
What? I can't hear what you're saying.	*va bəhá:?r; jɛ ka égə hø:ər va du síər.*	Hvad behager? Jeg kan ikke høre, hvad du siger.

Look, the other side's trying for a goal now.	*séːˀ, nú ɛr di ándrə lɨːə vé ɔ fɔː mɔ́ːˀl.*	Se, nu er de andre lige ved at faa Maal.
sailor	*matróːˀs*	Matros
Darn it, I can't see.	*ɔ́ː fɔr pɔ́gər, jɛ ka égə séːˀ.*	Aah for Pokker, jeg kan ikke se.
This time there's a sailor in the way.	*dɛ́nə gáŋˀ ɛr dər en matróːˀs i vájˀən.*	Denne Gang er der en Matros i Vejen.
better	*bɛ́ðrə*	bedre
If he'd only move a little, I could see much better.	*ves han báːər vèlə fløͅdə sə léd, ku jɛ máəð bɛ́ðrə séːˀ.*	Hvis han bare vilde flytte sig lidt, kunde jeg meget bedre se.
The sailor		
quiet	*róːli*	rolig
Take it easy.	*báːər róːli.*	Bare rolig.
There won't be any goal this time.	*dɛr blìər égə mɔ́ːˀl dɛ́nə gáŋˀ.*	Der bliver ikke Maal denne Gang.
Peter (as the game ends)		
over	*fɔrbɨ́ːˀ*	forbi
won	*vanˀt*	vandt
zero	*nol*	Nul
Well, the game's over and we won one to nothing.	*já sɔ́ ɛr kámˀbən fɔrbɨ́ːˀ, ɔ vɨ́ vánˀd mɛ éd nól.*	Ja, saa er Kampen forbi, og vi vandt med et-Nul.
Tom		
What happens now?	*vá sga dər nú sgéːˀ?*	Hvad skal der nu ske?
Peter		
called *or* shouted	*rɔbt*	raabt
each other	*hinánən*	hinanden

presses *or* squeezes the hand	*trǿgər* *hɔ́nˀən*	trykker Haanden
When the two teams have cheered each other, the king comes down and shakes hands with all the players.	*nɔr di tó:ˀ hɔ́lˀ har rɔbd hurá: fɔr hinánən, kɔ̀mər kɔ́ŋən né:ˀð ɔ trǿgər álə sbélərnə i hɔ́nˀən.*	Naar de to Hold har raabt Hurra for hinanden, kommer Kongen ned og trykker alle Spillerne i Haanden.

2. Pronunciation Drill

In this unit we'll review the pronunciation of the three Danish vowels that are the least like any English vowel sounds: *y*, *ø* and *æ*, long and short. You remember that these three vowels are all said with the lips rounded or puckered as though you were going to say *oo* or to whistle. The *y:* and *y*, as you know, are made by saying the Danish vowels *i:* and *i* with your lips rounded, the *ø:* and *ø*, by saying Danish *e:* and *e* with your lips rounded, and the *æ:* and *æ*, by saying *ɛ:* and *ɛ* with your lips slightly rounded.

You have probably noticed by now that the sounds *ø:* and *æ:*, and *ø* and *æ* are very similar. Actually, though, your lips are more rounded and your tongue higher up in the front of your mouth for *ø:* and *ø* than for *æ:* and *æ*.

Listen for the difference in the following pairs of words:

kǿ:ər	køre	drive
gœ́:ər	gøre	do
hǿ:ˀr	hør!	listen!
fœ:ˀr	før	before
ǿnsgə	ønske	wish
svœ́mə	svømme	swim
bəgǿnˀdə	begyndte	began
sœ́nˀda	Søndag	Sunday

Now go through these sentences paying particular attention to the vowels in question.

mi:n søsdərs mánʔ ɛr tømərmɛ̀sdər.	Min Søsters Mand er Tømrermester.	My sister's husband is a carpenter.
di bó:ʔr i en bý:ʔ pɔ: fý:ʔn.	De bor i en By paa Fyn.	They live in a city on Fyn.
jɛ sýns di sga ta kýleŋ mɛ grœ́nsà:γər ɔ rø:ʔðgrø:ʔð mɛ flø:ðə.	Jeg synes, De skal tage Kylling med Grønsager og Rødgrød med Fløde.	I think you should have chicken and vegetables and fruit pudding with cream.
købənhávʔn ɛr en máəð hýgəli bý:ʔ.	København er en meget hyggelig By.	Copenhagen is a very nice city.
jɛ har løsd te ɔ prø:və dɛ́nʔ lý:sə frágə dɛ́:ʔr, ves dɛn égə ɛr fɔr dý:ʔr;	Jeg har Lyst til at prøve den lyse Frakke der, hvis den ikke er for dyr.	I'd like to try on that light coat, if it's not too expensive.
ve di prø:və ɔ mø:ðə maj pɔ: dɛ́də jœ́rnə tý:və minúdər ɔ̀vʔər sýʔv.	Vil De prøve at møde mig paa dette Hjørne tyve Minutter over syv?	Will you try to meet me on this corner at twenty minutes past seven?
han har tó:ʔ brøðrə ɔ fi:ər søsdrə.	Han har to Brødre og fire Søstre.	He has two brothers and four sisters.

3. Hints on Spelling

1. The combination of sounds [ɔj] is spelled with the letters *øj:*

høj	*hɔjʔ*	loud
Tøj	*tɔj*	clothes
Sæt Tøj	*sɛd tɔ́j*	suit
Snavsetøj	*snávsətɔ̀j*	dirty clothes
Øje, Øjne	*ɔ́jə, ɔ́jnə*	eye, eyes
Øjeblik	*ɔ́jəblɛ̀k*	moment
højre	*hɔ́jrə*	right
Fornøjelse	*fɔrnɔ́jʔəlsə*	pleasure, enjoyment

In a few words the combination [ɔj] is spelled with the letters *øg:*

røg, røget	*rɔjʔ, rɔ́jəð*	smoked

2. The combination of sounds [*aj*] is spelled with the letters *ej* or *eg:*

nej	*najˀ*	no, oh
Vej	*vajˀ*	way
arbejde, Arbejde	*árbajˀdə*	work (verb and noun)
rejse, Rejse	*rájsə*	travel, trip
Ejer	*ájˀər*	owner
Sejlsport	*sájlsbɔ̀rt*	sailing
jeg	*jaj/jε*	I
Steg	*sdajˀ*	roast
Lammesteg	*lámәsdàjˀ*	roast lamb
Regn	*rajˀn*	rain
Regning	*rájneŋ*	bill

In the following three words, the combination of sounds [*aj*] is spelled with the letters *ig:*

mig	*maj*	me
dig	*daj*	you
sig	*saj*	him, her, them

3. The [ð]-sound is spelled with the letter *d*, except in the ending *-et* where it is spelled with the letter *t*. Here are examples of the spelling *d:*

Tid	*ti:ˀð*	time
ned, nede	*ne:ˀð, né:ðə*	down
derned, dernede	*dέ:ˀrnè:ˀð, dέ:ˀrnè:ðə*	down there
herned, hernede	*hέ:ˀrnè:ˀð, hέ:ˀrnè:ðə*	down here
ved	*ve:ˀð/ve:ˀ*	know, knows
ved	*veð/ve*	by, at
Smed	*smeð*	blacksmith
med	*mεð/mε*	with, about
Sted	*sdεð*	place
Mad	*mað*	food
flad	*fla:ˀð*	flat
Blad	*blað*	blade
Barberblad	*barbé:ˀrblàð*	razor blade
god, gode	*go:ˀð/go:ˀ, gó:ðə/gó:ə*	good
lod	*lo:ˀð*	let
stod	*sdo:ˀð*	stood
forstod	*fɔrsdó:ˀð*	understood
imod	*imó:ˀð*	against
Kød	*køð*	meat
Brød	*brø:ˀð*	bread
Smørrebrød	*smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð*	open sandwiches

sød	*sǿ:ˀð*	nice, sweet
Grød	*grǿ:ˀð*	porridge
Rødgrød	*rǿ:ˀðgrø̀:ˀð*	fruit pudding
ud, ude	*u:ˀð, ú:ðə*	out
derud, derude	*dɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð, dɛ́:ˀrù:ðə*	out there
herud, herude	*hɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð, hɛ́:ˀrù:ðə*	out here
altid	*álˀtìðˀ*	always
udmærket	*úðmɛrgəð*	fine, excellent
Fodbold[1]	*fóðbɔ̀lˀt*	soccer
Fodboldkamp	*fóðbɔldkàmˀp*	soccer game
Side	*sí:ðə*	side
siden	*sí:ðən*	since
for . . . siden	*fɔr . . . sí:ðən*	ago
kan lide	*ka lí:ðə/ ka lí:ˀ*	like, likes
Nærheden	*nɛ́rhèðˀən*	vicinity
glæde sig til	*glɛ́:ðə saj tél*	look forward to
Gade	*gá:ðə*	street
lade, ladet	*lá:ðə/la, lá:ðəð/lat*	let
baade	*bɔ́:ðə*	both
Fløde	*flǿ:ðə*	cream
møde, Møde	*mǿ:ðə*	meet, meeting
udenfor	*ú:ðənfɔ̀r*	outside
Badetøj	*bá:ðətɔ̀j*	bathing things
Badeværelse	*bá:ðəvɛ̀:ərlsə*	bathroom
bedre	*bɛ́ðrə*	better

In the middle of some words the [ð]-sound is spelled with the letters *dd:*

hedde, hed, heddet	*héðə, he:ˀð, héðəð*	be called
sidde, sad, siddet	*séðə, sa:ˀð, séðəð*	sit

4. The [γ]-sound is spelled with the letter *g:*

og	*ɔγ/ɔ*	and
dog	*dɔγ*	for heaven's sakes
Tog	*tɔ:ˀγ*	train
Lyntog	*lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγ*	express train
Vogn	*vɔγˀn*	car
Sporvogn	*sbórvɔ̀γˀn*	street car
Spisevogn	*sbí:səvɔ̀γˀn*	dining car

---

[1] Notice that the *d* at the end of this word stands for the [t]-sound.

bagefter	*bá:ˀγɛ̀fdər/bá:ˀɛ̀fdər*	afterwards
Sagfører	*sáγfǿ:ər*	lawyer
Færge	*fɛ́rγə*	ferry
Norge	*nɔ́rγə*	Norway
spørge	*sbœ́rγə/sbœ́rə*	ask
tilbage	*telbá:γə/tebá:γə*	back
besøge, besøgte, besøgt[1]	*bəsǿ:ˀγə,* *bəsǿgdə,* *bəsǿgt*	visit, visited
ligne	*lí:γnə/lí:nə*	look like, resemble
Læge	*lɛ́:γə*	doctor
Dag, Dage	*da:ˀγ/da:ˀ, dá:γə/dá:ə*	day, days
smage	*smá:γə*	taste

You will notice that in many of these words the g is not always pronounced.

6. Here are a number of new words from this unit that you can read easily:

Sang	*saŋˀ*	song
Gang	*gaŋˀ*	time
Kamp	*kamˀp*	game
snart	*sna:ˀrt*	soon
svensk	*svɛnˀsk*	Swedish
Nul	*nol*	zero
Maal	*mɔ:ˀl*	goal
Bold[2]	*bɔlˀt*	ball
Sport	*sbɔrt*	sport
Løb[3]	*lø:ˀp*	race
spille	*sbélə*	play
Spiller	*sbélər*	player
sikker, sikre[4]	*ségər, ségrə*	sure
bare	*bá:ər*	only
Dansker	*dánsgər*	Dane
Flaske	*flásgə*	bottle
disse	*dísə*	these
raabe, raabte	*rɔ́:bə, rɔ́bdə*	call, called
trykke	*trǿgə*	press, squeeze

---

[1] Notice that in the last two forms where it comes before *t*, the *g* corresponds to [g], not [γ].

[2] Notice that the *d* here corresponds to the [t] -sound.

[3] See *Word Study*, page 472.

[4] See *Word Study*, page 473.

Pølse	*pølsə*	frankfurt	Svømning	*svœ́mneŋ*	swimming
hurra	*hurá:*	hurrah	forklare	*fɔrklá:ˀər*	explain
forbi	*fɔrbí:ˀ*	by, over	eneste	*é:nəsdə*	single
Matros	*matró:ˀs*	sailor	Orkester	*ɔrkɛ́sdər*	orchestra
Soldat	*soldá:ˀt*	soldier	Tennis	*tɛ́nes*	tennis

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. **Word Study** (Individual Study)

1. Review of the Danish words for "it"

A.

Observe these sentences:

de (*mid kø:ərkɔ̀rt*) *légər jɛ́mə pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	Det (mit Kørekort) ligger hjemme paa Bordet.	It (my license) is at home on the table.
dé (*vánˀəð*) *ɛr vésd álˀd fɔr kɔ́lˀd fɔr máj.*	Det (Vandet) er vist alt for koldt for mig.	It (the water) is probably much too cold for me.
vɔ́r sé:ˀr **de** (*sónˀəð*) *dájlid ú:ˀð.*	Hvor ser det (Sundet) dejligt ud!	Isn't it (the sound) lovely!
mɛn **de** (*de sɛd tɔ́j*) *var nu ɔ́sə rɛ́d dý:ˀrt;*	Men det (det Sæt Tøj) var nu ogsaa ret dyrt.	It (the suit of clothes) was really quite expensive though.
sgu jɛ gɔ: tebá:ɣə ɔ fɔ́:ˀ **dən** (*en tánbœ̀rsdə*);	Skulde jeg gaa tilbage at faa den (en Tandbørste)?	Should I go back and get it (a toothbrush)?

já, **dέn** *(barbέ:ʔrmasgì:nən) ser máəð gó:ʔ ú:ʔð;*	Ja, den (Barbermaskinen) ser meget god ud.	Yes, it (the razor) looks pretty good.
nέ:, **dεn** *(sɔ́mərən) ε égə álʔtìðʔ sɔ várʔm sɔm i ɔ́:ʔr;*	Næh, den (Sommeren) er ikke altid saa varm som i Aar	No, it (the summer) is not always as warm as this year.
dεn *(biográ:ʔfən) bəgø̀nʔər klɔ̀gən sýʔ;*	Den (Biografen) begynder Klokken syv.	It (the movie) begins at seven o'clock.
dεn *(klɔ́gən) εr tɔ́lʔ;*	Den (Klokken) er tolv.	It's twelve (o'clock).

Look at the words printed in heavy type. In these sentences *de* and *dεn* stand for or take the place of the nouns given in parentheses.

Notice:

1. that if you used the noun in parentheses in any of these sentences instead of *de* or *dεn*, the sentence would still make good sense. But since the noun has been used in the conversation just before the sentences quoted, as you will see if you look back at the *Basic Sentences* from which the examples are taken, you use *de* or *dεn* to avoid repeating the noun. This is what we mean when we say that *de* and *dεn* stand for or take the place of the nouns.
2. that *de* takes the place of et-nouns and *dεn* takes the place of en-nouns.

B.

Now look at these sentences.

dé *ε álʔtìðʔ entrəsánʔd ɔ sé:ʔ nɔ́:əð nýt.*	Det er altid interessant at se noget nyt.	It's always interesting to see something new.
de *ka gɔ́d blí:ə kɔ́lʔd hέ:ʔr ɔm áfdənən;*	Det kan godt blive koldt her om Aftenen.	It can get pretty cold here in the evening.

la mə fɔ́:ˀ tý:və lídər. vɔr máəð ɛr **dé?**	Lad mig faa tyve Liter. Hvor meget er det?	Let me have twenty liters. How much is it?
sné:ˀr **de** *máəð;*	Sner det meget?	Does it snow much?
dá:ənə ɛr máəð kɔ́rdə ɔm vénˀdərən, mɛn **dé** *ɛ sɔm ré:ˀəl mílˀt;*	Dagene er meget korte om Vinteren, men det er som Regel mildt.	The days are very short in the winter, but it's generally mild.
dé *ɛ en dájli áfdən;*	Det er en dejlig Aften.	It's a beautiful evening.

Pay particular attention to the word *de* in these sentences.

Notice:

1. that here *de* does not stand for or take the place of any particular noun. It just has a general meaning like that of "it" in the corresponding English sentences.
2. that in the next to the last sentence *de* does not stand for *vénˀdərən*, but has the same vague general meaning it does in *sné:ˀr de máəð;*
3. that you have *de* in the last sentence although the noun in this sentence is an en-noun, because here *de* doesn't really stand for the noun. You can't substitute *en dájli áfdən* for *de* and have the sentence make good sense. (See note A.)

In general then, we can make the following statement about the Danish words for "it": you use *dɛn* if it definitely stands for an en-noun; otherwise you use *de*.

However, in the *Basic Sentences* of Unit 16 you had the following:

snábs! nɔ́, vá sýns di ɔm **dé?**	Snaps? Naa, hvad synes De om det?	*Snaps?* Well, what do you think of it?

ku di lí:ˀ **de;**	Kunde De lide det?	Did you like it?
já **dé** *var ég sɔ dɔ́rlit;*	Ja, det var ikke saa daarligt.	Yes, it's not so bad!

Notice that although *snabs* is an en-noun, still you refer to it here with the word *de*, not *dɛn*. In Danish if you're referring to *Snaps*, coffee, chicken, etc. in general, you use *de* whether the noun is an en-noun or an et-noun, as in the above sentences. But if you're speaking of the particular *Snaps* or coffee or chicken that you're drinking or eating at the moment, then you use *dɛn*. For example:

vórdən ɛr kýleŋˀən?	Hvordan er Kyllingen?	How's the chicken?
dɛ́n ɛ dájli.	Den er dejlig.	It's wonderful.

C.

Look at these sentences.

ɛr hún gift;	Er hun gift?	Is she married?
já dé ɛ́r hun;	Ja, det er hun.	Yes, she is.
sɔ́ láŋˀd ka jɛ égə síglə.	Saa langt kan jeg ikke cykle.	I can't bike that far.
ɔ́ sɛføləli ká di dé.	Aah, selvfølgelig kan De det.	Of course you can.
jɛ mɔ: sí:ə vi ar vὲ:ərð máəð hɛ́ldiə mɛ vɛ́:ˀərð.	Jeg maa sige, vi har været meget heldige med Vejret.	I must say we've been very lucky with the weather.
já dé há:ˀr vi.	Ja, det har vi.	Yes, we have.
vɔr lɛ́ŋə sga di vὲ:ər vɛ́k?	Hvor længe skal De være væk?	How long are you going to be away?
dé vé:ˀ jɛ égə bəsdɛ́mˀt;	Det ved jeg ikke bestemt.	I don't know for sure.

ràjsər di pɔ: fœ́rsdə klásə;	Rejser De paa første Klasse?	Are you travelling first class?
já dé gœ́r jɛ.	Ja, det gør jeg.	Yes, I am. ('Yes I do.')
la əs kǿ:ər ɔ́b láŋˀs kǿsdən ɔ sé:ˀ pɔ: sónˀəð; sɔ́ ka vi jo: kǿ:ər jɛ́mˀ gɛ́nˀəm lánˀəð;	Lad os køre op langs Kysten at se paa Sundet. Saa kan vi jo køre hjem gennem Landet.	Let's drive up along the coast and look at the sound. Then we can come home through the country.
já dé sýns jɛ vi sgál.	Ja, det synes jeg vi skal.	Yes, that's a good idea. ('Yes, I think we should (do) that.')

We've mentioned expressions like those given in heavy type above before, but since they are very common in Danish and since they're a little different from the corresponding English expressions, we'll bring them to your attention again here.

As you see, these are all short expressions that refer back to something that has just been said. They leave out a great deal of the original statement or question. Notice that they differ from the corresponding English expressions in that they are all completed by the word *de* which really stands for the part of the preceding sentence that is not repeated. For instance, in the first example *de* stands for *gift,* in the second example it stands for *síglə sɔ láŋˀt,* etc. Notice, too, that the *de* often comes at the beginning so that the sentence has inverted word order.

2. Danish equivalents of "that" and "those"

1. *sé:ˀ* **dɛ́nˀ** *pí:ə dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə.*	Se den Pige derovre!	Look at that girl over there.
2. *jɛ ka égə sé:ˀ fɔr* **dɛ́nˀ** *soldá:ˀd, ka dú;*	Jeg kan ikke se for den Soldat, kan du?	I can't see around that soldier, can you?
3. *dɛ́r var du lí:ə ve ɔ kǿ:ər* **dɛ́nˀ** *mánˀ né:ˀð.*	Der var du lige ved at køre den Mand ned.	You almost ran that man down.
4. *jɛ há:ˀr kón* **dɛ́nˀ** *kófərd, dɛr sdɔ́:ˀr dɛ́:ˀr i jœ́rnəð;*	Jeg har kun den Kuffert, der staar der i Hjørnet.	I only have that suitcase that's standing there in the corner.

5. **dɛ́n?** (*en kófərt*) *ka jɛ sɛ́l? ta mɛ́.*	Den (en Kuffert) kan jeg selv tage med.	I can take that (a suitcase) right along with me.
6. *dé ɛ mé:ər ɛn jɛ́ ve bəlá:?lə fɔr* **dé** *vɛ́:ərlsə.*	Det er mere end jeg vil betale for det Værelse.	That's more than I want to pay for that room.
7. *ɛr dər tí:?ð te* **dé**;	Er der Tid til det?	Is there time for that?
8. *har du sé:?d* **dí** *ɔ́jnə;*	Har du set de Øjne?	Have you seen those eyes?

Look at the words in heavy type in these sentences. The Danish equivalent of "that", as you see, is either *dɛn?* or *de*. Notice that it is *dɛn?* when it is used with an en-noun, as in *dɛ́n? pí:ə, dɛ́n? soldá:?t*, etc., or when it stands for an en-noun, as in *dɛ́n? ka jɛ sɛ́l? ta mɛ́*. And it is *de* when it is used with an et-noun as in *dé vɛ́:ərlsə*, when it stands for an et-noun (you haven't actually had any examples of this usage as yet), and when it doesn't stand for any special noun, as in the seventh sentence above. The Danish equivalent of "those" is *di*, as you can see in the last sentence.

You know that *dɛn*, *de* and *di* also correspond to English "the" and that *dɛn* and *de* correspond to "it" and *di* to "they". Notice, however, that when these words mean "that" or "those" they are always strongly stressed (said very emphatically) and *dɛn?* has the catch, while when they mean "the" and "it" or "they", they are generally not stressed and *dɛn* doesn't have the catch.

An adjective after *dɛn?*, or *de* meaning "that" has the ə-form.

B.

Now look at this sentence which is taken from the *Listening In* of Unit 8.

sɔ́:? di dé vɛ́:ərlsə di sga há;	Saa De det Værelse, De skal have?	Did you see the room you're going to have?

In this sentence, as you see, *de* seems to be used to correspond to English "the" even though there is no adjective before the noun *vɛ́:ərlsə*. Notice, though, that *de* is stressed and that the clause *di sga há* which follows *dé* *vɛ́:ərlsə* describes or points out the room that is being talked about. Look closely at the words *dɛnʔ*, *de* and *di* in the following new sentences that are made up of words you know:

vɔrdán var **dɛ́nʔ** *sdájʔ i feg te méda i gɔ́:ʔr?*	Hvordan var den Steg, I fik til Middag i Gaar?	How was the roast you had for dinner last night?
vɔ́:ʔr légər **dɛ́nʔ** *resdoráŋ vi sga sbí:sə pɔ́:ʔ?*	Hvor ligger den Restaurant, vi skal spise paa?	Where's the restaurant we're going to eat in?
har du sé:ʔd **dé** *slébs hán ar kø̂bt.*	Har du set det Slips, han har købt?	Have you seen the tie he bought?
dɛ́nʔ *mánʔ jɛ tɛ́ŋgər pɔ́:ʔ mɔ: vɛ̀:ər ɔ́vʔər hɛlfjɛ́rs.*	Den Mand jeg tænker paa, maa være over halvfjerds.	The man I'm thinking of must be over seventy.
han bó:ʔr pɔ: **dé** *hotɛ́lʔ lí:ə ve sdasjó:ʔnən.*	Han bor paa det Hotel lige ved Stationen.	He lives in the hotel near the station.
de ɛ **dé** *par sgó:ʔ jɛ mé:ʔnər.*	Det er det Par Sko, jeg mener.	That's the pair of shoes I mean.
ɛr de **dɛ́nʔ** *frágə han ar kø̂bd te hénə;*	Er det den Frakke, han har købt til hende?	Is that the coat he bought her?
ɛr de égə **dí** *býgneŋʔər vi sɔ́:ʔ i mɔ́rəs;*	Er det ikke de Bygninger, vi saa i Morges?	Aren't those the buildings we saw this morning?

Notice:

1. that the words *dɛnʔ*, *de* and *di* which are in heavy type are stressed.
2. that the corresponding word in the English sentences is "the".
3. that the nouns that are preceded by *dɛnʔ*, *de* and *di* are followed by groups of words which describe those nouns.

Although the English equivalent of *dɛnʔ*, *de* and *di* in these sentences is "the", the fact that these words are stressed and that *dɛnʔ* has the catch shows that they really have the meaning "that". What you say in Danish really is "How was that roast you had for dinner yesterday?", "That man I'm thinking of must be over seventy.", "Isn't it those buildings we saw this morning?", etc.

So you see that when you have an expression corresponding to English "the" plus a noun and that noun is followed by a descriptive phrase or clause like those above, you use in Danish not the the-form of the noun, but either *dɛnʔ*, *de* or *di* stressed and followed by the regular basic form of the noun.

3. Danish equivalents of "this" and "these"

dɛ́nə *gáŋʔ ɛr dər en matró:ʔs i vájʔən.*	Denne Gang er der en Matros i Vejen.	This time there's a sailor in the way.
ka i égə prǿ:və ɔ fénə é:ʔn pɔ: **dɛ́nə** *sɪ́:ðə;*	Kan I ikke prøve at finde en paa denne Side?	Can't you try to find one on this side?
jɛ tró:ʔr **dɛ́nə hɛ́:ʔr** *(en frágə) ɛr fɔr lɪ́lə.*	Jeg tror denne her (en Frakke) er for lille.	I think this one (a coat) is too small.
jɛ sgu a **dɛ́də** *sɛd tɔ́j sɛ́nʔd te rɛnsərɪ́:ʔəð.*	Jeg skulde have dette Sæt Tøj sendt til Renseriet.	I should have this suit sent to the cleaners.
vi ka mǿ:ðəs hɛ́:ʔr pɔ: **dɛ́də** *jǽrnə ɔm en hálʔ tɪ́:mə.*	Vi kan mødes her paa dette Hjørne om en halv Time.	we can meet here on this corner in half an hour.
ka di égə lɪ́:ʔ **dɛ́də hɛ́:ʔr;** *(ed vɛ́:ərlsə)*	Kan De ikke lide dette her (et Værelse)?	Don't you like this one (a room)?

Look at the words in heavy type. As you can see, the Danish equivalent of "this" is *dɛ́nə* with en-nouns and *dɛ́də* with et-nouns. The Danish equivalent of "these" which you haven't had yet is *dísə* (disse). An adjective coming after *dɛ́nə*, *dɛ́də* or *dísə* has the ə-form.

Notice the expressions *dέnə hέ:ˀr* and *dέdə hέ:ˀr* in the last example in each group. (The nouns they stand for are given in parentheses). Expressions like these are quite common in spoken Danish, even with a noun as, for instance, *dέnə frágə hέ:ˀr*, *dέdə vέ:erlsə hέ:ˀr*, etc. You will also hear in spoken Danish *dέnˀ hέ:ˀr*, *dé hέ:ˀr* and *dí hέ:ˀr* used to mean "this" and "these" in contrast to *dέnˀ dέ:ˀr*, *dé dέ:ˀr* and *dí dέ:ˀr* which mean "that" and "those".

4. Danish equivalent of "as . . . as"

Look at these three sentences.

sɔ sná:ˀrd *kɔ́ŋər kɔ́mˀər, sbélər ɔrkέsdərəð nasjoná:ˀlsàŋˀən.*	Saa snart Kongen kommer, spiller Orkesteret Nationalsangen.	As soon as the king comes, the orchestra'll play the national anthem.
hán kǿ:ˀr **sɔ hórdi** *de pásər ham.*	Han kører saa hurtigt, det passer ham.	He goes as fast as he pleases.
dɛn ɛ égə áltiðˀ **sɔ várˀm sɔm** *i ɔ́:ˀr;*	Den er ikke altid saa varm som i Aar.	It's not always as warm as this year.

Look at the words in heavy type in these sentences. Notice that after *sɔ sná:ˀrt* you have the clause (a group of words with a subject and verb of its own) *kɔ́ŋən kɔ́mˀər*, and after *sɔ hórdi* you have the clause *de pásər ham.* Thus you see that the Danish equivalent of English "as . . . as" is just *sɔ* . . . when a clause follows.

Now notice that after *sɔ várˀm sɔm* you don't have a clause but just the words *i ɔ́:ˀr*. Thus you see that the Danish equivalent of "as . . . as" is *sɔ* . . . *sɔm* when it is not a clause that follows. *sɔ* . . . *sɔm* is sometimes used before a clause too, but not as commonly as just *sɔ* . . . .

5. Two ways to say "both"

Look at the following sentence:

vi ar **bɔ̀:ðə** *svǿmneŋ sájlsbɔ̀rd ɔ sígəllǿ:ˀp.*	Vi har baade Svømning, Sejlsport og Cykelløb.	We have (both) swimming, and sailing and bicycle races.

As you see, the word *bɔ́:ðə*, which is printed in heavy type in this sentence, corresponds to English "both". There is another Danish word, *bɛ́gə* (begge), which also corresponds to "both". Notice how it is used in the following sentences:

jɛ sga nɔ́g fɔ: sɛnʔd págər te dəm bɛ́gə lí:ə sɔ sná:ʔrd jɛ fɔr tí:ʔð.	Jeg skal nok faa sendt Pakker til dem begge, lige saa snart jeg faar Tid.	I'll send packages to both of them just as soon as I get time.
ves égə di bɛ́gə ka kɔ́mə, sɔ́ hɔ́:bər jɛ a ɛ́ndən dɛn é:nə ɛ́lər dɛn ánən ka nɔ́:ʔ də.	Hvis ikke de begge kan komme, saa haaber jeg, at enten den ene eller den anden kan naa det.	If they can't both come, I hope one or the other of them can make it.
tɔ́mʔ ɔ pé:ʔdər har bɛ́gə bilɛ́dər te de kɔ́ŋəliə teá:ʔdər, ɔ di sga dɛrhɛ́nʔ i áfdən.	Tom og Peter har begge Billetter til det kongelige Teater, og de skal derhen i Aften.	Tom and Peter both have tickets to the royal theatre and are going there tonight.

If you compare these three sentences with the one above, you will see that *bɛ́gə* is the general Danish word corresponding to "both", but if you're saying "both this and that", then you use *bɔ́:ðə . . . ɔ*, 'both . . . and'.

6. Special ways of saying things

A.

ɛr de fœ́rsdə gáŋʔ du sé:ʔr en fóðbɔldkàmʔp;	Er det første Gang, du ser en Fodboldkamp?	Is this the first time you've seen a soccer game?

Notice that in Danish you really say "Is this the first time you *see* a soccer game?", using the present form of the verb *se:ʔr*, instead of a verb phrase like English "have seen". So the Danish equivalent of "Was that the first time you'd seen a soccer game?" is *var de fœ́rsdə gáŋʔ du sɔ́:ʔ en fóðbɔldkàmʔp;* with the past form of the verb in both clauses.

B.

ɔ da klɔ́gən var éd bəsdèldə sàɣfø̀ɤər knúsən smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð ɔ snábs.	Og da Klokken var et, bestilte Sagfører Knudsen Smørrebrød og Snaps.	And when it was one o'clock, Mr. Knudsen ordered sandwiches and *Snaps.*
mɛn di kun da umú:ˀli fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ de hé:lə.	Men De kunde da umuligt forstaa det hele.	But you didn't really understand it all?
dé var da dájlit;	Det var da dejligt.	That's swell!

You know that *da* sometimes means "when", as in the first example above. It is also used to make a sentence more emphatic, as in the next two examples, in which case it has no exact English equivalent.

7. Compounds

Here are the new compounds you learned in this unit:

noun + noun

fóðbɔ̀lˀt (Fodbold) soccer = **fo:ˀð** (Fod) foot + **bɔlˀt** (Bold) ball

fóðbɔldkàmˀp (Fodboldkamp) soccer game = **fóðbɔ̀lˀt** (Fodbold) soccer + **kamˀp** (Kamp) game

sájlsbɔ̀rt (Sejlsport) sailing = **sajˀl** (Sejl) sail + **sbɔrt** (Sport) sport

sígəllø̀:ˀp (Cykelløb) bicycle race = **sígəl** (Cykel) bicycle + **lø:ˀp** (Løb) race

adjective + noun

nasjoná:ˀlsàŋˀ (Nationalsang) national anthem = **nasjoná:ˀl** (national) national + **saŋˀ** (Sang) song

8. Irregular verbs

vénə (vinde) win	*vanˀt* (vandt) won	*vónəð* (vundet) won

The verb *rɔ́:bə*, 'call, shout' has a short vowel in the past form and the participle: *rɔ́bdə*, raabte, *rɔbt*, raabt.

9. An irregular noun

The form *hénˀər*, 'hands', which you learned in this unit is the irregular plural of the noun *hɔnˀ*, 'hand'.

10. An adjective to notice.

In this unit you learned the word *ségərt*, 'surely', which is the t-form of the adjective *ségər*, 'sure'. The ə-form of this adjective is *ségrə*. Notice that the *ə* before the *r* is dropped out in the ə-form. This is true of all adjectives whose basic forms end in *ər*.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. In the following sentences change all the Danish words for "this" to "that", for "these" to "those", and vice versa.

1.	*jɛ sýns dɛ́nˀ resdoráŋ ɛr fɔr dý:ˀr.*	Jeg synes, den Restaurant er for dyr.
2.	*tror du du ka síglə pɔ: dɛ́nə sígəl;*	Tror du, du kan cykle paa denne Cykel?
3.	*jɛ hɔ́:bər du ka brú:ə dísə sɔ́gər.*	Jeg haaber, du kan bruge disse Sokker.
4.	*jɛ vèlə máəð gɛ́rnə nɔ́:ˀ dé tɔ́:ˀɣ.*	Jeg vilde meget gerne naa det Tog.
5.	*jɛ sýns dɛ́nə frágə pásər ham gɔ́t.*	Jeg synes, denne Frakke passer ham godt.
6.	*jɛ sýns égə dɛ́nə kýleŋ smá:ɣər gɔ́t.*	Jeg synes ikke, denne Kylling smager godt.
7.	*du ka ségərd fɔ́:ˀ en barbé:ˀrmasgì:nə i dɛ́nˀ fɔrɛ́dneŋ.*	Du kan sikkert faa en Barbermaskine i den Forretning.
8.	*jɛ ve égə brú:ə dɛ́də rɛnsərí:ˀ mé:ər.*	Jeg vil ikke bruge dette Renseri mere.
9.	*dí sgjórdər ɛr fɔr smɔ́:ˀ té maj.*	De Skjorter er for smaa til mig.
10.	*de var pɔ: dɛ́də jœ́rnə hán poŋté:ˀərðə.*	Det var paa dette Hjørne, han punkterede.

B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the proper Danish word for "it".

1. *——— var kɔ́lʔd i gɔ́:ʔr ɔ ——— sné:əðə hé:lə dá:ʔən.*	——— var koldt i Gaar, og ——— sneede hele Dagen.
2. *vɔrdán ɛ snábsən? ——— ɛr mɛ́gdi gó:ʔ.*	Hvordan er Snapsen? ——— er mægtig god.
3. *——— ɛr dɛn bɛ́sdə vɩ:ʔn jɛ nó:ən sénə har fɔ́:əð.*	——— er den bedste Vin, jeg nogen Sinde har faaet.
4. *vɔrdán var ɔrkɛ́sdərəð i gɔr áfdəs?* *——— var mɛ́gdi gɔ́t.*	Hvordan var Orkesteret i Gaar Aftes? ——— var mægtig godt.
5. *vɔ́:ʔr ər di:n vɔ́ɣʔn hɛ́nə?* *——— sdɔ́:ʔr hɛ́nə pɔ: bɛnsɩ:ʔntàŋʔgən.*	Hvor er din Vogn henne? ———staar henne paa Benzintanken.
6. *dé ɛ de bɛ́sdə hɔ́lʔ vi há:ʔr, ɔ ——— vénʔər álʔtɩð?.*	Det er det bedste Hold vi har, og ——— vinder altid.
7. *tá:lən var léŋərə ɛn jɛ hà:ðə tró:ʔəð;* *já vár ——— égə;*	Talen var længere end jeg havde troet. Ja, var ——— ikke?
8. *vɔrdán ɛr vánʔəð i dá:ʔ?* *——— ɛ égə réd kɔ́lʔt.*	Hvordan er Vandet i Dag? ——— er ikke ret koldt.

C. Answer the following questions in Danish.

1. *har du tɩ:ʔð te ɔ vɛ́ndə ed ɔ́jəblɛ̀k;*	Har du Tid til at vente et Øjeblik?
2. *har du vɛ̀:ərð i vánʔəð i ɔ́:ʔr;*	Har du været i Vandet i Aar?
3. *ka du lɩ:ʔ ɔ kǿ:ər pɔ: sígəl;*	Kan du lide at køre paa Cykel?
4. *har poləlɩ:ʔəð nó:ən sénə sdánsəð daj pɔ gá:ðən;*	Har Politiet nogen Sinde standset dig paa Gaden?
5. *ka du ha mé:ʔr en tý:və lɩ́dər bɛnsɩ:ʔn pɔ: di:n vɔ́ɣʔn;*	Kan du have mere end tyve Liter Benzin paa din Vogn?
6. *lɛ̀gər gɔ́:ʔərn láŋʔd hərfrá:ʔ;*	Ligger Gaarden langt herfra?

7. *kǿbdə du rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t;*	Købte du Returbillet?
8. *gɔ́:ˀr tɔ́:ˀɣəð fra hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn;*	Gaar Toget fra Hovedbanegaarden?
9. *har du kón ɛ́:ˀn kófərt;*	Har du kun een Kuffert?
10. *ka man sé:ˀ sónˀəð fra díd véndu;*	Kan man se Sundet fra dit Vindue?

D. Change the English words in parentheses in the following sentences into Danish.

1. *vi ka gɔ́:ˀ* (as soon as) *han ar bətá:ˀld rájneŋˀən.*	Vi kan gaa, (*as soon as*) han har betalt Regningen.
2. *dɔ́gdərən kɔ́mˀər* (as fast as) *han kánˀ.*	Doktoren kommer, (*as fast as*) han kan.
3. *han ɛ égə* (as nice as) *si:n bró:r.* (Use *pɛ:ˀn.*)	Han er ikke (*as nice as*) sin Bror.
4. (As soon as) *vi kɔm ú:ðənfɔr bý:ˀən, bəgǿnˀd dé ɔ sné:ˀ.*	(*As soon as*) vi kom uden for Byen, begyndte det at sne.
5. *hɛ́:ˀr ka di kǿ:ər* (as fast as) *di vél.*	Her kan De køre (*as fast as*), De vil.
6. *i dá:ˀ ɛr de* (as warm as) *en sɔ́mərdà:ˀ.*	I Dag er det (*as warm as*) en Sommerdag.
7. *dé vɛ́:ərlsə dɛ́:ˀr ɛr égə* (as light as) *dɛ́də hɛ́:ˀr.*	Det Værelse der er ikke (*as light as*) dette her.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercises as your Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Peter's father and mother are talking in their home.

fru ánərsən	*Fru Andersen*
jɛ ka da égə fərsdɔ́:ʔ vɔ́rfɔr pé:ʔdər ɔ tɔ́mʔ égə ɛr kɔ́məð jɛ́mʔ enú.	Jeg kan da ikke forstaa, hvorfor Peter og Tom ikke er kommet hjem endnu.
di ku gɔ́d réŋə ɔ sí:ə, ves di égə kɔ́mʔər.	De kunde godt ringe at sige, hvis de ikke kommer.
hɛr ánərsən	*Herr Andersen*
bá:ər ró:li lílə mó:r.	Bare rolig, lille Mor.
du vé:ʔ jo: a di ɛ te fóðbɔldkàmʔp.	Du ved jo, at de er til Fodboldkamp.
di kɔ́mʔər nɔ́g sɔ sná:ʔrd di kánʔ, ɛ́lʔərs vel di ségərd réŋə.	De kommer nok, saa snart de kan, ellers vilde de sikkert ringe.
jɛ́ vèlə gɛ́rnə sɛ́lʔ ha vɛ́:ərð te dɛ́nʔ kámʔp.	Jeg vilde gerne selv have været til den Kamp.
de ɛ jo: égə vɛ́:ʔr dá:ʔ a dánmarg sbélər imó:ʔð svɛ́rʔi.	Det er jo ikke hver Dag, at Danmark spiller imod Sverrig.

dɩ́ vánˀd jo: sɩ́sdə ɔ́:ˀr, sɔ jɛ hɔ́:bər da vɩ́ vénˀər dɛ́nə gáŋˀ.

fru ánərsən

já dé hɔ́:bər jɛ ɔ́sə.

mɛn de ka da égə vὲ:ər sɔ mórsɔmˀd fɔr tɔ́mˀ ɔ sé:ˀ pɔ:ˀ, hán fərsdɔ́:ˀr vɛl égə máəð á de.

han ar vesd áldri fœ́:ˀr vὲ:ərð te fóðbɔldkàmˀp.

hɛr ánərsən

jɛ́ tró:ˀr nɔ́g han ve fərsdɔ́:ˀ de alɩ́:əvὲlˀ.

ɛ́lˀərs fərklá:ˀər pé:ˀdər ham de ségərt.

fru ánərsən

já jɛ sga áldri glɛ́mə da dú to maj te dɛn dánˀsg svɛ́nsgə fóðbɔldkàmˀb lɩ́:ə énən vi ble gɩ́ft.

vɔ́r vi dɔɣ mó:ərðə ɔs.

hɛr ánərsən

dé var égə imó:ˀð svɛ́rˀi vi sbéləðə dɛ́nˀ gáŋˀ, dé var imó:ˀð nɔ́rɣə;

fru ánərsən

já dé ɛr ɔ́sə sánˀt.

hɛr ánərsən

já, fóðbɔ̀lˀd ɛr en dájli sbɔ́rd, mɛn jɛ́ ka nu alɩ́:əvɛl bɛ́ðrə lɩ́:ˀ sájlsbɔ̀rd ɔ svǽmneŋ.

De vandt jo sidste Aar, saa jeg haaber da, vi vinder denne Gang.

Fru Andersen

Ja, det haaber jeg ogsaa.

Men det kan da ikke være saa morsomt for Tom at se paa, han forstaar vel ikke meget af det.

Han har vist aldrig før været til Fodboldkamp.

Herr Andersen

Jeg tror nok, han vil forstaa det alligevel.

Ellers forklarer Peter ham det sikkert.

Fru Andersen

Ja, jeg skal aldrig glemme, da du tog mig til den dansk-svenske Fodboldkamp, lige inden vi blev gift.

Hvor vi dog morede os.

Herr Andersen

Det var ikke imod Sverrig, vi spillede dengang, det var imod Norge.

Fru Andersen

Ja, det er ogsaa sandt.

Herr Andersen

Ja, Fodbold er en dejlig Sport, men jeg kan nu alligevel bedre lide Sejlsport og Svømning.

fru ánərsən

di sísdə par ɔ́:ˀr har máŋə mɛ́nəsgər vɛ̀:ərð máəð mé:ər entrəsé:ˀərð i sígəllǿ:ˀp.

hɛr ánərsən

já dé kɛ́nər jɛ égə sɔ máəð tel, sɔ dé entrəsé:ˀər maj égə.

2. *Tom and Peter return.*

pé:ˀdər

ví vánˀd mɛ éd nól.

i ka tró:ˀ de var en sbɛ́nənə kámˀp.

fru ánərsən

mɔ: jɛ sbœ́rə vɔr i har vɛ̀:ərð hɛ́nə sɔ lɛ́ŋə.

i ka da égə ha vɛ̀:ərð te fóðbɔldkàmˀb hé:lə tí:ˀðən.

har i sbí:ˀst;

tɔmˀ

já ták.

ví feg bɔ́:ðə en flásgə ǿl ɔ no:n pǿlsər;

fru ánərsən

mɛn dé ɛ jo: égə nɔ́:əð ɔ tá:lə ɔ́mˀ.

Fru Andersen

De sidste Par Aar har mange Mennesker været meget mere interesseret i Cykelløb.

Herr Andersen

Ja, det kender jeg ikke saa meget til, saa det interesserer mig ikke.

Peter

Vi vandt med et-Nul.

I kan tro, det var en spændende Kamp.

Fru Andersen

Maa jeg spørge, hvor I har været henne saa længe?

I kan da ikke have været til Fodboldkamp hele Tiden.

Har I spist?

Tòm

Ja Tak.

Vi fik baade en Flaske Øl og nogle Pølser.

Fru Andersen

Men det er jo ikke noget at tale om.

pé:ˀdər

nájˀ mɛn da kámˀbən var fɔrbɩ:ˀ, mɔ̀də jɛ gɩ:ˀ en méda, fɔrdɩ:ˀ dánsgərnə vánˀɩ.

ɔ dɛ́nˀ var égə dɔ́rli ka du lɩ́:ə tró:ˀ.

fru ánərsən

var dər fúlˀd hú:ˀs;

tɔmˀ

já vi ku égə sé:ˀ fɔr mɛ́nəsgər, ɔ dɛr var máŋə soldá:ˀdər ɔ matró:ˀsər.

hɛr ánərsən

sɩər i vɩ́rgli a svɛ́rˀi égə fég ed é:nəsdə mɔ́:ˀl;

pé:ˀdər

já mɛn di var lɩ́:ə vé de ed par gáŋə.

fru ánərsən

i kɔm vɛl égə fɔr sé:ˀnɩ;

klɔ́gən var jo máŋə da i to a sdɛ́ð;

pé:ˀdər

nájˀ vɩ kɔmˀ lɩ́:ə énən ɔrkésdərəð bəgə̂nˀdə ɔ sbélə nasjoná:ˀ lsàŋˀən.

hɛr ánərsən

sɔ́:ˀ i kɔ́ŋən;

Peter

Nej, men da Kampen var forbi, maatte jeg give en Middag, fordi Danskerne vandt.

Og den var ikke daarlig, kan du lige tro.

Fru Andersen

Var der fuldt Hus?

Tom

Ja, vi kunde ikke se for Mennesker, og der var mange Soldater og Matroser.

Herr Andersen

Siger I virkelig, at Sverrig ikke fik et eneste Maal?

Peter

Ja, men de var lige ved det et Par Gange.

Fru Andersen

I kom vel ikke for sent?

Klokken var jo mange, da I tog af Sted.

Peter

Nej, vi kom lige inden Orkesteret begyndte at spille Nationalsangen.

Herr Andersen

Saa I Kongen?

tɔmˀ	*Tom*
já dé gjó:ər vi sgám.	Ja, det gjorde vi skam.
ɔ da di tó:ˀ hɔ́lˀ hà:ðə rɔbd hurá: fɔr hinánən, kɔm han né:ˀð ɔ trǿgəðə álə sbélərnə i hɔ́nˀən.	Og da de to Hold havde raabt Hurra for hinanden, kom han ned og trykkede alle Spillerne i Haanden.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and a Danish friend of yours

Your friend asks you if you've ever seen a soccer game. You tell him that you haven't, but you'd like to very much. He asks if you'd like to go with him on Sunday and you say you would. He says he thinks he'd better get the tickets today because there's always a full house for that game. You ask who's playing and he tells you that Denmark's playing against Sweden.

2. You and your friend on your way to the game

As you get near the place where the game is to be, you hear music and you ask your friend what it is. He tells you that it's the orchestra playing the Danish and Swedish national anthems. After you've found your seats, you begin to ask your friend questions about what you see. Do you play Norway every year too? Is that the Danish team down there? How many players on it? Is the king here? Who won when Denmark played Sweden last year? Your friend points out the two teams to you, tells you that there are eleven players on each team, and that they do play Norway every year, shows you where the king is sitting, and tells you that Denmark won last year 1-0. Then the game begins.

3. After the game is over

You suggest that you go and get a bottle of beer and some hot dogs because you're both thirsty and hungry. Your friend agrees. As you eat, you ask him if he wouldn't like to go to a bicycle race tomorrow. He says he would and tells you that he has two friends, a soldier and a sailor that would like to come along too. You say that'll be fine. You arrange to meet at Hovedbanegaarden at seven o'clock.

4. Ask one of the other members of the group if he doesn't want to play tennis tonight and then get to talking about what sports you like—swimming, tennis, sailing, bicycling, going to see soccer games or bicycle races, etc.

Finder List

bá:ər (bare) only
bɛ́ðrə (bedre) better
bɛ́gə (begge) both
bɔ́:ðə . . . ɔ (baade . . . og) both . . . and
bɔlʔt, -ən, bɔ́ldə (Bold, -en, -e) ball
dánsgər, -ən, -ə (Dansker, -en, -e) Dane
di (de) those
dísə (disse) these
é:nəsdə (eneste) single
ɛ́lʔərs (ellers) otherwise
flásgə, -n, -r (Flaske, -n, -r) bottle
fóðbɔ̀lʔt, -ən (Fodbold, -en) soccer
fóðbɔldkàmʔp, -ən, fóðbɔldkàmbə (Fodboldkamp, -en, -e) soccer game
fulʔ (fuld) full

fɔr (for) because of
fɔrbí:ʔ (forbi) over, finished, by
fɔrklá:ʔər, -ðə (forklare, -de) explain
gaŋʔ, -ən, gáŋə (Gang, -en, -e) time
hinánən (hinanden) each other
hurá: (Hurra) hurrah
hɔlʔ, -əð, — (Hold, -et, —) team
hɔnʔ, -ən, hɛ́nʔər (Haand, -en, Hænder) hand
imó:ʔð/imóð (imod) against
kamʔp, -ən, kámbə (Kamp, -en, -e) game
lø:ʔp, -əð, — (Løb, -et, —) race
matró:ʔs, -ən, -ər (Matros, -en, -er) sailor
mɔ:ʔl, -əð, — (Maal, -et, —) goal
nasjoná:ʔlsàŋʔ, -ən, nasjoná:ʔlsàŋə (Nationalsang, -en, -e) national anthem

nol, nólʔəð, nólʔər (Nul, -let, -ler) zero

nɔ́rɣə (Norge) Norway

pǿlsə, -n, -r (Pølse, -n, -r) sausage, frankfurt

ró:li (rolig) calm, quiet

  bá:ər ró:li. (Bare rolig!) Take it easy!

rɔ́:bə, rɔ́:ʔbər, rɔ́bdə (raabe, -te) shout

sájlsbɔ̀rt, -ən (Sejlsport, -en) sailing

saŋʔ, -ən, sáŋə (Sang, -en, -e) song

sbélə, -ðə (spille, -de) play

sbélər, -ən, -ə (Spiller, -en, -e) player

sbɛ́nənə (spændende) exciting

sbɔrt, -ən, — (Sport, -en, —) sport

ségər, ségərt, ségrə (sikker, -t, sikre) sure

  ségərt (sikkert) surely

sígəllǿ:ʔp, -əð, — (Cykelløb, -et, —) bicycle race

sna:ʔrt (snart) soon

solá:ʔt, -ən, -ər (Soldat, -en, -er) soldier

svɛnʔsk, svɛ́nsgə (svensk, -e) Swedish

svɛ́rʔi (Sverrig) Sweden

svœ́mneŋ, svœ́mneŋʔən (Svømning, -en) swimming

tɛ́nes (Tennis) tennis

trǿgə, -ðə (trykke, -de) press, squeeze

  trǿgə i hɔ́nʔən (trykke i Haanden) shake hands

vénə, vénʔər, vanʔt, vónəð (vinde, vandt, vundet) win

vɛ:ʔr (with en-nouns), *vɛ:ʔrt* (with et-nouns) (hver, hvert) each

ɔrkɛ́sdər, -əð, ɔrkɛ́sárə (Orkester, -et, Orkestre) orchestra

REVIEW

SECTION A—WORD STUDY

This section is just like Section A of Units 6 and 12. Work through the exercises individually following the instructions carefully. Read aloud the completed or altered sentences, but don't write anything down. Be prepared to do on sight any one of the exercises when your Leader calls on you.

1. Fill in the blanks in these sentences with the proper Danish word for "how".

1. ——— *ɛ́r vánˀəð dɔɣ kɔ́lˀt.*	——— er Vandet dog koldt!
2. ——— *lɛ́ŋə sga du vɛ́:ər vɛ́k?*	——— længe skal du være væk?
3. ——— *kɔ́mˀər vi te sdránˀən? mɛ ɛ́:tɔ̀:ˀɣəð;*	——— kommer vi til Stranden—med S-Toget?
4. *jɛ vé:ˀ égə* ——— *jɛ sga nɔ́:ˀ ɔ kɔ́mə te méda hos dáj i mɔ́rən, fɔr jɛ tró:ˀr jɛ mɔ: árbajˀdə te klɔ̀gən ní:ˀ ɔm áfdənən;*	Jeg ved ikke, ——— jeg skal naa at komme til Middag hos dig i Morgen, for jeg tror, jeg maa arbejde til Klokken ni om Aftenen.
5. ——— *máŋə sbélərə ɛr dər pɔ: ed fóðbɔldhɔ̀lˀ?*	——— mange Spillere er der paa et Fodboldhold?
6. ——— *ɛ́r dɛ́nˀ snábs dɔɣ dájli.*	——— er den Snaps dog dejlig!
7. ——— *ɛr vánˀəð i dá:ˀ?*	——— er Vandet i Dag?
8. ——— *sbélər de dánsgə hɔ́lˀ dɔɣ gɔ́t.*	——— spiller det danske Hold dog godt!
9. ——— *láŋˀd ɛr de fra købənhávˀn?*	——— langt er det fra København?
10. ——— *há:ˀr du de i dá:ˀ mɔ́:ˀrmò:r?*	——— har du det i Dag, Mormor?

2. Change the English words given in parentheses into Danish.

1. *jɛ tror áldri jɛ ar sé:ʔd* (that) *dá:mə i ánəð ɛn brú:ʔnt.*	Jeg tror aldrig, jeg har set (*that*) Dame i andet end brunt.
2. (These) *sgó:ʔ hɛ́:ʔr ɛr máəð bíliərə ɛn* (those) *dɛ́:ʔr.*	(*These*) Sko her er meget billigere end (*those*) der.
3. *dɛr sdɔ́:ʔr* (that) *mánʔ jɛ fɔrtálʔd daj ɔ́mʔ i gɔ́:ʔr.*	Der staar (*that*) Mand, jeg fortalte dig om i Gaar.
4. *tø̀mərmɛ̀sdər ó:ʔlsən bó:ðə fɔrɛ̀sdən i* (this) *hú:ʔs i tí:ʔ ɔ́:ʔr fœ́:ʔr vi flǿdəðə énʔ.*	Tømrermester Olsen boede forresten i (*this*) Hus i ti Aar, før vi flyttede ind.
5. (This) *vájʔ mì:nə hɛ́rə ɔ dá:mər.*	(*This*) Vej, mine Herrer og Damer.
6. *jɛ ka égə lí:ʔ* (that) *frágə, mɛn* (this) *hɛ́:ʔr ɛr máəð pɛ́:ʔn;*	Jeg kan ikke lide (*that*) Frakke, men (*this*) her er meget pæn.
7. *ves dɛr égə ɛr nɔ́:əð i vájʔən mɛ* (those) *véndu:ʔər, sɔ́ ɛr dər nɔ́:əð i vájʔən mɛ* (these) *hɛ́:ʔr.*	Hvis der ikke er noget i Vejen med (*those*) Vinduer, saa er der noget i Vejen med (*these*) her.
8. *ves di égə ka lí:ʔ* (this) *vɛ́:ərlsə, há:ʔr jɛ égə ándrə jɛ ka ví:sə dəm.*	Hvis De ikke kan lide (*this*) Værelse, har jeg ikke andre, jeg kan vise Dem.
9. (this) *vájʔ ú:ʔð;*	(*This*) Vej ud!
10. *dɛ ɛ* (that) *resdoráŋ i købənhávʔn vɔr jɛ sýns man sbí:ʔsər bɛ́st.*	Det er (*that*) Restaurant i København, hvor jeg synes, man spiser bedst.

3. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with either *nɔ:ʔr* or *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr*, whichever fits in each particular case.

1. *ka di sí:ə maj* ——— *kámʔbən bəgǿnʔər;*	Kan De sige mig, ——— Kampen begynder?
2. ——— *kɔ̀mər du tebá:ɣə fra ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr?*	——— kommer du tilbage fra Aalborg?
3. ——— *du kɔ̀mər tebá:ɣə, ka vi gɔ: ú:ʔð ɔ mó:ər ɔs.*	——— du kommer tilbage, kan vi gaa ud at more os.

4.	——— *ɛr i pará:ˀdə te ɔ tá a sdɛ̄ð?*	——— er I parate til at tage af Sted?
5.	——— *vi fénˀər en sígəlsmèð, ka vi fɔ: síglən gjord i sdánˀ.*	——— vi finder en Cykelsmed, kan vi faa Cykelen gjort i Stand.
6.	*sà:ə sàγfø̀:ər nélsən nɔ́:əð ɔ́m?* ——— *han bəsdélˀdə si:n bilɛ́t;*	Sagde Sagfører Nielsen noget om, ——— han bestilte sin Billet?
7.	——— *ɔ́:bnər de kɔ́ŋəliə teá:ˀdər?*	——— aabner det kongelige Teater?
8.	——— *fóðbɔldkàmˀbən ɛr fɔrbí:ˀ, trø̀gər kɔ́ŋən álə sbélərnə i hɔ́nˀən;*	——— Fodboldkampen er forbi, trykker Kongen alle Spillerne i Haanden.
9.	——— *man ràjsər mɛ lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγəð te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr, sga man ha plásbilɛ̀t.*	——— man rejser med Lyntoget til Aalborg, skal man have Pladsbillet.
10.	——— *sga jɛ hɛ́ndə mi:n bilɛ́t?*	——— skal jeg hente min Billet?

4. In the following conversation, change the words given in English into Danish.

A.	*bó:ˀr i* (out) *pɔ: lánˀəð hé:lə ɔ́:ˀərð ɛ̀lər tár i kón* (out) *ɔm sɔ́mərən.*	Bor I (*out*) paa Landet hele Aaret, eller tager I kun (*out*) om Sommeren?
B.	*nɛ́:* *vi tar kón* (up there) *nɔr vɛ́:ˀərð ɛr gɔ́t.*	Næh, vi tager kun (*up there*), naar Vejret er godt.
	ɔm vénˀdərən bó:ˀr vi sɔm ré:ˀəl (in) *i bý:ˀən, fɔr vi ka égə fɔ: de várˀmd nɔ́g* (up there).	Om Vinteren bor vi som Regel (*in*) i Byen, for vi kan ikke faa det varmt nok (*up there*).
A.	*vɔrdán légər hú:ˀsəð?*	Hvordan ligger Huset?
B.	*de légər lí:ə* (down) *ve vánˀəð.*	Det ligger lige (*down*) ved Vandet.
	ka du égə kɔ́mə (up) *ɔ bəsø̀:ˀγə ɔs;*	Kan du ikke komme (*up*) at besøge os?
	vi har tré:ˀ gɛ́sdəvɛ̀:ərlsər, sɔ jɛ hɔ́:bər di:n kó:nə ɔ bœ́rˀn ɔ́sə ve kɔ́mə.	Vi har tre Gæsteværelser, saa jeg haaber, din Kone og Børn ogsaa vil komme.
	ves de pásər jɛr, ka i jo: kɔ̀mə (up there) *ɔm ed pár ú:ər;*	Hvis det passer jer, kan I jo komme (*up there*) om et Par Uger.

A. *já tág, dé ve vi máəð gɛ́rnə, mɛn dé blìər da fɔr máəð fɔ́r daj ves jɛ flǿdə* (in) *mɛ hé:lə famí:ˀljən.*	Ja Tak, det vil vi meget gerne, men det bliver da for meget for dig, hvis jeg flytter (*in*) med hele Familien.
B. *nájˀ jɛ́ mé:ˀnər de vírgli.*	Nej, jeg mener det virkelig.
dé ɛ sɔ́ hýgəli ves vi ɛ máŋə (up there), *ɔ bœ́rˀnənə ka jo: vɛ̀:ər* (out) *hé:lə dá:ˀən.*	Det er saa hyggeligt, hvis vi er mange (*up there*), og Børnene kan jo være (*out*) hele Dagen.
ɛr du (home) *i áfdən;*	Er du (*home*) i Aften?
A. *já jɛ́ tar lí:ə* (home) *nú.*	Ja, jeg tager lige (*home*) nu.
B. *já mɛn sɔ́ tá:ˀl mɛ di:n kó:nə ɔ́mˀ də, ɔ réŋˀ hərú:ˀð nɔr i vé:ˀ vá i vél.*	Ja, men saa tal med din Kone om det, og ring herud, naar I ved, hvad I vil.

5. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with either *sɔm*, *dɛr* or *vɛm?*, whichever fits in the particular sentence.

1. *jɛ har tó:ˀ bœ́rnəbœ̀rˀn* ——— *jɛ áldri har sɛ́:ˀt.*	Jeg har to Børnebørn, ——— jeg aldrig har set.
2. *pɔ: mánˀda rájˀsər jɛ te nɔ́rɣə fɔr ɔ bəsǿ:ˀɣə mi:n mɔ́sde.* ——— *bó:ˀr dɛ́:ˀr.*	Paa Mandag rejser jeg til Norge for at besøge min Moster, ——— bor der.
3. ——— *tar mɛ́ də te sdránˀən?*	——— tager med dig til Stranden?
4. *jɛ mǿ:ðər dɛ́nˀ mánˀ pɔ: gá:ðən vɛ́:ˀr dá:ˀ, mɛn jɛ vé:ˀ égɔ* ——— *hán ɛ́r.*	Jeg møder den Mand paa Gaden hver Dag, men jeg ved ikke, ——— han er.
5. *ɛr də dɛ́nˀ kondugtǿ:ˀr* ——— *sga sé:ˀ vɔ́rəs bilɛ́dər;*	Er det den Konduktør, ——— skal se vores Billetter?
6. ——— *var du ú:ðə ɔ dánsə mɛ i gɔr áfdəs?*	——— var du ude at danse med i Gaar Aftes?
7. *jɛ há:ˀr en sǿsdər* ——— *har bó:ˀəð i amé:ˀrika i sɛ́gs ɔ́:ˀr.*	Jeg har en Søster, ——— har boet i Amerika i seks Aar.
8. *ɛr də dí:ˀn kóf̧ərd* ——— *sdɔ́:ˀr dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə i jœ́rnəð;*	Er det din Kuffert. ——— staar derovre i Hjørnet?

9. *dɛ́n? drɛ́ŋ?* ——— *kø̂:ər dɛ́n? vɔ́ɣ?n ɛr mi:n bró:r.*	Den Dreng, ——— kører den Vogn, er min Bror.
10. *jɛ vé:? égə* ——— *jɛ hɛ́lərə ve ú:?ð ɔ dánsə mɛ́ ɛn dáj.*	Jeg ved ikke, ——— jeg hellere vil ud at danse med end dig.

6. Change the English words given in parentheses in the following sentences into Danish.

1. (The train) *jɛ sga mɛ́ gɔ́:?r klɔ̀gən tí:? minúdər ɔ́v?ər tɔ́l?.*	(*The train*) jeg skal med, gaar Klokken ti Minutter over tolv.
2. (The girl) *sɔm jɛ var pɔ: sígəltù:?r mɛ i gɔ́:?r kø̂:ər ál?tìð? máəð hórdit.*	(*The girl*) som jeg var paa Cykeltur med i Gaar, kører altid meget hurtigt.
3. (The man) *dɛr sdɔ́:?r dɛ́:?rhɛ̀nə ve véndu:?əð ɛr mi:n fá:?rbrò:r.*	(*The man*) der staar derhenne ved Vinduet, er min Farbror.
4. (The children) *dɛr sbɛ̀lər fóðbɔ̀l?d dərú:ðə ɛr mì:nə bœ́rnəbœ̀r?n.*	(*The children*) der spiller Fodbold derude, er mine Børnebørn.
5. (The woman) *dɛr sá:?ð ve sí:ðən a ɔs i teá:?dərəð tá:ldə máəð hɔ́j?d hé:lə áfdənən.*	(*The woman*) der sad ved Siden af os i Teateret, talte meget højt hele Aftenen.
6. *kɛ́nər du* (the girl) *dɛr kø̂:ər dɛ́:?rɔ̀wrə pɔ: dɛn ánən sí:ðə a gá:ðən;*	Kender du (*the girl*), der kører derovre paa den anden Side af Gaden?
7. (The player) *dɛr lí:ə feg mɔ́:?l ɛr dɛn bɛ́sdə pɔ: de dánsgə hɔ́l?.*	(*The player*) der lige fik Maal, er den bedste paa det danske Hold.
8. *jɛ énsgrè:?v* (the luggage) *jɛ́ tar mɛ́.*	Jeg indskrev (*the luggage*), jeg tager med.
9. *har du sé:?d* (the girl) *dɛr sɛ́ð?ər dɛ́:?rɔ̀wrə; vɔr sé:?r hun dɔɣ sbɛ́nənə ú:?ð.*	Har du set (*the girl*), der sidder derovre? Hvor ser hun dog spændende ud!
10. *jɛ bətá:?ldə sýv? en hál? kró:nə fɔr* (the shirt) *jɛ kø̂bdə i gɔ́:?r.*	Jeg betalte syv en halv Krone for (*the shirt*), jeg købte i Gaar

7. The following two-part or compound words are made up from single words which you already know. What do you think they mean?

húslɛ̀:γə	Huslæge
dá:mətɔ̀j	Dametøj
hɛ́rətɔ̀j	Herretøj
bœ́rnətɔ̀j	Børnetøj
tɛ́nessbèlər	Tennisspiller
ɔrkɛ́sdərplàs	Orkesterplads
bagá:sjəvɔ̀γʔn	Bagagevogn
rý:əkupè:ʔ	Rygekupé
ú:ədà:ʔγ	Ugedag
sɔ́mərhù:ʔs	Sommerhus
polətí:ʔsdasjò:ʔn	Politistation
biográ:ʔfbilɛ̀t	Biografbillet
polətí:ʔvɔ̀γʔn	Politivogn
tɛ́nessgò:ʔ	Tennissko
kupé:ʔvèndu	Kupévindue

8. Do the following in Danish:

1. Tell your wife that you won't be home to dinner until seven-thirty.
2. You and your wife are going on a trip to Aalborg. Tell her you think she'd better reserve the tickets today.
3. Ask her if she doesn't think you'd better check your luggage through.
4. Tell a friend that you're not leaving until Thursday.
5. You and a friend are talking about what you'll do on Sunday. Tell him that you'd rather go to a soccer game than a bicycle race.
6. Ask someone how to get to the royal theatre.
7. Tell a friend that there wasn't any diner on the train so you had to eat on the ferry.
8. Tell your daughter that she's driving much too fast.
9. Tell a friend that yesterday your wife wanted to go out to the beach to swim, and you wanted to play tennis, so you went (*to:ʔ*) to the beach.
10. Tell your wife that as soon as you get to Copenhagen, you'll reserve some tickets to the royal theatre.
11. Tell a friend you're going on a trip with, that your suitcase isn't as big as his, so you think you'll take it right along with you.
12. Tell someone that this is the first time you've been to Aalborg.
13. A friend suggests that you play tennis this evening.

Tell him you'd rather go swimming (*gɔ: i vánˀəð*), because it's so warm.

14. Tell a conductor on the train that your suitcase is in there in the compartment.
15. Ask your wife and daughter if they want to use the car tomorrow.
16. Tell them that you'll meet them outside *hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn* at six-thirty.
17. Tell your wife that your sister paid 75 crowns for her new coat.
18. Tell a friend that the beach is only five kilometers from here.

SECTION B—CONVERSATION

Take parts and work through the following outlined conversations. When you can do them easily, branch out and include anything discussed in the previous units.

1. You arrange to go down to "Hovedbanegaarden" to say good-by to a friend who's leaving on a trip. You find out what train he's taking, when it leaves, what track it's on, etc. You ask about his trip—how long he'll be away, whether he's looking forward to it, what he's going to do, etc. Then you give him the name and telephone number of some friends of yours who live in the city he's going to and ask him to call them and go see them if he has time.

2. In the railroad station in Copenhagen you buy a first-class round-trip ticket to Aalborg and a seat ticket in a compartment. You arrange to have your baggage checked through, all except one small suitcase which you'll take along with you. You ask about a diner on the train and are told that there is one, but you can also eat on the ferry, where you get very good food.

3. You go to the beach with a friend. You talk about how nice it is to lie there in the sun, and how brown you'll be by the time you get home. You eat the lunch you've brought with you—sandwiches and beer. Then you discuss when you should go in the water and wonder whether it's cold. You tell your friend that this is the first time you've been swimming this year. Finally after you've been in swimming, you talk about when you should leave, how long it'll take you to get home, etc.

4. You tell a friend about how you almost ran a man down yesterday. You were biking to a soccer game

and you saw a girl across the street who was awfully attractive. You were looking at her and you were going quite fast because it was so late, so you didn't see the man at all. He was really furious and asked why you couldn't look where you were going—you had eyes in your head, didn't you?

5. You plan a bicycle trip to Sweden with a friend. You'll be away four or five days. You'll take the ferry over to Sweden and then go (*kǿːər*) up along the coast and come back through the country. You'll take bathing suits along and stop at (*sdánsə ve*) beaches on the way and go swimming. You hope you won't have any flat tires, but if you do, you can always find a bicycle repairman and have the bicycle fixed. You'll take a lunch (*frógɔsdpàgə*) with you and when you've eaten all that, you'll stop for food along the way.

6. A friend asks you about a soccer game you've been to the day before. You tell him it was a very exciting game—Denmark against Sweden. The Danes won, 3-0, but the Swedes almost made a goal a couple of times (*ed par gáŋə*). You got awfully hungry so you had beer and hot dogs. You tell about the orchestra playing the national anthem before the game began and about the king coming down and shaking hands with the players after the two teams had cheered each other. Your friend asks if that was the first time you'd seen the king and you tell him that it was, and that it was also the first time you'd seen a soccer game. But you thought it was awfully exciting, so you're going again on Sunday when Denmark plays against Norway.

7. You and your wife are Danes who have been in America during the war. On your way back to Denmark, you plan what you'll do to celebrate getting home again—a big evening out. Your wife wants to go to the restaurant in Tivoli where you ate just before you went away. She wants to have roast lamb with cucumber salad, and for dessert, Danish fruit pudding with cream. You agree and say that afterwards you'll go to the Apollo theater or to the royal theater—you'd better reserve the tickets as soon as you get home, so you'll surely have good seats. She says she'd like to go out dancing afterwards and have at least three glasses of good Danish *Snaps*. You remark that you'll probably have a hangover afterwards, but you'll have a wonderful time anyway. She says yes, she liked America very much, but she'll certainly be glad to get home to Denmark again.

8. You ask your grandmother and grandfather if they'd like to go for a little ride. You tell them you thought you'd drive up along the coast. Your grandmother says she'd like to go, but she'd rather drive out into (*pɔː*) the country and visit your mother's sister and the children. You say that that's fine, you'll do that. Your grandfather tells you that you mustn't

drive too fast—not over forty kilometers an hour. Otherwise the police will stop you. You tell him the police won't bother you. He says you must also remember to bring your license with you and see to it that you have enough gas in the car. You tell him you'll do that and ask when they'll be ready. They decide and you arrange to pick them up then.

SECTION C—LISTENING IN (QUESTIONS)

Listen to the Guide as each one of the conversations is read. The second time listen carefully for points you may have missed the first time. Then answer the questions listed below on each conversation.

1. Two Danes, Peter and Hans, talk about sports.

1. *sbèlər hánˀs ténes;*	Spiller Hans Tennis?
2. *vɔ́:ˀr gɔr han hénˀ ɔm sœ́nˀda:ˀən?*	Hvor gaar han hen om Søndagen?
3. *vɔ́rfɔr gɔr pé:ˀdər te sígəllø̆:ˀp?*	Hvorfor gaar Peter til Cykelløb?
4. *ɛr hánˀs entrəsé:ˀərð i sájlsbɔ̀rt;*	Er Hans interesseret i Sejlsport?
5. *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr gɔr hánˀs i vánˀəð?*	Hvornaar gaar Hans i Vandet?
6. *vá fɔrtélˀər hánˀs ɔm si:n sœ́n?*	Hvad fortæller Hans om sin Søn?
7. *vɔrdán ɛ vánˀəð ɔm vénˀdərən i dánmark?*	Hvordan er Vandet om Vinteren i Danmark?
8. *vá fɔrtélˀər pé:ˀdər ɔm sí:ˀn sœ́n?*	Hvad fortæller Peter om sin Søn?

2. Erik meets his friend Niels, a violinist, on the street.

1. *vɔ́:ˀr sga néls hénˀ?*	Hvor skal Niels hen?
2. *vɔr léŋə sga han vè:ər vék?*	Hvor længe skal han være væk?

3. *glɛ́:ðər han saj te ɔ rájsə;*	Glæder han sig til at rejse?
4. *vɔ́rfɔr ràjsər han vɛ́g fra købənhávʔn?*	Hvorfor rejser han væk fra København?
5. *vá bəsdélʔər han i købənhávʔn?*	Hvad bestiller han i København?

3. Kristian and Peter plan a bicycle trip.

1. *vɔ́:ʔr sga kréstjan ɔ pé:ʔdər sígl̥ə hɛ́nʔ?*	Hvor skal Kristian og Peter cykle hen?
2. *vɔ́rfɔr tar di bá:ðətɔ̀j mɛ́?*	Hvorfor tager de Badetøj med?
3. *vɔ́:ʔr ɛr kréstjans sígəl?*	Hvor er Kristians Cykel?
4. *vá ɛr dər i vájʔən mɛ́ dən?*	Hvad er der i Vejen med den?
5. *ka pé:ʔdər lí:ʔ ɔ kǿ:ər hórdi;*	Kan Peter lide at køre hurtigt?
6. *vɔ́:ʔr sga di sbí:sə?*	Hvor skal de spise?

4. Trouble about the family car.

1. *vɔ́:ʔr var lí:sə?*	Hvor var Lise?
2. *vɔ́:ʔr ɛr vɔ́ɣʔnən?*	Hvor er Vognen?
3. *vá ɛ́r dər i vájʔən mɛ́ dən?*	Hvad er der i Vejen med den?
4. *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr ka dɛn bli: gjord i sdánʔ?*	Hvornaar kan den blive gjort i Stand?
5. *vɔ́rfɔr ɛr de égə tíðli nɔ́g fɔr hɛr jɛ́nsən?*	Hvorfor et det ikke tidligt nok for Herr Jensen?
6. *vá sga lí:sə gǿ:ər?*	Hvad skal Lise gøre?
7. *mɔ: lí:sə ta vɔ́ɣʔnən en ánən gáŋʔ ves hun har lǿst;*	Maa Lise tage Vognen en anden Gang, hvis hun har Lyst?

5. A trip to Sweden.

1. *vɔ́:ˀr sga di tó:ˀ vɛ́nər hɛ́nˀ?*	Hvor skal de to Venner hen?
2. *vá sga di há:ˀ ɔ drégə?*	Hvad skal de have at drikke?
3. *ɛr dɛn svɛ́nsgə snábs gó:ˀ;*	Er den svenske Snaps god?
4. *vɛ́mˀ gí:ˀr frógɔsdən?*	Hvem giver Frokosten?
5. *vɔrdán kɔ̀mər di te svɛ́rˀi?*	Hvordan kommer de til Sverrig?
6. *vɔr láŋˀ tí:ˀð tá:ˀr de ɔ kɔ́mə dərɔ́vˀər?*	Hvor lang Tid tager det at komme derover?

6. Incident in a barber shop.

1. *vɔ́rfɔr gɔr sáɣfø̞:ərən te barbé:ˀərn?*	Hvorfor gaar Sagføreren til Barberen?
2. *ka han lí:ˀ a barbé:ˀərn tá:ˀlər té ham;*	Kan han lide at Barberen taler til ham?
3. *syns sáɣfø̞:ərən han ɛ gɔ́d klébəð;*	Synes Sagføreren, han er godt klippet?
4. *vá har barbé:ˀərn prø̞:vəð ɔ fɔrklá:ˀər sáɣfø̞:ərən?*	Hvad har Barberen prøvet at forklare Sagføreren?

PART FOUR

UNIT 19

AT THE POST OFFICE AND THE BANK

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Go through the *Basic Sentences* once or twice in unison, concentrating on the *Aids to Listening*, as you have done before. Then do the *Pronunciation Drill* and the *Hints on Spelling*. Finally go through the *Basic Sentences* again individually, this time trying to follow the regular Danish spelling in the third column. The last time through individually, you should be able to use the regular spelling without any trouble.

Peter, Tom and Bill are in Copenhagen doing errands.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	**AIDS TO LISTENING**	**CONVENTIONAL SPELLING**
Peter		
Tom and I are going in here and get some razor blades.	*tɔ́mˀ ɔ jáj gɔr lí:ə hɛ́:ˀrènˀ ɔ kǿ:bər no:n barbé:ˀrblà:ðə.*	Tom og jeg gaar lige herind og køber nogle Barberblade.
need(s)	*trɛ́ŋˀər tel*	trænger til
We need some new ones.	*vi trɛ́ŋˀər te nó:n ný:ˀ;*	Vi trænger til nogle nye.
Do you want to come along?	*ve di mɛ́;*	Vil De med?

Bill		
the post office	pɔ́sdhù:ˀsəð	Posthuset
No, I think I'd rather go to the post office.	nájˀ jɛ́ tró:ˀr hɛ́lərə jɛ ve gɔ: pɔ: pɔ́sdhù:ˀsəð.	Nej, jeg tror hellere, jeg vil gaa paa Posthuset.
letters	bré:və	Breve
I have some letters and a package to mail.	jɛ há:ˀr no:n bré:və ɔ en págə jɛ sga a sɛ́nˀd a sdɛ́ð.	Jeg har nogle Breve og en Pakke, jeg skal have sendt af Sted.
nearest	nɛ́rməsdə	nærmeste
Where's the nearest post office?	vɔ́:ˀr ər de nɛ́rməsdə pɔ́sdhù:ˀs?	Hvor er det nærmeste Posthus?
Peter		
There's one right over on the other side of the street.	dɛ́r ər éd lí:ə ɔ́vrə pɔ: dɛn ánən sí:ðə a gá:ðən.	Der er et lige ovre paa den anden Side af Gaden.
a quarter of an hour	ed kvarté:ˀr	et Kvarter
We can meet there in fifteen minutes.	ví ka jo: mø̂:ðəs dɛ́:ˀr ɔm ed kvarté:ˀr.	Vi kan jo mødes der om et Kvarter.

In the post office Bill goes up to the stamp window.

Bill		
stamps	frí:mɛ̀rgər	Frimærker
I'd like some stamps.	jɛ ve gɛ́rnə há:ˀ no:n frí:mɛ̀rgər.	Jeg vil gerne have nogle Frimærker.
How much postage on a letter here in Denmark?	vɔr máəð sga dɛr pɔ: ed bré:ˀv hɛ́:ˀr i dánmark?	Hvor meget skal der paa et Brev her i Danmark?

Clerk		
weigh(s)	*vɑ́jər*	vejer
under	*ónʔər*	under
gram (about 3/100 oz.)	*gramʔ*	Gram
If it weighs under fifty grams, it's ten *Øre* in Copenhagen and fifteen outside.	*ves de vɑ̀jər ónʔər haltrés grámʔ, ɛr de tí:ʔ ø:ər i købənhávʔn ɔ fɛ́mʔdən ø:ər ú:ðənfɔ̀r.*	Hvis det vejer under halvtreds Gram, er det ti Øre i København og femten Øre udenfor.
Bill		
ten-*Øre* stamps	*tí:ø:ərs frí:mɛ̀rgər*	Tiøres Frimærker
Then let me have fifteen ten-*Øre* stamps and ten fives, please.	*tág, la mə sɔ́ fɔ: fɛ́mʔdən tí:ø:ərs frí:mɛ̀rgər ɔ tí:ʔ fɛ́mø:ərs.*	Tak, lad mig saa faa femten Tiøres Frimærker og ti Femøres.
Oh, I almost forgot a letter to New York.	*ɔ́:, nú var jɛ lí:ə ve ɔ glɛ́mə ed bré:ʔv te ny jɔ́rk.*	Aah, nu var jeg lige ved at glemme et Brev til New York.
How much postage on that?	*vɔr máəð sga dər pɔ: dé?*	Hvor meget skal der paa det?
Clerk		
air mail	*lófdpɔ̀st*	Luftpost
Is it going air mail?	*sga de mɛ lófdpɔ̀st;*	Skal det med Luftpost?
Bill		
Yes.	*iá dé sgá de.*	Ja, det skal det.
Clerk (weighing the letter)		
It doesn't weigh more than five grams, so it'll be a crown (and) twenty-five (*Øre*).	*de vɑ̀jər égə ɔ́vʔər fɛ́mʔ grámʔ, sɔ dé blìər en kró:nə ɔ fɛ́mʔ ɔ tý:və.*	Det vejer ikke over fem Gram, saa det bliver en Krone og fem og tyve.

Bill		
Here you are.	*vέrs gó:ˀ.*	Værsaagod.
Can you tell me how to send this package?	*ka di sí:ə maj vɔrdán jɛ sga sέnə dέnə págə;*	Kan De sige mig, hvordan jeg skal sende denne Pakke?
Clerk		
the package window	*págəɛgsbədisjò:ˀnən*	Pakkeekspeditionen
Take it over to the package window.	*di ka gɔ: ɔ́vˀər mέ dən te págəɛgsbədisjò:ˀnən.*	De kan gaa over med den til Pakkeekspeditionen.
help	*jέlbə*	hjælpe
They'll help you there.	*dέ:ˀr ka di jέlbə dəm.*	Der kan de hjælpe Dem.
Bill		
Thank you very much.	*máŋə ták.*	Mange Tak.
	At the package window.	
I want to send this package to Aalborg.	*iɛ ve gέrnə ha dέnə págə sέnˀd te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr.*	Jeg vil gerne have denne Pakke sendt til Aalborg.
Clerk		
ordinary	*alménˀli*	almindelig
parcel post	*págəpɔ̀st*	Pakkepost
"special delivery package"	*ílpàgə*	Ilpakke
Do you want it sent ordinary parcel post or special delivery?	*ve di ha dən sɛnˀd sɔm alménˀli págəpɔ̀sd έlər sɔm ílpàgə.*	Vil De have den sendt som almindelig Pakkepost eller som Ilpakke?
extra	*έgsdrə*	ekstra
faster	*hórdiərə*	hurtigere

Special delivery's thirty *Øre* extra, but of course it goes much faster that way.	*sɔm ílpàgə ɛr de trɛ́ðvə ø:ər ɛ́gsdrə, mɛn sɔ́ gɔ́:ˀr de sɛføləli ɔ́sə máəð hórdiərə.*	Som Ilpakke er det tredive Øre ekstra, men saa gaar det selvfølgelig ogsaa meget hurtigere.
Bill		
O.K. then, send it special delivery.	*úðmèrgəð, sɔ́ sɛ́nˀ dən sɔm ílpàgə.*	Udmærket, saa send den som Ilpakke.
telegram	*teləgrámˀ*	Telegram
And how do I send a telegram?	*ɔ vɔrdán sga jɛ sɛ́nə ed teləgrámˀ?*	Og hvordan skal jeg sende et Telegram?
Clerk		
telephone	*teləfoné:ˀər*	telefonere
You can send it from here or you can do it by phone.	*di ka gœ́:ər de hɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ, ɛ́lər di ka teləfoné:ˀər de;*	De kan gøre det herfra, eller De kan telefonere det.
Bill		
I might just as well do it from here.	*sɔ́ ka jɛ lí:ə sɔ gɔ́d gœ́:ər de hɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ.*	Saa kan jeg ligesaa godt gøre det herfra.
Clerk		
the ink	*blɛ́gəð*	Blækket
The ink's right over there on the table.	*iá blɛ́gəð sdɔ́:ˀr lí:ə dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	Ja, Blækket staar lige derovre paa Bordet.
figure out	*fènə ú:ˀð á:ˀ*	finde ud af
If there's something you can't figure out, I'll be glad to help you.	*ves dɛr ər nɔ́:əð di ég ka fènə ú:ˀð á:ˀ, sga jɛ gɛ́rnə jɛ́lbə dəm.*	Hvis der er noget, De ikke kan finde ud af, skal jeg gerne hjælpe Dem.

Bill		
Thank you.	*mɑ́ŋə tɑ́k.*	Mange Tak.

Bill finishes his business and waits for Tom and Peter outside the post-office.

Tom		
already	*aləré:ðə*	allerede
Oh, are you here already?	*nɔ́, ɛ́r du dɛ́:ˀr aləré:ðə;*	Naa, er du der allerede?
Bill		
Yes, where are we going now?	*jɑ́ vɔ́:ˀr sga vi nú hɛ́n?*	Ja, hvor skal vi nu hen?
Peter		
the bank checking account draw out	*bɑ́ŋˀgən* *tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto* *hɛ́:və*	Banken Checkkonto hæve
I'm going to the bank to open a checking account and draw out some money for my father.	*jɛ́ sga i bɑ́ŋˀgən ɔ ɔ́:bnə en tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto, ɔ hɛ́:və no:n pɛ́ŋə fɔr mi:n fɑ́:r.*	Jeg skal i Banken at aabne en Checkkonto og hæve nogle Penge for min Far.
Tom		
That's fine.	*dé pɑ́sər úðmɛ̀rgəð.*	Det passer udmærket.
cash traveler's check	*hɛ́:və* *rɑ́jsətjɛ̀k*	hæve Rejsecheck
I want to cash this traveler's check.	*iɛ́ sga hɛ́:və dɛ́nə rɑ́jsətjɛ̀k.*	Jeg skal hæve denne Rejsecheck.

Peter		
close(s)	*lógər*	lukker
We'll have to hurry—it's quarter of three now and the bank closes at three.	*mɛn vi mɔ: sgøˆnə ɔs, klɔ́gən ɛr aləré:ðə ed kvarté:ˀr i tré:ˀ, ɔ báŋˀgən lógər klɔ̀gən tré:ˀ.*	Men vi maa skynde os, Klokken er allerede et Kvarter i tre, og Banken lukker Klokken tre.
lend *or* borrow	*lɔ́:nə*	laane
But if you need money, I can lend you some.	*mɛn trɛ̀ŋər du te pɛ́ŋə, ka jɛ́ gɔ́d lɔ́:nə daj nó:ən.*	Men trænger du til Penge, kan jeg godt laane dig nogle.
Tom		
No thanks, never mind.	*nɛ́: ták du, dé bəhø̂:ˀvəs égə.*	Næh Tak du, det behøves ikke.
	In the bank.	
Peter (*to the clerk*)		
I want to open a checking account.	*jɛ ve gɛ́rnə ɔ́:bnə en tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto hɛ́:ˀr.*	Jeg vil gerne aabne en Checkkonto her.
Clerk		
blank	*blaŋkɛ́t*	Blanket
Here's a blank.	*hɛ́:ˀr ɛr en blaŋkɛ́t;*	Her er en Blanket.
filled out	*úðfylˀt*	udfyldt
the cashier	*kasé:ˀərən*	Kassereren
bank book	*báŋgbɔ̀:ˀɣ*	Bankbog
check book	*tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə*	Checkhæfte
When you've filled it out, go over to the cashier and he'll give you your bank book and check book.	*nɔr di ar úðfylˀd dɛ́nˀ, gɔr di ɔ́vˀər te kasé:ˀərən ɔ hán ve gí:ˀ dəm dɛ̀rəs báŋgbɔ̀:ˀɣ ɔ tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə.*	Naar De har udfyldt den, gaar De over til Kassereren, og han vil give Dem Deres Bankbog og Checkhæfte.

Peter fills out the blank and takes it over to the cashier.

Cashier		
write Thanks. Write your name here, please.	*sgrí:və* *máŋə tág, ɔ ve di vɛ́:ər sɔ vɛ́nli ɔ sgrí:və dɛ̀rəs návʔn hɛ́:ʔr.*	skrive Mange Tak, og vil De være saa venlig at skrive Deres Navn her.
deposit How much do you want to deposit?	*sɛ̀də énʔ* *vɔr máəð ønsgər di ɔ sɛ̀də énʔ?*	sætte ind Hvor meget ønsker De at sætte ind?
Peter		
800 crowns.	*ɔ́:də húnrəðə kró:nər.*	800 Kroner.
Cashier		
in order All right, that should make everything O. K.	*i ɔ́rʔdən* *já sɔ́ sgu álʔd vɛ́:ər i ɔ́rʔdən;*	i Orden Ja, saa skulde alt være i Orden.
percent interest You know you get two percent interest.	*prosɛ́nʔt* *rɛ́ndə* *di vé:ʔ a di fɔr tó:ʔ prosɛ́nʔd i rɛ́ndə;*	Procent Rente De ved, at De faar to Procent i Rente.
Tom		
You get interest on a checking account?	*fɔr man rɛ́ndər pɔ: en tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto;*	Faar man Renter paa en Checkkonto?
We don't do that in America.	*dé gœ́r vi sgam égə i amé:ʔrika;*	Det gør vi skam ikke i Amerika.

Peter (*as he finishes his business*)		
You were going to have your traveler's check cashed, weren't you, Tom?	*mɛn dú sgu ha diːn rájsəltjɛ̀g hɛ́ːvəð, égə tɔ́mʔ;*	Men du skulde have din Rejsecheck hævet, ikke Tom?
Tom		
Yes, here it is.	*jóːʔ jɛ háːʔr dən hɛ́ːʔr.*	Jo, jeg har den her.
Cashier (*as he starts to give him the money*)		
How do you want it?	*vɔrdán ve di há dəm?*	Hvordan vil De have dem?
Tom		
bills	*sɛ́ðlər*	Sedler
ten-crown bills	*tíkroːnəsɛ̀ðlər*	Tikronesedler
In tens, please.	*tág jɛ ve gɛ́rnə há dəm i tíkroːnəsɛ̀ðlər.*	Tak, jeg vil gerne have dem i Tikronesedler.
Cashier		
Here you are.	*vɛ́rs góːʔ.*	Værsaagod.
Tom		
Thank you.	*máŋə ták.*	Mange Tak.
Peter (*as they leave the bank*)		
I'm afraid I have to go home now.	*nú mɔː jáj desvɛ́rə jɛ́mʔ.*	Nu maa jeg desværre hjem.
Tom		
presents *or* gifts	*gáːvər*	Gaver
We're going to buy some presents for our families.	*já ví sga úːʔð ɔ kø̂ːbə gáːvər te vɔ̀rəs famíːʔljər;*	Ja, vi skal ud at købe Gaver til vores Familier.

Bill expects You know, when you've been away, your family always expect you to bring them home something.	*véndər* *di vé:˜, nɔr man har vὲ:ərð ú:ðə ɔ rájsə, véndər é:ˀns famí:ˀljə álˀtìðˀ a man kɔ̀mər jémˀ mɛ nɔ́:əð té dəm.*	venter De ved, naar man har været ude at rejse, venter ens Familie altid, at man kommer hjem med noget til dem.

Note: A clerk in a post office is *en pɔ́sdasisdὲnˀt* (Postassistent) and a clerk in a bank is *en báŋgasisdὲnˀt* (Bankassistent).

2. Pronunciation Drill

In Unit 8 we called your attention to the fact that when *ən* comes after the sounds *n* or *ŋ*, you really have just a long *n*-sound, not the *ə*-sound followed by *n*.

You may have noticed, too, that when an *ə* comes after *m* or *n* at the end of a word or syllable, you sometimes hear, not *m* + *ə* or *n* + *ə*, but a long *m*-sound or a long *n*-sound. For instance, *jémə* will be pronounced as *jéməm*, *tí:mə* as *tí:məm*, *ménəsgər* as *ménənsgər*, etc. What actually happens in *jémə*, for instance, is that you close your mouth to make the *m* and then you don't open it again so that the *ə* comes out as an *m* too.

Listen to your Guide say the following sentences and see if he pronounces those *ə*'s that are printed in heavy type as *m*'s and *n*'s. He may not if he is speaking carefully for your benefit, but if he does, you do it too.

*de légər jém**ə** pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	Det ligger hjemme paa Bordet.	It's at home on the table.
*nǽ: vɔr ér dɛr fúlˀd a mén**ə**sgər.*	Næh, hvor er der fuldt af Mennesker.	Oh, how crowded it is.
*ve du égə mé ú:ˀð ɔ svœ́m**ə**;*	Vil du ikke med ud at svømme?	Don't you want to go swimming?
*jɛ sga mø̀:ðə daj dé:ˀr ɔm en hálˀ tí:m**ə**.*	Jeg skal møde dig der om en halv Time.	I'll meet you there in half an hour.

Here are a few more points to note about what happens when people speak rapidly in Danish.

1. When two similar syllables follow one another, in rapid speech one of them is apt to be slurred over or even left out entirely. For example, in the *Basic Sentences* of Unit 16 you had the sentence: *mɛn vɔ́:ˀr sbí:sdə di?* When this is said rapidly, the *də* at the end of *sbí:sdə* is slurred over so that what is left is just *sbi:s* with a rather long *s*-sound. Listen now as your Guide reads the following sentences and see what happens to the *-də* and *daj* and the *-də* and *de* that are printed in heavy type.

*dé var dɛ́nˀ mánˀ jɛ fɔrtálˀ***də daj** *ɔ́mˀ.*	Det var den Mand, jeg fortalte dig om.	That's the man I told you about.
*vɔrnɔ́:ˀr bəgǿnˀ***də de** *ɔ sné:ˀ?*	Hvornaar begyndte det at sne?	When did it begin to snow?

2. The verb *ɛr* is sometimes left out entirely in speaking, especially when it comes between *de* and *en* or *et*, as in *dé en dájli áfdən;*, 'It's a lovely evening.' Listen for this in the following sentences.

de en kró:nə ɔ fɛ́mˀ ǿ:ər.	Det er en Krone og fem Øre.	It's a crown and five *Ore.*
dɛr ed gɔ́d hotɛ́lˀ hɛ́:ˀr te vɛ́nsdrə.	Der er et godt Hotel her til venstre.	There's a good hotel to the left.

3. When the sounds *ən* come after an *m* or a *b*, you will often hear *əm* instead of *ən*, and when they come after an *ŋ* you will often hear *əŋ* instead of *ən*. Listen to your Guide say the the-forms of the following nouns and see which pronunciation you hear. If he is speaking very slowly and precisely, you will probably hear the first pronunciation given below with *n* at the end. If he speaks a little faster, you will probably hear the second pronunciation with *m* or *ŋ* at the end. Notice that in any case what you hear is really a long *m*, *n* or *ŋ* sound, not *ə* plus one of these sounds.

kámˀən/kámˀəm	Kammen	the comb
kámˀbən/kámˀbəm	Kampen	the game
kɔ́bən/kɔ́bəm	Koppen	the cup

kɔ́ŋən/kɔ́ŋəŋ	Kongen	the king
dréŋʔən/dréŋʔəŋ	Drengen	the boy
fɔrédneŋʔən/fɔrédneŋʔəŋ	Forretningen	the store
resdoráŋʔən/resdoráŋʔəŋ	Restauranten	the restaurant

You should also notice the pronunciation of the word meaning "through" which is *génʔəm* when said very slowly and precisely, but *gémʔəm* when said naturally in a sentence.

Such features of Danish pronunciation make the language rather difficult to understand when you're first learning it and you hear people speaking rapidly. Remember, though, that when we say things like "sump'm" for "something" or "I'm gonna go." for "I'm going to go.", we do the same sort of thing in English.

3. Hints on Spelling

From now on you should go through the *Basic Sentences* once or twice looking at the *Aids to Listening*, and then switch to the regular Danish spelling in the third column. Be sure that you don't change your pronunciation the least bit, even though some of the words look quite different in the regular spelling. If you find that the Danish spelling throws you off the first time you try it, go back to the *Aids to Listening* until you are quite sure how to pronounce all the words. Then try using the regular spelling again.

1. The combination of letters *nd* in the regular spelling is generally pronounced as *n* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

ind	*enʔ*	in
end	*ɛn*	than
sand	*sanʔ*	true
Mand, Mænd	*manʔ, mɛnʔ*	man, men
Vand	*vanʔ*	water

Land	*lanʔ*	country
Strand	*sdranʔ*	beach
Haand, Hænder	*hɔnʔ, hɛ́nʔər*	hand, hands
rundt	*ronʔt*	around
Sund	*sonʔ*	sound
Lund	*lonʔ*	Lund (*last name*)
Landmand, Landmænd	*lánmànʔ, lánmènʔ*	farmer, farmers
mindst	*menʔst*	at least
vinde, vandt, vundet	*vénə, vanʔt, vónəð*	win, won
finde, fandt, fundet	*fénə, fanʔt, fónəð*	find, found
hende	*hénə*	her
hendes	*hénəs*	her, hers
sende	*sɛ́nə*	send
kende	*kɛ́nə*	know
kunde	*kúnə*	could
skynde sig	*sgǿnə saj*	hurry
inden	*énən*	before
anden, andet	*ánən, ánəð*	other
Anders	*ánərs*	Andrew
hinanden	*hinánən*	each other
endnu	*enú/énu*	still, yet
standse	*sdánsə*	stop
begynde	*bəgǿnʔə*	begin
Tændstik	*tɛ́nsdek*	match

Tandbørste	*tánbœ̀rsdə*	toothbrush
indskrive, indskrev, indskrevet	*énsgrìːˀvə, ɛ́nsgrɛ̀ːˀv, énsgrɛ̀ːˀvəð*	sign
Undertøj	*ónərtɔ̀j*	underwear
hundrede	*húnrəðə*	hundred
rasende	*ráːsənə*	angry, furious
spændende	*sbɛ́nənə*	exciting
firsindstyve	*fìːˀrsenstỳːvə*	eighty
tresindstyve	*trésenstỳːvə*	sixty

An exception to this is when the *d* comes between the letters *n* and *r*. Then it is pronounced as a [*d*]-sound, as in the following words:

andre	*ándrə*	others
mindre	*méndrə*	less

2. The combination of letters *ld* in the regular spelling is generally pronounced as *l* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

mild	*milˀ*	mild
kold	*kɔlˀ*	cold
Hold	*hɔlˀ*	team
fuld	*fulˀ*	full
vilde	*vélə/vel*	would, wanted to
skulde	*sgúlə/sgu*	should, was (were) going to, had to

holde	*hɔ̃lə*	stop
udfylde	*úðfyͅlʔə*	fill out
undskylde	*ónsgỳlʔə*	excuse (*verb*)
Undskyldning	*ónsgylʔneŋ*	excuse (*noun*)

An exception is the word *bɔlʔι* which is spelled *Bold*. You will find other exceptions pointed out further on.

3. The combination of letters [illegible] in the regular spelling is generally pronounced as *r* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

Gaard	*gɔ:ʔr*	farm
Gaardejer	*gɔ̃ràjʔər*	farmer
Bord	*bo:ʔr*	table
fjerde	*fjɛ́:ər*	fourth
gjorde	*gjó:ər*	did

4. The combination of letters *ds* in the regular spelling is generally pronounced as *s* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

sidst	*sist*	last
vidste, vidst	*vésdə, vest*	knew, known
bedst	*bɛst*	best
Bedstefar	*bɛ́sdəfà:r*	grandfather
Bedstemor	*bɛ́sdəmò:r*	grandmother
Plads	*plas*	seat, square
Raadhuspladsen	*rɔ̃ðhusplàsən*	Raadhuspladsen
Knudsen	*knúsən*	Knudsen

5. The combination of letters *dt* in the regular spelling is generally pronounced like the letter *t* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

godt	*gɔt*	good, well
lidt	*let*	a little
sødt	*søt*	sweet, nice
fladt	*flat*	flat
mødte, mødt	*mødə, møt*	met

6. The combination of letters *lv* in the regular spelling is generally pronounced as *l* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

selv	*sɛlʔ*	self
tolv	*tɔlʔ*	twelve
halv	*halʔ*	half
halvfjerds	*halfjérs*	seventy
halvfjerdsindstyve	*halfjérsenstỳːvə*	seventy
halvfems	*halfɛ́mʔs*	ninety
halvfemsindstyve	*halfɛmʔsenstỳːvə*	ninety
halvtreds	*haltrés*	fifty
halvtredsindstyve	*haltrésenstỳːvə*	fifty

7. The combinations of letters *hv* and *hj* at the beginning of a word in the regular spelling are pronounced as *v* and *j* alone. Here are the examples you have had:

hvor	*vɔ:ʔr*	where
hvordan	*vɔrdán*	how
hvornaar	*vɔrnɔ́:ʔr*	when
hvorfor	*vɔ́rfɔ̀r*	why
hvad	*vað/va*	what
hvem	*vɛmʔ*	who
hvis	*ves*	if
hver	*vɛ:ʔr*	each
hvid, hvidt	*vi:ʔð, vit*	white
hjem, hjemme	*jɛmʔ, jɛ́mə*	home
hjælpe, hjalp, hjulpet[1]	*jɛ́lbə, jɑlʔp, jólbəð*	help
Hjørne	*jœ́rnə*	corner

8. Here are a number of new words from this unit which you can read easily:

Gram	*gramʔ*	gram
Brev	*bre:ʔv*	letter
mest	*me:ʔst*	most
flest	*fle:ʔst*	most
Blæk	*blɛk*	ink
Bog, Bøger[1]	*bɔ:ʔγ, bø:ʔγər*	book, books
Post[1]	*pɔst*	mail
Posthus	*pɔ́sdhù:ʔs*	post office

---

[1] See *Word Study*, pp. 522, 523.

Postassistent	*pɔ́sdasisdɛ̀nˀt*	post-office clerk
Pakkepost	*págəpɔ̀st*	parcel post
Luftpost	*lófdpɔ̀st*	air mail
Bank	*baŋˀk*	bank
Bankassistent	*báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀt*	bank clerk
Bankbog, Bankbøger	*báŋgbɔ̀:ˀγ, báŋgbø̀:ˀγər*	bank book, bank books
skrive, skrev, skrevet	*sgrí:və, sgre:ˀv, sgré:vəð*	write, wrote, written
Seddel, Sedler	*sɛ́ðˀəl, sɛ́ðlər*	bill
Tikroneseddel	*tíkro:nəsɛ̀ðˀəl*	ten-crown bill
Rente	*rɛ́ndə*	interest
hæve	*hɛ́:və*	cash, draw out
Hæfte[1]	*hɛ́fdə*	booklet
Mærke[1]	*mɛ́rgə*	label, mark
Frimærke	*frí:mɛ̀rgə*	stamp
nær[1]	*nɛ:ˀr*	near
nærmere[1], nærmest	*nɛ́rmərə, nɛ́rməst*	nearer, nearest
trænge til	*trɛ́ŋə tel*	need
længere, længst[1]	*lɛ́ŋərə, lɛŋˀst*	longer, farther; longest, farthest
Gave	*gá:və*	gift
veje	*vájə*	weigh
Konto	*kɔ́nto*	account

---

[1] See *Word Study*, pp. 521-523.

sætte, satte, sat	*sɛ́də, sádə, sat*	put
lukke	*lógə*	close
under	*ónˀər*	under
i Orden[1]	*i ɔ́rˀdən*	in order, O.K.
yngre, yngst[2]	*ǿŋrə, øŋˀst*	younger, youngest
større, størst[2]	*sdœ́rə, sdœrst*	larger, largest
laane	*lɔ́:nə*	lend, borrow
Blanket	*blaŋkɛ́t*	blank
Kvarter	*kvarté:ˀr*	quarter (*of an hour*)
Ilpakke	*ílpàgə*	special delivery package
allerede	*aləré:ðə*	already
i Forgaars[2]	*i fɔ́rgɔ̀rˀs*	day before yesterday
i Overmorgen[2]	*i ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən*	day after tomorrow
Telegram	*teləgrámˀ*	telegram
telefonere	*teləfoné:ˀər*	telephone
Assistent[2]	*asisdɛ́nˀt*	assistant, clerk
Kasserer	*kasé:ˀər*	cashier

---

[1] Notice that the letters *rd* are pronounced as [*rd*] in this word.

[2] See *Word Study*, pp. 516, 517, 521, 522.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Telling time

Here are the Danish expressions used in telling time. You've had most of them in the *Basic Sentences.*

vá ɛr klɔ́gən?	Hvad er Klokken?	What time is it?
klɔ́gən ét	Klokken et	one o'clock
klɔ́gən tó:ʔ	Klokken to	two o'clock
tí:ʔ mi:núdər ɔ́vʔər tó:ʔ	ti Minutter over to	ten (minutes) past two
kvarté:ʔr ɔ́vʔər tó:ʔ *ed kvarté:ʔr ɔ́vʔər tó:ʔ*	Kvarter over to et Kvarter over to	quarter past two
tý:və minúdər ɔ́vʔər tó:ʔ *tí:ʔ minúdər i hálʔ tré:ʔ*	tyve Minutter over to ti Minutter i halv tre	twenty (minutes) past two
fɛ́mʔ minúdər i hálʔ tré:ʔ	fem Minutter i halv tre	twenty-five (minutes) past two
hálʔ tré:ʔ	halv tre	half past two
fɛ́mʔ minúdər ɔ́vʔər hálʔ tré:ʔ	fem Minutter over halv tre	twenty-five (minutes) of three
tý:və minúdər i tré:ʔ *tí:ʔ minúdər ɔ́vʔər hálʔ tré:ʔ*	tyve Minutter i tre ti Minutter over halv tre	twenty (minutes) of three
kvarté:ʔr i tré:ʔ *ed kvarté:ʔr i tré:ʔ*	Kvarter i tre et Kvarter i tre	quarter of three
tí:ʔ minúdər i tré:ʔ	ti Minutter i tre	ten (minutes) of three

Notice the following differences between Danish and English.

1. In Danish the expression for "half past" refers to the hour to come rather than to the one just past. For instance, *hálʔ tré:ʔ*, 'half three', is the equivalent of English "half past two".
2. For "twenty minutes past" the hour and "twenty minutes of", you either refer to the full hour or to the half hour. For example, you say *tí:ʔ minúdər i hálʔ tré:ʔ*, 'ten minutes before half past two', as well as *tý:və minúdər ɔ́vʔər tó:ʔ*, 'twenty minutes past two'. For "twenty-five minutes past" and "twenty-five minutes of", you generally refer to the half hour.
3. In Danish you don't leave out the word *minúdər* the way we leave out "minutes" in English expressions like "ten past two", "five of three", etc.

You know, of course, that to say "It is ———" with any of these expressions you put either *klɔ́gən ɛr* or *dɛn ɛr* before them; for instance, "It's one o'clock" is either *klɔ́gən ɛr ét* or *dɛn ɛr ét*.

Now look at the following sentence:

sɔ́ ka vi lí:ə nɔ́:ʔ vɔ́rəs tɔ́:ʔɣ **fɛ́mʔ minúdər ɔ́vʔər sɛ́gs.**	Saa kan vi lige naa vores Tog fem Minutter over seks.	Then we can just make our train at five minutes past six.

Notice that in the expression printed in heavy type there is no Danish word corresponding to English "at". What you really say in Danish is "Then we can just make our train five minutes past six." All the expressions given in the above list work in this way. *klɔ́gən ét*, for example, corresponds to both "one o'clock" and "at one o'clock", *tí:ʔ minúdər ɔ́vʔər tó:ʔ* corresponds to both "ten minutes past two" and "at ten minutes past two", etc.

Denmark is changing from the twelve hour system of telling time to the twenty-four hour system, under which the hours from twelve noon to twelve midnight run from thirteen to twenty-four. The radio and all timetables use the twenty-four hour system, and many clocks and watches have the numbers from thirteen to thirty printed inside the numbers from one to twelve.

2. Other expressions of time

Here are some other expressions having to do with time. You've had most of them in the *Basic Sentences*.

A.

Group I

i dá:ʔ	i Dag	today
te mɔ́rən	til Morgen	this morning
nú te mɔ́rən	nu til Morgen	
hɛ́:ʔr te mɔ́rən	her til Morgen	
i dá:ʔ te mɔ́rən	i Dag til Morgen	
i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔ	i Eftermiddag	this afternoon
i áfdən	i Aften	this evening
i mɔ̀rən áfdən	i Morgen Aften	tomorrow evening *or* tomorrow night

Group II

i gɔ́:ʔr	i Gaar	yesterday
i fɔ́rgɔ̀rʔs	i Forgaars	day before yesterday
i gɔr mɔ́rəs	i Gaar Morges	yesterday morning
i gɔr ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔs	i Gaar Eftermiddags	yesterday afternoon
i gɔr áfdəs	i Gaar Aftes	last evening *or* last night
i áfdəs	i Aftes	
i mɔ́rəs	i Morges	this morning
i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔs	i Eftermiddags	this afternoon
i sœ́nʔdas	i Søndags	last Sunday
i mánʔdas	i Mandags	last Monday
i mánʔdas áfdəs	i Mandags Aftes	last Monday evening

Group III

i nát	i Nat	tonight *or* last night
i sɔ́mər	i Sommer	this summer
i vénʔdər	i Vinter	this winter
te fɔ́rɔ̀:ʔərð	til Foraaret	this spring
te éfdərɔ̀:ʔərð	til Efteraaret	this fall
i ɔ́:ʔr	i Aar	this year
i dénə ú:ə	i denne Uge	this week
i dénə mɔ́:nəð	i denne Maaned	this month
i mɔ́rən	i Morgen	tomorrow
i ɔ́vʔərmɔ̀rən	i Overmorgen	day after tomorrow
i mɔ̀rən tíðli	i Morgen tidlig	tomorrow morning
i mɔ̀rən éfdərmedà:ʔ	i Morgen Eftermiddag	tomorrow afternoon

Notice:

1. the new words *i ɔ́vʔərmɔ̀rən*, 'day after tomorrow', *i fɔ́rgɔ̀rʔs*, 'day before yesterday', and *i éfdərmedà:ʔ*, 'this afternoon'. Since *méda* means "noon" as well as "dinner", this last word is made up just as English "afternoon" is. Notice the change in pronunciation from *méda* to *-medà:ʔ*. This is an en-noun with the plural *éfdərmedà:ə*.

2. that the expressions in Group II all refer to time that is past and that, with the exception of *i gɔ́:ʔr*, they a end in *s*. All the names of the days of the week have a form with *s* added which is used to speak of days that have gone by.

3. that English "this morning" and "this afternoon" have the special Danish equivalents *i mɔ́rəs* and *i éfdərmedà:ʔs* which are used when the morning or afternoon you're referring to has already gone by. When the morning or afternoon is either still going on or hasn't arrived yet, you use *i éfdərmedà:ʔ* to mean "this afternoon" and you may use either *te mɔ́rən, nú te mɔ́rən, hé:ʔr te mɔ́rən* or *i dá:ʔ te mɔ́rən* to mean "this morn-

ing". Look carefully at the following sentences to see how these forms are used. The first sentence you've had, the others are new.

jɛ vár dər sɛ́lʔ i mɔ́rəs;	Jeg var der selv i Morges.	I was there myself this morning.
han rájʔsər i dá:ʔ te mɔ́rən.	Han rejser i Dag til Morgen.	He's leaving this morning.
jɛ har prǿ:vəð ɔ fénə di:n barbé:ʔrmasgì:nə hɛ́:ʔr te mɔ́rən.	Jeg har prøvet at finde din Barbermaskine her til Morgen.	I've been trying to find your razor this morning.
jɛ kǿbdə mi:n bilɛ́d i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔs.	Jeg købte min Billet i Eftermiddags.	I bought my ticket this afternoon.
sga du te fóðbɔldkàmʔbən i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔ;	Skal du til Fodboldkampen i Eftermiddag?	Are you going to the soccer game this afternoon?
vi har sbèləð tɛ́nes i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔ.	Vi har spillet Tennis i Eftermiddag.	We've been playing tennis this afternoon.

As you see, you use *i mɔ́rəs* and *i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔs* when the verb of the sentence is a past form like ***var*** and ***kǿbdə***, and you use *te mɔ́rən* and *i ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔ* when the verb of the sentence is either a present form alone, like *rájʔsər* and *sga*, or a present form with a following participle, like ***har prǿ:vəð*** and ***har sbéləð***. We don't make any difference like this, so you'll have to watch out for it.

The expressions of time in Group III above don't have any special forms ending in *s* to refer to past time. They are all used to refer to the nearest summer, winter, year, etc., regardless of whether it has gone by or is still to come, just as are the corresponding English expressions. You know, for instance, that you can say in May, "I'm going to California this summer." and that you can say in September, "I went to California this summer." In the corresponding Danish sentences you would use *i sɔ́mər* in both cases.

B

ɔm mɔ́rənən	om Morgenen	in the morning
ɔm ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔən	om Eftermiddagen	in the afternoon
ɔm áfdənən	om Aftenen	in the evening
ɔm nádən	om Natten	at night

As you see, to correspond to English expressions like "in the morning", "in the afternoon", etc., you use In Danish *ɔmʔ* with the the-form of the noun.

3. Adjective forms used in comparing things

vɔ́:ʔr ər de **nɛ́rməsdə** *pɔ́sdhù:ʔs?*	Hvor er det nærmeste Posthus?	Where's the nearest post office?
sɔ́ gɔ́:ʔr de sɛfø̂ləli ɔ́sə máəð **hórdiərə.**	Saa gaar det selvfølgelig ogsaa meget hurtigere.	Of course, it goes much faster that way.
há:ʔr di égə nó:n dɛr ər **bíliərə;**	Har De ikke nogle, der er billigere?	Don't you have any cheaper ones?
ve di tá:lə led **láŋsɔmʔərə.**	Vil De tale lidt langsommere?	Will you speak a little slower?

Look at the Danish words that correspond to English "nearest", "quicker", "cheaper", and "slower". You know that many English adjectives have forms like "cheaper" and "cheapest" that are used in comparing things. Most Danish adjectives have corresponding **comparison forms.** Here they are for some of the adjectives you know:

Basic	*-ərə*	*-əst*
kɔlʔ (kold)	*kɔ́l***ərə** (koldere)	*kɔ́l***əst** (koldest)
ly:ʔs (lys)	*lý:s***ərə** (lysere)	*lý:s***əst** (lysest)
kɔrt (kort)	*kɔ́rd***ərə** (kortere)	*kɔ́rd***əst** (kortest)

Basic	*-ərə*	*-əst*
milʔ (mild)	*míl***ərə** (mildere)	*míl***əst** (mildest)
ny:ʔ (ny)	*ný:***ərə** (nyere)	*ný:***əst** (nyest)
re:ʔn (ren)	*ré:n***ərə** (renere)	*ré:n***əst** (renest)
bíli (billig)	*bíli***ərə** (billigere)	*bíli***st** (billigst)
hórdi (hurtig)	*hórdi***ərə** (hurtigere)	*hórdi***st** (hurtigst)
láŋsɔmʔ (langsom)	*láŋsɔmʔ***ərə** (langsommere)	*láŋsɔmʔ***st** (langsomst)
mórsɔmʔ (morsom)	*mórsɔmʔ***ərə** (morsommere)	*mórsɔmʔ***st** (morsomst)

As you see, you add *-ərə* to the basic form of the adjective to make the forms in the second column. They correspond to English forms ending in *er: kɔ́lərə*, 'colder'. And you add *əst* (or just *st* if the basic form ends in *i* or in *-sɔmʔ*) to make the forms in the third column. They correspond, of course, to English forms ending in *-est: kɔ́ləst*, 'coldest'.

Notice that the forms ending in *-ərə* and *-əst* don't have the catch, with the exception of those whose basic form ends in *sɔmʔ:* for example, *láŋsɔmʔ*, *láŋsɔmʔərə*, and *láŋsɔmʔst*.

The comparison forms of the adjective *dy:ʔr* (dyr), 'expensive', are *dý:ərə* (dyrere) and *dý:ərst* (dyrest). So you see that when the basic form of an adjective ends in a long vowel followed by *r*, the *ə* of the endings *-ərə* and *-əst* is pronounced before, rather than after, the *r*.

The comparison forms of the adjective *ségər* (sikker), 'sure', are *ségrərə* (sikrere) and *ségrəst* (sikrest). From this you see that when the basic form of an adjective ends in *-ər*, the *ə* is dropped out when the endings *-ərə* and *-əst* are added, just as it is when the ending *-ə* is added. (See *Word Study*, Unit 17, page 473.)

The form ending in *-ərə* does not change. It is used with all nouns, en- or et-, singular or plural. The form ending in *-əst* adds *-ə* (the *t*, or course, changing to *d*) when used after words like *dɛn*, *de*, *di*, *dɛ́nə*, *mí:nə*, etc.

You know that some English adjectives have irregular comparison forms like "good", "better", "best", or "many", "more", "most". This is also true of some Danish adjectives. Here are those of which you've had at least one of the three forms:

lílə (lille) little **smɔːʔ** (smaa) small	**méndrə** (mindre) smaller, less	**menʔst** (mindst) smallest, least
sdoːʔr (stor) large	**sdœ́rə** (større) larger	**sdœrst** (størst) largest
oŋʔ (ung) young	**øŋrə** (yngre) younger	**øŋʔst** (yngst) youngest
nɛːʔr (nær) near	**nɛ́rmərə** (nærmere) nearer	**nɛ́rməst** (nærmest) nearest
laŋʔ (lang) long, far	**lɛ́ŋərə** (længere) longer, farther	**lɛŋʔst** (længst) longest, farthest
goːʔ (god) good **gɔt** (godt) well	**bɛ́ðrə** (bedre) better	**bɛst** (bedst) best
máəð (meget) much	**méːər/meːʔr** (mere) more	**meːʔst** (mest) most
máŋə (mange) many	**fléːər/fleːʔr** (flere) more	**fleːʔst** (flest) most

fléːər, 'more' and *fleːʔst*, 'most' are used with plural nouns; otherwise *méːər* and *meːʔst* are the equivalents of English "more" and "most". *fléːər* also corresponds to English "several".

A few Danish adjectives don't have any special comparison forms. With them you use *méːər* and *meːʔst*, just as we use "more" and "most" in English. For example:

méːər entrəsánʔt (mere interessant) 'more interesting' and *méːʔsd entrəsánʔt* (mest interessant) 'most interesting'
méːər súlʔdən (mere sulten) 'hungrier' and *méːʔsd súlʔdən* (mest sulten) 'hungriest'
méːər sbɛ́nənə (mere spændende) 'more exciting' and *méːʔsd sbɛ́nənə* (mest spændende) 'most exciting'

You will find the comparison forms of adjectives indicated in the vocabulary at the back of the book.

4. More about adjectives

Look at the following sentences:

jɛ tróːʔr **dɛ́nə hɛ́ːʔr** *ɛr fɔr lílə.*	Jeg tror, denne her er for lille.	This one's too small, I think.
sɔ́ táːʔr jɛ **dɛn dýːər;**	Saa tager jeg den dyre.	Then I'll take the expensive one.

tɔ̀mʔ ɔ jáj gɔr lí:ə hɛ́:ʔrɛ̀nʔ ɔ kǿ:bər no:n barbé:ʔrblà:ðə, vi trɛ́ŋʔər te **nó:n ný:ʔ;**	Tom og jeg gaar lige herind og køber nogle Barberblade. Vi trænger til nogle nye.	Tom and I are going in here and get some razor blades. We need some new ones.

Look at the expressions printed in heavy type here. Notice that where in English we use "one" or "ones" after "this" and after the adjectives "expensive" and "new", in Danish you just say *dɛ́nə hɛ́:ʔr, dɛn dý:ər*, and *nó:n ný:ʔ.*

5. Compounds

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit:

noun + noun

pɔ́sdhù:ʔs (Posthus) post office = **pɔst** (Post) mail + **hu:ʔs** (Hus) house

lɔ́fdpɔ̀st (Luftpost) air mail = **loft** (Luft) air + **pɔst** (Post) mail

págəpɔ̀st (Pakkepost) parcel post = **págə** (Pakke) package + **pɔst** (Post) mail

págəɛgsbədisjò:ʔn (Pakkeekspedition) package window = **págə** (Pakke) package + **ɛgsbədisjó:ʔn** (Ekspedition) service

tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto (Checkkonto) checking account = **tjɛk** (Check) check + **kɔ́nto** (Konto) account

tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə (Checkhæfte) check book = **tjɛk** (Check) check + **hɛ́fdə** (Hæfte) booklet

rájsətjɛ̀k (Rejsecheck) traveler's check = **rájsə** (Rejse) travel (this can be either the noun or the verb) + **tjɛk** (Check) check

báŋgbɔ̀:ʔɣ (Bankbog) bank book = **baŋʔk** (Bank) bank + **bɔ:ʔɣ** (Bog) book

báŋgasisdɛ̀nʔt (Bankassistent) bank clerk = **baŋʔk** (Bank) bank + **asisdɛ́nʔt** (Assistent) assistant, clerk

pɔ́sdasisdɛ̀nʔt (Postassistent) post-office clerk = **pɔst** (Post) mail + **asisdɛ́nʔt** (Assistent) assistant, clerk *adjective + noun*

frí:mɛ̀rgə (Frimærke) stamp = **fri:ʔ**(fri) free + **mɛ́rgə** (Mærke) label, mark

miscellaneous

ílpàgə (Ilpakke) special delivery package = **il-** (from an old verb, **í:lə** (ile), which meant "run" or "hurry") + **págə** (Pakke) package

6. Irregular verbs

Here are the irregular verbs you had in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
sgrí:və (skrive) write	*sgre:ʔv* (skrev) wrote	*sgré:vəð* (skrevet) written
jɛ́lbə (hjælpe) help	*jalʔp* (hjalp) helped	*jólbəð* (hjulpet) helped

7. Irregular nouns

The noun *bɔ:ʔɣ, -ən* (Bog, -en), 'book', has the irregular plural *bǿ:ʔɣər* (Bøger).

The noun *tjɛk, -ən* (Check, -en), 'check', has the irregular plural *tjɛgs* (Checks), taken, of course, from the English plural.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. Read the following numbers off as though you were telling time in Danish. For instance, for 1:05, say *klɔ́gən ε fέm? minúdər ɔ́v?ər ét* or *dεn ε fέm? minúdər ɔ́v?ər ét.*

1:05
2:35
5:15
7:20
3:45
4:30

10:40
9:55
6:50
8:10
11:30
12:25

2:15
5:30
7:45
9:10
1:35
12:30

B. Change the English words given in parentheses in the following sentences into Danish.

1. *de ε máəð* (warmer) *i ny jɔ́rg ɔm sɔ́mərən εn i købənháv?n;*	Det er meget (*warmer*) i New York om Sommeren end i København.
2. *han tá:?lər vírgli máəð* (louder) *εn jáj.*	Han taler virkelig meget (*louder*) end jeg.
3. *dé ε dεn* (nicest—use *hýgəli*) *famí:?ljə jε nó:ən sénə har trófəð.*	Det er den (*nicest*) Familie, jeg nogen Sinde har truffet.
4. *jε vèlə ǿnsgə tú:?ərn hà:ðə vè:ərð máəð* (longer).	Jeg vilde ønske, Turen havde været meget (*longer*).
5. *dé ε dεn* (coldest) *dá:? vi har háft.*	Det er den (*coldest*) Dag, vi har haft.

6. *dé var sgam máəð* (more expensive) *ɛn jɛ hà:ðə tró:ˀəð.*	Det var skam meget (*more expensive*), end jeg havde troet.
7. *dɛ́nˀ resdoráŋ ɛr máəð* (better) *ɛn dɛ́nə hɛ́:ˀr.*	Den Restaurant er meget (*better*) end denne her.
8. *díd vɛ́:ərlsə ɛr máəð* (lighter) *ɛn mít.*	Dit Værelse er meget (*lighter*) end mit.
9. *dé ɛ dɛn* (best) *ví:ˀn jɛ har fɔ́:əð.*	Det er den (*best*) Vin, jeg har faaet.
10. *dé var dɛn* (warmest) *dá:ˀ i ɔ́:ˀərð. sýns di égə ɔ́sə;*	Det var den (*warmest*) Dag i Aaret. Synes De ikke ogsaa?
11. *hans* (youngest) *sœ́n ɛr báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀt.*	Hans (*youngest*) Søn er Bankassistent.
12. *de ɛ di* (most interesting) *mɛ́nəsgər man trɛ́fər hos hám.*	Det er de (*most interesting*) Mennesker, man træffer hos ham.
13. *jɛ var né:ðə pɔ: pɔ̂sdhù:ˀsəð* (this morning) *mɛ en págə dɛr sgu te amé:ˀrika.*	Jeg var nede paa Posthuset (*this morning*) med en Pakke, der skulde til Amerika.
14. (Last evening) *sdó:ˀð blɛ́gəð énə hos dáj, mɛn nú ka jɛ égə fénə de.*	(*Last evening*) stod Blækket inde hos dig, men nu kan jeg ikke finde det.
15. *jɛ sɛ́ndə ham ed teləgrámˀ* (this afternoon), *sɔ nú ka vi sé:ˀ va dər sgé:ˀr.*	Jeg sendte ham et Telegram (*this afternoon*), saa nu kan vi se, hvad der sker.
16. *vɔ́:ˀr var du hɛ́nə* (last Friday evening)?	Hvor var du henne (*last Friday evening*)?
17. *jɛ ku égə fénə mid tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə* (this morning).	Jeg kunde ikke finde mit Checkhæfte (*this morning*).
18. *jɛ sɔ́:ˀ ham pɔ: gá:ðən* (yesterday afternoon) *mɛ é:ˀn pí:ə ɔ* (yesterday evening) *mɛ en ánən.*	Jeg saa ham paa Gaden (*yesterday afternoon*) med een Pige, og (*yesterday evening*) med en anden.
19. (Last Friday) *kɔm mi:n óŋˀgəl jɛ́mˀ fra fý:ˀn.*	(*Last Friday*) kom min Onkel hjem fra Fyn.
20. *nɔr du kɔ́mˀər* (this afternoon), *ka vi jo: tá:lə ɔ́mˀ də.*	Naar du kommer (*this afternoon*), kan vi jo tale om det.

21. *di ka hɛ́nd də né:ðə pɔ: pɔ́sdhù:ʔsəð* (day after tomorrow).	De kan hente det nede paa Posthuset (*day after tomorrow*).
22. *har du fɔ̀:əð di:n rájsətjèg hɛ́:vəð; já dɛ́nʔ hɛ́:vəðə jɛ* (day before yesterday).	Har du faaet din Rejsecheck hævet? Ja, den hævede jeg (*day before yesterday*).
23. *jɛ har énu égə vɛ̀:ərð i vánʔəð* (this summer).	Jeg har endnu ikke været i Vandet (*this summer*).
24. *jɛ sga ú:ʔð ɔ sbɛ̀lə fóðbɔ̀lʔd* (tomorrow morning).	Jeg skal ud at spille Fodbold (*tomorrow morning*).
25. *jɛ tró:ʔr bəsdɛ́m d ég han barbé:ʔər saj* (in the morning).	Jeg tror bestemt ikke, han barberer sig (*in the morning*).
26. *sga han árbajʔdə* (this month);	Skal han arbejde (*this month*)?
27. *vi sga bó:ʔ ve vánʔəð* (this summer).	Vi skal bo ved Vandet (*this summer*).

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercises as your Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Mrs. Larsen is talking to her daughter Inge.*

fru lársən	*Fru Larsen*
hø:ʔr éŋə, ka du égə lí:ə gɔ: ɔ́vʔər pɔ: pɔ́sdhù:ʔsəð mɛ dɛ́də bré:ʔv fɔ́r maj.	Hør Inge, kan du ikke lige gaa over paa Posthuset med dette Brev for mig?

ɔ hɛ́:ʔr ɛr en págə sɔm sga te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr.	Og her er en Pakke, som skal til Aalborg.
náj? vɛ́nʔd nu léd, du mɔ: égə gɔ́:ʔ enú;	Nej, vent nu lidt, du maa ikke gaa endnu.
jɛ sga ɔ́sə ha no:n tí:ø:ərs ɔ fémdənø:rəs frí:mèrgər.	Jeg skal ogsaa have nogle Tiøres og Femtenøres Frimærker.
éŋə	*Inge*
vɔrdán ve du a págən sɛ́nʔt?	Hvordan vil du have Pakken sendt?
fru lársən	*Fru Larsen*
sɛ́nʔ dɛn bá:ər sɔm almɛ́nʔli págəpɔ̀st.	Send den bare som almindelig Pakkepost.
éŋə	*Inge*
vɔ́rfɔr sɛ́nər du dɛn égə sɔm ílpàgə?	Hvorfor sender du den ikke som Ilpakke?
de gɔ́:ʔr jo: máəð hórdiərə.	Det gaar jo meget hurtigere.
fru lársən	*Fru Larsen*
dé kɔ́sdər égsdrə, ɔ dɛn sga égə vɛ̀:ər i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr fœ́:ʔr pɔ: tɔ́:ʔrsda.	Det koster ekstra, og den skal ikke være i Aalborg før paa Torsdag.
har du pɛ́ŋə ɛ́lər sga jɛ lɔ́:nə daj nó:n.	Har du Penge, eller skal jeg laane dig nogle?
éŋə	*Inge*
lɔ́:nə;	Laane?
de ɛ jo: dí:ʔn págə ɔ díd bré:ʔv, sɔ de ɛ da máj dɛr lɔ́:ʔnər dáj.	Det er jo din Pakke og dit Brev, saa det er da mig, der laaner dig.
vé:ʔ du fɔrésdən vá tí:ʔð báŋʔgən lógər;	Ved du forresten, hvad Tid Banken lukker?

fru lársən

já den lógər klɔ̀gər éd ɔm lœ́rda:ˀən.

nɔr du alí:əvɛl ɛr pɔ: pɔ́sdhù:ˀsəð, ka du lí:ə sɔ gɔ́d sɛ́nə dé teləgrámˀ, sɔ́ ɛr dé i ɔ́rˀdən.

vá sýns du vi sga sgrí:və?

éŋə

ed teləgrámˀ; dé bəhǿ:ˀvəs da égə.

ví ka jo: bá:ər teləfoné:ˀər ɔ sí:ə a jɛ desvérə égə ka kɔ́mə fœ́:ˀr fré:ˀda.

2. *At the post office.*

éŋə

jɛ há:ˀr ed bré:ˀv dɛr sga mɛ lófdpɔ̀sd te amé:ˀrika;

ve di vè:ər vɛ́nli ɔ vájə de;

pɔ́sdasisdɛ̀nˀt

já gɛ́rnə; de vájər ónˀər fɛ́mˀ grámˀ, sɔ dɛr sga en kró:nə ɔ fɛ́mˀ ɔ tý:və pɔ́: de.

mɛn dɛ́nˀ págə dɛ́:ˀr mɔ: di gɔ: ɔ́vˀər te págəɛgsbədisjò:ˀnən mɛ́.

éŋə

máŋə ták.

Fru Larsen

Ja, den lukker Klokken et om Lørdagen.

Naar du alligevel er paa Posthuset, kan du lige saa godt sende det Telegram, saa er det i Orden.

Hvad synes du, vi skal skrive?

Inge

Et Telegram! Det behøves da ikke.

Vi kan jo bare telefonere og sige, at jeg desværre ikke kan komme før Fredag.

Inge

Jeg har et Brev, der skal med Luftpost til Amerika.

Vil De være venlig at veje det?

Postassistent

Ja gerne. Det vejer under 5 Gram, saa der skal 1 Krone og 25 paa det.

Men den Pakke der maa De gaa over til Pakkeekspeditionen med.

Inge

Mange Tak.

3. *At the bank.*

báŋgasisdɛ̀nʔt
go: mɔ́rən frǿgən lársən.
trɛ́ŋər di nu aləré:ð̥ te pɛ́ŋə igɛ́n;

éŋə
já jɛ ka égə fɔrsdɔ́:ʔ de.
jɛ syns áldri jɛ har nɔ́k.
de ɛ vɛl bɛ́ðrə jɛ fɔ́:ʔr húnrəðə kró:nər i dá:ʔ.

báŋgasisdɛ̀nʔt
já úðmɛ̀rgəð.
vɔrdán ve di há:ʔ dəm?

éŋə
la mə bá:ər fɔ́:ʔ dəm i tíkro:nəsɛ̀ðlər ták.
nɛ́: godá:ʔ fru knúsən, vórdən há:ʔr di də?

fru knúsən
tág jɛ há:ʔr də gɔ́t.

éŋə
ɛr dí ɔ́sə énə ɔ hɛ́:və pɛ́ŋə;

fru knúsən
nɛ́: jɛ sga ɔ́:bnə en tjɛgkɔnto.

Bankassistent
God Morgen, Frøken Larsen.
Trænger De nu allerede til Penge igen?

Inge
Ja, jeg kan ikke forstaa det.
Jeg synes aldrig, jeg har nok.
Det er vel bedre, jeg faar 100 Kroner i Dag.

Bankassistent
Ja udmærket.
Hvordan vil De have dem?

Inge
Lad mig bare faa dem i Tikronesedler, Tak.
Næh Goddag Fru Knudsen, hvordan har De det?

Fru Knudsen
Tak, jeg har det godt.

Inge
Er De ogsaa inde at hæve Penge?

Fru Knudsen
Næh, jeg skal aabne en Checkkonto.

báŋgasisdɛ̀nʔd te fru knúsən	*Bankassistent til Fru Knudsen*
vɛ́rs gó:ʔ hɛ́:ʔr ɛr en blaŋkɛ́d di mɔ: úðfylʔə.	Værsaagod, her er en Blanket, De maa udfylde.
blɛ́gəð sdɔ́:ʔr dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀wrə.	Blækket staar derovre.
di fɔ́:ʔr dɛ̀rəs tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə ɔ báŋgbɔ̀:ʔγ hos kasé:ʔərən.	De faar Deres Checkhæfte og Bankbog hos Kassereren.
fru knúsən	*Fru Knudsen*
máŋə ták.	Mange Tak.
hǿ:ʔr éŋə, ka di égə jɛ́lbə maj ed ɔ́jəblɛ̀k.	Hør Inge, kan De ikke hjælpe mig et Øjeblik.
jɛ ka áldri fènə ú:ʔð a dɛ́nʔ slags téŋʔ.	Jeg kan aldrig finde ud af den Slags Ting.
kasé:ʔərən	*Kassereren*
vɔr máəð ǿnsgər di ɔ sèdə énʔ?	Hvor meget ønsker De at sætte ind?
fru knúsən	*Fru Knudsen*
hɛ́:ʔr ər sýwʔ húnrəðə kró:nər.	Her er 700 Kroner.
fɔr jɛ rɛ́ndər a dɛ́m;	Faar jeg Renter af dem?
kasé:ʔərən	*Kassereren*
já di fɔ́:ʔr ɔmkréŋʔ tó:ʔ prosɛ́nʔt.	Ja, De faar omkring 2 Procent.
pɔ: tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto ɛr de jo: égə sɔ máəð sɔm pɔ: en alménʔli báŋgkɔ̀nto.	Paa Checkkonto er det jo ikke saa meget som paa en almindelig Bankkonto.
4. *Outside the bank.*	
fru knúsən	*Fru Knudsen*
jɛ tá:ldə fɔrɛ́sdən mɛ tɔ́mʔ sméd i gɔ́:ʔr.	Jeg talte forresten med Tom Smith i Gaar.
hán sgu i báŋʔgən fɔr ɔ hɛ́:və en rájsətjɛ̀k.	Han skulde i Banken for at hæve en Rejsecheck.

éŋə	*Inge*
já jé mǿdə ham lí:ə bá:ˀɛ̀fdər.	Ja, jeg mødte ham lige bagefter.
han sgu ú:ˀð ɔ kǿ:bə gá:vər te hé:lə si:n famí:ˀljə.	Han skulde ud at købe Gaver til hele sin Familie.
mɛn jé mɔ: desvérə gɔ́:ˀ nú fru knúsən.	Men jeg maa desværre gaa nu, Fru Knudsen.
jé sga vɛ̀:ər jémə te frógɔsd ɔm ed kvarté:ˀr, sɔ jɛ mɔ: ta dɛn nérməsdə vájˀ jémˀ.	Jeg skal være hjemme til Frokost om et Kvarter, saa jeg maa tage den nærmeste Vej hjem.
fru knúsən	*Fru Knudsen*
já mí:ˀn famí:ˀljə véndər ɔ̀sə máj jémˀ te frógɔsd, sɔ jé mɔ: hélərə sgǿnə maj.	Ja, min Familie venter ogsaa mig hjem til Frokost, saa jeg maa hellere skynde mig.
farvél ɔ hílˀs jémə;	Farvel og hils hjemme.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and two post-office clerks

You go up to a window in the post office and ask where you should go to send a package. The clerk tells you to go to the package window right around the corner. You go there and talk with the clerk about the package. You tell him where it's to go. He asks how you want to send it. You ask him how you can send it. He tells you that it can go either by ordinary parcel post or special delivery. He explains that of course special delivery costs extra but it goes much faster. You tell him you think you'd better send it special. He weighs it and tells you how much it will cost. Then you inquire about sending a telegram. He tells you you can send it from there or you can do it over the telephone. You decide to wait and do it by phone. You thank him and leave.

2. You and a friend

The friend tells you he's going over to the post office to mail a package and asks if you want anything. You ask him if he'll buy you some stamps and mail some letters. He agrees and asks how many stamps you want. You tell him and also ask him to send the letter to New York by air mail. He asks you if you can lend him five crowns—he forgot to go to the bank to draw some money out. You give him a ten-crown bill and ask him to get it changed for you.

3. You and a friend, a bank clerk and the cashier

You and your friend go to the bank together. You have a traveler's check cashed. The clerk asks you to write your name on the check. You find that you don't have any ink, so he tells you where to get some. You sign the check and he asks you how you want your money. When you've told him, you comment on how nice it is to have traveler's checks when you're traveling. Then your friend starts on his business—he wants to open a checking account. The clerk gives him a blank to fill out. He tells the clerk that he can't figure it out, so the clerk shows him where he should write his name and address, etc. Then he tells him to go over to the cashier and he will give him the check book and bank book. The cashier asks your friend how much he wants to deposit, tells him that he gets two percent interest, and fixes everything up for him.

Finder List

aləré:ðə (allerede) already

alménˀli (almindelig) ordinary

asisdɛ́nˀt, *-ən*, *-ər* (Assistent, -en, -er) assistant, clerk

báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀt, *-ən*, *-ər* (Bankassistent, -en, -er) bank clerk

báŋgbɔ̀:ˀγ, *-ən*, *báŋgbø̀:ˀγər* (Bankbog, -en, Bankbøger) bank book

baŋˀk, *-ən*, *-ər* (Bank, -en, -er) bank

blaŋkɛ́t, *-ən*, *-ər* (Blanket, -ten, -ter) blank

blɛk, *-əð* (Blæk, -ket) ink

bre:ˀv, *-əð*, *bré:və* (Brev, -et, -e) letter

bɔ:ˀγ, *-ən*, *bǿ:ˀγər* (Bog, -en, Bøger) book

ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ, *-ən*, *ɛ́fdərmedà:ə* (Eftermiddag, -en, -e) afternoon

i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ (i Eftermiddag) this afternoon

ɛgsbədisjó:ˀn, *-ən* (Ekspedition, -en) service

ɛ́gsdrə (ekstra) extra

fènə (fanˀd, fònəð) ú:ˀð á:ˀ (finde) (fandt, fundet) (ud af) figure out

flé:ər (flere) several

fle:ˀst (flest) most

frí:mèrgə, -ð, -r (Frimærke, -t, -r) stamp

fémˀø:ərs frí:mèrgə (femøres Frimærke) five-*Øre* stamp

fɔ́rgɔ̀rˀs: i fɔ́rgɔ̀rˀs (i Forgaars) day before yesterday

gá:və, -n, -r (Gave, -n, -r) gift, present

gramˀ, -əð, — (Gram, -met, —) gram

hɛ́fdə, -ð, -r (Hæfte, -t, -r) booklet

hɛ́:və, -ðə (hæve, -de) cash, draw out

ílpàgə, -n, -r (Ilpakke, -n, -r) special delivery package

jɛ́lbə, jɛ́lˀbər, jalˀp, jólbəð (hjælpe, hjalp, hjulpet) help

kasé:ˀər, -ən, -ə (Kasserer, -en, -e) cashier

kvarté:ˀr, kvarté:ˀərð, kvarté:ˀər (Kvarter, -et, -er) quarter (*of an hour*)

kɔ́nto, kɔ́nto:ˀən, kɔ́nto:ˀər (Konto, -en, -er) account

lɛ́ŋərə (længere) longer, farther

lɛŋˀst (længst) longest, farthest

lófdpɔ̀st, -ən (Luftpost, -en) air mail

lógə, -ðə (lukke, -de) close

lɔ́:nə, lɔ́:ˀnər, -də (laane, -te) lend, borrow

méndrə (mindre) smaller, less

menˀst (mindst) smallest, least

me:ˀst (mest) most

mɛ́rgə, -ð, -r (Mærke, -t, -r) mark, label

nɛ:ˀr (nær) near

nɛ́rmərə (nærmere) nearer

nɛ́rməst (nærmest) nearest

ónˀər (under) under

págəɛgsbədisjò:ˀn, -ən (Pakkeekspedition, -en) package window

págəpɔ̀st, -ən (Pakkepost, -en) parcel post

prosɛ́nˀt, -ən, -ər (Procent, -en, -er) percent

pɔst, -ən (Post, -en) mail

pɔ́sdasisdɛ̀nˀt, -ən, -ər (Postassistent, -en, -er) post-office clerk

pɔ́sdhù:ˀs, -əð, pɔ́sdhù:sə (Posthus, -et, -e) post office

rájsətjɛ̀k, -ən, rájsətjɛ̀ks (Rejsecheck, -en, -s) traveler's check

rɛ́ndə, -n, -r (Rente, -n, -r) interest (*on money*)

sdœ́rə (større) larger

sdærst (størst) largest

sɛ́də (*sádə*) *énˀ* (sætte) (satte) (ind) deposit, put in

sɛ́ðˀəl, *sɛ́ðˀlən*, *sɛ́ðlər* (Seddel, -en, Sedler) bill (*money*)

tíkro:nəsɛ̀ðˀəl (Tikroneseddel) ten-crown bill

sgrí:və, *sgre:ˀv*, *sgré:vəð* (skrive, skrev, skrevet) write

teləfoné:ˀər, *-ðə* (telefonere, -de) telephone

teləgrámˀ, *-əð*, *-ər* (Telegram, -met, -mer) telegram

tjɛk, *-ən*, *tjɛks* (Check, -en, -s) check

tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə, *-ð*, *-r* (Checkhæfte, -t, -r) checkbook

tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto, *tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto:ˀən*, *tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto:ˀər* (Checkkonto, -en, -er) checking account

trɛ́ŋə (*trɛ́ŋˀər*, *-də*) *te* (trænge) (-te) (til) need

úðfylˀə, *-də* (udfylde, -te) fill out

vájə, *-ðə* (veje, -de) weigh

vɛ́ndə, *-ðə* (vente, -de) expect

ɔ́rˀdən: i ɔ́rˀdən (i Orden) in order, O.K.

ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən: i ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən (I Overmorgen) day after tomorrow

ǿŋrə (yngre) younger

ǿŋˀst (yngst) youngest

UNIT 20

IN THE OFFICE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Bill has a business appointment with Mr. Olesen, an engineer. He speaks to the receptionist in Mr. Olesen's office.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Bill		
Good morning, I'd like to speak to Mr. Olesen.	*go: mɔ́rən, jɛ vèlə gέrnə tá:lə mɛ ènsjənjør ó:ləsən.*	God Morgen, jeg vilde gerne tale med Ingeniør Olesen.
promised	*lɔ́:vəðə*	lovede
I said I'd be here at eleven o'clock.	*jɛ lɔ́:vəðə ɔ vέ:ər hər klɔ̀gən έlvə;*	Jeg lovede at være her Klokken elleve.
Receptionist		
so *or* then	*álʔdsɔ*	altsaa
agreement *or* appointment	*ávtà:lə*	Aftale
Oh, then you have an appointment with Mr. Olesen.	*di há:ʔr álʔdsɔ en ávtà:lə mɛ ènsjənjør ó:ləsən.*	De har altsaa en Aftale med Ingeniør Olesen.
Your name, sir?	*ɔ vá ɛr dὲrəs návʔn hέr?*	Og hvad er Deres Navn, Herr?

Bill		
Mr. Butler of Holmes and Watson.	*ènsjənjør bɔ́dlər fra* "Holmes and Watson".	Ingeniør Butler fra Holmes and Watson.
Receptionist		
Won't you sit down?	*ve di ég sèðə né:ˀð;*	Vil De ikke sidde ned?
secretary	*sɛgrətɛ́:ˀr*	Sekretær
I'll call Mr. Olesen's secretary and tell her you're here.	*jɛ sga réŋə te ènsjənjør ó:ləsəns sɛgrətɛ́:ˀr ɔ sí:ə di ɛ́r hər;*	Jeg skal ringe til Ingeniør Olesens Sekretær og sige, De er her.
magazines	*blá:ðə*	Blade
newspapers	*aví:ˀsər*	Aviser
read	*lɛ́:sə*	læse
There are magazines and newspapers on the table there if you want to read.	*dɛr ər blá:ðə ɔ aví:ˀsər dɛ́:ˀr pɔ: bó:ˀərð, ves di ar lǿsd te ɔ lɛ́:sə.*	Der er Blade og Aviser der paa Bordet, hvis De har Lyst til at læse.
turn on *or* light	*tɛ́nə*	tænde
the light	*lý:ˀsəð*	Lyset
I'll turn on the light for you.	*nú sga jɛ tɛ́nə lý:ˀsəð fɔ́r dəm.*	Nu skal jeg tænde Lyset for Dem.
dark	*mœrgt*	mørkt
It's so dark out today.	*de ɛ́r sɔ mœ́rgd i dá:ˀ.*	Det er saa mørkt i Dag.
Bill		
rained	*rájnəðə*	regnede
Yes, it was raining when I came over here, so I had to take a taxi.	*iá de rájnəðə da jɛ kɔ́mˀ, sɔ jɛ mɔ̀də tá en tágsa hɛrhɛ́nˀ.*	Ja, det regnede, da jeg kom, saa jeg maatte tage en Taxa herhen.

A little while later as Bill and Mr. Olesen are just finishing up their business.

Mr. Olesen		
contract	*kontrágt*	Kontrakt
signed	*ónərsgrè:ʔvəð*	underskrevet
It's certainly good we got that contract signed.	*de var vírgli gɔ́d vi feg dɛ́nʔ kontrágd ónərsgrè:ʔvəð.*	Det var virkelig godt, vi fik den Kontrakt underskrevet.
By the way, I hear you've just been to Aalborg.	*jɛ hø̂:ər fɔrɛ́sdən a di lí:ə har vɛ̀:ərð i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr;*	Jeg hører forresten, at De lige har været i Aalborg.
the factories	*fabrégərnə*	Fabrikkerne
Did you see any of the factories there?	*sɔ́:ʔ di nó:n a fabrégərnə dɛ́:ʔr;*	Saa De nogle af Fabrikkerne der?
Bill		
Yes I did.	*já dé gjó:ər jɛ.*	Ja, der gjorde jeg.
the president *or* the director	*dirɛgtø̂:ʔərn*	Direktøren
company	*kompanì:ʔ*	Kompagni
And I spoke with the president of C. K. Jensen and Co.	*ɔ jɛ tá:ldə mɛ dirɛgtø̂:ʔərn fɔr sé:ʔ kó:ʔ jɛ́nsən ɔ kómpanì:ʔ.*	Og jeg talte med Direktøren for C. K. Jensen og Co.
exceptionally	*ualménʔli*	ualmindelig
able *or* nice	*fleŋʔk*	flink
He was exceptionally nice.	*hán var úalménʔli fléŋʔk.*	Han var ualmindelig flink.
Olesen		
came	*to:ʔ*	tog
Did you come back to Copenhagen by train?	*to: di tebá:γə te købənhávʔn mɛ lý:ntɔ̀:ʔγəð;*	Tog De tilbage til København med Lyntoget?

Bill		
flew	*flɔjˀ*	fløj
No, I flew home.	*nájˀ, jɛ flɔ́jˀ jɛ́mˀ.*	Nej, jeg fløj hjem.
Olesen		
airplanes	*flý:vmasgì:nər*	Flyvemaskiner
On one of the new planes?	*mɛ é:ˀn a di ný:ə flý:vmasgì:nər;*	Med en af de nye Flyvemaskiner?
Bill		
fine	*fí:ˀn*	fin
Yes, we had a fine trip.	*já vi há:ðə en fí:ˀn tú:ˀr.*	Ja, vi havde en fin Tur.
It took just an hour.	*de to:ˀ lí: en tí:mə;*	Det tog lige en Time.
Olesen		
When are you going back to America?	*vɔrnɔ́:ˀr sga di rὰjsə tebá:γə te amé:ˀrikaʔ*	Hvornaar skal De rejse tilbage til Amerika?
Bill		
I'll be leaving here in about a week.	*jɛ rὰjsər nɔ́g hərfrá:ˀ alərέ:ðə ɔm en ú:əs tí:ˀð;*	Jeg rejser nok herfra allerede om en Uges Tid.
England	*ɛ́ŋlὰnˀ*	England
France	*fráŋkri*	Frankrig
I'm going to England first to meet my wife, and then we're going to France.	*jɛ tar nὲmli fœ́rsd te ɛ́ŋlὰnˀ vɔr jɛ sga mǿ:ðə mi:n kó:nə, ɔ bá:ˀὲfdər rὰjsər vi te fráŋkri;*	Jeg tager nemlig først til England, hvor jeg skal møde min Kone, og bagefter rejser vi til Frankrig.
Europe	*evró:pa*	Europa
I want her to see a little of Europe.	*jɛ ve gɛ́rnə há:ˀ a hún sga sé:ˀ léd a evró:pa;*	Jeg vil gerne have, at hun skal se lidt af Europa.

Olesen		
idea	*idéːʔ*	Ide
That's a good idea.	*iá déen góːʔ idéːʔ.*	Ja, det er en god Ide.
the war	*kríːʔən*	Krigen
changed	*fɔránʔdrəð·*	forandret
You'll find that the war has changed Europe quite a lot.	*di ve nɔ́g sýns a kríːʔən har fɔránʔdrəð evróːpa égə sɔ lét.*	De vil nok synes, at Krigen har forandret Europa ikke saa lidt.
Bill		
Yes, I suppose it has.	*já dé tróːʔr jɛ ɔ́sə.*	Ja, det tror jeg ogsaa.
By the way, do you know N. T. Johnson and Co. in London?	*kɛ́nər di fɔrɛ́sdən ɛ́n téːʔ djɔ́nsɔn ɔ kómpanìːʔ i lɔ́ndɔn;*	Kender De forresten N. T. Johnson & Co. i London?
Olesen		
Indeed I do!	*ɔ́m jɛ́ gœ́r.*	Om jeg gør!
1938	*nédən húnrəðə ɔ́ːdə ɔ trɛ́ðvə*	1938
We did a lot of business with them in 1938.	*i nédən húnrəðə ɔ́ːdə ɔ trɛ́dvə gjóːər vi sdóːər fɔrɛ́dneŋʔər mɛ́ dəm.*	I 1938 gjorde vi store Forretninger med dem.
customers	*kónər*	Kunder
They were one of our best customers before the war.	*de var ɛ́ːʔn a vɔ̀rəs bɛ́sdə kónər énən kríːʔən.*	Det var en af vores bedste Kunder inden Krigen.
Bill		
died	*dǿːðə*	døde
during	*ónʔər*	under
I suppose you know that the president died during the war?	*di véːʔ vɛl a dirɛgtǿːʔərn dǿːðə ónʔər kríːʔən;*	De ved vel, at Direktøren døde under Krigen?

Olesen		
sad	*sœ́rγlit*	sørgeligt
Yes, that was too bad.	*ja vɔr vár de sœ́rγlit.*	Ja, hvor var det sørgeligt.
was killed air raid	*ble drɛ́bt* *lófdangrè:ˀp*	blev dræbt Luftangreb
He was killed during an air' raid.	*hán ble drɛ́bd ónˀər ed lófdangrè:ˀp.*	Han blev dræbt under et Luftangreb.
Bill		
I beg your pardon, I can't hear you.	*va bəhá:ˀr; jɛ ka égə hǿ:ər va di síər;*	Hvad behager? Jeg kan ikke høre, hvad De siger.
Olesen		
I'm awfully sorry.	*já di mɔ: máəð ónsgy̆lˀə.*	Ja, De maa meget undskylde.
afraid of the typewriters make(s) quite noise	*báŋə fɔr* *sgrí:vmasgì:nərnə* *lá:vər* *tɛ́mli* *sbetágəl*	bange for Skrivemaskinerne laver temmelig Spektakel
I'm afraid the typewriters make a great deal of noise.	*jɛ ɛr báŋə fɔr a sgrí:vmasgì:nərnə lá:vər tɛ́mli máəð sbetágəl.*	Jeg er bange for, at Skrivemaskinerne laver temmelig meget Spektakel.
old office is in the process of at the moment *or* right now	*gámlə* *kontó:ˀr* *ɛr vé ɔ* *fɔr ɔ̃jəblègəð*	gamle Kontor er ved at for Øjeblikket
My old office is being done over right now.	*mɛn mid gámlə kontó:ˀr ɛr vé ɔ blì:ə gjord i sdánˀ fɔr ɔ̃jəblègəð.*	Men mit gamle Kontor er ved at blive gjort i Stand for Øjeblikket.

I'll certainly be glad to get back into it again.	*jɛ mɔ: sí:ə jɛ glɛ́:ðər maj te ɔ kɔ̀mə dərénˀ igɛ́n.*	Jeg maa sige, jeg glæder mig til at komme derind igen.
Bill		
Well, I have to think about getting home.	*mɛn nú mɔ: jɛ vesd tɛ́ŋgə pɔ́:ˀ ɔ kɔ̀mə jɛ́mˀ;*	Men nu maa jeg vist tænke paa at komme hjem.
busy	*travˀlt*	travlt
be busy	*ha trávˀlt*	have travlt
I have a lot to do today.	*jɛ har tɛ́mli trávˀld i dá:ˀ.*	Jeg har temmelig travlt i Dag.
Olesen		
Can you find the way out?	*ka di fénə vájˀən ú:ˀð;*	Kan De finde Vejen ud?
wrong	*fɔrké:ˀrt*	forkert
get lost	*gɔ: fɔrké:ˀrt*	gaa forkert
I think I'd better go with you so you won't get lost.	*jɛ tror hɛ́lərə jɛ ve gɔ: mɛ́ dəm, sɔ di égə gɔr fɔrké:ˀrt;*	Jeg tror hellere, jeg vil gaa med Dem, saa De ikke gaar forkert.
	As they get out into the corridor.	
the stairs	*trábən*	Trappen
down the stairs	*né:ˀð a trábən*	ned ad Trappen
second	*ánən*	anden
door	*dœ:ˀr*	Dør
When you get down the stairs, it's the second door on the right.	*nɔr di kɔ̀mər né:ˀð a trábən, ɛr de dɛn ánən dœ́:ˀr pɔ: hɔ́jrə hɔ́nˀ.*	Naar De kommer ned ad Trappen, er det den anden Dør paa højre Haand.

You know you can always call me if there's anything I can help you with.	*di vé:ʔ di ka álʔtìðʔ réŋə, ves dɛr ər nɔ́:əð jɛ ka jɛ́lbə dəm mɛ́.*	De ved, De kan altid ringe, hvis der er noget, jeg kan hjælpe Dem med.
message	*bəsgé:ʔð*	Besked
If I'm not here, you can leave a message with my secretary.	*sgu jɛ égə vɛ́:ər hər, ka di jo gí: bəsgé:ʔð ιe mi:n sɛgrətɛ́:ʔr;*	Skulde jeg ikke være her, kan De jo give Besked til min Sekretær.
Bill		
Thanks a lot.	*já tág sga di há:ʔ.*	Ja, Tak skal De have.
I'll call you before I leave anyway.	*iɛ sga nɔ́g réŋə té dəm, énən jɛ ráj ʔsər.*	Jeg skal nok ringe til Dem, inden jeg rejser.

2. Pronunciation Drill

1. In Unit 5 we told you that when Danish questions begin with question words like *va*, or *vɔ:ʔr*, or *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr*, those question words are stressed or emphasized and are said on a high tone of voice. If you look carefully at the *Listening In Basic Sentences* and *Listening In's*, however, you will find a few instances where this is not true. In the *Listening In* of Unit 11, for instance, when the little boy tells his sister that he has his father's razor in his room, she answers *va há:ʔr du;* This, as you can see, is not a regular question asking for information; it is rather a question expressing surprise, really more of an exclamation. In Danish questions like this you will find that the question word at the beginning is said on a low tone and is not emphasized or stressed, and that the voice at the end is usually rather high. Such questions are written in the *Aids to Listening* with a semi-colon at the end rather than with a question mark. You will notice that the question *va bəhá:ʔr;*, 'What did you say?' is always said in this way with the *va* unstressed.

Listen to your Guide read the following bit of conversation taken from the *Basic Sentences* of Unit 15 and notice how he says the question *va stər di;*

Tom		
já mɛn vɛ́nˀd lí: ed ɔ́jəblèk.	Ja, men vent lige et Øjeblik.	Yes, but wait a minute.
jɛ tró:ˀr dɛr ər nɔ́:əð i vájˀən mɛ mi:n sígəl.	Jeg tror, der er noget i Vejen med min Cykel.	I think there's something wrong with my bicycle.
Inge		
va síər di;	Hvad siger De?	What?

2. We have mentioned a number of times the fact that in everyday speech Danes pronounce *ər* but not *rə* after a long vowel. We will summarize briefly here the meaning of this characteristic of pronunciation in the various noun, adjective and verb forms.

In the case of nouns, it means that if the basic form ends in a long vowel followed by *r*, then the *ə* of the endings of the the-form, *-ən* and *-əð*, and of the endings of the plural, *-ə* and *-ər*, is added before rather than after the *r* (See below for more about the plural in *-ər*.). So, for instance, to go with *gɔ:ˀr*, 'farm', you have the the-form *gɔ́:ˀərn* and the plural *gɔ́:ər;* only in very precise speech would you hear *gɔ́:ˀrən* and *gɔ́:rə*.

In the case of adjectives, it means that if the basic form ends in a long vowel followed by *r*, the *ə* of the *ə*-form and of the endings of the comparison forms, *-ərə* and *-əst*, is added before rather than after the *r;* for example, *dy:ˀr* (dyr), 'expensive', has the *ə*-form *dý:ər* (dyre) and the comparison forms *dý:ərə* (dyere) and *dý:ərst* (dyrest).

Finally in the case of verbs, it means that the basic form, which ordinarily ends in *ə*, ends in *ər;* that the present form, which ordinarily has an added *r*, is the same as the basic form; and that the command form, which is ordinarily made by leaving off the *ə* at the end of the basic form, is made by leaving out the *ə* before the *r*. For example, the basic form of the verb "hear" is *hǿ:ər* (høre), the present form is also *hǿ:ər* (but spelled *hører*), and the command form is *hø:ˀr* (hør). It means further that the past form, if it ends in *-də*, is made, not by changing the *ə* at the end of the basic form to *-də*, as is ordinarily the case, but by leaving out the *ə* before the *r* of the basic form and adding *-də;* for example, *hǿ:rdə*. Past forms in *-ðə* and participles in *-ð* are formed regularly by adding the *-ðə* to the basic form to make the past form and then leaving off the final *-ə* for the participle, but the forms end in *-ərðə* and *-ərð*, rather than *-əðə* and *-əð*, as is generally the case; for example, *barbé:ʔərðə*, *barbé:ʔərð* (barberede, barberet) 'shaved'.

We mentioned briefly in Unit 5 (p. 131) that in everyday speech many Danes don't pronounce the sound-sequence *rər*. Actually both this characteristic and the one discussed above are involved in the case of plural forms like *barbé:ʔər* (Barberer), 'barbers', and *kondugtǿ:ʔər* (Konduktører), 'conductors', which, if pronounced very precisely, would be *barbé:ʔrər* and *kondugtǿ:ʔrər*. In forms like these, where there is a catch before the *ər*, the *ə* often disappears in rapid speech.

After a short vowel, a consonant, or a group of consonants, what would in very careful speech be pronounced *rər* is, in everyday speech, generally pronounced as *rə*. The plural of *hɛ́rə* (Herre), 'gentleman', for instance, is pronounced exactly like the singular, although a precise pronunciation would be *hɛ́rər* (Herrer). And the present forms of the verbs *blɔ́mʔsdrə* (blomstre), 'bloom' and *fájrə*, (fejre), 'celebrate', which you will learn in Unit 28, are pronounced exactly like the basic forms, although a precise pronunciation would be *blɔ́mʔsdrər* (blomstrer) and *fájrər* (fejrer).

There seems to be a tendency in very rapid and relaxed speech to pronounce *ər* instead of *rə* after a group of consonants. You may hear, for example, *vɛ́nsdər* instead of *vɛ́nsdrə* (venstre), 'left' and *ɛ́gsdər* instead of *ɛ́gsdrə* (ekstra) 'extra'.

In these, as in all other matters of pronunciation, you should imitate what you hear said by Danish speakers.

3. Hints on Spelling

1. In a number of Danish words there is a *g* in the regular spelling, but no corresponding [γ] or [g] in the pronunciation. You will find these *g*'s

1. after the letters *i*, *u*, and *y* which stand for long [*i:*], [*u:*] and [*y:*], as in the following words:

Krig	*kri:ʔ*	war
Pige	*pí:ə*	girl, maid
lige	*lí:ə*	just, right
alligevel	*alí:əvɛ̀lʔ*	anyway
ligeud	*lí:ə ú:ʔð*	straight ahead
sige	*sí:ə*	say, tell
ryge	*rý:ə*	smoke
bruge	*brú:ə*	use
Uge	*ú:ə*	week

2. in the combination *dag* in the following words:

Goddag	*godá:ʔ*	hello
i Dag	*i dá:ʔ*	today
Søndag[1]	*sǿnʔda*	Sunday
Mandag[1]	*mánʔda*	Monday
Tirsdag	*tí:ʔrsda*	Tuesday
Onsdag	*ónʔsda*	Wednesday
Torsdag	*tɔ́:ʔrsda*	Thursday
Fredag	*fré:ʔda*	Friday
Lørdag	*lǿrda*	Saturday
Middag	*méda*	dinner, noon
Eftermiddag	*ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔ*	afternoon

3. in the ending *-ig*, [*-i*], both when it comes at the end of the word and when the adjective endings *-t*, *-e*, *-ere*, and *-st* are added to it, as in the following words:

tidlig, tidligt, tidlige, tidligere tidligst	*tíðli*, *tíðlit*, *tíðliə*, *tíðliərə*, *tíðlist*	early
billig, *etc.*	*bíli*	cheap
dødkedelig	*dǿðkèðəli*	deadly dull
venlig	*vɛ́nli*	kind, pleasant
nemlig	*nɛ́mli*	you see
herlig	*hɛ́rli*	wonderful
heldig[2]	*hɛ́ldi*	fortunate
forskellig	*fɔrsgɛ́lʔi*	different
mægtig	*mɛ́gdi*	enormous
ærlig	*ɛ́rli*	honest
dejlig	*dájli*	pleasant
aldrig[2]	*áldri*	never
daarlig	*dɔ́rli*	bad
kongelig	*kɔ́ŋəli*	royal
rolig	*ró:li*	calm, quiet
hurtig	*hórdi*	fast
umulig	*umú:ʔli*	impossible
hyggelig	*hýgəli*	enjoyable
tørstig	*tǿrsdi*	thirsty
Sverrig	*svɛ́rʔi*	Sweden
Frankrig	*fráŋkri*	France

---

[1] Notice that the letters *nd*, which generally correspond to [*n*] alone, here correspond to [*nd*].

[2] Notice that the combination of letters *ld*, which generally corresponds to [*l*] in the pronunciation, corresponds here to [*ld*].

In the following words ending in *-ig*, the *e* before the *l* is not pronounced:

almindelig	*alménˀli*	common, ordinary
ualmindelig	*ualménˀli*	exceptional
virkelig	*vírgli*	real
pludselig	*plúsli*	sudden
sørgelig	*sœ́rγli*	sad
temmelig	*tɛ́mli*	quite

4. in these additional words you have had:

Morgen	*mɔ́rən*	morning
i Morgen	*i mɔ́rən*	tomorrow
i Morges	*i mɔ́rəs*	this morning
spurgte, spurgt	*sbórdə, sborˀt*	asked
noget	*nɔ́:əð*	some, any, something, anything
Regel	*ré:ˀəl*	rule
ulejlige	*ulájˀliə*	bother, disturb
Amalienborg	*amá:ˀljənbɔ̀:ˀr*	Amalienborg
Aalborg	*ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr*	Aalborg
Kompagni	*kompaní:ˀ*	company
ogsaa	*ɔ́sə*	too
nogen Sinde	*nó:ən sénə*	ever

2. Since you can now recognize most of the new words in each unit by keeping in mind the statements about Danish spelling we have made so far, we will list from now on only those words whose spelling is in some way unusual. You will become familiar enough with those which are easy to recognize by looking at the regular Danish spelling as you go through the *Basic Sentences* and *Listening In's*.

You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following words introduced in this unit:

August[1]	*avgóst*	August
December[1]	*desɛ́mˀbər*	December
Europa	*evró:pa*	Europe
ellevte[1]	*ɛ́lfdə*	eleventh
fyrretyvende[1]	*fœ́rətỳ:vənə*	fortieth
tredie[1]	*tréðjə*	third
tredivte[1]	*trɛ́ðvdə*	thirtieth
tusinde[1]	*tú:ˀsənə*	thousandth

---

[1] See *Word Study*, pp. 548, 549.

Aftale	*ávtà:lə*	appointment	Schou[1]	*sgɔvˀ*	Schou (*last name*)
Spektakel	*sbetágəl*	noise			
tage, tog, taget	*ta:ˀ/ta, to:ˀ, tá:əð*	come, go, take	ældre[2]	*ɛ́ldrə*	older
			ældst[2]	*ɛlˀst*	oldest

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Danish equivalents of "first", "second", etc.

Here are the numbers that correspond to English "first", "second", etc. A few of them you already know.

first	*fœ́rst, -ə*	først, -e
second	*ánən* (with en-nouns)	anden
	ánəð (with et-nouns)	andet
third	*tréðjə*	tredie
fourth	*fjɛ́:ər*	fjerde
fifth	*fɛ́mdə*	femte
sixth	*sjɛ́:də*	sjette
seventh	*sýv?ənə*	syvende

---

[1] See *Listening In*.

[2] See *Word Study*, p. 554. Notice that in *ældre*, the letters *ld* correspond to the sounds [*ld*], while in *ældst*, the *d* is not pronounced.

eighth	*ɔ́dənə*	ottende
ninth	*ní:ˀənə*	niende
tenth	*tí:ˀənə*	tiende
eleventh	*ɛ́lfdə*	ellevte
twelfth	*tɔ́ldə*	tolvte
thirteenth	*trɛ́dənə*	trettende
fourteenth	*fjórdənə*	fjortende
fifteenth	*fɛ́mˀdənə*	femtende
sixteenth	*sájsdənə*	sekstende
seventeenth	*sǿdənə*	syttende
eighteenth	*ádənə*	attende
nineteenth	*nédənə*	nittende
twentieth	*tý:vənə*	tyvende
twenty-first	*é:ˀn ɔ tý:vənə*	en og tyvende
twenty-second	*tó:ˀ ɔ tý:vənə*	to og tyvende
thirtieth	*trɛ́ðvdə*	tredivte
fortieth	*fœ́rətỳ:vənə*	fyrretyvende
fiftieth	*haltrésenstỳ:vənə*	halvtredsindstyvende
sixtieth	*trésenstỳ:vənə*	tresindstyvende
seventieth	*halfjɛ́rsenstỳ:vənə*	halvfjerdsindstyvende
eightieth	*fí:ˀrsenstỳ:vənə*	firsindstyvende
ninetieth	*halfɛ́mˀsenstỳ:vənə*	halvfemsindstyvende
hundredth	*húnrəðə*	hundrede
thousandth	*tú:ˀsənə*	tusinde

Notice:

1. that for the words from "thirteenth" to "nineteenth" you just add *ə* onto the words for "thirteen", "fourteen", etc.
2. that the words for "fortieth", "fiftieth", etc. are made by adding *nə* onto the long forms for "forty", "fifty", etc. (See Unit 7, note at end of *Basic Sentences*).
3. that for "twenty-first", "twenty-second", "thirty-first", etc., you say in Danish "one-and-twentieth", "two-and-twentieth", etc., just as for "twenty-one" you say "one-and-twenty".

Many of these numbers, of course, you won't have to use very much. Those you'll need most often are the ones from "first" to "thirty-first" which are used in dates (see Comment 2).

2. The months of the year

Here are the months of the year:

January	*jánua:ʔr*	Januar
February	*fébrua:ʔr*	Februar
March	*mards*	Marts
April	*aprí:ʔl*	April
May	*majʔ*	Maj
June	*jú:ʔni*	Juni
July	*jú:ʔli*	Juli
August	*avgóst*	August
September	*sɛbtɛ́mʔbər*	September
October	*ɔgló:ʔbər*	Oktober
November	*novɛ́mʔbər*	November
December	*desɛ́mʔbər*	December

This is the way you say dates:

January 1, 1936	*dɛn fœ́rsdə jánua:ʔr, nédən húnrəðə ségs ɔ trɛ́ðvə*	1-1-1936
March 2, 1862	*dɛn ánən márds, ádən húnrəðə tó:ʔ ɔ trés*	2-3-1862
May 18, 1783	*dɛn ádənə máj ʔ, sǿdən húnrəðə tré:ʔ ɔ fí:ʔrs*	18-5-1783
June 25, 1945	*dɛn fɛ́mʔ ɔ tý:vənə jú:ʔni, nédən húnrəðə fɛ́mʔ ɔ fœ́rə*	25-6-1945

Notice:

1. that you put the day before the month, (even when you write the date in numbers, as in the third column).
2. that you use *dɛn*, 'the', before the number, but you don't use any word corresponding to "of", as we do when we say "the first of January".
3. that you always use the word *húnrəðə* in the phrase designating the year.

3. More expressions of time

Here are some more expressions having to do with time. Some of the sentences you've had before, others are new.

A.

vi ka jo: mǿ:ðəs hɛ́:ʔr **ɔm ed kvarté:ʔr.**	Vi kan jo mødes her om et Kvarter.	We can meet here in fifteen minutes.
sɔ́ sé:ʔs vi **ɔm ed par minúdər.**	Saa ses vi om et Par Minutter.	See you in a couple of minutes!
jɛ ráj ʔsər **ɔm tó:ʔ tí:mər.**	Jeg rejser om to Timer.	I'm leaving in two hours.
vi sga vɛ́:ər pɔ: rɔ́ðhusplàsən **ɔm tí:ʔ minúdər.**	Vi skal være paa Raadhuspladsen om ti Minutter.	We'll be at Raadhuspladsen in ten minutes.

Notice that you use *ɔmʔ* to correspond to English "in" when you speak of a period of time at the end of which something is to happen.

B.

vi ka égə sé:ˀ hé:lə bý:ˀən **pɔ: é:ˀn dá:ˀ.**	Vi kan ikke se hele Byen paa en Dag.	We can't see the whole town in a day.
ves dər égə sgé:ˀr nɔ́:əð pɔ: vájˀən jέmˀ, ka vi gœ́:ər de **pɔ: méndrə εn tó:ˀ tí:mər.**	Hvis der ikke sker noget paa Vejen hjem, kan vi gøre det paa mindre end to Timer.	If nothing happens on the way home, we can do it in less than two hours.
vi ka kø̀:ər te sdránˀən **pɔ: tý:və minúdər.**	Vi kan køre til Stranden paa tyve Minutter.	We can drive to the beach in twenty minutes.
han gjò:ər mi:n sígəl i sdánˀ **pɔ: en hálˀ tí:mə.**	Han gjorde min Cykel i Stand paa en halv Time.	He fixed my bicycle in half an hour.

You use *pɔ:ˀ*, as you see, to correspond to English "in" when you speak of a period of time during which something is completed. Compare the expressions of time in this group of sentences with those in the group before. Although we use "in" in both groups, Danish makes a difference between the two. Notice that in the first group where Danish uses *ɔmˀ*, the emphasis is on what happens at the end of the period of time mentioned, while in the second group where Danish uses *pɔ:ˀ*, the emphasis is on what is done during the course of the period of time mentioned.

C.

vi har vέ:ərð hər **i tré:ˀ dá:ə.**	Vi har været her i tre Dage.	We've been here for three days.
han sga vὲ:ər i dánmarg **i sýv̀ˀ mɔ́:nðər.**	Han skal være i Danmark i syv Maaneder.	He'll be in Denmark for seven months.
di bó:ðə i købənhávˀn **i fí:ər ɔ́:ˀr.**	De boede i København i fire Aar.	They lived in Copenhagen for four years.
jε har sbὲləð tέnes **i tó:ˀ tí:mər.**	Jeg har spillet Tennis i to Timer.	I've been playing tennis for two hours.

As you see, you use *i* to correspond to English "for" when you speak of a period of time during which something goes on. In expressions like these you often leave out the *i* in Danish, just as you leave out the "for" in English.

D.

de kɔ́sdəðə ɔ:dəní:ˀ kró:nər **ɔm dá:ˀən.**	Det kostede otte-ni Kroner om Dagen.	It cost eight or nine crowns a day.
ɔ vɔr máəð kɔ́sdər de **ɔm mɔ́:nðən?**	Og hvor meget koster det om Maaneden?	And how much does it cost a month?
han fɔ́:ˀr fɛ́mˀ ɔ trɛ́ðvə kró:nər **ɔm ú:ən.**	Han faar fem og tredive Kroner om Ugen.	He gets thirty-five crowns a week.
dé blíər fí:ər húnrəðə ɔ tý:və kró:nər **ɔm ɔ́:ˀərð.**	Det bliver fire hundrede og tyve Kroner om Aaret.	That'll be four hundred and twenty crowns a year.
man mɔ: áldri kø̂:ər ɔ́vˀər trés kilomé:ˀdər **i tí:mən.**	Man maa aldrig køre over tres Kilometer i Timen.	You're never supposed to go over sixty kilometers an hour.
flý:vmasgì:nən gíg ségs kilomé:ˀdər **i minúdəð.**	Flyvemaskinen gik seks Kilometer i Minuttet.	The airplane went six kilometers a minute.

Notice that to correspond to English "a day", "a week", "a month", etc., in expressions like these where you mean "per day", "per week", "per month", you use in Danish *ɔmˀ* with the the-forms of *da:ˀ*, *ú:ə*, *mɔ́:nəð*, and *ɔ́:ˀr*, but *i* with the the-forms of *minút* and *tí:mə*.

4. Difference between *da* and *nɔ:ˀr*

já de rájnəðə **da** *jɛ kɔ́mˀ, sɔ jɛ mɔ̀də tá en tágsa hɛrhɛ́nˀ.*	Ja, det regnede, da jeg kom, saa jeg maatte tage en Taxa herhen.	Yes, it was raining when I came over here, so I had to take a taxi.
ɔ **da** *klɔ́gən var éd, bəsdélˀdə sàγfø̀:ər knúsən smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð ɔ snábs.*	Og da Klokken var et, bestilte Sagfører Knudsen Smørrebrød og Snaps.	When it was one o'clock, Mr. Knudsen ordered sandwiches and *Snapɔ*.

nɔr *di ar úðfỳlʔd dέnʔ, gɔr di ɔ̀vʔər te kasé:ʔərən.*	Naar De har udfyldt den, gaar De over til Kassereren.	When you've filled it out, go over to the cashier.
di vé:ʔ **nɔr** *man har vὲ:ərð ú:ðə ɔ rájsə, vέndər é:ʔns famí:ʔljə álʔtìðʔ a man kɔ̀mər jέmʔ mε nɔ́:əð té dəm.*	De ved, naar man har været ude at rejse, venter ens Familie altid, at man kommer hjem med noget til dem.	You know, when you've been away, your family always expects you to bring them home something.
nɔr *di kɔ̀mər né:ʔð a trábən, εr de dεn ánən dœ́:ʔr pɔ: hɔ́jrə hɔ́nʔ.*	Naar De kommer ned ad Trappen, er det den anden Dør paa højre Haand.	When you get down the stairs, it's the second door on the right.

The words *da* and *nɔ:ʔr*, as you know, both correspond to English "when" and neither of them is a question word. (See Unit 15, *Word Study*, Comment 2.) If you look carefully at the above sentences, however, you will observe that they are used a little differently. Notice that *da* is used when the verb in the same clause is a past form, like *rájnəðə* and *var* in the first two sentences. And notice that *nɔ:ʔr* is used when the verb in the same clause is either a present form alone, like *kɔ̀mər* in the last sentence, or a present form followed by a participle, like *har vὲ:ərð* and (*h*)*ar úðfylʔd* in the third and fourth sentences.

5. Compounds

Here are the new compounds you had in this unit:

noun + noun

lɔ́fdangrè:ʔp (Luftangreb) air raid = **loft** (Luft) air + **ángrè:ʔp** (Angreb) attack

verb + noun

flý:vmasgì:nə (Flyvemaskine) airplane = **flý:və** (flyve) fly + **masgí:nə** (Maskine) machine
sgrí:vmasgì:nə (Skrivemaskine) typewriter = **sgrí:və** (skrive) write + **masgí:nə** (Maskine) machine

6. Irregular verbs

Here are the new irregular verbs you had in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
flýːvə (flyve) fly	*flɔjˀ* (fløj) flew	*flɔ́jˀəð* (fløjet) flown

The present form is either *flýːˀvər* or *flyːˀr*.

ónərsgrìːˀvə (underskrive) sign	*ónərsgrèːˀv* (underksrev) signed	*ónərsgrèːˀvəð* (underksrevet) signed
taːˀ/ta (tage) come	*toːˀ* (tog) came	*táːəð* (taget) come

The verb *døːˀ*, *døːðə* (dø, -de), 'die', has the participle *døːˀð* (død), which is generally used as an adjective meaning 'dead'. It has the t-form *døt* (dødt) and the ə-form *døːðə* (døde).

7. An adjective to notice

The word *gámlə* (gamle) which you had in this unit is the ə-form of the adjective *gáməl* (gammel), 'old'. The t-form is *gáməlt* (gammelt). You can see from this that when the basic form of an adjective ends in *-əl*, the *ə* before the *l* is left out when the ending *ə* is added. You learned in Unit 17 that this also happens when the basic form ends in *-ər*. This adjective has the following irregular comparison forms: *ɛ́ldrə* (ældre), 'older', and *ɛlˀst* (ældst), 'oldest'.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. Give the Danish equivalents of the following dates:

January 5, 1327
February 2, 1945
March 14, 1769
April 9, 1940
May 5, 1945
June 22, 1620
July 10, 1927
August 17, 1899
September 25, 1901
October 13, 1776
November 28, 1642
December 7, 1941

B. Change the English given in parentheses in the sentences below into Danish.

1. *man ka flý:və fra købənhávʔn te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr* (in an hour).	Man kan flyve fra København til Aalborg (*in an hour*).
2. *vi hà:ðə égə lý:ʔs i hú:ʔsəð* (for three days).	Vi havde ikke Lys i Huset (*for three days*).
3. *vɔr máəð fɔ́:ʔr di* (a month)?	Hvor meget faar De (*a month*)?
4. *dé ka jɛ égə gǿ:ər* (in one day), *ka dú;*	Det kan jeg ikke gøre (*in one day*), kan du?
5. *sɛgrətɛ́:ʔərn har vɛ̀:ərð ú:ðə te frógɔsd* (for two hours).	Sekretæren har været ude til Frokost (*for two hours*).
6. *ka di égə mǿ:ðə maj hɛ́:ʔr* (in a quarter of an hour);	Kan De ikke møde mig her (*in a quarter of an hour*)?

7. *jɛ vèlə ǿnsgə jɛ kón sgu pɔ: kontó:ˀərð tré:ˀ gáŋə* (a week).	Jeg vilde ønske, jeg kun skulde paa Kontoret tre Gange (*a week*).
8. *búsən gɔ́:ˀr* (in five minutes).	Bussen gaar (*in five minutes*).
9. *har di vírgli lɛ́:ˀsd dɛ́nˀ bɔ́:ˀγ* (in four hours);	Har De virkelig læst den Bog (*in four hours*)?
10. *dirɛgtǿ:ˀərn lɔ́:vəðə ɔ vɛ́:ər hər* (in an hour).	Direktøren lovede at være her (*in an hour*).
11. *ka di fɔ: dɛ́nˀ sgrí:vmasgì:nə gjord i sdánˀ* (in two days);	Kan De faa den Skrivemaskine gjort i Stand (*in two days*)?

C. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with either *da* or *nɔ:ˀr*.

1. *jɛ ka égə hǿ:ər va i síər* ——— *i lá:vər sɔ máəð sbetágəl.*	Jeg kan ikke høre, hvad I siger, ——— I laver saa meget Spektakel.
2. *han hà:ðɔ máəð trávˀld* ——— *jɛ kɔ́mˀ.*	Han havde meget travlt, ——— jeg kom.
3. ——— *han fǽrsd kɔ́mˀ te amé:ˀrika, ku han égə tá:lə ɛ́ŋˀəlsk.*	——— han først kom til Amerika, kunde han ikke tale Engelsk.
4. ——— *di ar lɛ́:ˀsd kontrágdən, sga di ónərsgrì:ˀvə dɛn hɛ́:ˀr.*	——— De har læst Kontrakten, skal De underskrive den her.
5. ——— *vi tɛ́ndə lý:ˀsəð, var pɛ́ŋənə vɛ́k.*	——— vi tændte Lyset, var Pengene væk.
6. ——— *hán lɔ̀:nər pɛ́ŋə, bətá:ˀlər han dɛm áldri tebá:γə.*	——— han laaner Penge, betaler han dem aldrig tilbage.
7. ——— *jɛ kɔ́mˀ te pɔ́sdhù:ˀsəð, var dər lógəð.*	——— jeg kom til Posthuset, var der lukket.
8. *jɛ ka égə lí:ˀ ɔ kɔ́mə sɔ sé:ˀnd,* ——— *jɛ har lɔ́:vəð ɔ vɛ́:ər dər klɔ̀gən kvarté:ˀr ɔ́vˀər sɛ́gs.*	Jeg kan ikke lide at komme saa sent, ——— jeg har lovet at være der Klokken Kvarter over seks.

9. ——— *jɛ kɔ̀mər jɛ́mˀ fra bý:ˀən, ka jɛ gɔ́d lí:ˀ a má:ˀðən ɛr pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	——— jeg kommer hjem fra Byen, kan jeg godt lide, at Maden er paa Bordet.
10. ——— *dirɛgtǿ:ˀərn kɔ́mˀər, mɔ: di gí: ham dɛ́nə bəsgé:ˀð.*	——— Direktøren kommer, maa De give ham denne Besked.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercises as your Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Two women, Mrs. Petersen and Mrs. Schou (sgɔvˀ), are talking one afternoon in Mrs. Petersen's home.*

fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
vɔr gámal ɛr dɛ́nˀ sgrí:vmasgì:nə?	Hvor gammel er den Skrivemaskine?
fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
dɛ́n ɛr fí:ərfɛ́mˀ ɔ́:ˀr tró:ˀr jɛ. *mɛn vɔ́rfɔr dé?*	Den er 4 - 5 Aar, tror jeg. Men hvorfor det?
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
jó: jɛ tɛ́ŋgər sɛ́lˀ pɔ: ɔ kǿ:bə é:ˀn.	Jo, jeg tænker selv paa at købe en.

fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
dɛ́nə hɛ́:ˀr ɛr gó:ˀ, mɛn dɛn lá:vər tɛ́mli máəð sbetágəl.	Denne her er god, men den laver temmelig meget Spektakel.
mi:n mánˀs sɛgrətɛ́:ˀr brógdə dɛn pɔ: kontó:ˀərð, mɛn nú har di fɔ́:əð en ný:ˀ dərénə ɔ sɔ́ fég jáj dən.	Min Mands Sekretær brugte den paa Kontoret, men nu har de faaet en ny derinde, og saa fik jeg den.
ve du égə séðə né:ˀð;	Vil du ikke sidde ned?
hɛ́:ˀr ɛr en sigərɛ́t.	Her er en Cigaret.
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
máŋə ták.	Mange Tak.
fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
jɛ ɛr báŋə fɔr a jɛ lí:ə mɔ: ú:ˀð ɔ jɛ́lbə pí:ən ed ɔ́jəblèk.	Jeg er bange for, at jeg lige maa ud at hjælpe Pigen et Øjeblik.
du ka tá aví:ˀsən dɛ́:ˀr pɔ: bó:ˀərð, ves du har lǿsd te ɔ lɛ́:sə;	Du kan tage Avisen der paa Bordet, hvis du har Lyst til at læse.
dɛr légər vesd ɔ́sə nó:ən blá:ðə.	Der ligger vist ogsaa nogle Blade.
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
já tág dé ɛ úðmɛ̀rgəð.	Ja Tak, det er udmærket.
2. *Mrs. Peterson comes back from the kitchen.*	
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
vɔrdán há:ˀr di:n mánˀ dəˀ	Hvordan har din Mand det?

fru péːʔdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
tág hán háːʔr də gɔ́t.	Tak, han har det godt.
mɛn de ɛ égə álʔtiðʔ sɔ mórsɔmʔd ɔ vɛ̀ːər gífd mɛ en dirɛgtǿːʔr dɛr háːʔr sɔ trávʔld sɔm hán.	Men det er ikke altid saa morsomt at være gift med en Direktør, der har saa travlt som han.
fru sgɔ́ʊʔ	*Fru Schou*
nɛ́ː dé ka jɛ gɔ́d fɔrsdɔ́ːʔ;	Næh, det kan jeg godt forstaa.
har han égə líːə vɛ̀ːərð i lɔ́ndɔn igɛ́n.	Har han ikke lige været i London igen?
fru péːʔdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
jó: han kɔm jɛ́mʔ fɔr ed par dáːə síːðən.	Jo, han kom hjem for et Par Dage siden.
han var ɔ́ʊrə fɔr ɔ séːʔ pɔː noːn fabrégər, ɔ fɔr ɔ fɔ́ːʔ en kontrágd ónərsgrèːʔvəð.	Han var ovre for at se paa nogle Fabrikker og for at faa en Kontrakt underskrevet.
fru sgɔ́ʊʔ	*Fru Schou*
dé var da sbɛ́nənə;	Det var da spændende.
jɛ hɔ́ːbər de var en sdóːʔr kontrágt.	Jeg haaber, det var en stor Kontrakt.
vá vájʔ toː han jɛ́mʔ?	Hvad Vej tog han hjem?
fru péːʔdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
han flɔ́jʔ jɛ́mʔ.	Han fløj hjem.
de táːʔr égə méːər ɛn fɛ́mʔ tíːmər mɛ flýːvmasgìːnə.	Det tager ikke mere end fem Timer med Flyvemaskine.
fru sgɔ́ʊʔ	*Fru Schou*
vɔr mɔ́ːʔ de vɛ̀ːər mórsɔmʔt;	Hvor maa det være morsomt.
jɛ́ har løsd te ɔ táːʔ en túːʔr te ɛ́ŋlanʔ ɔ fráŋkri;	Jeg har Lyst til at tage en Tur til England og Frankrig.

fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
já dé var en gó:ˀ idé:ˀ.	Ja, det var en god Ide.
mɛn hé:lə evró:pa ɛr máəð fɔránˀdrəð nú éfdər krì:ˀən.	Men hele Europa er meget forandret nu efter Krigen.
jɛ tró:ˀr égə man sga rájsə di fœ́rsdə par ɔ́:ˀr.	Jeg tror ikke, man skal rejse de første Par Aar.
vì sga fɔrὲsdən ha sdó:ˀr méda i áfdən fɔr nó:n a mi:n mánˀs kénər.	Vi skal forresten have stor Middag i Aften for nogle af min Mands Kunder.
dìrɛgtør jénsən kɔ́mˀər.	Direktør Jensen kommer.
kénər du égə hám;	Kender du ikke ham?
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
ɔ́m jɛ gœ́r;	Om jeg gør.
jɛ har kénˀd ham i máŋə ɔ́:ˀr.	Jeg har kendt ham i mange Aar.
syns du égə ɔ́sə han ɛr úalménˀli fléŋˀk;	Synes du ikke ogsaa, han er ualmindelig flink?
fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
jó:ˀ mɛn han har fɔránˀdrəð saj máəð éfdər hans kó:nə ble drébd ónˀər dé lófdangrè:ˀp.	Jo, men han har forandret sig meget, efter hans Kone blev dræbt under det Luftangreb.
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
já vɔr vár de sœ́rɣli hun dø:ðə, jɛ kún sɔ gɔ́d lí:ˀ hénə.	Ja, hvor var det sørgeligt, hun døde, jeg kunde saa godt lide hende.
vénˀ kɔ́mˀər dər élˀərs?	Hvem kommer der ellers?
fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
dìrɛgtør ó:ˀlsən fra ó:ˀlsən ɔ kómpanì:ˀ, ɔ ènsjənjør nélsən ɔ sàɣfø:ər hánˀsən;	Direktør Olsen fra Olsen & Co., og Ingeniør Nielsen og Sagfører Hansen.

fru sgɔ́vʔ

vá sga i ha ɔ sbíːsəʔ

fru péːʔdərsən

ví sga ha sóbə lámәsdàjʔ ɔ íːʔs.

fru sgɔ́vʔ

dé var en fíːʔn méda.

sɔ́ fɔrsdɔ́ːʔr jɛ sgam gɔ́d a du háːʔr sɔ́ trávʔlt.

mɛn jɛ́ mɔː ɔ́sə sgǿnə maj, jɛ har lɔ́ːvəð ɔ mǿːðə miːn søsdər;

vi háːʔr en ávtàːlə klɔ̀gən tréːʔ.

jɛ sýns de séːʔr sɔ mœ́rgd úːʔð, rájnər de fɔr ɔ́jəblègəð;

fru péːʔdərsən

nájʔ mɛn du mɔː nɔ́g hɛ́lərə réŋə ɛ̀fdər en tágsa, jɛ tróːʔr de blíːʔr rájʔn.

fru sgɔ́vʔ

mɔː jɛ lɔ́ːnə teləfóːʔnən;

fru péːʔdərsən

já sɛfǿləli, dɛn sdɔ́ːʔr líːə dɛ́ːʔrɔ̀vrə.

Fru Schou

Hvad skal I have at spise?

Fru Petersen

Vi skal have Suppe, Lammesteg og Is.

Fru Schou

Det var en fin Middag.

Saa forstaar jeg skam godt, at du har saa travlt.

Men jeg maa ogsaa skynde mig, jeg har lovet at møde min Søster.

Vi har en Aftale Klokken tre.

Jeg synes, det ser saa mørkt ud, regner det for Øjeblikket?

Fru Petersen

Nej, men du maa nok hellere ringe efter en Taxa, jeg tror, det bliver Regn.

Fru Schou

Maa jeg laane Telefonen?

Fru Petersen

Ja selvfølgelig, den staar lige derovre.

3. *Mrs. Schou starts to leave.*

fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
nɛ́: nú gɔ́:ˀr du dɛn fɔrké:ˀrdə vájˀ.	Næh, nu gaar du den forkerte Vej.
de ɛ lí:ə ú:ˀð ɔ ánən dœ́:ˀr pɔ: vɛ́nsdrə hɔ́nˀ.	Det er ligeud og anden Dør paa venstre Haand.
nú sga jɛ tɛ́nə lý:ˀsəð, hər ɛ́r sɔ mœ́rgd pɔ: trábən a man éŋənlèŋˀ ka sé:ˀ.	Nu skal jeg tænde Lyset, her er saa mørkt paa Trappen, at man ingenting kan se.
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
jɛ réŋər álˀdsɔ té daj ɔm dɛ́nˀ frógɔsd pɔ: lœ́rda.	Jeg ringer altsaa til dig om den Frokost paa Lørdag.
ves du égə sgu vɛ̀:ər jɛ́mə, ka jɛ jo: gi: pí:ən bəsgé:ˀð.	Hvis du ikke skulde være hjemme, kan jeg jo give Pigen Besked.
fru pé:ˀdərsən	*Fru Petersen*
já tág, gœ́r dé.	Ja Tak, gør det.
fru sgɔ́vˀ	*Fru Schou*
farvɛ́l ɔ tág fɔr i dá:ˀ.	Farvel og Tak for i Dag.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. A secretary and a business man

The business man comes into an office and asks the secretary if he can see Mr. X. The secretary asks if he has an appointment. He says he doesn't, but that he wants very much to see him today. The secretary tells him he'll probably have to wait a quarter of an hour because Mr. X is very busy. The man says he'll wait a little while, so the secretary fixes him up with magazines and newspapers to read, turns the light on for him, etc. Half an hour later he goes back to the secretary and tells her he's been waiting more than fifteen minutes. She says she knows that, but Mr. X is really very busy. The man says he's busy too and that he can't wait all day. If he comes day after tomorrow at 10:30, can he see Mr. X then? She says yes, that'll be the fifth of December at ten-thirty. He remarks that he hopes he won't have to wait then.

2. Two Danish business men, A and B

A asks B when he got back from England. B says he got back last night and is awfully tired, but it was good to get the contract signed anyway. A asks why he didn't fly home. He says that he flew back from France last week. It was a wonderful trip—it only took six hours. B asks him what he did in France. A says that he visited a lot of factories and talked with the presidents of them. He adds that this is the first time he's been to France since the war. B says he hasn't been since 1938. A says that the war has certainly changed Europe a lot, and that many of his friends have been killed. He asks B if he knows Mr. Durand, an engineer. B says yes, of course he does, that he was one of his best customers before the war. A tells him that Mr. Durand's wife and two children were killed in an air raid. B says that that's too bad.

3. A Danish business man, A, and a respresentative of an English firm, B

A calls B on the phone, tells him he's from Johnson and Johnson Company of London and asks if he can come see him at his office. B says yes, and tells him to come at 3:45. A says he doesn't know where B's office is. B tells him that it's at 10 Christian Street ('Christian Street, number 10'), that you come up the stairs and then it's the fourth door on the left. A says he's sorry but he can't hear. B repeats. A says oh, the first door on the left. B says no, the fourth door. A says again that he can't hear because the typewriters are making too much noise. B tells him to come to 10 Christian Street and he'll meet him outside so he won't get lost. A thanks him and says good-by.

Finder List

ádənə (attende) eighteenth

álʔdsɔ (altsaa) so, then

ánən, *ánəð* (anden, andet) second

ángrè:ʔp, *-əð*, — (Angreb, -et, —) attack

aprí:ʔl (April) April

avgóst (August) August

aví:ʔs, *-ən*, *-ər* (Avis, -en, -er) newspaper

ávtà:lə, *-n*, *-r* (Aftale, -n, -r) appointment, arrangement

báŋə (bange) afraid
  báŋə fɔr (bange for) afraid of

bəsgé:ʔð, *-ən*, *-ər* (Besked, -en, -er) message

blað, *blá:ʔðəð*, *blá:ðə* (Blad, -et, -e) magazine

desɛ́mʔbər (December) December

diregtǿ:ʔr, *diregtǿ:ʔərn*, *diregtǿ:ʔər* (Direktør, -en, -er) director, president (*of a company*)

drɛ́:bə, *drɛ́bdə* (dræbe, -te) kill

dø:ʔ, *dǿ:ðə*, *dø:ʔð* (dø, -de, død) die. The participle is generally used as an adjective meaning "dead". As such it has the t-form *døt* (dødt) and the ə-form *dǿ:ðə* (døde).

dœ:ʔr, *dœ́:ʔərn*, *dœ́:ər* (Dør, -en, -e) door

evró:pa (Europa) Europe

ɛ́ldrə (ældre) older

ɛ́lfdə (ellevte) eleventh

ɛlʔst (ældst) oldest

ɛ́ŋlànʔ (England) England

fabrék, *-ən*, *-ər* (Fabrik, -ken, -ker) factory

fébrua:ʔr (Februar) February

fɛ́mdə (femte) fifth
fɛ́mʔdənə (femtende) fifteenth
fi:ʔn (fin) fine
fi:ʔrsenstỳ:vənə (firsindstyvende) eightieth
fjórdənə (fjortende) fourteenth
fleŋʔk, fléŋgə (flink, -e) nice, helpful, able
flý:və, flý:ʔvər/fly:ʔr, flɔjʔ, flɔ́jʔəð (flyve, fløj, fløjet) fly
flý:vmasgì:nə, -n, -r (Flyvemaskine, -n, -r) airplane
fráŋkri (Frankrig) France
fœ́rətỳ:vənə (fyrretyvende) fortieth
fɔránʔdrə, -ðə (forandre, -de) change
fɔrké:ʔrt, -ə (forkert, -e) wrong
  gɔ: (*gig, gɔ̀:əð*) *fɔrké:ʔrt* (gaa) (gik, gaaet) (forkert) get lost
gáməl, -t, gámlə (gammel, -t, gamle) old
halfɛ́mʔsenstỳ:vənə (halvfemsindstyvende) ninetieth
halfjɛ́rsenstỳ:vənə (halvfjerdsindstyvende) seventieth
haltrésenstỳ:vənə (halvtredsindstyvende) fiftieth
húnrəðə (hundrede) hundredth
idéʔ, -ən, -ər (Ide, -en, -er) idea
jánua:ʔr (Januar) January
jú:ʔli (Juli) July
jú:ʔni (Juni) June
kompaní:ʔ/kómpanì:ʔ, -əð, -ər (Kompagni, -et, -er) company
kónə, -n, -r (Kunde, -n, -r) customer
kontó:ʔr, kontó:ʔərð, kontó:ʔər (Kontor, -et, -er) office
kontrágt, -ən, -ər (Kontrakt, -en, -er) contract
kri:ʔ, -ən, krí:ə (Krig, -en, -e) war
lá:və, -ðə (lave, -de) make
lɛ́:sə, lɛ́:ʔsər, -də (læse, -te) read
lófdangrè:ʔp, -əð, — (Luftangreb, -et, —) air raid
ly:ʔs, -əð, — (Lys, -et, —) light
lɔ́ndɔn (London) London
lɔ́:və, -ðə (love, -de) promise
majʔ (Maj) May
mards (Marts) March
mœrk (mørk) dark
nédənə (nittende) nineteenth
ní:ʔənə (niende) ninth
novɛ́mʔbər (November) November
ó:ləsən (Olesen) *last name*

ó:ˀlsən (Olsen) ***last name***

ónˀər (under) during

ónərsgrì:ˀvə, ónərsgrὲ:ˀv, ónərsgrὲ:ˀvəð (underskrive, underskrev, underskrevet) sign

pé:ˀdərsən (Petersen) ***last name***

rájnə, -ðə (regne, -de) rain

sájsdənə (sekstende) sixteenth

sbetágəl, sbetágləð, sbetáglər (Spektakel, -et, Spektakler) noise

sɛbtέmˀbər (September) September

sɛgrətέ:ˀr, sɛgrətέ:ˀərn, sɛgrətέ:ˀər (Sekretær, -en, -er) secretary

sgrí:vmasgì:nə, -n, -r (Skrivemaskine, -n, -r) typewriter

sjέ:də (sjette) sixth

sgɔvˀ (Schou) ***last name***

sývˀənə (syvende) seventh

sødənə (syttende) seventeenth

sœ́rγli (sørgelig) sad

ta:ˀ/ta, to:ˀ, tá:əð (tage, tog, taget) come

tέmli (temmelig) quite, rather

tέnə, -də (tænde, -te) light, turn on (*a light*)

tí:ˀənə (tiende) tenth

trábə, -n, -r (Trappe, -n, -r) stairs, staircase

né:ˀð a trábən (ned ad Trappen) down the stairs, downstairs

travˀl (travl) busy

ha trávˀlt (have travlt) be busy, have a lot to do

trέðjə (tredie) third

trésenstỳ:vənə (tresindstyvende) sixtieth

trέdənə (trettende) thirteenth

trέðvdə (tredivte) thirtieth

tú:ˀsənə (tusinde) thousandth

tý:vənə (tyvende) twentieth

é:ˀn ɔ tý:vənə (en og tyvende) twenty-first

tɔ́ldə (tolvte) twelfth

ualménˀli/úalménˀli (ualmindelig) exceptional

vὲ:ər (*ɛr, var, vὲ:ərð*) *véð at/vé ɔ* (være) (er, var, været) (ved at) be in the process of, be in the act of

ɔ́dənə (ottende) eighth

ɔgtó:ˀbər (Oktober) October

ɔ́jəblὲk: fɔr ɔ́jəblὲgəð (for Øjeblikket) at the moment, right now

ɔ́m jɛ gœ́r. (Om jeg gør!) Of course I do.

UNIT 21

AT THE HOSPITAL

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Peter's friend, Mr. Hansen, the carpenter, is in the hospital with a broken leg.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Hansen		
the hospital	*hosbitá:ˀləð*	Hospitalet
And I (who) used to think it would be pleasant to be laid up in the hospital!	*ɔ jáj sɔm tró:ðə a de var mórsɔmˀd ɔ lègə pɔ: hosbitá:ˀləð;*	Og jeg som troede, at det var morsomt at ligge paa Hospitalet!
Say, Miss Møller—	*hø:ˀr frø̆gən mølˀər;*	Hør Frøken Møller—
Nurse		
What's the matter?	*já vá ɛ́r dər?*	Ja, hvad er der?
Hansen		
I'd like a glass of water.	*jɛ ve gɛ́rnə há:ˀ ed glas vánˀ.*	Jeg vil gerne have et Glas Vand.
Nurse		
Here you are.	*vɛ́rs gó:ˀ.*	Værsaagod.

256

pillow	*pú:ðə*	Pude
another pillow	*en pú:ðə tél*	en Pude til
the back	*røgən*	Ryggen
Are you comfortable or do you want another pillow in back of you?	*légər di gɔ́d èlər ve di ha en pú:ðə tél i røgən.*	Ligger De godt, eller vil De have en Pude til i Ryggen?
Hansen		
No thanks, I'm O.K.	*nɛ́: tág, jɛ́ légər gɔ́t.*	Næh Tak, jeg ligger godt.
When do you think I can get up?	*vɔrnɔ́:ˀr tró:ˀr di jɛ́ ka kɔ́mə ɔ́p?*	Hvornaar tror De, jeg kan komme op?
Nurse		
I'm sure I don't know.	*dé vé:ˀ jɛ sgam égə;*	Det ved jeg skam ikke.
You'll have to ask the doctor about that when he comes tomorrow morning.	*dé mɔ: di sbǽrɣə dɔ́gdərən ɔ́mˀ, nɔr han kɔ́mˀər i mɔ́rən tíðli.*	Det maa De spørge Doktoren om, naar han kommer i Morgen tidlig.
Hansen		
What're we going to have for lunch today?	*vá sga vi há te frógɔsd i dá:ˀ?*	Hvad skal vi have til Frokost i Dag?
Nurse		
Fish, I think.	*jɛ tró:ˀr vi sga ha fésk;*	Jeg tror, vi skal have Fisk.
Hansen		
What time is it?	*ɔ vá ɛ klɔ́gən?*	Og hvad er Klokken?

Nurse		
Half past nine.	*dέn ɛ hal tɩ:ʔ;*	Den er halv ti.
visit	*bəsø:ʔɣ*	Besøg
Aren't you going to have visitors this afternoon?	*mɛn fɔr di égə bəsø:ʔɣ i έfdərmedà:ʔ.*	Men faar De ikke Besøg i Eftermiddag?
Hansen		
Yes, I think my wife and a couple of my friends are coming.	*jó: jɛ tró:ʔr mi:n kó:nə ɔ ed pár a mì:nə vέnər kɔ́mʔər.*	Jo, jeg tror, min Kone og et Par af mine Venner kommer.
chairs	*sdó:lə*	Stole
Are there chairs enough?	*έr hər sdó:lə nɔ́k;*	Er her Stole nok?
see to	*sœ́rɣə fɔ́r*	sørge for
You'd better see to it that we get another one in here.	*di mɔ: hέlərə sœ́rɣə fɔ́r a vi fɔr é:ʔn tél hərénʔ.*	De maa hellere sørge for, at vi faar en til herind.
Nurse		
Is there anything else you need before I go?	*ɛr dər έlʔərs nɔ́:əð di trέŋʔər te, énən jɛ gɔ́:ʔr;*	Er der ellers noget, De trænger til, inden jeg gaar?
Hansen		
Yes, won't you please hand me the newspaper?	*já ve di égə vέ:ər sɔ vέnli ɔ gɩ: maj avɩ:ʔsən;*	Ja, vil De ikke være saa venlig at give mig Avisen?
It's over there on the little table.	*dɛn légər dέ:ʔrhènə pɔ: de lɩlə bó:ʔr.*	Den ligger derhenne paa det lille Bord.

In the afternoon Tom and Peter come in.

Peter		
Hello, Niels, how are you?	*godá:ˀ néls, vórdən gɔ́:ˀr dəˀ*	Goddag Niels, hvordan gaar det?
Hansen		
really	*səmɛ́nˀ*	saamænd
I'm really feeling pretty good, thanks.	*jó: tág, de gɔ́:ˀr sɔ̀mən máəð gɔ́t;*	Jo Tak, det gaar saamænd meget godt.
broken	*brɛ́gəð*	brækket
leg *or* bone	*be:ˀn*	Ben
terrible *or* awful	*frøgli*	frygtelig
But a broken leg takes an awful long time.	*mɛn ed brɛ́gəð bɛ́:ˀn tá:ˀr en frøgli tí:ˀð.*	Men et brækket Ben tager en frygtelig Tid.
be bored	*ké:ðə maj*	kede mig
anyone *or* someone	*nó:ən*	nogen
talk *or* converse	*snágə*	snakke
I'm getting tired of lying here being bored and I don't have anybody to talk to.	*jɛ ɛr vé ɔ blì:ə trɛ́d a ɔ légə hɛ́:ˀr ɔ ké:ðə maj, ɔ jɛ har égə nó:n ɔ snágə mɛ́.*	Jeg er ved at blive træt af at ligge her og kede mig, og jeg har ikke nogen at snakke med.
Tom		
How did it happen?	*vɔrdán sgé:d de dɔ́ɩˀ*	Hvordan skete det dog?
Hansen		
fell	*falˀt*	faldt
I fell downstairs at home.	*jó: jɛ́ fálˀd nɛ́:ˀð a trábən jɛ́mə.*	Jo, jeg faldt ned ad Trappen hjemme.

move (myself)	*rǿ:ər maj*	røre mig
I lay there and couldn't move.	*dɛ́:ˀr lɔ́:ˀ jɛ ɔ jɛ ku égə rǿ:ər maj.*	Der laa jeg, og jeg kunde ikke røre mig.
hurt	*gjò:ər ónˀt*	gjorde ondt
It certainly did hurt!	*du ka tró:ˀ de gjó:ər ónˀt.*	Du kan tro, det gjorde ondt.
the ambulance the emergency ward treated	*ambuláŋsən* *sgá:ðəsdù:ən* *bəhánˀləðə*	Ambulancen Skadestuen behandlede
My wife called an ambulance and rode with me to the emergency ward, where one of the doctors took care of me.	*sɔ́ réŋəðə mi:n kó:nə ɛ̀fdər ambuláŋsən ɔ kø̀:rdə mɛ́ maj pɔ: sgá:ðəsdù:ən vɔr é:ˀn a lɛ́:ɣərnə bəhánˀləðə maj.*	Saa ringede min Kone efter Ambulancen, og kørte med mig paa Skadestuen, hvor en af Lægerne behandlede mig.
remember	*húsgə*	huske
After that I don't remember any more.	*ɛ̀fdər dé ka jɛ égə húsgə mɛ́:ˀr.*	Efter det kan jeg ikke huske mere.
Peter		
were admitted right away	*ble énlàgt* *mɛ de sámə*	blev indlagt med det samme
Then you were admitted right away?	*sɔ́ ble du àlˀdsɔ énlàgd mɛ de sámə;*	Saa blev du altsaa indlagt med det samme?
Hansen		
Yes, I was.	*já dé blé:ˀ jɛ.*	Ja, det blev jeg.
Tom		
How long have you been here?	*vɔr lɛ́ŋə har di légəð hər?*	Hvor længe har De ligget her?

Hansen		
Fourteen days.	*jɛ har légəð hər i fjórdən dá:ə.*	Jeg har ligget her i fjorten Dage.
been examined	*blèəð ónərsøgt*	blevet undersøgt
X-rayed	*rǽnˀdgənfodografè:ˀərð*	røntgenfotograferet
fortunately	*hɛ́ldivì:ˀs*	heldigvis
During the past week I've been examined and X-rayed all over, but fortunately there was nothing else the matter.	*dɛn sísdə ú:ə ɛr jɛ blèəð ónərsøgd ɔ rǽnˀdgənfodografè:ˀərð ɔ́vˀər de hé:lə, mɛn hɛ́ldivì:ˀs var dər égə ánəð i vájˀən.*	Den sidste Uge er jeg blevet undersøgt og røntgenfotograferet over det hele, men heldigvis var der ikke andet i Vejen.
Tom		
the nurses	*sý:əplàjˀərsgərnə*	Sygeplejerskerne
How are the nurses?	*vɔrdán ɛr sý:əplàjˀərsgərnə?*	Hvordan er Sygeplejerskerne?
Hansen		
very	*vɛ́ldi*	vældig
all together	*áləsàmˀən*	allesammen
They're all pretty cute.	*di ɛ vɛ́ldi sø:ðə áləsàmˀən.*	De er vældig søde allesammen.
special *or* specially	*sɛ́rli*	særlig
But there's one of them that I'm specially good friends with.	*mɛn dɛr ər sɛ́rli é:ˀn á dəm jɛ ɛr máəð fí:nə vɛ́nər mɛ́.*	Men der er særlig en af dem, jeg er meget fine Venner med.
She comes in when I get too bored.	*hún kɔ́mˀər énˀ nɔr jɛ ké:ðər maj álˀd fɔr máəð.*	Hun kommer ind, naar jeg keder mig alt for meget.
Peter		
I'll bet she does.	*já dé ka jɛ tɛ́ŋgə maj.*	Ja, det kan jeg tænke mig.

pulse	*pulˀs*	Puls
And I suppose she takes your pulse four times a day, too.	*ɔ hun táːˀr vɛl ɔ́sə diːn púlˀs fı́ːər gáŋə ɔm dáːˀən.*	Og hun tager vel ogsaa din Puls fire Gange om Dagen.
Hansen		
Sh, not so loud!	*sj, égə sɔ hɔ́jˀt.*	Sh, ikke saa højt!
I'm expecting my wife any minute.	*jɛ vɛ́ndər miːn kóːnə vɛ́ːˀrd ɔ́jəblèk.*	Jeg venter min Kone hvert Øjeblik.
Peter		
No, I just talked to her.	*nɛ́ː jɛ ar lı́ːə táːˀld mɛ́ hènə.*	Næh, jeg har lige talt med hende.
the bed	*sɛ́ŋˀən*	Sengen
headache	*hóːðəpı̀ːnə*	Hovedpine
She's in bed herself with a headache.	*hun légər sɛ́lˀ i sɛ́ŋˀən mɛ hóːðəpı̀ːnə.*	Hun ligger selv i Sengen med Hovedpine.
caught a cold	*ble fɔrkǿːˀləð*	blev forkølet
She caught a bad cold yesterday.	*hun bléːˀ sɔ frǿgli fɔrkǿːˀləð i gɔ́ːˀr.*	Hun blev saa frygtelig forkølet i Gaar.
for that reason *or* therefore	*dɛ́ːˀrfɔ̀r*	derfor
So she's sorry but she can't come today.	*dɛ́ːˀrfɔr kɔ́mˀər hun desvɛ́rə égə i dáːˀ.*	Derfor kommer hun desværre ikke i Dag.
Hansen		
serious	*alvɔ́ːˀrlit*	alvorligt
It's not serious, is it?	*de ɛ vɛl égə alvɔ́ːˀrlit;*	Det er vel ikke alvorligt?
Peter		
cold	*fɔrkǿːˀləlsə*	Forkølelse
No, luckily it's just an ordinary cold.	*nɛ́ː dé ɛ hɛ́ldivı̀ːˀs báːər en alménˀli fɔrkǿːˀləlsə.*	Næh, det er heldigvis bare en almindelig Forkølelse.

was supposed to	*sgúlə*	skulde
I was supposed to give you her best.	*jɛ sgu híl?sə daj máŋə gáŋə frá hènə.*	Jeg skulde hilse dig mange Gange fra hende.
Tom		
does it matter *or* does it make any difference	*gœr de nɔ́:əð*	gør det noget
Does it matter if I smoke here?	*gœr de nɔ́:əð a jɛ rý:?ər hɛ́:?r;*	Gør det noget, at jeg ryger her?
Hansen		
No, go ahead. Won't you have one of mine?	*nɛ́: vɛ́rs gó:?, ve di égə há:? ɛ́:?n a mí:nə;*	Næh, værsaagod, vil De ikke have en af mine?
Tom		
Thanks, I will.	*jó:? tág, máəð gɛ́rnə;*	Jo Tak, meget gerne.
We weren't quite sure that you could ('might') smoke here.	*vi var égə hé:?ld ségrə pɔ́:? a man mɔ̀də rý:ə hɛ́:?r.*	Vi var ikke helt sikre paa, at man maatte ryge her.
Peter		
next	*nɛ́sdə*	næste
We'll remember to bring you some cigarettes next time we come.	*sɔ́ sga vi húsgə ɔ ta no:n sigərɛ́dər mɛ́ té daj nɛ́sdə gáŋ? vi kɔ́m?ər.*	Saa skal vi huske at tage nogle Cigaretter med til dig, næste Gang vi kommer.
Hansen		
Thanks, that's darn nice of you.	*tág dé ɛ mɛ́gdi pɛ́:?nd á jɛr.*	Tak, det er mægtig pænt af jer.

Nurse		
visiting hours	*bəsø:ʔstì:ʔðən*	Besøgstiden
ask for	*bé:ʔ ɔ́mʔ*	bede om
Visiting hours are over, so I'm afraid I'll have to ask you to leave.	*nú ər bəsø:ʔstì:ʔðən fɔrbí:ʔ, sɔ jɛ mɔ: desvɛ́rə bé:ʔ di hɛ́rər ɔ́mʔ ɔ sí:ə farvɛ́l;*	Nu er Besøgstiden forbi, saa jeg maa desværre bede de Herrer om at sige Farvel.
Hansen		
annoying *or* boring	*kéðəlit*	kedeligt
That's too bad, but thanks for coming.	*dé var da kéðəlid, mɛn i sga ha tág fɔrdí:ʔ i kɔ́mʔ;*	Det var da kedeligt, men I skal have Tak, fordi I kom.
Peter		
right	*régdi*	rigtig
recovery *or* improvement	*bɛ́ðreŋ*	Bedring
Not at all. Hope you feel better soon.	*sɛ́lʔ tág, ɔ régdi gó:ʔ bɛ́ðreŋ;*	Selv Tak. Og rigtig god Bedring.
Hansen		
Thanks.	*já ták.*	Ja Tak.
Good-by—come again soon.	*farvɛ́l, ɔ kɔm sná:ʔrd igɛ́n.*	Farvel og kom snart igen.

2. Pronunciation Drill

As you know, in the *Aids to Listening* in individual words of more than one syllable we have used the mark ´ to show which syllable is stressed most strongly or spoken with the most emphasis; for instance, *ví:sə*, 'show', *fɔrdí:ʔ*, 'because', etc. And we have used the mark ` on the most strongly stressed syllable of the second part of a compound word to show that it is given some stress, but not quite as much as syllables marked ´; for example, *págəpɔ̀st*, ‘parcel post’, *barbé:ʔrmasgì:nə*, ‘razor’, etc. In the regular Danish spelling, as you have seen, no such marks are used. The following statements will help you to tell which syllable of a word to stress when you don’t have the marks to help you:

Most Danish words of more than one syllable are stressed on the first syllable. For example, *tá:lə*, ‘speak’, *gáməl*, ‘old’, *rájnə*, ‘rain’, *gá:və*, ‘gift’, *jɛ́lbə*, ‘help’, *kɔ́ŋəli*, ‘royal’, *fɛ́rɣə*, ‘ferry’, etc.

In the case of compound words, each part is stressed as it is when used alone. The stress or emphasis on the first part of the compound is, as you know, heavier than that on the last part. For example, *ílpàgə*, ‘special delivery package’, *sý:əplàjʔərsgə*, ‘nurse’, *hó:ðəpì:nə*, ‘headache’, etc.

There are a few Danish words which have a different syllable stressed when they become part of a compound. The only one you’ve had is *méda* which changes to *-medà:ʔ* in the compound *ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔ*.

Danish words which are not stressed on the first syllable fall into the following groups:

1. all words which begin with the syllable *bə-* (be-) and most words which begin with the syllable *fɔr-/fər-* (for-); for example, *bətá:ʔlə*, ‘pay’, *bəsgé:ʔð*, ‘message’, *fɔrsdɔ́:ʔ*, ‘understand’, *fɔránʔdrə*, ‘change’, *fɔrɛ́sdən*, ‘by the way’, *fɔrdí:ʔ*, ‘because’, etc.

2. foreign words, that is, words which Danish has taken over from some other language. They are often stressed on some syllable other than the first and many of them are stressed on the last syllable. For example, *blaŋkɛ́t*, ‘blank’, *biográ:ʔf*, ‘movie’, *sigərɛ́t*, ‘cigarette’, *fabrék*, ‘factory’, *teləfoné:ʔər*, ‘telephone’, *teləgrámʔ*, ‘telegram’, etc.

3. a small number of words which don’t belong in either of the preceding groups and yet are not stressed on the first syllable. Here are the ones you’ve had:

desvɛ́rə	desværre	unfortunately
farvɛ́l	Farvel	good-by
vɔrdán (or *vórdən*)	hvordan	how
vɔrnɔ́:ʔr	hvornaar	when
købənhávʔn	København	Copenhagen
mɔ:sgé:ʔ	maaske	perhaps, maybe
tebá:ɣə	tilbage	back
alí:əvɛ̀lʔ	alligevel	anyway
enú (or *énu*)	endnu	still, yet
hinánən	hinanden	each other
igɛ́n	igen	again
imó:ʔð	imod	against
ɔmkréŋʔ	omkring	about, around
sɛfǿləli	selvfølgelig	of course
alménʔli	almindelig	common, ordinary

In a sentence, the mark ´ is used, not only to show which syllables of the individual words are given the most stress, but also to show which words of only one syllable are stressed strongly; for example, *vórdən há:ʔr di dəʔ*, 'How are you?'. And the mark ` is used, not only to show which syllable of the second part of a compound has the most stress, but also to indicate other syllables that are stressed less strongly than those marked ´, but still more strongly than those with no mark at all; for instance, *frø̀gən lársən*, 'Miss Larsen', *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr sga di ràjsə tebá:ɣə te amé:ʔrikaʔ*, 'When are you going back to America?'. This sentence stress also is not marked in ordinary written Danish, but, if you know how to stress the individual words, it will not bother you, since important words are emphasized, just as in English.

You have probably noticed that some Danish words are not always stressed in the same way. Here is a summary of the main differences you will find:

1. The stressed syllable of a word is less heavily stressed when that word is used in a phrase or sentence in such a way that it is not emphasized; for example:

gǿ:ər (gøre) do
gø̀:ər ré:ʔnt (gøre rent) clean

rájsə (rejse) travel

vɔrnɔ́:ʔr sga di ràjsə tebá:ɣə te amé:ʔrikaʔ	Hvornaar skal De rejse tilbage til Amerika?	When are you going back to America?

2. The stress marked ` on the last part of certain compound words (generally not nouns or verbs) like *ú:ðənfɔr*, 'outside', *ɔ́vʔərfɔr*, 'opposite', *alí:əvèlʔ*, 'anyway', *dɛ́:ʔrfɔr*, 'therefore', etc., often is lost when these words are said in the middle of a sentence.

3. The group of words beginning with *hɛ́:ʔr-* and *dɛ́:ʔr-*, *hɛ́:ʔrfrà*, *dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vʔər*, etc., often lose the stress on the first syllable and are pronounced *hɛrfrá*, *dɛrɔ́vʔər*, etc., as we mentioned in Unit 16.

4. In some words the stress actually changes from one syllable to another. For instance, you may have noticed what happens to the stress in words like *ensjənjǿ:ʔr*, 'engineer', and *dirɛgtǿ:ʔr*, 'director', in the phrases *ènsjənjør bɔ́dlər* and *dìrɛgtør ó:ʔlsən*.

Two other words in which the stress changes from one syllable to another are *enú*, 'still, yet', and *aləré:ðə*, 'already'. When they are pronounced alone or at the end of a sentence or clause, the stress is as indicated here, on the *u* and the *e:*. In the middle of a sentence, however, it often shifts and the words are pronounced *énu* and *áləre:ðə*.

Listen for this in the following sentences:

jɛ har énu tɔ́j fra fœ́:ˀr krí:ˀən.	Jeg har endnu Tøj fra før Krigen.	I still have clothes from before the war.
énu en gáŋˀ tú:ˀsən ták.	Endnu en Gang tusind Tak.	Once again, thanks a million.
ɛr han áləre:ðə kɔ́məð;	Er han allerede kommet?	Has he already come?
vi har áləre:ðə fɔ́:əð bré:ˀv frá ham.	Vi har allerede faaet Brev fra ham.	We've already had a letter from him.

The word *mɔ:sgé:ˀ*, 'perhaps', also occasionally changes to *mɔ́:sge:* in the middle of a sentence. Listen for it in the following:

mɛn di ve mɔ́:sge: hɛ́lərə ha sóbə sdájˀ ɔ en desɛ́:ˀrt;	Men De vil maaske hellere have Suppe, Steg og en Dessert.	But maybe you'd rather have soup, roast and a dessert.

3. Hints on Spelling

1. Words which have been taken into Danish from other languages often keep the spelling they have in the original language. Consequently the general statements which we have been making about Danish spelling may not apply to them. Here are those which you have had:

Pensionat	*paŋsjoná:ˀl*	boarding house
Perron	*pərɔ́ŋ*	platform
Ambulance[1]	*ambuláŋsə*	ambulance

---

[1] You will notice in this and many other foreign words that the [*s*]-sound is spelled with the letter *c*.

være punkteret	*vɛ̀:ərpoŋté:ʔərð*	have a flat tire
cykle	*síglə*	ride a bicycle
Cykel	*sígəl*	bicycle
Cykelsmed	*sígəlsmɛ̀ð*	bicycle repairman
Cykelløb	*sígəllø̀:ʔp*	bicycle race
Bagage	*bagá:sjə*	luggage
Ingeniør	*ensjənjǿ:ʔr*	engineer
Check	*tjɛk*	check
Checkkonto	*tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto*	checking account
Checkhæfte	*tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə*	check book
Rejsecheck	*rájsətjɛ̀k*	traveler's check
interessant	*entrəsánʔt*	interesting
interessere	*entrəsé:ʔər*	interest
Ekspedition	*ɛgsbədisjó:ʔn*	service
Pakkeekspedition	*págəɛgsbədisjò:ʔn*	package window
Nationalmuseet	*nasjoná:ʔlmusɛ̀:əð*	The National Museum
Nationalsang	*nasjoná:ʔlsàŋʔ*	national anthem
Station	*sdasjó:ʔn*	station
Toilet	*toalɛ́t*	toilet
Cigaret	*sigərɛ́t*	cigarette
Restaurant	*resdoráŋ*	restaurant
Doktor	*dɔ́gdər*	doctor
Familie	*famí:ʔljə*	family
Menukort	*menýkɔ̀rt*	menu

Pyjamas	*pydjá:mas*	pajamas
Taxa	*tágsa*	taxi
Benzin	*bɛnsí:ˀn*	gas
Benzintank	*bɛnsí:ˀntàŋˀk*	gas station
Politi	*polətí:ˀ*	police
Procent	*prosɛ́nˀt*	percent
ekstra	*ɛ́gsdrə*	extra
Chokolade	*sjogolá:ðə*	chocolate

2. You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following new words:

Ryg	*røk*	back
vældig	*vɛ́ldi*	very
heldigvis	*hɛ́ldivì:ˀs*	fortunately
saamænd	*sɔ́mən, səmɛ́nˀ*	really
røntgenfotografere	*rœ́nˀdgənfodografè:ˀər*	X-ray
Hovedpine	*hó:ðəpì:nə*	headache
frygtelig	*frøgli*	terrible, awful
indlagde	*énlà:ə*	admitted
Besøgstid	*bəsǿ:ˀstì:ˀð*	visiting hours
bede	*be:ˀ*	ask, request
Marianne[1]	*marjánə*	Marianne

---

[1] See *Listening In.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Danish equivalents of "was killed", "was examined", etc.

Observe the words in heavy type in these sentences.

hán **ble drέbd** *ónʔər ed lófdangrè:ʔp.*	Han blev dræbt under et Luftangreb.	He was killed in an air raid.
mid gámlə kontó:ʔr εr vé ɔ **blì:ə gjord i sdánʔ** *fɔr ɔ́jəblègəð.*	Mit gamle Kontor er ved at blive gjort i Stand for Øjeblikket.	My old office is being done over right now.
sɔ́ **ble** *du àlʔdsɔ* **énlàgd** *mε de sámə;*	Saa blev du altsaa indlagt med det samme?	Then you were admitted right away?
dεn sísdə ú:ə **εr** *jε* **blèəð ónərsøgd** *ɔ* **rœ́nʔdgənfodografè:ʔərð** *ɔ́vʔər de hé:lə.*	Den sidste Uge er jeg blevet undersøgt og røntgenfotograferet over det hele.	During the last week I've been examined and X-rayed all over.
hun **blé:ʔ** *sɔ frøgli* **fɔrkǿ:ʔləð** *i gɔ́:ʔr.*	Hun blev saa frygtelig forkølet i Gaar.	She caught an awful cold yesterday.

Look at the verb phrases, *ble drέbd*, 'was killed', *blì:ə gjord i sdánʔ*, 'be done over', *ble énlàgd*, 'were admitted', *εr blèəð ónərsøgd*, 'have been examined', etc.

When you say "he was killed" or "he was admitted" or "he has been examined", the subject of the sentence, "he", is not performing the action of the verb, as you learned is generally the case, but rather is affected by that action; that is, the action of the verb is performed on the subject. Sentences in which the subject does the acting are called **active**, while sentences in which the subject is acted upon are called **passive.** In English, passive sentences contain verb phrases made up of some form of the verb "be" plus the participle of another verb. For instance, "is examined", "is being examined", "will be examined", "was examined", "has been examined", etc., are all passive verb phrases. In Danish, as you can see from the examples above, the verb phrases in passive sentences are generally made up of a form, not of the verb *vɛ́:ər*, 'be', but of the verb *blí:ə*, 'become'. In the sentences above you have the phrases *ble drɛ́bt, ble énlàgt, blé:ʔ fɔrkø̀:ʔləð*, all of which have the past form of *blí:ə* plus a participle, the phrase *blì:ə gjord* which has the basic form *blí:ə* plus a participle, and the phrase *ɛr blèəð ónərsø̀gd* which has the verb phrase *ɛr blèəð* plus a participle. (For the use of *ɛr* rather than *ha:ʔr* with *blé:əð* see Comment 2.) You can, of course, also say ***han blíər ónərsø̀gt***, 'he'll be examined', ***han var blèəð ónərsøgt***, 'he had been examined', etc.

2. Using *vɛ́:ər* instead of *ha:ʔ* in certain verb phrases

jɛ sga fɔrklá:ʔər daj led mé:ər ɔ́mʔ de, nɔr di ɛ **bəgønʔd** *ɔ sbélə.*	Jeg skal forklare dig lidt mere om det, naar de er begyndt at spille.	I'll tell you more about it, after they've started to play.
dɛn sísdə ú:ə **ɛr** *jɛ* **blèəð** *ónərsø̀gd . . .*	Den sidste Uge er jeg blevet undersøgt . . .	During the past week I've been examined . . .

Notice that, although with most verbs you use a form of *ha:ʔ* with the participle in verb phrases that talk about past time, with the verbs *bəgønʔə* and *blí:ə* you use a form of *vɛ́:ər* instead: *ɛr bəgønʔt, ɛr blèəð ónərsø̀gd.* This is also generally true of the verbs *kɔ́mə*, 'come', *gɔ:ʔ*, 'go', *lø̀:bə*, 'run', *kø̀:ər*, 'drive', *síglə*, 'bicycle', *flý:və*, 'fly', *rájsə*, 'travel', *fálə*, 'fall', *sge:ʔ*, 'happen'. Notice that most of these verbs involve some sort of movement.

3. The use of *blí:ə*

By now you've had the Danish word *blí:ə* used with several different English equivalents. We'll summarize them here.

1. "will be"

dé **blìər** *máəð entrəsánʔt.*	Det bliver meget interessant.	That'll be very interesting.
de **blí:ʔr** *nɔ́g ed par ú:ər.*	Det bliver nok et Par Uger.	It'll probably be a couple of weeks.

vi **blìər** *nɔ́g gɔ́d brú:nə énən vi kɔ́m?ər jɛ́m?.*	Vi bliver nok godt brune, inden vi kommer hjem.	We'll be good and brown by the time we get home.
dɛr **blìər** *égə mɔ́:?l dɛ́nə gáŋ?.*	Der bliver ikke Maal denne Gang.	There won't be any goal this time.

2. "become" or "get"

jɛ́ **blìər** *hé:?ld súl?dən;*	Jeg bliver helt sulten.	I'm getting awfully hungry.
ble: *di mɛ́t;*	Blev De mæt?	Did you have enough to eat? ('Did you get full?')
de ka gɔ́d **blí:ə** *kɔ́l?d hɛ́:?r ɔm áfdənən;*	Det kan godt blive koldt her om Aftenen.	It can get pretty cold here in the evening.
jɛ ɛr vé ɔ **blì:ə** *trɛ́d a ɔ légə hɛ́:?r ɔ ké:ðə maj.*	Jeg er ved at blive træt af at ligge her og kede mig.	I'm getting tired of lying here being bored.

3. in passive sentences, as explained in the first comment in this *Word Study*. Here are two more examples from Unit 11.

jɛ tró:?r jɛ mɔ: te barbé:?ərn fɔr ɔ **blì:ə klébəð ɔ barbé:?ərð.**	Jeg tror, jeg maa til Barberen for at blive klippet og barberet.	I think I'll have to go to the barber's and get a hair-cut and a shave ('be cut and shaved').

4. There's one more important way in which *blí:ə* is used, which you can easily see from the following new sentences:

han **blé:?** *i ɛ́ŋlàn? en hé:?l ú:ə.*	Han blev i England en hel Uge.	He stayed in England for a whole week.
ves di égə har tráv?ld, sɔ **blí:?** *led lɛ́ŋərə.*	Hvis De ikke har travlt, saa bliv lidt længere.	If you're not busy, stay a while longer.

sbí:sd di égə pɔ fέrγən; nájʔ jέ **blé:ʔ** *i tɔ́:ʔγəð.*	Spiste De ikke paa Færgen? Nej, jeg blev i Toget.	Didn't you eat on the ferry? No, I stayed on the train.

As you see from these sentences, *blí:ə* also corresponds to English "stay".

4. *vὲ:ər vé ɔ* and *vὲ:ər lí:ə vé ɔ*

mid gámlə kontó:ʔr **ɛr vé ɔ** *blì:ə gjord i sdánʔ fɔr ɔ́jəblègəð.*	Mit gamle Kontor er ved at blive gjort i Stand for Øjeblikket.	My old office is being done over right now.
jɛ **ɛr vé ɔ** *blì:ə tréd a ɔ légə hέ:ʔr ɔ ké:ðə maj.*	Jeg er ved at blive træt af at ligge her og kede mig.	I'm getting tired of lying here being bored.
dέr **var** *du* **lí:ə vé ɔ** *kǿ:ər dέnʔ mánʔ né:ʔð.*	Der var du lige ved at køre den Mand ned!	You almost ran that man down!
nú **ɛr** *vi* **lí:ə vé ɔ** *fɔ: mɔ́:ʔl;*	Nu er vi lige ved at faa Maal!	We're going to make a goal!
sé:ʔ, nú **ɛr** *di ándrə* **lí:ə vé ɔ** *fɔ: mɔ́:ʔl.*	Se, nu er de andre lige ved at faa Maal.	Look, the other side's trying for a goal now.

Look at these sentences carefully. The expression *vὲ:ər vé ɔ* plus the basic form of a verb which you have in the first two sentences means, as you see, to "be in the process of", "be in the act of". Notice that the English equivalents have a form of the verb "be" plus the *-ing* form of another verb. If you want to emphasize that something is or was in the process of going on in Danish, you use this expression, *vὲ:ər vé ɔ*. Otherwise you just use the present or past verb forms as the equivalents of English verb phrases made up of the verb "be" plus the *-ing* form of another verb.

The expression *vὲ:ər lí:ə vé ɔ* plus the basic form of a verb which you have in the last three sentences means, as you see, to "be on the point of doing something", "be about to do something", or to "almost do something".

5. Use of *légə* and *sdɔ́:ˀ*

1. *dɛn (aví:ˀsən)* **légər** *dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nə pɔ: de lílə bó:ˀr.*	Den (Avisen) ligger derhenne paa det lille Bord.	It (the newspaper) is over there on the little table.
2. *dé (mid kǿ:ərkɔ̀rd)* **légər** *jɛ́mə pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	Det (mit Kørekort) ligger hjemme paa Bordet.	It (my license) is at home on the table.
3. *légər di gɔ́t;*	Ligger De godt?	Are you comfortable?
4. *vɔr lɛ́ŋə har di* **légəð** *hər?*	Hvor længe har De ligget her?	How long have you been here?
5. *blɛ́gəð* **sdɔ́:ˀr** *lí:ə dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə pɔ: bó:ˀərð.*	Blækket staar lige derovre paa Bordet.	The ink's right over there on the table.
6. *jɛ há:ˀr kón dɛ́nˀ kófərd dɛr* **sdɔ́:ˀr** *dɛ́:ˀr i jœ́rnəð;*	Jeg har kun den Kuffert, der staar der i Hjørnet.	I only have that suitcase there in the corner.

Notice that often where in English we use a form of the verb "be", in Danish you use either the verb *légə*, 'lie', or *sdɔ:ˀ*, 'stand', depending upon what the object or the person you're talking about does. The newspaper (sentence 1) and the license (sentence 2) lie, Mr. Hansen (sentences 3 and 4) also lies, since he's in bed, while the ink (sentence 5) and the suitcase (sentence 6) stand.

Here are some more examples:

vɔ́:ˀr **légər** *dɛ́rəs kontó:ˀr?*	Hvor ligger Deres Kontor?	Where's your office?
mì:nə pɛ́ŋə **légər** *álˀtiðˀ i mi:n brú:nə frágə.*	Mine Penge ligger altid i min brune Frakke.	My money's always in my brown coat.
vɔ́:ˀr **légər** *dɛ́nˀ tíkro:nəsɛ̀ðˀəl jɛ lɔ́:ndə á də.*	Hvor ligger den Tikroneseddel, jeg laante af dig?	Where's that ten crown bill I borrowed from you?

dɛr **sdɔ́:ˀr** *en flàsgə snábs énə pɔ: mid vɛ́:ərlsə.*	Der staar en Flaske Snaps inde paa mit Værelse.	There's a bottle of *Snaps* in my room.
hans návˀn **sdɔ́:ˀr** *i teləfó:ˀnbɔ̀:ˀγən.*	Hans Navn staar i Telefonbogen.	His name's in the telephone book.
kɔ́m, la ɔs sgǿnə ɔs, dɛr **sdɔ́:ˀr** *en tágsa lí:ə dɛ́:ˀr pɔ: jœ́rnəð.*	Kom, lad os skynde os, der staar en Taxa lige der paa Hjørnet.	Come on, let's hurry—there's a taxi right there on the corner.

6. Two ways to say "if"

Look at the first part of each of these Danish sentences and at the English equivalents.

sgu jɛ égə vɛ́:ər hər, ka di jo gí:ˀ bəsgé:ˀð te mi:n sɛgrətɛ́:ˀr;	Skulde jeg ikke være her, kan De jo give Besked til min Sekretær.	If I shouldn't be here, you can leave a message with my secretary.
mɛn trɛ̀ŋər du te pɛ́ŋə, ka jɛ́ gɔ́d lɔ́:nə daj nó:ən.	Men, trænger du til Penge, kan jeg godt laane dig nogle.	But if you need money, I can lend you some.

Notice that the "if" idea in these Danish sentences is expressed by using inverted word-order with the verb before the subject, rather than by using the word *ves*, 'if', followed by regular word order. Both the use of *ves* and the use of inverted word-order with no special word for "if" are common in Danish.

7. Danish equivalents of "another"

Look at the words in heavy type in these sentences.

ve di ha **en pú:ðə tél** *i rǿgən;*	Vil De have en Pude til i Ryggen?	Do you want another pillow in back of you?
ɛ́r hər sdó:lə nɔ́k; di mɔ: hɛ́lərə sœ́rγə fɔ́r a vi fɔr **é:ˀn·tél** *hərén?.*	Er her Stole nok? De maa hellere sørge for, at vi faar en til herind.	Are there chairs enough? You'd better see to it that we get another one in here.

sɔ́ gíg vi hɛ́nʔ **ed ánəð sdɛ́ð** *ɔ dánsəðə.*	Saa gik vi hen et andet Sted og dansede.	Then we sent to another place and danced.
jɛ sɔ́:ʔ pɔ: ed éŋʔgəldvɛ̀:ərlsə pɔ: **ed ánəð hotɛ́lʔ;**	Jeg saa paa et Enkeltværelse paa et andet Hotel.	I looked at a single room in another hotel.

Notice that in these sentences there are two different Danish equivalents for the English word "another". If you look at the first two sentences you will see that when you mean "another" in the sense of "an additional one" or "one more" you use in Danish *en* (or *et*) with or without a noun plus *te*, as in *en pú:ðə te, é:ʔn tél.* And if you look at the last two sentences you will see that when you mean "another" in the sense of "a different one" or "one instead", you use *ed ánəð* (or *en ánən*), as in *ed ánəð sdɛ́ð* and *ed ánəð hotɛ́lʔ*. The following pair of sentences will show you more clearly the difference between these two expressions.

han fég en lɛ́:γə tél.	Han fik en Læge til.	He got another doctor.
han fég en ánən lɛ́:γə.	Han fik en anden Læge.	

Although the English equivalent of these two sentences is the same, in Danish they are used differently. The first sentence is used if the man had one doctor and got another one in addition, so that he ended up with two. The second sentence is used if he had one doctor, but changed and got another one instead.

8. Compounds

Here are the new compounds you had in this unit:

noun + noun

sgá:ðəsdù:ə (Skadestue) emergency ward = **sgá:ðə** (Skade) damage, injury + **sdú:ə** (Stue) room

hó:ðəpì:nə (Hovedpine) headache = **hó:ðə** (Hoved) head + **pí:nə** (Pine) ache, pain (an old word which is very seldom used alone nowadays).

adjective + noun

sý:əplàjʔərsgə (Sygeplejerske) nurse = **sý:ə** (syge) sick (ə-form) + **-plàjʔərsgə** (-plejerske) person who takes care of someone (not used as a word by itself)

noun + s + noun

bəsø̀:ʔstì:ʔð (Besøgstid) visiting hours = **bəsø̀:ʔɣ** (Besøg) visit + **s** + **ti:ʔð** (Tid) time. Notice that the ɣ is left out in the compound.

There are in Danish a number of compounds which are made up in this way by inserting an *s* between the two parts.

9. Irregular verbs

Here are the irregular verbs you had in this unit:

be:ʔ or *bé:ðə* (bede) ask	*ba*[illegible] (bad) asked	*be:ʔt* (bedt) asked
énlègə (indlægge) admit (*to a hospital*)	*énlà:ə* (indlagde) admitted	*énlàgt* (indlagt) admitted
fálə (falde) fall	*falʔt* (faldt) fell	*fáləð* (faldet) fallen
légə (ligge) lie	*lɔ:ʔ* (laa) lay	*légəð* (ligget) lain
ónərsø̀:ʔɣə (undersøge) examine	*ónərsø̀gdə* (undersøgte) examined	*ónərsø̀gt* (undersøgt) examined

2. Covering the English and Danish of Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. Change the English given in parentheses in the following sentences into Danish.

1. *hun* (was sent) *te fráŋkri da hun var tó:ˀ ɔ́:ˀr gáməl.*	Hun (*was sent*) til Frankrig, da hun var to Aar gammel.
2. *dé bláð* (is read) *a*[1] *hé:lə famí:ˀljən.*	Det Blad (*is read*) af hele Familien.
3. *hun* (was helped) *ɔ́wˀər gá:ðən a en gáməl mánˀ.*	Hun (*was helped*) over Gaden af en gammel Mand.
4. (Was) *di:n bagá:sjə* (checked through) *i gɔ́:ˀr;*	(*Was*) din Bagage (*checked through*) i Gaar?
5. *de hé:lə* (was done) *pɔ: en tí:mə.*	Det hele (*was done*) paa en Time.
6. *han* (was) *sɛ́lˀ* (stopped) *a poləti:ˀəð i gɔ́:ˀr.*	Han (*was*) selv (*stopped*) af Politiet i Gaar.
7. *hans tá:lə* (was heard) *ɔ́wˀər hé:lə dánmark.*	Hans Tale (*was heard*) over hele Danmark.
8. *hun* (got married) *sísdə ɔ́:ˀr, jɛ tró:ˀr de var i májˀ mɔ́:nəð.*	Hun (*got married*) sidste Aar — jeg tror, det var i Maj Maaned.
9. *han* (caught a bad cold) *i gɔ́:ˀr ɔ mɔ̀də* (stay) *jɛ́mə.*	Han (*caught a bad cold*) i Gaar og maatte (*stay*) hjemme.
10. *de ɛ vɛl nɔ́g en dájli vi:ˀn. ve di égə há:ˀ* (another) *glás;*	Det er vel nok en dejlig Vin. Vil De ikke have (*another*) Glas?

---

[1] *a* here means 'by'. You have had it before meaning 'of'.

11. *dέn? sgjórdə ka jε égə lí:?, ka di égə ví:sə maj* (another);	Den Skjorte kan jeg ikke lide, kan De ikke vise mig (*another*)?
12. *ka di égə fɔ́:?* (another) *sgrí:vmasgì:nə, dέn? dέ:?r lá:vər ed frǿgli sbetágəl.*	Kan De ikke faa (*another*) Skrivemaskine, den der laver et frygteligt Spektakel.
13. *mi:n mán? har fɔ́:əð* (another) *sεgrətέ:?r, sɔ nú há:?r han tré:? i de hé:lə.*	Min Mand har faaet (*another*) Sekretær, saa nu har han tre i det hele.
14. *jε sga brú:ə tó:? blaŋkέdər, sɔ ve di égə gí:? maj* (another).	Jeg skal bruge to Blanketter, saa vil De ikke give mig (*another*).
15. *jε sga da há:?* (another) *sdǿgə smǿrəbrǿ:?ð, fɔr jε εr mέgdi súl?dən.*	Jeg skal da have (*another*) Stykke Smørrebrød, for jeg er mægtig sulten.
16. *tré:? dá:ə έfdər jε bəsǿgdə ham, ble han kǿ:?rd pɔ:* (another) *hosbitá:?l.*	Tre Dage efter jeg besøgte ham, blev han kørt paa (*another*) Hospital.
17. *ves dέnə flý:v:nasgì:nə égə gɔ́:?r, εr dər sɔ́ égə* (another).	Hvis denne Flyvemaskine ikke gaar, er der saa ikke (*another*).
18. *ves du égə har lǿsd te ɔ ta: ú:?ð ɔ síglə, há:?r jε* (another) *idé:?.*	Hvis du ikke har Lyst til at tage ud at cykle, har jeg (*another*) Ide.

B. Change these sentences around so that you express the if-idea in the other way you learned about in this unit—by not using any word for "if" but putting the verb before the subject.

1. *ves jε égə έr dər, εr de fɔrdí:? jε εr ú:ðə te frógɔst.*	Hvis jeg ikke er der, er det fordi jeg er ude til Frokost.
2. *ves dεr sgu kɔ̀mə gέsdər, mɔ: di sí:ə a vi égə εr jέmə.*	Hvis der skulde komme Gæster, maa De sige, at vi ikke er hjemme.
3. *ves vέ:?ərð blìər gɔ́d, ka vi gɔ: iván?əð.*	Hvis Vejret bliver godt, kan vi gaa i Vandet.

4. *ves du sgu kɔ̀mə fɔr sé:ʔnd te tɔ́:ʔγəð, gɔ́:ʔr dɛr ed ánəð ɛn hálʔ tí:mə ɛ́fdər.*	Hvis du skulde komme for sent til Toget, gaar der et andet en halv Time efter.
5. *ves frógɔsdən sgu kɔ́sdə mé:ər ɛn tí:ʔ kró:nər, ka du lɔ́:nə a máj.*	Hvis Frokosten skulde koste mere end ti Kroner, kan du laane af mig.
6. *ves han kǿ:ər fɔr hórdi, mɔ: du sí:ə de té ham.*	Hvis han kører for hurtigt, maa du sige det til ham.
7. *ves vi fœ́rsd fɔr gɔ́d vɛ́:ʔr i mɔ́rən, ɛr de jo: fɔr sé:ʔnt;*	Hvis vi først faar godt Vejr i Morgen, er det jo for sent.
8. *ves de égə kɔ́sdər fɔr máəð, tró:ʔr jɛ han kǿ:bər də*	Hvis det ikke koster for meget, tror jeg, han køber det.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader asks for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Two Danish girls, Ingrid (éŋreð) and Marianne (marjánə) are talking together.*

éŋreð	*Ingrid*
har jɛ fɔrtálʔd də a mi:n sǿsdər falʔd né:ʔð a trábən ɔ brɛ́gəðə bé:ʔnəð;	Har jeg fortalt dig, at min Søster faldt ned ad Trappen og brækkede Benet?

marjánə	*Marianne*
náj? dé har jɛ égə hø:?rt.	Nej, det har jeg ikke hørt.
dé var da frøgli kéðəli.	Det var da frygtelig kedeligt.
éŋreð	*Ingrid*
já vi mɔ̀də réŋə èfder ambuláŋsən;	Ja, vi maatte ringe efter Ambulancen.
hun kɔm pɔ: sgá:ðəsdù:ən ɔ ble énlàgd ɔ bəhán?ləð mɛ de sámə.	Hun kom paa Skadestuen, og blev indlagt og behandlet med det samme.
marjánə	*Marianne*
vɔr lɛ́ŋə har hun légəð?	Hvor længe har hun ligget?
éŋreð	*Ingrid*
i ɔ́:də dá:ə.	I otte Dage.
jɛ sga hɛ́n pɔ: hosbitá:?ləð ɔ bəsø:?γə hénə i dá:?.	Jeg skal hen paa Hospitalet at besøge hende i Dag.
bəsø:?stì:?ðən ɛr fra éd te tó:?, sɔ jɛ mɔ: a sdɛ́ð nú.	Besøgstiden er fra 1-2, saa jeg maa af Sted nu.
farvɛ́l farvɛ́l.	Farvel Farvel.
marjánə	*Marianne*
farvɛ́l, ɔ húsg ɔ hílsə hénə máŋə gáŋə fra maj.	Farvel, og husk at hilse hende mange Gange fra mig.
2. *At the hospital Ingrid greets her sister Marie* (*marí:ə*).	
éŋreð	*Ingrid*
godá:? marí:ə.	Goddag Marie.
jɛ sgu hílsə daj fra marjánə, jɛ har lí:ə tá:?ld mɛ hénə.	Jeg skulde hilse dig fra Marianne, jeg har lige talt med hende.

vórdən gɔ́:ˀr de daj?

marí:ə

jó: tág, de gɔ́:ˀr sɔ̀mən régdi gɔ́t.

jɛ har bá:ər fɔ́:əð en kéðəli fɔrkø:ˀləlsə.

éŋreð

ka di égə sœ́rɣə fɔ́r a du égə blìər fɔrkø:ˀləð hɛ́:ˀr pɔ: hosbitá:ˀləð;

marí:ə

jó: mɛn de gœ́r jo: égə nɔ́:əð a jɛ ɛr léd fɔrkø:ˀləð, jɛ sga jo: légə hər alí:əvɛ̀lˀ.

tá:ˀ dɛ́nˀ sdó:ˀl dɛ́:ˀr ɔ sɛ́d daj né:ˀð.

éŋreð

vɔrnɔ́:ˀr kɔ̀mər du ɔ́b igɛ́n tró:ˀr du?

marí:ə

jɛ hɔ́:bər i nɛ́sdə ú:ə;

du vé:ˀ égə vɔr jɛ glɛ́:ðər maj té de.

jɛ kánˀ égə lí:ˀ ɔ légə i sɛ́ŋˀən.

éŋreð

nájˀ de ɛ́r hɛ́lˀər égə sɛ́rli mórsɔmˀt.

mɛn dú har jo: hafd máŋə bəsø:ˀɣ;

Hvordan gaar det dig?

Marie

Jo Tak, det gaar saamænd rigtig godt.

Jeg har bare faaet en kedelig Forkølelse.

Ingrid

Kan de ikke sørge for, at du ikke bliver forkølet her paa Hospitalet?

Marie

Jo, men det gør jo ikke noget, at jeg er lidt forkølet, jeg skal jo ligge her alligevel.

Tag den Stol der, og sæt dig ned.

Ingrid

Hvornaar kommer du op igen, tror du?

Marie

Jeg haaber i næste Uge.

Du ved ikke, hvor jeg glæder mig til det.

Jeg kan ikke lide at ligge i Sengen.

Ingrid

Nej, det er heller ikke særlig morsomt.

Men du har jo haft mange Besøg!

marí:ə

já dər har vɛ́:ərð nó:ən vɛ́:ʔr dá:ʔ.

ɔ sɔ́ kɑ jɛ jo snágə mɛ fru másən dɛr légər dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vrə.

hún kɔm énʔ i fré:ʔdas ɛ́fdərmedà:ʔs.

fru másən, mi:n sø̸sdər ve gɛrnə hílsə pɔ́: dəm.

éŋreð

godá:ʔ fru másən.

vá ɛr dɛr dɔɣ sgé:ʔd mɛ dɛ́m?

fru másən

jɛ sɔ́:ʔ en tó:ʔø̸:ər dɛr lɔ́:ʔ pɔ: gá:ðən, mɛn jɛ sɔ́:ʔ égə a dɛr ɔ́sə kɔ́mʔ en sbórvɔ̀ɣʔn.

de ɛ dɛ́:ʔrfɔ̀r jɛ légər hər nú.

éŋreð

dé var dɔɣ frø̸glit;

ɛr di blèəð rœ́nʔdgənfodografè:ʔərð.

fru másən

ju ɔ jɛ ɛr blèəð ónərsø̀gd a ménʔsd tré:ʔ lɛ́:ɣər, mɛn de ɛ héldivì:ʔs égə sɔ alvɔ́:ʔrlid sɔm di fœ́rsd tró:ðə.

éŋreð

gjò:ər de égə máəð ónʔt;

Marie

Ja, der har været nogen hver Dag.

Og saa kan jeg jo snakke med Fru Madsen, der ligger derovre.

Hun kom ind i Fredags Eftermiddags.

Fru Madsen, min Søster vil gerne hilse paa Dem.

Ingrid

Goddag Fru Madsen.

Hvad er der dog sket med Dem?

Fru Madsen

Jeg saa en Toøre, der laa paa Gaden, men jeg saa ikke, at der ogsaa kom en Sporvogn.

Det er derfor, jeg ligger her nu!

Ingrid

Det var dog frygteligt!

Er De blevet røntgenfotograferet?

Fru Madsen

Ja, og jeg er blevet undersøgt af mindst tre Læger, men det er heldigvis ikke saa alvorligt, som de først troede.

Ingrid

Gjorde det ikke meget ondt?

fru másən

jó: dé ka di tró:ʔ de gjó:ər.

jε kun égə rœ́:ər maj i flé:ər dá:ə.

éŋreð

vɔrdán εr lέ:γərnə?

εr di vέnliə imóð[1] *dəm;*

fru másən

já dé έr di.

dεr ər sέrli é:ʔn vi vέldi gɔ́d ka lí:ʔ.

hán kɔ̀mər hərénʔ vέ:ʔr mɔ́rən ɔ snágər mε dὲrəs sǿsdər ɔ máj ɔ tá:ʔr vɔ̀rəs púlʔs ɔ sbœ́rγər vɔrdán vi há:ʔr də;

ví ké:ðər ɔs sgam égə.

ɔ́ dέ:ʔr há:ʔr vi sý:əplàjʔərsgən.

sý:əplàjʔərsgən

já bəsǿ:ʔstì:ʔðən εr fɔrbí:ʔ.

jε mɔ: desvέrə bé:ʔ dəm ɔ́mʔ gɔ́:ʔ nú.

éŋreð

dé var jo: kéðəli, sɔ́ mɔ: jε sé:ʔ ɔ kɔ́mə a sdέð.

Fru Madsen

Jo, det kan De tro, det gjorde.

Jeg kunde ikke røre mig i flere Dage.

Ingrid

Hvordan er Lægerne?

Er de venlige imod Dem?

Fru Madsen

Ja, det er de.

Der er særlig en, vi vældig godt kan lide.

Han kommer herind hver Morgen og snakker med Deres Søster og mig, og tager vores Puls, og spørger, hvordan vi har det.

Vi keder os skam ikke!

Aah, der har vi Sygeplejersken.

Sygeplejersken

Ja, Besøgstiden er forbi.

Jeg maa desværre bede Dem om at gaa nu.

Ingrid

Det var jo kedeligt, saa maa jeg se at komme af Sted.

---

[1] *imó:ʔð* (imod) when used with *vέnli* (venlig), 'kind', means "to". You have had it before meaning "against".

trὲŋər du égə te en pú:ðə i røgən fœ́:ˀr jɛ gɔ́:ˀr marí:ə.	Trænger du ikke til en Pude i Ryggen, før jeg gaar Marie?
marí:ə	*Marie*
nájˀ tág, jɛ tró:ˀr jɛ ve légə led né:ˀð.	Nej Tak, jeg tror, jeg vil ligge lidt ned.
jɛ há:ˀr en frøgli hó:ðəpì:nə.	Jeg har en frygtelig Hovedpine.
éŋreð	*Ingrid*
régdi gó:ˀ bέðreŋ, jɛ ɛr vesd blé:əð hər álˀd fɔr lέŋə.	Rigtig god Bedring, jeg er vist blevet her alt for længe.
marí:ə	*Marie*
nájˀ de var máəð hýgəli du kɔ́mˀ.	Nej, det var meget hyggeligt, du kom.
kɔm sná:ˀrd igέn ɔ hílˀs dəm áləsàmˀən jέmə.	Kom snart igen og hils dem allesammen hjemme.
éŋreð	*Ingrid*
dé sga jɛ nɔ́k.	Det skal jeg nok.
farvέl fru másən.	Farvel Fru Madsen.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You and a nurse in a doctor's office

You say good morning to the nurse and tell her you'd like to see the doctor. She asks you what time you were supposed to be here and you tell her that you promised to come at ten-thirty. She asks your name, tells you that the doctor will see you in a few minutes and asks you to sit down. She asks whether it was raining when you came in. You tell her that it wasn't but that it was very dark and you think it will rain soon. You tell her that you have a sister who's a nurse. She asks where she is and you explain that she works in a big hospital in America.

2. You, the nurse and the doctor

When the patient who's been in with the doctor leaves, the nurse tells you to go in. You greet the doctor and he asks you what the matter is. You tell him that something is wrong with your hand. It hurts terribly when you move it. He asks how it happened and you tell him that you fell down the stairs at the office and you think maybe you've broken a bone (*ed bé:ʔn*). He says he'll examine it and see. When he finishes, he says that he thinks you'd better be X-rayed. He says that he has to see three other men before he can go to the hospital with you to have the X-rays taken. He tells you to go out and talk to the nurse and says he'll be ready in half an hour.

3. You, a friend, Niels, and Niels' wife.

You go to visit Niels, a friend of yours. When his wife lets you in, you ask if Niels is home. The wife tells you that he's home, but is in bed with a cold. You ask if it's serious, and she says no, that he's better now. She asks if you don't want to see him. You tell her that you'd like to, so she says to go right up to his room. After you get up the stairs, it's the second door on the left. You greet Niels and ask him how long he's been in bed. He says he's been there five days. You ask how he caught the cold. He says that he went to a soccer game last Sunday and it rained all the time and was very cold. You ask how long he'll be in bed. He says probably a couple of days more (*ed þar dá:ə tél*). He's much better but he still has a headache and is very tired. He's getting very bored, though, staying in bed. His wife comes in and asks him if there's anything he wants. He says he'd like another pillow in back of him. He also tells her that she'd better see to it that they have dinner early today because he's quite hungry. He'd like to have it right away. She says that that's impossible, but she'll hurry. She asks you to eat dinner with them, but you say that you think you'd better go. Niels thanks you for coming. You wish him a speedy recovery and he asks you to come again soon.

Finder List

a:ˀ/a (af) by

áləsàmˀən (allesammen) all together

alvɔ́:ˀrli (alvorlig) serious

ambuláŋsə, -n, -r (Ambulance, -n, -r) ambulance

be:ˀ, ba:ˀð, be:ˀt (bede, bad, bedt) ask
  bé:ˀ ɔ́mˀ (bede om) ask for

be:ˀn, -əð, — (Ben, -et, —) leg, bone

bɛ́ðreŋ, -ˀən (Bedring, -en) recovery, improvement
  gó:ˀ bɛ́ðreŋ. (God Bedring.) Hope you feel better.

bəhánˀlə, -ðə (behandle, -de) treat

bəsǿ:ˀγ, -əð, — (Besøg, -et, —) visit

bəsǿ:ˀstì:ˀð, -ən, bəsǿ:ˀstì:ðər (Besøgstid, -en, -er) visiting hours

blí:və/blí:ə, blí:ˀər/bli:ˀr/blíər, ble:ˀv/ble:ˀ/ble, blé:vəð/blé:əð/bléəð (blive, blev, blevet) stay

brɛ́gə, -ðə (brække, -de) break

dɛ́:ˀrfɔ̀r/dɛ́:ˀrfɔr (derfor) therefore, for that reason

énlɛ̀gə, énlà:ə, énlàgt (indlægge, indlagde, indlagt) admit (*to a hospital*)

éŋreð (Ingrid) Ingrid

fálə, falˀt, fáləð (falde, faldt, faldet) fall

fɔrkǿ:ˀləð: blì:ə fɔrkǿ:ˀləð (blive forkølet) catch cold. See above under *blí:və* for the different forms of this verb.

fɔrkǿ:ˀləlsə, -n, -r (Forkølelse, -n, -r) cold

frǿgli (frygtelig) terrible, awful

gœ́:ər (gœr, gjó:ər, gjórˀd) nɔ́:əð (gøre) (gør, gjorde, gjort) (noget) make any difference, matter

hέldivì:ˀs (heldigvis) fortunately

hó:ðəpì:nə, -n, -r (Hovedpine, -n, -r) headache

hosbitá:ˀl, -əð, -ər (Hospital, -et, -er) hospital

húsgə, -ðə (huske, -de) remember

imó:ˀð: vέnli imó:ˀð/imóð (venlig imod) kind to

ké:ðə, -ðə (kede, -de) bore

ké:ðə saj (kede sig) be bored

kéðəli (kedelig) annoying, boring

marí:ə (Marie) Marie

marjánə (Marianne) Marianne

másən (Madsen) (*last name*)

mε de sámə (med det samme) right away

mølˀər (Møller) (*last name*)

nέsdə (næste) next

nó:ən/no:n (nogen) anyone, someone

ónərsø̀:ˀγə, ónərsø̀gdə (undersøge, -te) examine

onˀt : gœ̀:ər (gœr, gjò:ər, gjord) ónˀt (gøre) (gør, gjorde, gjort) (ondt) hurt

pú:ðə, -n, -r (Pude, -n, -r) pillow

pulˀs, -ən (Puls, -en) pulse

régdi (rigtig) right

régdi gó:ˀ bέðreŋ. (Rigtig god Bedring.) Hope you feel better very soon.

røk, -ən, -ə (Ryg, -gen, -ge) back

rœ́:ər, rœ́:rdə (røre, -te) move

rœ́:ər saj (røre sig) move (yourself)

rœ́nˀdgənfodografè:ˀər, -ðə (røntgenfotografere, -de) X-ray, take X-rays of

sámə: mε de sámə (med det samme) right away

sdo:ˀl, -ən, sdó:lə (Stol, -en, -e) chair

sdú:ə, -n, -r (Stue, -n, -r) room

sεŋˀ, -ən, sέŋə (Seng, -en, -e) bed

sέrli (særlig) special, specially

səmέnˀ/sɔ́mən (saamænd) really

sgá:ðəsdù:ə, -n, -r (Skadestue, -n, -r) emergency ward

sgúlə/sgu (skulde) was *or* were supposed to

snágə, -ðə (snakke, -de) talk, chat

sý:əplàjˀərsgə, -n, -r (Sygeplejerske, -n, -r) nurse

sœ́rγə (-ðə) fɔr (sørge) (-de) (for) see to it, take care of

tel: en (ed) . . . tél (en) (et) . . . (til) another

en pú:ðə tél (en Pude til) another pillow

vέldi (vældig) very

UNIT 22

LAYING IN SUPPLIES

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Tom is at Inge Larsen's house. Inge is going shopping for food.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Tom		
Can't I go shopping with you, Inge?	*mɔ: jɛ́ gɔ: mɛ́ daj i bý:ˀən éŋə.*	Maa jeg gaa med dig i Byen, Inge?
carry	*bɛ́:ər*	bære
Then I can carry all your bundles.	*sɔ́ ka jɛ bɛ́:ər álə dí:nə págər;*	Saa kan jeg bære alle dine Pakker.
Inge		
That's awfully nice of you,	*dé ɛ vírgli pɛ́:ˀnd á də.*	Det er virkelig pænt af dig,
stores	*butígər*	Butikker
but I think you'll be terribly bored—I have to go to a lot of stores.	*mɛn jɛ tró:ˀr de ve ké:ðə daj frøgli, fɔr jɛ́ sga i máŋə butígər.*	men jeg tror, det vil kede dig frygteligt, for jeg skal i mange Butikker.
Tom		
That doesn't make any difference.	*nájˀ dé gœ́r ɛ́gə nɔ́:əð.*	Nej, det gør ikke noget.

learn *or* teach	*lɛ́:ər*	lære
by	*veð*	ved
I can learn a lot by going shopping with you.	*jɛ ka lɛ́:ər máəð ve ɔ gɔ: mɛ dáj i bý:ˀən.*	Jeg kan lære meget ved at gaa med dig i Byen.
besides	*desú:ðən*	desuden
Besides I have some things I want to buy myself.	*desú:ðən há:ˀr jɛ sɛ́lˀ nó:ən téŋˀ jɛ sga ha købt.*	Desuden har jeg selv nogle Ting, jeg skal have købt.
Where are you going?	*vɔ́:ˀr sga du hɛ́nˀ?*	Hvor skal du hen?

Inge

the grocer[1]	*órdəkrɛ̀mərən*	Urtekræmmeren
lot	*de:ˀl*	Del
provisions	*vá:ər*	Varer
First I'm going to the grocer's and order a whole lot of things. You see, he delivers.	*jɛ sga fœ́rsd te órdəkrɛ̀mərən ɔ bəsdélˀə en hé:ˀl del vá:ər. hán sɛ́nər nɛ́mli.*	Jeg skal først til Urtekræmmeren at bestille en hel Del Varer—han sender nemlig.
the man who sells vegetables	*grœ́ndhànˀlərən*	Grønthandleren
the dairy	*majərí:ˀəð*	Mejeriet
Then I'm going to the vegetable store and after that to the dairy.	*sɔ́ sga jɛ te grœ́ndhànˀlərən, ɔ bá:ˀɛ̀fdər sga jɛ i majərí:ˀəð;*	Saa skal jeg til Grønthandleren, og bagefter skal jeg i Mejeriet.

---

[1] In the cities in Denmark you don't get meat, vegetables, canned goods, milk, butter, eggs, flour, etc. all in one store. Instead, different stores specialize in different things. An *órdəkrɛ̀mər* sells staples—canned goods, flour, sugar, coffee, etc.—, a *grœ́ndhànˀlər* sells fresh fruit and vegetables, a *majərí:ˀ* sells dairy products—milk, butter, eggs.

Tom		
sound(s)	*lý:ˀðər*	lyder
not at all	*sléd égə*	slet ikke
bad	*ga:ˀlt*	galt
That doesn't sound at all bad.	*dé lý:ˀðər da sléd égə sɔ gá:ˀlt.*	Det lyder da slet ikke saa galt.
Inge		
You just wait!	*já vénˀd du nu bá:ər.*	Ja, vent du nu bare!

In the grocery store.

Inge		
Good morning, Mr. Christensen.	*go: mɔ́rən hɛr krésdənsən.*	God Morgen, Hr. Christensen.
I'd like to order some things.	*jɛ ve gɛ́rnə bəsdélˀə no:n vá:ər.*	Jeg vil gerne bestille nogle Varer.
Can you send them over this afternoon?	*ka di sɛ̀nə dəm ɔ́vˀər i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ;*	Kan De sende dem over i Eftermiddag?
Christensen		
Sure I can.	*ja dé ká jɛ gɔ́t.*	Ja, det kan jeg godt.
What do you want?	*vá sga de vɛ́:ər?*	Hvad skal det være?
Inge		
canned goods	*konsɛ́rvəs*	Konserves
cans	*dɔ́:sər*	Daaser
beans	*bœ́nər*	Bønner
I want some canned goods—two cans of beans and three cans of peas.	*jɛ ve gɛ́rnə há:ˀ nɔ̀:əð konsɛ́rvəs, tó:ˀ dɔ̀:sər bœ́nər ɔ tré:ˀ dɔ̀:sər ɛ́rdər.*	Jeg vil gerne have noget Konserves—to Daaser Bønner og tre Daaser Ærter.

kilograms[1] quarter	*kílo* *kvart*	Kilo kvart
And, let me see, two kilograms of coffee and a quarter of a kilogram of tea.	*ɔ la mə sé:ʔ, éd kìlo káfə ɔ ed kvárd kìlo té:ʔ.*	Og, lad mig se, et Kilo Kaffe og et kvart Kilo Te.
Have you got that?	*há:ʔr di dé;*	Har De det?
Christensen		
Yes.	*já ták.*	Ja Tak.
Inge		
And five kilograms of sugar.	*ɔ fɛ́mʔ kìlo sógər;*	Og fem Kilo Sukker.
Oh, yes—I'll have a couple of cans of soup, too.	*ɔ́: já jɛ sga ɔ́sə há:ʔ ed par dɔ̀:sər sóbə.*	Aah ja, jeg skal ogsaa have et Par Daaser Suppe.
No, let me have three.	*nájʔ la mə fɔ́:ʔ tré:ʔ.*	Nej, lad mig faa tre.
Christensen		
Is there anything else, Miss Larsen?	*var dər ándrə tɛ́ŋʔ frø̀gən lársən.*	Var der andre Ting, Frøken Larsen?
Inge		
No thanks, I think that's all.	*nɛ́: tág, sɔ́ tró:ʔr jɛ égə dɛr ər mé:ər.*	Næh Tak, saa tror jeg ikke, der er mere.
put You can put it all on the bill.	*sɛ́də* *di ka sɛ́d de hé:lə pɔ: rájneŋʔən.*	sætte De kan sætte det hele paa Regningen.

---

[1] One kilogram equals 2.2 lbs.

road	*vajʔ*	Vej
You know—Dr. Larsen, 13 Fjumsevej.	*di vé:ʔ, dɔ̀gdər lársən, fjómsəvàjʔ trɛ́dən.*	De ved—Dr. Larsen, Fjumsevej 13.
farther	*ví:ðərə*	videre
next door	*ve sí:ðən á:ʔ*	ved Siden af
Come on, let's go—the dairy's right next door.	*sɔ́ mɔ: vi ví:ðərə, majərí:ʔəð ɛr lí:ə hɛ́:ʔr ve sí:ðən á:ʔ.*	Saa maa vi videre, Mejeriet er lige her ved Siden af.

At the dairy.

Girl		
Can I help you?	*vá sga de vɛ́:ər i dá:ʔ?*	Hvad skal det være i Dag?
Inge		
eggs	*ɛ:ʔk*	Æg
I'd like a kilogram of butter and I guess I'd better get eight eggs.[1]	*jɛ ve gɛ́rnə há:ʔ ed kìlo smœ́r, ɔ sɔ́ mɔ: jɛ vɛl hɛ́lərə fɔ: ɔ́:də ɛ́:ʔk.*	Jeg vil gerne have et Kilo Smør, og saa maa jeg vel hellere faa otte Æg.
Yes, the large ones, please.	*já tág á di sdó:ər.*	Ja Tak, af de store.
milk	*mɛlʔk*	Mælk
deciliters[2]	*dé:silìdər*	Deciliter
And I want a liter of milk and two deciliters of cream.	*jɛ sga ɔ́sə há:ʔ en lìdər mɛ́lʔg ɔ tó:ʔ dé:silìdər flǿ:ðə.*	Jeg skal ogsaa have en Liter Mælk og to Deciliter Fløde.

---

[1] The unit by which eggs are sold in Denmark is not the dozen, but the score which is twenty. The Danish word for score is *sne:ʔs* (Snes). If you want less than twenty eggs, you just ask for the particular number you want.

[2] A deciliter equals one tenth of a liter. A liter equals 1.06 quarts.

Girl		
Anything else?	*var dər ɛ́lˀərs nɔ́:əð;*	Var der ellers noget?
Inge		
No, I think that'll be all.	*nɛ́: tág, jɛ tró:ˀr de blíər de hé:lə.*	Næh Tak, jeg tror, det bliver det hele.
	Outside the store.	
Tom		
heavy	*toŋˀt*	tungt
That must be heavy—I'll carry it for you.	*dé ɛ vesd tóŋˀd, nú sga jɛ bɛ́:ər de fɔ̃r daj.*	Det er vist tungt, nu skal jeg bære det for dig.
Inge		
careful	*fɔrsígdi*	forsigtig
Thanks a lot, but be careful of the eggs.	*tú:ˀsən tág, mɛn vɛ:r nu fɔrsígdi m ɛ ɛ́:ˀgənə.*	Tusind Tak, men vær nu forsigtig med Æggene.
Tom		
Sure	*já dé sga jɛ nɔ́k.*	Ja, det skal jeg nok.
Where are we going now?	*vɔ́:ˀr sga vi hɛ́nˀ nú?*	Hvor skal vi hen nu?
Inge		
Over to the vegetable store.	*ví sga ɔ́vˀər te grœ́ndhànˀlərən.*	Vi skal over til Grønthandleren.
Tom		
sick	*sy:ˀ*	syg
Say, Inge, Mr. Hansen's wife is sick in bed—she has a bad cold.	*sí:ˀ maj lí:ə en téŋˀ éŋə, tø̀mərmèsdər hánˀsəns kó:nə ɛr sý:ˀ ɔ légər i sɛ́ŋˀən, hun ɛ́r sɔ fɔrkǿ:ˀləð;*	Sig mig lige en Ting, Inge, Tømrermester Hansens Kone er syg og ligger i Sengen, hun er saa forkølet.

medicine	*medəsí:ʔn*	Medicin
I promised to get some medicine for her—where can I get it?	*jɛ́ ar lɔ́:vəð ɔ kø:bə nɔ̀:əð medəsí:ʔn te hénə. vɔ́:ʔr ka jɛ fɔ́:ʔ dé?*	Jeg har lovet at købe noget Medicin til hende, hvor kan jeg faa det?
the prescription	*resɛ́bdən*	Recepten
I've got the prescription here.	*jɛ há:ʔr resɛ́bdən hɛ́:ʔr.*	Jeg har Recepten her.
Inge		
the pharmacy (*sells only medicine*)	*aboté:ʔgəð*	Apoteket
You can get it at the pharmacy.	*dé ka du fɔ́:ʔ pɔ: aboté:ʔgəð.*	Det kan du faa paa Apoteket.
while	*mɛnʔs*	mens
Can't you go over there while I'm getting the vegetables?	*ka du ég gɔ: dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀vʔər mɛnʔs jɛ́ ɛr hos grœ́ndhànʔlərən.*	Kan du ikke gaa derover, mens jeg er hos Grønthandleren?
Then we can meet here in ten minutes.	*sɔ́ ka vi mø:ðəs hɛ́:ʔr ɔm tí:ʔ minúdər.*	Saa kan vi mødes her om ti Minutter.

Inge goes to buy the vegetables.

Inge		
Good morning, Mr. Olsen.	*go: mɔ́rən hɛr ó:ʔlsən.*	God Morgen, Hr. Olsen.
Olsen		
Good morning, young lady.	*go: mɔ́rən lílə frø:ʔgən.*	God Morgen, lille Frøken.
What can I do for you today?	*vá sga di há:ʔ i dá:ʔ?*	Hvad skal De have i Dag?
Inge		
head of lettuce	*salá:ʔdhò:ðə*	Salathoved
carrots	*gú:lərøðʔər*	Gulerødder

I'd like a head of lettuce, and some carrots, and five kilograms of potatoes.	*jɛ ve gérnə há:ʔ ed salá:ʔdhò:ðə ɔ no:n gú:lərø̆ðʔər, ɔ fémʔ kílo kartɔ́flər.*	Jeg vil gerne have et Salathoved og nogle Gulerødder og fem Kilo Kartofler.
Olsen		
fruit	*frogt*	Frugt
Any fruit?	*éŋən frógt;*	Ingen Frugt?
Inge		
oranges	*abəlsí:ʔnər*	Appelsiner
Yes, let me have some oranges—the ones that are six for a crown.	*jó: la mə fɔ́:ʔ no:n abəlsí:ʔnər a dém te ségs fɔr en kró:nə.*	Jo, lad mig faa nogle Appelsiner af dem til seks for en Krone.
Then I guess that's all.	*sɔ́ ɛr dər vésd hélʔər égə mé:ər.*	Saa er der vist heller ikke mere.

Inge pays and goes out to meet Tom.

Tom		
I hope you haven't forgotten anything.	*nú hɔ́:bər jɛ égə du ar glémʔd nɔ́:əð.*	Nu haaber jeg ikke, du har glemt noget.
the butcher	*slágdərən*	Slagteren
Weren't you supposed to go to the butcher's?	*sgul du ég te slágdərən;*	Skulde du ikke til Slagteren?
Inge		
No, I don't have to.	*né: dé bəhǿ:ʔvəs égə.*	Næh, det behøves ikke.

be content with the baker unless	*nɔ́jˀəs mɛ* *bá:ɣərən* *mɛ méndrə*	nøjes med Bageren med mindre
We'll just stop at the baker's on the way home, unless you have something else to do.	*vi ka nɔ́jˀəs mɛ ɔ gɔ: te bá:ɣərən pɔ: vájˀən jɛ́mˀ, mɛ méndrə dú há:ˀr nɔ́:əð dú sga ha gjórˀt.*	Vi kan nøjes med at gaa til Bageren paa Vejen hjem, med mindre du har noget, du skal have gjort.
Tom		
through *or* finished	*fɛ́rdi*	færdig
No, I'm all through.	*nɛ́: jɛ́ ɛr hé:ˀld fɛ́rdi.*	Næh, jeg er helt færdig.
	They go home.	
Mrs. Larsen		
everything	*álˀtèŋˀ*	alting
Well, did you get everything?	*nɔ́ har i nú fɔ́:əð álˀtèŋˀ;*	Naa, har I nu faaet alting?
Inge		
I hope so.	*já dé hɔ́:bər jɛ.*	Ja, det haaber jeg.
cakes Danish pastry	*ká:ɣər* *ví:ˀnərbrø̀:ˀð*	Kager Wienerbrød
The baker didn't have any more cakes, so I got some Danish pastry.	*bá:ɣərən hà:ðə desvɛ́rə égə flé:ˀr*[1] *ká:ɣər, sɔ jɛ kø̀bdə nɔ̀:əð ví:ˀnərbrø̀:ˀð.*	Bageren havde desværre ikke flere Kager, saa jeg købte noget Wienerbrød.
the rest	*rɛ́sdən*	Resten
The grocer promised to send the rest of the things over this afternoon.	*mɛn órdəkrɛ̀mərən lɔ́:vəðə ɔ sɛ̀nə rɛ́sdən a vá:ərnə ɔ̀wˀər i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ.*	Men Urtekræmmeren lovede at sende Resten af Varerne over i Eftermiddag.

---

[1] Another pronunciation of *flé:ər*, 'more'.

Mrs. Larsen		
cheese	*ost*[1]	Ost
What kind of cheese did you get?	*vá slágs ósd har i fɔ́:əð?*	Hvad Slags Ost har I faaet?
Inge		
Cheese, did you say cheese?	*óst, sà:ə du óst;*	Ost, sagde du Ost?
I knew there was something I'd forgotten.	*jɛ vésdə dɛr var nɔ́:əð jɛ há:ðə glɛ́mʔt.*	Jeg vidste, der var noget, jeg havde glemt.
run	*lǿ:bə*	løbe
I'll run right over and get it.	*nú sga jɛ lǿ:bə ɔ̀vʔər ɛ́fdər de mɛ de sámə.*	Nu skal jeg løbe over efter det med det samme.

2. Pronunciation Drill

1. In Unit 9 we told you that in Danish instead of having two sets of words, one ending in either *p*, *t*, or *k*, and the other ending in either *b*, *d*, or *g*, you have just one set of words; these words end in *p*, *t*, or *k* when they are said alone or at the end of a sentence, and in *b*, *d*, or *g* when they are said in the middle of a sentence. We will now call your attention to two additional facts about these Danish sounds.

a. You know that the main difference between Danish *p* and *b*, *t* and *d*, *k* and *g*, is that *p*, *t* and *k* are followed by strong puffs of breath, while *b*, *d* and *g* are not. Now at the end of a word, when that word is in the middle of a sentence, a Dane makes no puff of breath at all; in other words, what he says is clearly *b*, *d*, or *g*. But at the end of a word, when that word is said alone or at the end of a sentence, a Dane may make the puff of breath quite strong, or he may make it very weak, or he may make none at all. In this book we have regularly written *p*, *t*, and *k* in such cases, since the puff of breath is generally there, but you will notice that the strength of the puff varies and it sometimes disappears so completely that the speaker is really saying *b*, *d*, or *g*.

---

[1] You also buy cheese at a special store called *en ósdəbutìk* or *en osdəfɔrɛ̀dneŋ*.

b. You learned in the *Hints on Spelling* for Unit 15 that the [*p*], [*t*] and [*k*] (or [*b*], [*d*] and [*g*]) sounds at the end of a word are generally spelled with the letters *p*, *t* and *k*, but that in a small number of words they are spelled with *b*, *d* and *g*. This difference in spelling is not reflected in the pronunciation in ordinary speech. The statements made in the first paragraph above hold true whichever spelling a word has. You will find, however, that highly educated Danes, when they are thinking of the spelling, will sometimes leave off the puff of breath if the word is spelled with *b*, *d* or *g* and will make it very clear if the word is spelled with a *p*, *t* or *k*.

Imitate your Guide as he says the following words and either make the puff of breath or leave it off as he does.

kamˀp	Kamp	game
sígəllø̀:ˀp	Cykelløb	bicycle race
hɔ:ˀp[1]	Haab	hope
rɔ:ˀp[1]	Raab	shout, cry
bilɛ́t	Billet	ticket
fóðbɔ̀lˀt	Fodbold	soccer
gift	gift	married
re:ˀnt	rent	clean
gɛst	Gæst	guest
hɔjˀt	højt	loud
kófərt	Kuffert	suitcase
menˀst	mindst	least
rat	Rat	wheel
ségərt	sikkert	surely
sna:ˀrt	snart	soon
soldá:ˀt	Soldat	soldier
sbɔrt	Sport	sport
trɛt	træt	tired
bɛnsí:ˀntàŋˀk	Benzintank	gas station
svɛnˀsk	svensk	Swedish
vɛk	væk	away
ɛ:ˀk	Æg	egg
ɔ́jəblèk	Øjeblik	moment

c. You will hear many people in Copenhagen pronounce the [*t*]-sound at the beginning of a word or syllable with such a strong puff of breath after it that it really comes to be [*ts*]. They will say, for instance, *tsívoli* rather than *tívoli*, *tse:ˀ* rather than *te:ˀ*, 'tea', *tso:ˀ* rather than *to:ˀ*, 'two', etc.

---

[1] See *Word Study*, p. 617.

d. You will also find that in certain words some Danish speakers pronounce a [*w*]-sound instead of a [*b*]-sound when the [*b*] comes either at the end of a word or between two vowels. The only two words you've had so far in which this is done are *lǿ:bə* and *kǿ:bə*. Listen as your Guide says the following two sentences and notice whether he says *kǿ:wə* and *lǿ:wə* or *kǿ:bə* and *lǿ:bə*.

jɛ ar lɔ́:vəð ɔ kǿ:bə nɔ́:əð medəsí:ˀn te hénə.	Jeg har lovet at købe noget Medicin til hende.	I promised to get some medicine for her.
nú sga jɛ lǿ:bə ɔ́vˀər éfdər de mɛ de sámə.	Nu skal jeg løbe over efter det med det samme.	I'll run right over and get it.

3. Hints on Spelling

1. You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following words from Units 1-21. They have not been mentioned before, since they don't fit exactly into any of the groups we have discussed.

det	*de*	it, that, this
de	*di*	they, those
De	*di*	you
at	*at/a/ɔ*	that, to
af	*a:ˀ/a*	of
meget	*máəð*	much, very
nogle	*nó:ən/no:n*	some, any
nogen	*nó:ən/no:n*	someone, anyone
sagde	*sá:ə*	said
lagde	*lá:ə*	laid, put
havde	*há:ðə*	had

give	*gi:ˀ*	give
have	*ha:ˀ/ha*	have
Hvad behager?	*va bəhá:ˀr;*	What did you say?
elleve	*ɛ́lvə*	eleven
seksten	*sájsdən*	sixteen
tredive	*trɛ́ðvə*	thirty
fyrre	*fœ́rə*	forty
fyrretyve	*fœ́rəlỳ:və*	forty
tusind	*tú:ˀsən*	thousand
Hoved	*hó:ðə*	head
Hovedbanegaarden	*hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn*	Hovedbanegaarden
Tømrermester	*tǿmərmɛ̀sdər/tǿmrərmɛ̀sdər*	carpenter
Tømrermænd	*tǿmərmɛ̀nˀ*	hangover
selvfølgelig	*sɛfø̀ləli*	of course
Vindue	*véndu*	window
Grønsager	*grœ́nsà:γər*	vegetables
Vejr	*vɛ:ˀr*	weather
S-Tog	*ɛ́stɔ̀:ˀγ*	S-train
Langelinie	*laŋəlì:njə*	Langelinie
Christian *or* Kristian	*kréstjan*	Christian (*first name*)
Niels	*nels*	Niels
aah	*ɔ:/ɔ*	oh
næh	*nɛ:*	oh, well, no
Værsaagod	*vɛ́rs gó:ˀ*	here you are

You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following new words:

Recept	*resέbt*	prescription
Medicin	*medəsí:ʔn*	medicine
Decimeter	*dé:simè:ʔdər*	decimeter
Deciliter	*dé:silìdər*	deciliter
Centimeter	*sέntimè:ʔdər*	centimeter
Æg	*ε:ʔk*	egg
Pægl[1]	*pε:ʔl*	*unit of liquid measure*
Salathoved	*salá:ʔdhò:ðə*	head of lettuce
stege, stegte, stegt[2]	*sdájə, sdégdə/sdέgdə, sdegt/sdεgt*	fry, roast
uinteressant[3]	*uentrəsánʔt*	uninteresting
uheldig[3]	*uhέlʔdi*	unfortunate
Wienerbrød	*ví:ʔnərbrø̀:ʔð*	Danish pastry
Christensen	*krésdənsən*	Christensen (*last name*)

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. More about *sgalʔ* and *sgúlə*

jε **sgu** *hílsə daj máŋə gáŋə frá hènə.*	Jeg skulde hilse dig mange Gange fra hende.	I was supposed to give you her best.

---

[1] See *Word Study*, p. 622.
[2] Notice that the spelling of these verb forms is regular, but the pronunciation is not.
[3] See *Word Study*, pp. 618, 619.

Notice that in this sentence *sgúlə* is used as the equivalent of English "was supposed to". Since you know that *sgúlə* is the past form of *sgalʔ*, you can see that *sgalʔ*, among other things, also corresponds to English "am (is, are) supposed to". Here are some examples:

dɛr sga vὲːər en dœ́ːʔr líːə néːðə a trábən ɔ te hɔ́jrə.	Der skal være en Dør lige nede ad Trappen og til højre.	There's supposed to be a door right down the stairs to the right.
jɛ hǿːər a ɛ́ŋlànʔ sga ha fɔránʔdrəð saj máəð ɛ́fdər kríːʔən.	Jeg hører, at England skal have forandret sig meget efter Krigen.	I hear that England's supposed to have changed a lot during the war
han sga vὲːər en máəð ɛ́rli mánʔ.	Han skal være en meget ærlig Mand.	He's supposed to be a very honest man.
jɛ sga te lɛ́ːɣən i mɔ́rən.	Jeg skal til Lægen i Morgen.	I'm supposed to go to the doctor tomorrow. *or* I have to go to the doctor tomorrow.

You know, of course, that in some cases English "I have to" and "I'm supposed to" mean just about the same thing. Notice, for instance, that the English equivalent of the last sentence above can be either "I have to go to the doctor tomorrow" or "I'm supposed to go to the doctor tomorrow".

You have had *sgalʔ* and *sgúlə* used in a number of different ways in addition to the one discussed above. We'll summarize them for you here.

1. *sgalʔ* = "am, is, are going to"; *sgúlə* = "was, were going to"

vá sga vi ha te frógɔsd i dáːʔ?	Hvad skal vi have til Frokost i Dag?	What're we going to have for lunch today?
mɛn dú sgu ha diːn rájsətjὲg hɛ́ːvəð, égə tɔ́mʔ;	Men du skulde have din Rejsecheck hævet, ikke Tom?	You were going to have your traveler's check cashed, weren't you, Tom?

2. *sgalʔ* = "will" or "shall"; *sgúlə* = "should"

sɔ́ sga vi húsgə ɔ ta no:n sigərɛ́dər mɛ́ té daj nɛ́sdə gaŋʔ vi kɔ́mʔər.	Saa skal vi huske at tage nogle Cigaretter med til dig, næste Gang vi kommer.	We'll remember to bring you some cigarettes the next time we come.
sgu jɛ égə vɛ́:ər hər, ka di jo: gí: bəsgé:ʔð te mi:n sɛgrətɛ́:ʔr;	Skulde jeg ikke være her, kan De jo give Besked til min Sekretær.	If I shouldn't be here, you can leave a message with my secretary.

3. *sgalʔ* = "have to", "am, is, are supposed to"

sga di gɔ́:ʔ sɔ́ tíðli;	Skal De gaa saa tidligt?	Do you have to leave so early?
ɔ sɔ́ sga jɛ dé:lə de mɛ ed par ándrə;	Og saa skal jeg dele det med et Par andre.	And then I have to share it with a couple of other people.

4. *sgúlə* = "should" or "ought to"

syns di égə vi sgu vɛ́ndə léd enú;	Synes De ikke, vi skulde vente lidt endnu?	Don't you think we ought to wait a little longer?
vɔ́rfɔr sgu hán kǿ:ər?	Hvorfor skulde han køre?	Why should he drive?

2. More about *mɔ:ʔ* and *mɔ́də*

vi var égə hé:ʔld ségrə pɔ́:ʔ a man **mɔ́də** *rý:ə hɛ́:ʔr.*	Vi var ikke helt sikre paa, at man maatte ryge her.	We weren't quite sure that you could ('might') smoke here.

Notice that *mɔ́də* here really corresponds to English "might" and is used as the past form of *mɔ:ʔ* meaning "may". "You may smoke here", for instance, would be in Danish *man mɔ: gɛ́rnə rý:ə hɛ́:ʔr.*

We mentioned in Unit 8 that *mɔ:ʔ* and *mɔ́də* are never used as the equivalents of "may" and "might" when they mean "it is possible that". Look at the following sentences and you will see what the Danish equivalents of this sort of "may" and "might" are:

de ka gɔ́d vɛ́:ər jɛ tar mɛ daj, mɛn jɛ ɛr égə hé:ʔld ségər pɔ́: de.	Det kan godt være, jeg tager med dig, men jeg er ikke helt sikker paa det.	I may go with you, but I'm not quite sure.
de ka vɛ́:ər han kɔ́mʔər i dá:ʔ, mɛn de ɛ ɔ́sə mú:li han égə kɔ́mʔər fœ́:ʔr i mɔ́rən;	Det kan være, han kommer i Dag, men det er ogsaa muligt, han ikke kommer før i Morgen.	He may come today, but he may not come until tomorrow.
de ka gɔ́d vɛ́:ər hun kɔ́mʔər, mɛn jɛ tró:ʔr de égə	Det kan godt være, hun kommer, men jeg tror det ikke.	She might come, but I don't think so.

3. Nouns and verbs that are related

A

já de **rájnəðə** *da jɛ kɔ́mʔ, sɔ jɛ mɔ̀də tá en tágsa hɛrhɛ́nʔ.*	Ja, det regnede, da jeg kom, saa jeg maatte tage en Taxa herhen.	Yes, it was raining when I came over here, so I had to take a taxi.
ɔ sɔm rɛ́:ʔəl har vi mé:ər **rájʔn;**	Og som Regel har vi mere Regn.	And as a rule we have more rain.

Notice that in the first sentence above you have the noun *rajʔn* and that in the second sentence you have the verb *rájnə*. In Danish there are a number of other pairs of nouns and verbs like this. The two have closely related meanings and the verbs are like the nouns except that they have an added *ə* at the end and they generally don't have the catch, even when the nouns do.

In addition to *rajʔn* and *rájnə*, you've already had the noun *bəsǿ:ʔɣ* (Besøg) and the verb *bəsǿ:ʔɣə* (besøge), 'visit', the noun *barbé:ʔr* (Barber), 'barber', and the verb *barbé:ʔər* (barbere), 'shave', the noun *lǿ:ʔp* (Løb), 'race', and the verb *lǿ:bə* (løbe), 'run'.

In the following list you already know the verbs.

Verbs	*Nouns*
dé:lə (dele) share	**de:ˀl, -ən, dé:lə** (Del, -en, -e) part

de:ʔl also means 'lot', as you learned in the *Basic Sentences* of this unit.

brú:ə (bruge) use	**bru:ˀ, -ən, —** (Brug, -en, —) use
hɔ́:bə (haabe) hope	**hɔ:ˀp, -əð, —** (Haab, -et, —) hope
dánsə (danse) dance	**danˀs, -ən, dánsə** (Dans, -en, -e) dance
sbélə (spille) play	**sbel, sbélˀəð, —** (Spil, -let, —) game
rɔ́:bə (raabe) shout, cry	**rɔ:ˀp, -əð, —** (Raab, -et, —) shout, cry
jɛ́lbə (hjælpe) help	**jɛlˀp, -ən** (Hjælp, -en) help
smá:γə (smage) taste	**sma:ˀγ, -ən** (Smag, -en) taste
fálə (falde) fall	**falˀ, -əð, —** (Fald, -et, —) fall

Notice that all of the nouns except *sbel* have the catch, although the verbs don't.

In the following list you already know the nouns:

Nouns	*Verbs*
fesk (Fisk) fish	**fésgə, -ðə** (fiske, -de) fish
sgɔ:ʔl (Skaal) *drinking toast*	**sgɔ́:lə, -ðə** (skaale, -de) drink a toast
smœr (Smør) butter	**smœ́:ər, smórdə, smorˀt** (smøre, smurte, smurt) butter, oil, grease
sdajʔ (Steg) roast	**sdájə, sdɛ́gdə** or **sdégdə, sdɛgt** or **sdegt** (stege, -te) roast *or* fry
vanʔ (Vand) water	**vánə, -ðə** (vande, -de) water
so:ʔl (Sol) sun	**só:lə (-ðə) saj** (sole) (-de) (sig) sunbathe

B

nɛ́: dé ɛ hɛ́ldivì:ˀs bá:ər en **alménˀli** *fɔrkǿ:ˀləlsə.*	Næh, det er heldigvis bare en almindelig Forkølelse.	No, luckily it's just an ordinary cold.
hán var **úalménˀli** *fléŋˀk.*	Han var ualmindelig flink.	He was exceptionally ('uncommonly') nice.

Look at the words *alménˀli* and *ualménˀli* in these two sentences. As you know, *alménˀli* means "ordinary" or "common", while *ualménˀli* means just the opposite, "uncommon" or "exceptional".

You know that in English there are certain adjectives to which you can add at the beginning "un-" or sometimes "in-" or "im-" to give them the opposite meaning; for example, "common", "uncommon", "true", "untrue", "possible", "impossible", etc. Danish also has such adjectives, like *alménˀli* above, to which you add, as you see, *u-* in order to give them the opposite meaning. Here are those which you have already had:

gift (gift) married	**ugíft** (ugift) unmarried
ségər (sikker) sure	**uségər** (usikker) unsure
vírgli (virkelig) real	**uvírgli** (uvirkelig) unreal
vest (vist) probable, certain	**uvést** (uvist) uncertain
fi:ˀn (fin) fine, nice	**ufí:ˀn** (ufin) not nice (*used of behavior or thinking*)
bəsdɛ́mˀt (bestemt) certain	**ubəsdɛ́mˀt** (ubestemt) uncertain
brogt (brugt) used (participle of *brú:ə*, 'use')	**ubrógt** (ubrugt) unused
entrəsánˀt (interessant) interesting	**uentrəsánˀt** (uinteressant) uninteresting
sanˀ (sand) true	**usánˀ** (usand) untrue
re:ˀn (ren) clean	**uré:ˀn** (uren) unclean, impure
hýgəli (hyggelig) pleasant	**uhýgəli** (uhyggelig) unpleasant

fɔrsígdi (forsigtig) careful	**ufɔrsígdi** (uforsigtig) careless
hɛ́ldi (heldig) lucky	**uhɛ́lʔdi** (uheldig) unlucky
ró:li (rolig) calm	**uró:ʔli** (urolig) restless, worried
vɛ́nli (venlig) kind	**uvɛ́nʔli** (uvenlig) unkind
mú:li (mulig) possible	**umú:ʔli** (umulig) impossible

Notice that in the last four examples a catch is added along with the *u-*.

You will find that, although the stress is not ordinarily on the *u-*, it is often put there in order to emphasize the word in question. Thus you will hear both *ualménʔli* and *úalménʔli*.

4. Danish equivalents of "the grocer's", "the barber's", etc.

jɛ sga fœ́rsd te **órdəkrɛ̀mərən** *ɔ bəsdélʔə en hé:ʔl del vá:ər.*	Jeg skal først til Urtekræmmeren at bestille en hel Del Varer.	First I'm going to the grocer's and order a whole lot of things.
sgul di ég te **slágdərən;**	Skulde De ikke til Slagteren?	Weren't you supposed to go to the butcher's?
vi ka nɔ́jʔəs mɛ ɔ gɔ: te **bá:ɣərən** *pɔ: vájʔən jɛ́mʔ.*	Vi kan nøjes med at gaa til Bageren paa Vejen hjem.	We'll just stop at the baker's on the way home.
jɛ tró:ʔr jɛ mɔ: te **barbé:ʔərn** *fɔr ɔ blì:ə klébəð ɔ barbé:ʔərð.*	Jeg tror jeg maa til Barberen for at blive klippet og barberet.	I think I'll have to go to the barber's and get a haircut and a shave.
sɔ́ sga jɛ ɔ́vʔər te **grœ́ndhànʔlərən.**	Saa skal jeg over til Grønthandleren.	Then I'm going over to the vegetable store.

In English we say "the grocer's", "the butcher's", "the barber's", etc. when we are referring to the stores run by those people (or, of course, "grocery", "butcher shop", "bakery", etc.). But notice that in Danish you use *órdəkrɛ̀mərən*, 'the grocer', *slágdərən*, 'the butcher', *bá:ɣərən*, 'the baker', etc. when you're really, at least from the English point of view, referring to the stores as much as to the people themselves.

5. Use of the past verb form instead of the present

Look at the word in heavy type in this bit of conversation.

ves dánsgərnə vénˀər kámˀbən i dá:ˀ, gí:ˀr jɛ en gó:ˀ méda.	Hvis Danskerne vinder Kampen i Dag, giver jeg en god Middag.	If the Danes win the game today, I'll treat you to a good dinner.
gær du dé;	Gør du det?	You will?
dé **var** *da dájlit;*	Det var da dejligt.	That's swell.

Notice that in the last sentence you use the past form *var*, although what you're talking about didn't happen in the past, and although in English we use a present verb form "is". You will find that this happens occasionally in Danish, so don't be surprised when you hear it.

Now look at the following sentence.

var *dər ándrə téŋˀ frø̀gən lársən.*	Var der andre Ting, Frøken Larsen?	Is there anything else, Miss Larsen? *or* Was there anything else, Miss Larsen?

As you see, you have the past form, *var*, in the Danish sentence. Notice that in the English equivalents, although we're not referring to something that has already taken place, we can use either "is" or "was" with no real difference in meaning. So you see that both Danish and English sometimes use the past verb form to refer to something that hasn't already happened, but Danish does it a little more frequently than English does.

6. The metric system of weights and measures

Denmark uses, to a great extent, the metric system of weights and measures instead of a system like ours. You have had many of the terms already, but we'll collect them here for your convenience.

AIDS TO LISTENING	DANISH SPELLING	ABBREV.	APPROXIMATE EQUIVALENT
	Weight		
kílo, kílo:ʔəð, — or *kílogràmʔ, -əð, —*	Kilo, -et, — Kilogram, -met, —	kg.	2.2 lbs
gramʔ, -əð, —	Gram, -met, —	g.	0.035 oz.
míligràmʔ, -əð, —	Milligram, -met, —	mg.	1/1,000 of a gram
	Distance		
kílomè:ʔdər, -ən, —	Kilometer, -en, —	km.	0.62 miles
mé:ʔdər, -ən, —	Meter, -en, —	m.	1.1 yds.
dé:simè:ʔdər, -ən, —	Decimeter, -en, —	dm.	3.9 in.
sɛ́ntimè:ʔdər, -ən, —	Centimeter, -en, —	cm.	0.39 in.
mílimè:ʔdər, -ən, —	Millimeter, -en, —	mm.	0.039 in.
kvadrá:ʔt, -əð, -ər	Kvadrat, -et, -er		"square"
kvadrá:ʔd kílomè:ʔdər	Kvadrat Kilometer	km.^{2}	"square kilometer"
	Liquid Measure		
hɛ́gtolìdər, -ən, —	Hectoliter, -en, —	h.	26.4 gallons
lídər, -ən, —	Liter, -en, —	l.	1.06 quarts
dé:silìdər, -ən, —	Deciliter, -en, —	dl.	1/10 of a liter

The nouns ending in *-mè:ʔdər* listed above are also pronounced with only one stress, on *-mé:ʔdər;* for example, ***kilomé:ʔdər, sɛntimé:ʔdər***, etc.

The following words, although not part of the metric system, are also common terms for weights and measures:

sne:ˀs, -ən, snéːsə	Snes, -en, -e	score, twenty
punˀ, -əð, —	Pund, -et, —	a little less than an American pound
pɛ:ˀl, -ən, pɛ́:lə	Pægl, -en, -e	2.4 deciliters *or* about half a pint
mi:ˀl, -ən, —	Mil, -en, —	7.5 kilometers *or* 4.68 English miles

7. Compounds

Here are the new compounds you had in this unit:

noun + noun

saláːˀdhòːðə (Salathoved) head of lettuce = **saláːˀt** (Salat) salad, lettuce + **hóːðə** (Hoved) head

víːˀnərbrø̀ːˀð (Wienerbrød) Danish pastry = **víːˀnər** (Wiener) Viennese (noun) + **brøːˀð** (Brød) bread

noun + ə + noun

órdəkrɛ̀mər (Urtekræmmer) grocer = **orˀt** (Urt) plant + **ə** + **krɛ́mər** (Kræmmer) dealer

adjective + noun

grœ́ndhànˀlər (Grønthandler) 'man who sells vegetables' = **grœnˀt** (grønt) t-form of the adjective *grœnˀ* (grøn) green + **-hànˀlər** (-handler) dealer (used only in compounds, not as a word by itself).

gúːlərø̀ðˀər (Gulerødder) carrots = **gúːlə** (gule) ə-form of the adjective **guːˀl** (gul) yellow + **røðˀər** (Rødder) roots. This noun has the irregular singular form, *roːˀð* (Rod), so the Danish equivalent of "carrot" is *gúːlərò:ˀð*.

8. Irregular verbs

Here are the new irregular verbs you had in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
bɛ́:ɔr (bære) carry	*ba:ʔr* (bar) carried	*bɔ́:ʔərð* (baaret) carried
lý:ðə (lyde) sound	*lø:ʔð* (lød) sounded	*lyt* (lydt) sounded
lǿ:bə (løbe) run	*lø:ʔb* (løb) ran	*lǿ:bəð* (løbet) run

9. An adjective to notice

The adjective *sy:ʔ* (syg), 'sick', has the irregular t-form *sygt* (sygt). The ə-form *sý:ə* (syge) is regular.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

Do the following in Danish:

1. Ask a friend if he wants to borrow a certain book. Tell him that you haven't had time to read it yet, but it's supposed to be excellent.
2. When your wife asks you if you're going to the bank today, tell her that you may go, but you don't think you'll have time.
3. Tell a friend you're walking along the street with, that that building over there has been standing unused for five years.
4. Tell your sister that she drives very carelessly—you don't see why she isn't stopped by the police.
5. Tell your wife that you'll go to the butcher's and the baker's on your way home tonight.
6. In a conversation about the Danish soccer team, tell a friend that Niels Larsen is supposed to be a good player, but he didn't make a single goal yesterday.
7. Tell a friend who asks you to have lunch with him that you can't today, because you have to go to the grocer's and get some things for your wife and after that you have to go to the barber's.
8. Ask someone if it gets cold in Denmark in the winter.
9. Tell a friend that your brother was killed in France during the war.
10. Ask a friend how long he's going to stay in England.
11. Tell your wife that you almost fell down the stairs at the office today.
12. Ask a sick friend how long he'll have to stay in bed.
13. Ask your wife if your son Eric hasn't come back from the beach yet.
14. Tell a business acquaintance that you're moving to another office next week.
15. Tell your mother that you've eaten all the cake she gave you, and ask if you can have another piece.

16. Tell the grocer that the things (*vá:ər*) you ordered were sent to the wrong address—you live at 23 Fjumsevej, not 33.

17. Tell your wife that the bottle of *Snaps* she couldn't find is right there on the table.

18. In a conversation about a trip you've just been on, tell your brother that you were very unlucky with the weather—it rained all the time.

19. You've just come back from a fishing trip. Tell your wife that you had a wonderful time. You fished all day and ate all evening.

20. Tell your wife that your secretary went out dancing with Karl Nielsen last night. You thought Karl was married and his brother unmarried, but that must not be true.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader asks for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Two Danish men, Mogens (mɔ́:γəns) and Kristen (krésdən) are getting ready to go up to the latter's summer house for a week.*

mɔ́:γəns	*Mogens*
vi mɔ: sœ́rγə fɔr ɔ fɔ: no:n dɔ́:sər konsɛ́rvəs mɛ́ ɔ́b i sɔ́mərhù:ˀsəð k[illegible]*dən, ves vi sga vɛ́:ər dər en hé:ˀl ú:ə*	Vi maa sørge for at faa nogle Daaser Konserves med op i Sommerhuset, Kristen, hvis vi skal være der en hel Uge.

jɛ́ tróːʔr jɛ gɔr néːʔð ɔ kǿːbər noːn fɔrsgɛ́lʔiə téŋʔ ví ka ta mɛ́ ɔs.	Jeg tror, jeg gaar ned og køber nogle forskellige Ting, vi kan tage med os.
ɛr dər en slágdər dərɔ́bə;	Er der en Slagter deroppe?
krésdən	*Kristen*
já dé ɛ́r dər, mɛn han bóːʔr láŋʔd vɛ́k.	Ja, det er der, men han bor langt væk.
ɔ jɛ tróːʔr égə han kǿːər rónʔd te sɔ́mərhùːsənə pɔː dɛ́nə tíːʔð a ɔ́ːʔərð.	Og jeg tror ikke, han kører rundt til Sommerhusene paa denne Tid af Aaret.
mɔ́ːɣəns	*Mogens*
sɔ́ kǿːbər jɛ noːn dɔ́ːsər mɛ kǿð ɔ ed pár mɛ bœ́nər.	Saa køber jeg nogle Daaser med Kød og et Par med Bønner.
vi mɔː vɛl ɔ́sə háːʔ nɔ̀ːəð ósd ɔ smœ́r.	Vi maa vel ogsaa have noget Ost og Smør.
krésdən	*Kristen*
vɔrdán sga vi dɔɣ fɔː álʔd dé mɛ́?	Hvordan skal vi dog faa alt det med?
de blìər jo sɔ tóŋʔd ɔ kǿːər mɛ́, ɔ díːʔn sígəl ka vesd égə bɛ́ːər máəð méːər ɛn daj sɛ́lʔ;	Det bliver jo saa tungt at køre med, og din Cykel kan vist ikke bære meget mere end dig selv.
mɔ́ːɣəns	*Mogens*
nájʔ dé ká dən égə.	Nej, det kan den ikke.
mɛn vi sɛ́dər de báːər pɔː díːʔn, sɔ́ ka dú ta de mɛ́.	Men vi sætter det bare paa din, saa kan du tage det med.
jɛ háːʔr fɔrèsdən en resɛ́bd hɛ́ːʔr pɔː nɔ̀ːəð medəsíːʔn jɛ mɔː hɛ́ndə fœ́ːʔr jɛ tar a sdɛ́ð.	Jeg har forresten en Recept her paa noget Medicin, jeg maa hente, før jeg tager af Sted.
krésdən	*Kristen*
dú ɛr da vɛl égə sýːʔ;	Du er da vel ikke syg?

mɔ́:γəns

nájˀ de ɛ bá:ər nɔ́:əð jɛ sga kǿ:bə fɔr mi:n mó:r.

jɛ lǿ:bər lí:ə né:ˀð pɔ: aboté:ˀgəð nú ɔ fɔ́:ˀr dən, ɔ sɔ́ gɔr jɛ ví:ðərə ɔ fɔ́:ˀr vá:ərnə.

krésdən

já gǿr de ménˀs jé gœr síglərnə i sdánˀ.

2. *Mogens comes back with the things he's bought.*

krésdən

nɔ́, fég du sɔ́ va du sgu há:ˀ;

mɔ́:γəns

já jɛ var fǿrsd hos grǿndhànˀlərən ɔ feg bɔ̀:ðə salá:ˀdhò:ðə ɔ gú:lərø̆ðˀər.

krésdən

va pɔ́gər sga vi dɔγ mɛ ed salá:ˀdhò:ðə.

jeg du éŋən frógt;

mɔ́:γəns

jó: jɛ kø̂bdə no:n abəlsí:ˀnər;

krésdən

ɔ vá ɛ́lˀərs?

mɔ́:γəns

ed kvárd kìlo káfə ɔ en dé:silìdər flǿ:ðə.

Mogens

Nej, det er bare noget, jeg skal købe for min Mor.

Jeg løber lige ned paa Apoteket nu og faar den, og saa gaar jeg videre og faar Varerne.

Kristen

Ja, gør det, mens jeg gør Cyklerne i Stand.

Kristen

Naa, fik du saa, hvad du skulde have?

Mogens

Ja, jeg var først hos Grønthandleren og fik baade Salathoved og Gulerødder.

Kristen

Hvad Pokker skal vi dog med et Salathoved!

Fik du ingen Frugt?

Mogens

Jo, jeg købte nogle Appelsiner.

Kristen

Og hvad ellers?

Mogens

Et kvart Kilo Kaffe og en Deciliter Fløde.

316

krésdən

du síər égə du købdə flø:ðə.

dú ɛr da ɔ̀sə hé:ʔld umú:ʔli ɔ sɛ́nə i bý:ʔən.

tror du égə dɛ́nʔ flø:ðə ɛr blè:əð̄ te smœ́r fœ́:ʔr vi nɔr dɛrɔ́b i áfdən;

mɔ́:ɣəns

jó: dé ɛ́r dɛn mɔ:sgé:ʔ.

dé tɛ́ŋgdə jɛ slɛ́d égə pɔ́:ʔ.

mɛn dé gœr jo: égə nɔ́:əð, jɛ købdə nɛ́mli égə nɔ̀:əð smœ́r;

desú:ðən sga vi jo: bá:ər ha nɔ́g te i áfdən, rɛ́sdən ka vi jo: fɔ́:ʔ pɔ: majərí:ʔəð i mɔ́rən.

dɛ́:ʔr ka vi vɛl fɔ: bɔ̀:ðə ɛ́:ʔg ɔ mɛ́lʔk.

ɛr dər égə ɔ́sə en órdəkrɛ̀mər i nɛ́rhɛ̀ðʔən.

krésdən

jó: dé ka du tró:ʔ.

ɔ bá:ɣərən há:ʔr en butíg lí:ə ɔ́vʔərfɔr vɔ́rəs hú:ʔs.

hán har di hɛ́rlisdə ká:ɣər ɔ ví:ʔnərbrø:ʔð.

mɔ́:ɣəns

já sɔ́ ka vi mɔ:sgé:ʔ nɔ́jʔəs mɛ dé jɛ alərɛ́:ðə har købt.

vɔr láŋʔ tí:ʔð tá:ʔr de ɔ kø:ər dɛrɔ́p?

Kristen

Du siger ikke, du købte Fløde.

Du er da ogsaa helt umulig at sende i Byen.

Tror du ikke, den Fløde er blevet til Smør, før vi naar derop i Aften?

Mogens

Jo, det er den maaske.

Det tænkte jeg slet ikke paa.

Men det gør jo ikke noget, jeg købte nemlig ikke noget Smør.

Desuden skal vi jo bare have nok til i Aften, Resten kan vi jo faa paa Mejeriet i Morgen.

Der kan vi vel faa baade Æg og Mælk.

Er der ikke ogsaa en Urtekræmmer i Nærheden?

Kristen

Jo, det kan du tro.

Og Bageren har en Butik lige overfor vores Hus.

Han har de herligste Kager og Wienerbrød.

Mogens

Ja, saa kan vi maaske nøjes med det, jeg allerede har købt.

Hvor lang Tid tager det at køre derop?

krésdən	*Kristen*
vɩ́ ka gœ́:ər de pɔ: syvɔ́:də tɩ́:mər mɛ méndrə vi poŋtɛ́:ʔər;	Vi kan gøre det paa 7-8 Timer, med mindre vi punkterer.
du ka glɛ́:ðə daj, de ɛ en hɛ́rli tú:ʔr.	Du kan glæde dig, det er en herlig Tur.
mɔ́:γəns	*Mogens*
lègər hú:ʔsəð ve vánʔəð ɛ̀lər énə i lánʔəð.	Ligger Huset ved Vandet eller inde i Landet?
krésdən	*Kristen*
de lègər lɩ́:ə né:ʔð te vánʔəð.[1]	Det ligger lige ned til Vandet[1].
de var dɛ́:ʔr jɛ lɛ́:rdə ɔ svœ́mə da jɛ var lɩ́lə, ɔ dɛ́:ʔr har vi bó:əð vɛ́:ʔr é:nəsdə sɔ́mər sɩ́:ðən jɛ var fɛ́mʔ ɔ́:ʔr.	Det var der, jeg lærte at svømme, da jeg var lille, og der har vi boet hver eneste Sommer, siden jeg var fem Aar.
mɔ́:γəns	*Mogens*
sɔ́ mɔ: du da ha en de:l vɛ́nər dɛrɔ́bə.	Saa maa du da have en Del Venner deroppe?
krésdən	*Kristen*
já dé há:ʔr jɛ ɔ́sə.	Ja, det har jeg ogsaa.
dɛr bó:ʔr en famɩ́:ʔljə dɛr hɛ̀ðər søgɔ́:ʔr i hú:ʔsəð ve sɩ́:ðən a ɔ́s.	Der bor en Familie, der hedder Søgaard i Huset ved Siden af os.
jɛ vé:ʔ a dɩ́ ɛr dɛrɔ́bə i dɛ́nə ú:ə.	Jeg ved, at de er deroppe i denne Uge.
mɔ́:γəns	*Mogens*
ɛr di fléŋgə;	Er de flinke?

---

[1] Notice that *ne:ʔð* is used here with the verb *légə*, where you might expect *né:ðə*. The use of *né:ʔð te* in this sentence gives it the meaning, "The house (and grounds) *go right down to* the water." rather than "The house *is right down by* the water."

krésdən *já dé ka du tró:ˀ.* *ɔ di há:ˀr en dádər dɛr ər vɛ́ldi sø̂:ˀð.* *jɛ sbɛ̀ləðə tɛ́nes mɛ hɛ́nə vɛ́:ˀr dá:ˀ hé:lə sísdə sɔ́mər;*	*Kristen* Ja, det kan du tro. Og de har en Datter, der er vældig sød. Jeg spillede Tennis med hende hver Dag hele sidste Sommer.
mɔ́:γəns *nɔ́ sɔ́ bəgø̂nˀər jɛ ɔ fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ vɔ́rfɔr du vɛ̀lə dɛrɔ́b i dɛ́nə ú:ə.* *de lý:ˀðər hé:ˀld sbɛ́nənə, jɛ glɛ́:ðər maj aləré:ðə;*	*Mogens* Naa, saa begynder jeg at forstaa, hvorfor du vilde derop i denne Uge. Det lyder helt spændende, jeg glæder mig allerede.
krésdən *já men nú mɔ: du hɛ́lərə vɛ̀:ər fɔrsígdi.* *glɛ́mˀ égə a de var máj dɛr sɔ́:ˀ hɛ́nə fœ́rst.*	*Kristen* Ja, men nu maa du hellere være forsigtig. Glem ikke, at det var mig, der saa hende først.
mɔ́:γəns *nɔ́ jɛ vɛ̀sdə égə a de var sɔ́ gá:ˀld mɛ́ daj.* *har du álˀtɛ̀ŋˀ pará:ˀt;*	*Mogens* Naa, jeg vidste ikke, at det var saa galt med dig. Har du alting parat?
krésdən *já jɛ́ ɛr fɛ́rdi, jɛ vɛ́ndər bá:ər pɔ: dáj.*	*Kristen* Ja, jeg er færdig, jeg venter bare paa dig.

5

SECTION E--CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Take turns acting the parts of a shopper and a clerk in the various Danish food stores.

1. in a grocery store—buy flour, sugar, canned goods, coffee, tea, salt. Argue with the grocer about delivering the things—he says he can't because he's too busy. You say that you have a lot more errands to do and the things you've bought are too heavy to carry around with you.
2. in a vegetable store—buy carrots, peas, potatoes, lettuce, oranges. Argue about the price of the oranges—you think they're too expensive.
3. in a dairy—buy milk, cream, butter, and eggs.
4. at the butcher's—talk about whether you'll get hamburg steak, roast lamb, or chicken. Decide what looks best and buy it.
5. at the pharmacy—you say you want some medicine, the clerk asks for the prescription, etc.

Finder List

abəlsí:ʔn, -ən, -ər (Appelsin, -en, -er) orange

aboté:ʔk, -əð, -ər (Apotek, -et, -er) pharmacy

álʔtèŋʔ (alting) everything

bá:γər, -ən, -ə (Bager, -en, -e) baker

bέ:ər, ba:ʔr, bɔ́:ʔərð (bære, bar, baaret) carry. The present form is either *bέ:ər* like the basic form, or *bɛ:ʔr.*

bru:ʔ, -ən, — (Brug, -en, —) use

butík, -ən, -ər (Butik, -ken, -ker) store

bœ́nə, -n, -r (Bønne, -n, -r) bean

danʔs, -ən, dánsə (Dans, -en, -e) dance

de:ʔl, -ən, dé:lə (Del, -en, -e) lot, part

dé:silìdər, -ən, — (Deciliter, -en, —) deciliter

dé:simè:ʔdər, -ən, — (Decimeter, -en, —) decimeter

desú:ðən (desuden) besides

dɔ́:sə, -n, -r (Daase, -n, -r) can

ɛ:ʔk, -əð, — (Æg, -et, —) egg

falʔ, -əð, — (Fald, -et, —) fall

fésgə, -ðə (fiske, -de) fish

fɛ́rdi (færdig) through, finished

frogt, -ən, -ər (Frugt, -en, -er) fruit

fɔrsígdi (forsigtig) careful

ga:ʔl (gal) wrong

grœ́ndhànʔlər, -ən, -ər (Grønthandler, -en, -er) man who sells fresh fruit and vegetables

gú:lərò:ʔð, gú:lərððʔən, gú:lərǿðʔər (Gulerod, -den, Gulerødder) carrot

hɛ́gtolìdər, -ən, — (Hektoliter, -en, —) hectoliter

jɛlʼp, -ən (Hjælp, -en) help

ká:ɣə, -n, -r (Kage, -n, -r) cake

kílo, kílo:ʔəð, — (Kilo, -et, —) or *kílogràmʔ, -əð,* — (Kilogram, -met, —) kilogram

konsɛ́rvəs (Konserves) canned food, canned goods

krésdən (Kristen) *man's name*

krésdənsən (Christensen) *last name*

krɛ́mər, -ən, -ər (Kræmmer, -en, -er) dealer

kvadrá:ʔt, -əð, -ər (Kvadrat, -et, -er) square
  kvadrá:ʔd kílomè:ʔdər (Kvadrat Kilometer) square kilometer

kvart (kvart) quarter

lɛ́:ər, lɛ́:rdə (lære, -te) learn, teach

lý:ðə, lý:ʔðər, lø:ʔð, lyt (lyde, lød, lydt) sound

lǿ:bə, lǿ:ʔbər, lø:ʔp, lǿ:bəð (løbe, løb, løbet) run

majərí:ʔ, -əð, -ər (Mejeri, -et, -er) dairy

mé:ʔdər, -ən, — (Meter, -en, —) meter

medəsí:ʔn, -ən (Medicin, -en) medicine

mɛ méndrə (med mindre) unless

mɛlʔk, -ən (Mælk, -en) milk

mɛnʔs (mens) while

mi:ʔl, -ən, — (Mil, -en, —) unit of measure equal to 7½ kilometers or 4.68 English miles *mílligràmˀ, -əð, —* (Milligram, -met, —) milligram

mílimɔ̀:ˀdər, -ən, — (Millimeter, -en, —) millimeter

mú:li (mulig) possible

mɔ́də (maatte) might

mɔ́:γəns (Mogens) *man's name*

nɔ́jˀəs (nɔ́jəðəs) mɛ (nøjes) (nøjedes) (med) be content with, be satisfied with

órdəkrèmər, -ən, -ər (Urtekræmmer, -en, -er) grocer (*sells canned goods and staples such as sugar, flour, coffee, etc.*)

øst, -ən, -ə (Ost, -en, -e) cheese

ósdəbutìk, -ən, -ər (Ostebutik, -ken, -ker) cheese store

ósdafɔrèdneŋ, ósdafɔrèdneŋˀən, ósdafɔrèdneŋˀər (Osteforretning, -en, -er) cheese store

pe:ˀl, -ən, pé:lə (Pægl, -en, -e) unit of liquid measure equal to 2.4 deciliters or about half a pint

punˀ, -əð, — (Pund, -et, —) pound (*slightly less than an American pound*)

resébt, -ən, -ər (Recept, -en, -er) prescription

rest, -ən, -ər (Rest, -en, -er) rest, remainder

ro:ˀð, róðˀən, róðˀər (Rod, -den, Rødder) root

rɔ:ˀb, -əð, — (Raab, -et, —) shout, cry

salá:ˀdhò:ðə, -ð, -r (Salathoved, -et, -er) head of lettuce

sbel, sbélˀəð, — (Spil, -let, —) game

sdájə, sdɛ́gdə/sdégdə (stege, -te) roast, fry

sɛ́də, sádə (sætte, satte) put

séntimè:ˀdər, -ən, — (Centimeter, -en, —) centimeter

sgalˀ/sga (skal) am, is, are supposed to

sgɔ́:lə, -ðə (skaale, -de) drink a toast

slágdər, -ən, -ər (Slagter, -en, -er) butcher

slet: sléd égə (slet ikke) not at all

sma:ˀγ, -ən (Smag, -en) taste

smœ́:ər, smórdə (smøre, smurte) butter, oil, grease

sne:ˀs, -ən, sné:sə (Snes, -en, -e) score, twenty (*unit by which eggs are sold*)

só:lə (-ðə) saj (sole) (-de) (sig) sunbathe

sy:ˀ, sygt, sý:ə (syg) sick

toŋˀ (tung) heavy

sǿgɔ:ˀr (Søgaard) *last name*

ubəsdémˀt, -ə (ubestemt, -e) uncertain

ubrógt, -ə (ubrugt, -e) unused

uenírəsánˀt, -ə (uinteressant, -e) uninteresting

ufi:ˀn (ufin) not nice (*used of behavior or thinking*)

ufɔrsígdi (uforsigtig) careless
ugíft (ugift) unmarried
uhɛ́lʔdi (uheldig) unlucky
uhýgəli (uhyggelig) unpleasant
urɛ́:ʔn (uren) unclean, impure
uró:ʔli (urolig) restless, worried
usánʔ (usandt) untrue
uségər, -t, uségrə (usikker, -t, usikre) unsure
uvɛ́nʔli (uvenlig) unkind
uvírgli (uvirkelig) unreal
vá:ər, -n, — (Vare, -n, -r) wares, things, provisions
vajʔ, -ən, vájə (Vej, -en, -e) road
  fjómsəvàjʔ (Fjumsevej) *name of a street*
vánə, -ðə (vande, -de) water
veð/ve (ved) by
ve sí:ðən á:ʔ (ved Siden af) next door
ví:ðərə (videre) farther
ví:ʔnərbrǿ:ʔð, -əð (Wienerbrød, -et) Danish pastry

UNIT 23

ON THE FARM

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Bill is spending the weekend on the Andersen farm. It is evening and Peter, Tom, and Bill are sitting outside smoking and talking.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Peter		
cigar	*sigá:ˀr*	Cigar
Another cigar, Bill?	*en sigá:ˀr tél bél;*	En Cigar til, Bill?
Bill		
No thanks, I don't think I'll smoke any more today.	*nɛ́: máŋə tág, nú sga jɛ égə rý:ə mé:ər i dá:ˀ,*	Næh mange Tak, nu skal jeg ikke ryge mere i Dag.
Peter		
Then maybe we'd better think about going to bed.	*já sɔ́ ma: vi mɔ́sge: hélərə téŋgə pɔ́:ˀ ɔ gɔ́:ˀ i séŋˀ,*	Ja, saa maa vi maaske hellere tænke paa at gaa i Seng.

permission	*lɔv*	Lov
be allowed to *or* be able to	*fɔ: lɔ̃v te*	faa Lov til
peace	*freð*	Fred
You can sleep in peace tomorrow morning, Bill.	*nú sga di fɔ: lɔ̃v te ɔ vὲ:ər i frẽð te i mɔ́rən bél.*	Nu skal De faa Lov til at være i Fred til i Morgen, Bill.
get(s) to *or* happen(s) to	*kɔ̀mər tél at*	kommer til at
disturb	*fɔrsdýrʔə*	forstyrre
I'll see to it that nobody disturbs you.	*jɛ sga nɔ́g sœ́rγə fɔr, a dɛr égə ɛr nó:n dɛr kɔ̀mər té ɔ fɔrsdýrʔə dəm;*	Jeg skal nok sørge for, at der ikke er nogen, der kommer til at forstyrre Dem.
Bill		
knock(s)	*báŋgər*	banker
around nine o'clock	*ve ni: tí:ʔðən*	ved ni Tiden
Thanks a lot, but I'd really like to have you knock on my door around nine o'clock.	*máŋə tág, mɛn jɛ ve nu alí:əvɛl há:ʔ a di báŋgər pɔ: dœ́:ʔərn ve ni: tí:ʔðən.*	Mange Tak, men jeg vil nu alligevel have, at De banker paa Døren ved ni Tiden.
Peter		
All right, we'll do that.	*iá dé sga vi nɔ́k.*	Ja, det skal vi nok.
Bill		
There's so much I have to see while I'm here.	*dέr ər jo sɔ máəð jɛ mɔ: sé:ʔ mɛnʔs jɛ ér hər;*	Der er jo saa meget, jeg maa se, mens jeg er her.
Peter (as he shows Bill to his room)		
blankets	*tέbər*	Tæpper
the roof	*tá:ʔγəð*	Taget

There are plenty of blankets in the trunk under the bed, but it's usually not very cold up here under the roof.	*dɛr ər fúlˀd a tɛ́bər i kófərdən ónˀər sɛ́ŋˀən, mɛn dé ɛ i ré:ˀələn égə kɔ́lˀd hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə ónˀər tá:ˀɣəð.*	Der er fuldt af Tæpper i Kufferten under Sengen, men det er i Regelen ikke saa koldt heroppe under Taget.
sleep!	*sɔʊˀ*	sov!
Good night—sleep well.	*gonád ɔ sɔ́ʊˀ gɔ́t.*	God Nat, og sov godt.
Bill		
equal	*lí:ə*	lige
manner *or* way	*mɔ́:ðə*	Maade
Thanks, the same to you.	*tág i lí:ə mɔ́:ðə;*	Tak i lige Maade.

The next morning as Bill comes down to breakfast.

Mrs. Andersen		
Good morning, Mr. Butler, did you sleep well?	*go: mɔ́rən ènsjənjør bɔ́dlər, har di sɔ́ʊəð gɔ́t;*	God Morgen Ingeniør Butler, har De sovet godt?
been cold	*frósəð*	frosset
I hope you weren't cold?	*di har vɛl égə frósəð.*	De har vel ikke frosset?
Bill		
No, not in the least.	*nɛ́: égə de ménsdə.*	Næh, ikke det mindste.
I slept like a top.	*jɛ har sɔ́ʊəð hɛ́rlit;*	Jeg har sovet herligt.
Mrs. Andersen		
Why don't you go ahead and eat.	*vɛ́rs gó:ˀ ɔ sbí:ˀs;*	Værsaagod og spis.

if *or* whether oatmeal	*ɔmˀ* *hávrəgrø̀:ˀð*	om Havregrød
I completely forgot to ask you last night whether you eat oatmeal for breakfast.	*jɛ glɛ́mdə hé:ˀld ɔ sbœ́rɣə dəm i gɔr áfdəs ɔm di sbì:sər hávrəgrø̀:ˀð ɔm mɔ́rənən.*	Jeg glemte helt at spørge Dem i Gaar Aftes, om De spiser Havregrød om Morgenen.
pumpernickel	*rúbrø̀:ˀð*	Rugbrød
But there's pumpernickel and coffee and milk and eggs and anything else you'd like.	*mɛn hɛ́:ˀr ɛr rúbrø̀:ˀð káfə mɛ́lˀg ɔ ɛ́:ˀg, ɔ vá di ɛ́lˀərs ve há:ˀ.*	Men her er Rugbrød, Kaffe, Mælk og Æg, og hvad De ellers vil have.
Bill		
Thanks.	*já máŋə ták.*	Ja, mange Tak.
May I have the cream, please?	*mɔ: jɛ bé:ˀ ɔm flø̀:ðən ták;*	Maa jeg bede om Fløden? Tak.
living	*bó:ənə*	boende
It's awfully nice of you to have us Americans stay with you.	*jɛ sýns vírgli de ɛ pɛ́:ˀnd á dəm a dí ve há ɔs àmərikâ:ˀnərə bó:ənə.*	Jeg synes virkelig, det er pænt af Dem, at De vil have os Amerikanere boende.
I'm looking forward to seeing your farm.	*jɛ glɛ́:ðər mə máəð te ɔ sé:ˀ gɔ́:ˀərn.*	Jeg glæder mig meget til at se Gaarden.
I've never seen a Danish farm.	*jɛ har énu áldri sé:ˀd en dánˀsg gɔ́:ˀr.*	Jeg har endnu aldrig set en dansk Gaard.
Mrs. Andersen		
the field	*márgən*	Marken
My husband asked me to say good morning *for* him—he's already out in the fields.	*mi:n mánˀ ba:ˀð maj hílsə, hán ɛr álərеðə i márgən.*	Min Mand bad mig hilse, han er allerede i Marken.

sorry	*ké:ˀð á:ˀ*	ked af
He was sorry he couldn't show you around himself, but Peter and Tom can do it.	*han var ké:ˀð á:ˀ a han égə sél̥ˀ ku ví:sə dəm rónˀt, mɛn pé:ˀdər ɔ tɔ́mˀ ka jo: gǿ:ər de.*	Han var ked af, at han ikke selv kunde vise Dem rundt, men Peter og Tom kan jo gøre det.

Peter and Tom take Bill out to show him around.

Peter		
gosh	*í:*	ih
Gosh, it's windy.	*í: vɔr de dɔγ blɛ́:ˀsər.*	Ih, hvor det dog blæser.
inside	*énənfɔ̀r*	indenfor
I think I'll go in and get my coat.	*jɛ tró:ˀr lí:ə jɛ gɔr énənfɔ̀r ɔ héndər mi:n frágə.*	Jeg tror lige, jeg gaar indenfor og henter min Frakke.
Bill (to Tom)		
wings	*lɛ́ŋər*	Længer
Do most Danish farms have four wings[1] like this one?	*har di flé:ˀsdə dánsgə gɔ́:ər fí:ər lɛ́ŋər sɔm dénə;*	Har de fleste danske Gaarde fire Længer som denne?
Tom		
half-timbering[2] thatched roof	*béneŋsvɛ̀rk* *sdrɔ́tà:ˀγ*	Bindingsværk Straatag
Yes, and they're half-timbered and have thatched roofs.	*já ɔ dí har béneŋsvɛ̀rg ɔ sdrɔ́tà:ˀγ.*	Ja, og de har Bindingsværk og Straatag.

---

[1] Most Danish farms have three or four buildings built around a courtyard. These buildings are called 'wings', *lɛ́ŋər.*

[2] A half-timbered building has a wooden frame with the spaces filled in with stone or plaster.

Bill		
They're not bad! You don't see farms like this in America.	*dé ser nu vɛ́ldi hýgəli ú:ˀð, dé sɛ́:ˀr man égə i amé:ˀrika;*	Det ser nu vældig hyggeligt ud, det ser man ikke i Amerika.
Tom		
at least	*i vɛ́:ˀrd fálˀ*	i hvert Fald
No, at least I've never seen one before.	*nɛ́: jɛ́ har i vɛ́:ˀrd fálˀ áldri sɛ́:ˀd de fœ́:ˀr.*	Næh, jeg har i hvert Fald aldrig set det før.
Peter (as he comes out again)		
the pigsty	*sví:nəsdì:ˀən*	Svinestien
through	*igɛ́nˀəm*	igennem
the granary	*lá:ðən*	Laden
Here's the pigsty—we can go right through into the granary.	*hɛ́:ˀr légər sví:nəsdì:ˀən, vi ka gɔ: lí:ə igɛ́nˀəm, sɔ́ kɔ̀mər vi énˀ i lá:ðən.*	Her ligger Svinestien, vi kan gaa lige igennem, saa kommer vi ind i Laden.
the grain	*kórˀnəð*	Kornet
This is where we bring the grain in in the summer.	*hɛ́:ˀr kǿ:ər vi kórˀnəð énˀ ɔm sɔ́mərən.*	Her kører vi Kornet ind om Sommeren.
the cow stable	*kó:ˀsdàlˀən*	Kostalden
the horse stable	*hɛ́sdəsdàlˀən*	Hestestalden
On the other side are the cow and horse stables.	*pɔ: dɛn ánən sí:ðə légər kó:ˀsdàlˀən ɔ hɛ́sdəsdàlˀən.*	Paa den anden Side ligger Kostalden og Hestestalden.
Bill		
horses	*hɛ́sdə*	Heste
How many horses have you got?	*vɔr máŋə hɛ́sdə há:ˀr di?*	Hvor mange Heste har De?

Peter		
cows	*kǿ:ˀər*	Køer
Right now we have five horses and thirty cows.	*vi ar fέmˀ hέsdə ɔ trέðvə kǿ:ˀr fɔr ɔ́jəblègəð.*	Vi har fem Heste og tredive Køer for Øjeblikket.
Bill		
pigs	*grí:sə*	Grise
And how many pigs?	*ɔ vɔr máŋə grí:sə?*	Og hvor mange Grise?
Peter		
Sixty.	*tres.*	Tres.
Bill		
That's a lot!	*dé var dɔγ frǿgli máŋə.*	Det var dog frygtelig mange.
actually *or* really	*é:ˀγənli*	egentlig
How large *is* the farm actually?	*vɔr sdó:ˀr έr gɔ́:ˀərn é:ˀnli?*	Hvor stor er Gaarden egentlig?
Peter		
measure of land equal to 1.36 acres	*tǿnə lánˀ*	Tønde Land
We have about 136 acres, so there's plenty to do.	*vi há:ˀr ɔmkréŋˀ húnrəðə tǿnər lánˀ, sɔ dεr ər nɔ́g ɔ gǿ:ər.*	Vi har omkring 100 Tønder Land, saa der er nok at gøre.
plant(s) *or* sow(s)	*sɔ:ˀr*	saar
rye	*ru:ˀ*	Rug
wheat	*vé:ðə*	Hvede
barley	*byk*	Byg
oats	*hávrə*	Havre
In the fall we plant rye and wheat, and in the spring, barley and oats.	*ɔm έfdərɔ̀:ˀərð sɔr vi rú:ˀ ɔ vé:ðə ɔ ɔm fɔ́rɔ̀:ˀərð býg ɔ hávrə.*	Om Efteraaret saar vi Rug og Hvede, og om Foraaret Byg og Havre.

Well, I guess there's nothing else to see here — I think we've looked at everything.	*mɛn hɛ́r ɛr vesd égə mé:ər ɔ sɛ́:ˀ, jɛ tró:ˀr vi har vɛ́:ərð ɔ́vˀər de hé:lə.*	Men her er vist ikke mere at se, jeg tror, vi har været over det hele.
darn chickens between *or* among	*fɔrbánˀəðə* *hænˀs* *imɛ́lˀəm*	forbandede Høns imellem
Oh, these darn chickens—they're always getting under foot.	*ɔ́: di fɔrbánˀəðə hǽnˀs, di lǿ:bər da ɔ̀sə álˀtìðˀ imɛ́lˀəm bé:ˀnənə pɔ́: é:ˀn.*	Aah, de forbandede Høns, de løber da ogsaa altid imellem Benene paa en.
Do you keep chickens, Tom?	*har ɩ hǽnˀs tɔ́mˀ;*	Har I Høns, Tom?
Tom		
We certainly do.	*já vésd har vi dɛ́.*	Ja, vist har vi det.
the stork	*sdɔ́rgən*	Storken
It's too bad you didn't get to see the stork, Bill.	*mɛn bél, dé var fɔrɛ̀sdən kéðəli a du égə feg sé:ˀd sdɔ́rgən.*	Men Bill, det var forresten kedeligt, at du ikke fik set Storken.
is accustomed to	*plájər*	plejer
It lives up there on the roof in the summer.	*dɛn plájər ɔ bó:ˀ dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə pɔ: tá:ˀγəð ɔm sɔ́mərən.*	Den plejer at bo deroppe paa Taget om Sommeren.
Bill		
Oh, is that common here?	*nɔ́ ɛr dé alménˀli;*	Naa, er det almindeligt?
Peter		
Yes, my uncle lives 20 kilometers from here and he has a stork living on his farm too.	*já mi:n óŋˀgəl bó:ˀr tý:və kilomé:ˀdər hɛ́:ˀrfrà, ɔ hán har ɔ́sə sdɔ́rgən bó:ənə pɔ: sí:ˀn gɔ́:ˀr.*	Ja, min Onkel bor 20 km. herfra, og han har ogsaa Storken boende paa sin Gaard.

Here in Denmark we always say that, if the stork's flying the first time you see him in the year, that means you'll go on a trip.	*man plájər ɔ síːə hɛ́ːˀr i dánmarg a man kɔ̀mər úːˀð ɔ rájsə ves sdɔ́rgən flýːˀr fœ́rsdə gáŋˀ man sɛ́ːˀr dɛn i ɔ́ːˀərð.*	Man plejer at sige her i Danmark, at man kommer ud at rejse, hvis Storken flyver første Gang, man ser den i Aaret.
Tom		
I think Bill should see the woods, too.	*mɛn jɛ syns ɔ̀sə bél sga sɛ́ːˀ sgɔ́vˀən.*	Men jeg synes ogsaa, Bill skal se Skoven.
walk together	*gɔːˀ* *sámˀən*	gaa sammen
Won't we have time to walk over there together before lunch?	*ka vi égə nɔ́ːˀɔ gɔː dɛ́ːˀrɔ̀vˀər sámˀən énən frógɔst;*	Kan vi ikke naa at gaa derover sammen inden Frokost?
Peter		
No, I think we'll have to take bicycles if we're going to be back at twelve o'clock.	*nɛ́ː jɛ tróːˀr vi mɔː síglə ves vi sga vɛ̀ːər tebáːɣə te klɔ̀gən tɔ́lˀ.*	Næh, jeg tror, vi maa cykle, hvis vi skal være tilbage til Klokken tolv.

2. Pronunciation Drill

If you listen carefully to Danish sentences you will notice that, although they are said very rapidly, still they are broken up into smaller parts, not so much by actual pauses, as by changes in the tone of the speaker's voice. For instance, as you listen to your Guide read the following sentences, you will probably notice that his voice goes up and down much as does the broken line below the sentences. Observe that in each section his voice is highest on the heavily stressed words and syllables, those marked ´, and on any following unstressed syllables, and that it is lower on the less heavily stressed syllables at the beginning of the section, both those marked ` and those with no mark at all. Notice, too, that in the section just before a period one or more of the last syllables, stressed or unstressed, is said on a low tone. Try to imitate the way Danish speakers make their voices go up and down within a sentence. This will make your Danish sound much more natural and free from accent.

ɔ jáj | sɔm tró:ðə | a de var mórsɔmˀd | ɔ lègə pɔ: hosbitá:ˀləð;

dɛ́:ˀr lɔ́:ˀ jɛ | ɔ jɛ ku égə rœ́:ər maj.

sɔ́ réŋəðə | mi:n kó:nə | ɛ̀fdər ambuláŋsən | ɔ kǿ:rdə mɛ́ maj

pɔ: sgá:ðəsdù:ən | vɔr é:ˀn | a lɛ́:ɣərnə | bəhánˀləðə maj.

sɔ́ | sga vi húsgə | ɔ ta no:n sigərɛ́dər mɛ́ té daj | nɛ́sdə gáŋˀ vi | kɔ́mˀər.

mɛn i sga ha tág | fɔrdí:ˀ i kɔ́mˀ.

One final hint about pronunciation: remember always that variations are many and are perfectly natural. If you say "greasy" and your fellow American from the South says "greazy" (or vice versa), neither one of you is "wrong", but each of you is using the natural, accepted pronunciation of his own part of the country. There are just as many variations in the pronunciation of Danish as in the pronunciation of English, so don't be surprised or disturbed if the pronunciation of your Danish guide is not exactly like that represented here in the *Aids to Listening*. His use of the two pronunciations of *a* may not be just like that described here, he may pronounce *køst* as *kyst* and *vélə* as *vɩ́lə*, he may say *bá:jər*, not *bá:ɣər*, and *gá:jə*, not *gá:ðə*. But this does not mean that either he or the book is "wrong". It means simply that the guide and the person whose speech is represented here don't talk exactiy alike, and that is to be expected. The thing for you to do is to imitate your guide if you have one, and, when you go to Denmark, imitate the people with whom you associate.

3. Hints on Spelling

One final statement that can be made to help you recognize the Danish words you know when you see them written in regular Danish spelling is the following: you will find that in a word of more than one syllable a long vowel is often followed by only one consonant letter in the regular spelling, while a short vowel is generally followed by more than one. Note that this refers to consonant letters in the spelling, not to consonant sounds in the pronunciation. Here are some examples:

mene [*mé:nə*] 'think, mean'	inde [*énə*] 'in'
pæne [*pɛ́:nə*] 'nice'	denne [*dɛ́nə*] 'this'
Daase [*dɔ́:sə*] 'can'	Klasse [*klásə*] 'class'
haabe [*hɔ́:bə*] 'hope'	Kopper [*kɔ́bər*] 'cups'
hele [*hé:lə*] 'whole'	vilde [*vélə*] 'would'

There are, however, many exceptions to this statement; for instance, *otte* [*ɔ́:də*] 'eight', *fjerde* [*fjɛ́:ər*] 'fourth', *sjette* [*sjɛ́:də*] 'sixth', the past forms and participles of regular verbs like *viste* [*vɩ́:sdə*] 'showed', *vist* [*vi:ˀst*] 'shown', etc.

You may find it helpful, as you use the regular Danish spelling more and more, to refer to the check lists on pages 820-822. They show the correspondences between Danish sounds as represented in the *Aids to*

Listening and the Danish letters used in the regular spelling, and vice versa. From now on we will just list in the *Hints on Spelling* those new words whose spelling is in some way unusual.

Here are the words in this unit whose spelling you should notice particularly:

Byg	*byk*	barley
egentlig	*ɛ́:ˀɣənli/ɛ́:ˀnli*	actually
ih	*i:*	gosh
Cigar	*sigá:ˀr*	cigar
Rugbrød	*rúbrǿ:ˀð*	pumpernickel

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. The position of words like *égə, gɛ́rnə*, etc. in a Danish sentence

A.

Look at the order of the words in these sentences:

de **ka gɔ́d** *blí:ə kɔ́lˀd hɛ́:ˀr ɔm áfdənən;*	Det kan godt blive koldt her om Aftenen.	It can get pretty cold here in the evening.
jɛ **ve gɛ́rnə** *bəsdélˀə no:n vá:ər.*	Jeg vil gerne bestille nogle Varer.	I'd like to order some things.
jɛ **ve gɛ́rnə** *há:ˀ ed glas vánˀ.*	Jeg vil gerne have et Glas Vand.	I'd like a glass of water.
jɛ **ku égə** *rǿ:ər maj.*	Jeg kunde ikke røre mig.	I couldn't move.
jɛ **ka égə** *hǿ:ər va di síər;*	Jeg kan ikke høre, hvad De siger.	I can't hear you.
jɛ **ar áldri** *sé:ˀd ed vɛ́:ərlsə, dɛr var sɔ́ lílə.*	Jeg har aldrig set et Værelse, der var saa lille.	I've never seen a room that was so small.
jɛ **fərsdɔ́:ˀr** *dəm* **égə.**	Jeg forstaar Dem ikke.	I don't understand you.

Notice in these sentences that the words *égə, gérnə, áldri* and *gɔt* come after the verb. If the sentence contains a verb phrase, as most of these do, then the words in question come after the auxiliary and before the basic form of the other verb or after the present form *ha:ʔr* and before the participle of the other verb. This is the usual position for such words in a Danish sentence.

B.

Now observe the words in heavy type in these sentences:

men ves du sɔ **gérnə** *ve kø:ər, sɔ́ tá:ʔ dɔɣ rádəð drɛŋʔ.*	Men hvis du saa gerne vil køre, saa tag dog Rattet, Dreng.	But if you're so anxious to drive, then *take* the wheel, son.
ves dər **égə** *sgé:ʔr nɔ́:əð pɔ: vájʔən jέmʔ, ka vi gǿ:ər de pɔ: méndrə ɛn tó:ʔ tí:mər.*	Hvis der ikke sker noget paa Vejen hjem, kan vi gøre det paa mindre end to Timer.	If nothing happens on the way home, we can do it in less than two hours.
ves han **bá:ər** *vèlə fløde sə léd, ku jɛ máəð bέðrə sé:ʔ.*	Hvis han bare vilde flytte sig lidt, kunde jeg meget bedre se.	If he'd only move a little, I could see much better.
di mɔ: máəð ónsgỳlʔə a jɛ **égə** *rájʔsər mə ɔ́p.*	De maa meget undskylde, at jeg ikke rejse mig op.	Excuse me for not getting up.
hun tá:ldə sɔ hɔ́jʔd a vi **ég** *ku hø:ər va vi sέlʔ sá:ə.*	Hun talte saa højt, at vi ikke kunde høre, hvad vi selv sagde.	She talked so loud we couldn't hear what we were saying.
jɛ hø:ər fɔrέsdən a di **lí:ə** *har vὲ:ərð i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr;*	Jeg hører forresten, at De lige har været i Aalborg.	By the way, I hear you've just been to Aalborg.
jɛ sga nɔ́g sœ́rɣə fɔr, a dɛr **égə** *ɛr nó:n dɛr kɔ̀mər té ɔ fɔrsdýrʔə dəm;*	Jeg skal nok sørge for, at der ikke er nogen, der kommer til at forstyre Dem.	I'll see to it that nobody disturbs you.
han var ké:ʔð á:ʔ a han **égə** *sέlʔ ku ví:sə dəm rónʔt.*	Han var ked af, at han ikke selv kunde vise Dem rundt.	He was sorry he couldn't show you around himself.

336

mɛn bél, dé var fɔrὲsdən kéðəli a du **égə** *feg sé:ʔd sdɔ́rgən.*	Men Bill, det var forresten kedeligt, at du ikke fik set Storken.	It's too bad you didn't get to see the stork, Bill.
jɛ há:ʔr en àmərikánsg vɛ́n hɛ́:ʔr, sɔm **gɛ́rnə** *ve sé:ʔ pɔ: ed vɛ́:ərlsə.*	Jeg har en amerikansk Ven her, som gerne vil se paa et Værelse.	I have an American friend here who would like to look at a room.
ví sbélər sɔm ré:ʔəl en ánən slágs fóðbɔ̀lʔd sɔm dú mɔ:sgè: **égə** *kɛ́nər.*	Vi spiller som Regel en anden Slags Fodbold, som du maaske ikke kender.	We generally play another kind of football that you probably don't know about.
nɔr jɛ tɛ̀ŋgər pɔ: tú:ʔərn hərú:ʔð, vé:ʔ jɛ égə vɔrdán jɛ **nó:ən sénə** *sga kɔ́mə jɛ́mʔ.*	Naar jeg tænker paa Turen herud, ved jeg ikke, hvordan jeg nogen Sinde skal komme hjem.	When I think of the trip out here, I don't see how I'm ever going to get home.
jɛ tror hɛ́lərə jɛ ve gɔ: mɛ́ dəm, sɔ di **égə** *gɔr fɔrké:ʔrt;*	Jeg tror hellere, jeg vil gaa med Dem, saa De ikke gaar forkert.	I think I'd better go with you, so you won't get lost.
fɔrdí:ʔ jɛ **gɔ́d** *ka lí:ʔ ɔ kǿ:ər hórdi.*	Fordi jeg godt kan lide at køre hurtigt.	I like to go fast.

Look at these sentences carefully and notice that when you have a clause beginning with *ves*, *at* (*a*), *sɔm*, *vɔrdán*, *sɔ* (meaning "so"), and *fɔrdí:ʔ*, the words *égə*, *gɛ́rnə*, *bá:ər*, *nó:ən sénə*, and *gɔt* come, not after the verb, which, as you saw in the preceding comment, is their normal position, but before the verb. They also come before the verb in clauses beginning with the following words: *da*, *nɔ:ʔr*, 'when', *sɔ sná:ʔrt*, 'as soon as', *fɔ́r at*, 'in order that', *dɛr*, 'who, which, that', *mɛ méndrə*, 'unless', *ɔmʔ*, 'whether', *nɛ́sdə gáŋʔ*, 'next time', *va*, 'what', *vɔ:ʔr*, 'where', *vɛmʔ*, 'who', *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr*, 'when', and *vɔ́rfɔ̀r*, 'why'.

C.

Look at the following sentences:

jɛ ar bəsdél?d en rətú:rbilèd, **sɔm** *jɛ sga hɛ́ndə i dá:?.*	Jeg har bestilt en Returbillet, som jeg skal hente i Dag.	I've reserved a round-trip ticket that I'm going to pick up today.
jɛ há:?r no:n bré:və ɔ en págə jɛ sga a sɛ́n?d a sdɛ́ð.	Jeg har nogle Breve og en Pakke, jeg skal have sendt af Sted.	I have some letters and a package I want to mail.
di vé:? **a** *di fɔr tó:? prosɛ́n?d i rɛ́ndə;*	De ved, at De faar to Procent i Rente.	You know you get two percent interest.
di vé:? di ka ál?tìð? réŋə, ves dɛr ər nɔ́:əð jɛ ka jɛ́lbə dəm mɛ́.	De ved, De kan altid ringe, hvis der er noget, jeg kan hjælpe Dem med.	You know you can always call me if there's anything I can help you with.
sɔ́ ɛr de jo: gɔ́d **a** *jɛ́ har míd mɛ́.*	Saa er det jo godt, at jeg har mit med.	Then it's a good thing I have mine.
de ɛ gɔ́d frø̀gən lársən gɔr mɛ́ dəm.	Det er godt, Frøken Larsen gaar med Dem.	It's good that Miss Larsen's going with you.

Notice in the first pair of examples that the first Danish sentence has the word *sɔm*, 'that' or 'which' while the second sentence doesn't. Actually both of the sentences could be said with or without the *sɔm*, just as both of the English equivalents could be said with or without the corresponding English word "that".

Now look at the last two pairs of examples. Notice that the first Danish sentence in each pair has the word *at* (*a*), 'that', while the second sentence in each pair doesn't. Here too, all four sentences can be said with or without the *at*, just as the English equivalents can all be said with or without the corresponding English word "that".

You saw in the preceding comment that in a clause which starts with either *sɔm* or *at*, the words *égə, gɛ́rnə, gɔt,* *lí:ə, áldri, nó:ən sénə*, etc. come before the verb, rather than after it. Look at the following sentences and notice that these words still come before the verb even when the *sɔm* and *at* are omitted.

di vé:ʔ di **ɛ́gə** *ka réŋə ɛ́fdər klɔ̀gən ní:ʔ.*	De ved, De ikke kan ringe efter Klokken ni.	You know you can't call after nine o'clock.
sɔ́ ɛr de jo: gɔ́d jɛ **égə** *har glɛ́mʔd mít.*	Saa er det jo godt, jeg ikke har glemt mit.	Then it's good I didn't forget mine.
jɛ har ed bré:ʔv hɛ́:ʔr jɛ **gɛ́rnə** *ve ví:sə daj.*	Jeg har et Brev her, jeg gerne vil vise dig.	I have a letter here I'd like to show you.
vi har fónəð en gɔ́:ʔr vi **gɔ́d** *ka lí:ʔ.*	Vi har fundet en Gaard, vi godt kan lide.	We've found a farm we like.
ves dɛr ər nɔ́:əð di **ég** *ka fènə ú:ʔð á:ʔ, sga jɛ gɛ́rnə jɛ́lbə dəm.*	Hvis der er noget, De ikke kan finde ud af, skal jeg gerne hjælpe Dem.	If there's something you can't figure out, I'll be glad to help you.

So you see that you put words like *égə, gɛ́rnə*, etc. before the verb, not only in clauses which actually do begin with *sɔm* or *at*, but also in clauses which could but don't begin with *sɔm* or *at* like those above. It's not hard for you to tell which these clauses are, since in general *sɔm* and *at* are left out just as "which" and "that" are in English.

2. More about the order of words

A.

jɛ há:ʔr **kón** *dɛ́nʔ kófərd dɛr sdɔ́:ʔr dɛ́:ʔr i jœ́rnəð;*	Jeg har kun den Kuffert, der staar der i Hjørnet.	I only have that suitcase that's standing there in the corner.
jɛ há:ʔr **fɔrɛ́sdən** *no:n gó:ə vɛ́nər i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr.*	Jeg har forresten nogle gode Venner i Aalborg.	By the way, I have some good friends in Aalborg.

jɛ́ var **nɛ̀mli** *sàɣfø̀:ər knúsəns gɛ́sd i gɔr áfdəs;*	Jeg var nemlig Sagfører Knudsens Gæst i Gaar Aftes.	You see, I went out with Mr. Knudsen last evening.
jɛ kɔm **máəð sé:ˀnd** *jɛ́mˀ.*	Jeg kom meget sent hjem.	I got home awfully late.
di há:ˀr **álˀdsɔ** *en ávtà:lə mɛ ɛ̀nsjənjør ó:ləsən.*	De har altsaa en Aftale med Ingeniør Olesen.	Then you have an appointment with Mr. Olesen.
bá:ɣərən hà:ðə **desvɛ́rə** *égə flé:ˀr ká:ɣər.*	Bageren havde desværre ikke flere Kager.	The baker didn't have any more cakes.
hán har **ɔ́sə** *sdɔ́rgən bó:ənə pɔ: sí:ˀn gɔ́:ˀr.*	Han har ogsaa Storken boende paa sin Gaard.	He has a stork on his farm, too.

Notice that the words in heavy type in these sentences, ***kon, fɔrɛ́sdən, nɛ́mli, máəð sɛ́:ˀnt, álˀdsɔ, desvɛ́rə***, and ***ɔ́sə***, come right after the verb. As you see, this is different from English where the corresponding words come at the beginning of the sentence, or at the end, or right before the verb, but not right after it. Compare, for instance, *jɛ kɔm máəð sé:ˀnd jɛ́mˀ*, 'I came very late home.' with the natural English equivalent, "I got home awfully late."

B.

nú hɔ́:bər jɛ **égə** *du ar glɛ́mˀd nɔ́:əð.*	Nu haaber jeg ikke, du har glemt noget.	I hope you haven't forgotten anything.
jɛ syns **áldri** *jɛ har nɔ́k.*	Jeg synes aldrig, jeg har nok.	It seems to me I never have enough.
jɛ́ tró:ˀr **hɛ́lərə** *jɛ ve gɔ: pɔ: pɔ́sdhù:ˀsəð.*	Jeg tror hellere, jeg vil gaa paa Posthuset.	I think I'd rather go to the post office.
jɛ tró:ˀr **lí:ə** *jɛ gɔr énənfɔ́r ɔ hɛ́ndər mi:n frágə.*	Jeg tror lige, jeg gaar indenfor og henter min Frakke.	I think I'll (just) go in and get my coat.

Notice that the words *égə*, *áldri*, *hɛ́lərə*, and *lí:ə* are put with the verbs *hɔ́:bər*, *syns*, and *tro:ˀr* in these Danish sentences instead of with the verbs in the second clauses, as they are in English. You can see that what you really say in Danish is, "I don't hope you've forgotten anything." "I never think I have enough.", "I think rather I'll go to the post office." and "I think just I'll go in and get my coat." If these Danish sentences sound strange to you, remember that we do the same thing in English when we say "I don't think I've forgotten anything.", "I don't believe it'll rain,", etc.

3. More about inverted word order

nɔr jɛ tɛ́ŋgər pɔ: tú:ˀərn hərú:ˀð, **vé:ˀ jɛ** *égə vɔrdán jɛ nó:ən sénə sga kɔ́mə jɛ́mˀ.*	Naar jeg tænker paa Turen herud, ved jeg ikke, hvordan jeg nogen Sinde skal komme hjem.	When I think of the trip out here, I don't see how I'm ever going to get home.
nɔr di tó:ˀ hɔ́lˀ har rɔbd hurá: fɔr hinánən, **kɔ̀mər kɔ́ŋən** *né:ˀð ɔ trøgər álə sbélərnə i hɔ́nˀən.*	Naar de to Hold har raabt Hurra for hinanden, kommer Kongen ned og trykker alle Spillerne i Haanden.	When the two teams have cheered each other, the king comes down and shakes hands with all the players.
nɔr di ar úðfylˀd dɛ́nˀ, **gɔr di** *ɔ́vˀer te kasé:ˀərən.*	Naar De har udfyldt den, gaar De over til Kassereren.	When you've filled it out, go over to the cashier.
di vé:ˀ, nɔr man har vɛ̆:ərð ú:ðə ɔ rájsə, **vɛ́ndər é:ˀns famí:ˀljə** *álˀtìðˀ a man kɔ̀mər jɛ́mˀ mɛ nɔ́:əð té dəm.*	De ved, naar man har været ude at rejse, venter ens Familie altid, at man kommer hjem med noget til dem.	You know, when you've been away, your family always expects you to bring them home something.
nɔr di kɔ̀mər né:ˀð a trábən, **ɛr de** *dɛn ánən dœ́:ˀr pɔ: hɔ́jrə hɔ́nˀ.*	Naar De kommer ned ad Trappen, er det den anden Dør paa højre Haand.	When you get down the stairs, it's the second door on the right.

ɔ da klɔ́gən var éd, **bəsdèldə sàγfø̀:ər knúsən** *smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð ɔ snábs.*	Og da Klokken var et, bestilte Sagfører Knudsen Smørrebrød og Snaps.	And then at one o'clock Mr. Knudsen ordered sandwiches and *Snaps.*
ves dər égə sgé:ˀr nɔ́:əð pɔ: vájˀən jɛ́mˀ, **ka vi** *gœ́:ər de pɔ: méndrə ɛn tó:ˀ tí:mər.*	Hvis der ikke sker noget paa Vejen hjem, kan vi gøre det paa mindre end to Timer.	If nothing happens on the way home, we can do it in less than two hours.
ves han bá:ər vèlə flø̀də sə léd, **ku jɛ** *máəð bɛ́ðrə sé:ˀ.*	Hvis han bare vilde flytte sig lidt, kunde jeg meget bedre se.	If he'd only move a little, I could see much better.
ves de vàjər ónˀər haltrés grámˀ, **ɛr de** *tí:ˀ ø:ər i købənhávˀn ɔ fɛ́mˀdən ø:ər ú:ðənfɔ̀r.*	Hvis det vejer under 50 Gram, er det 10 Øre i København og 15 Øre udenfor.	If it weighs under 50 grams, it's 10 *Øre* in Copenhagen and 15 outside.
ves dɛr ər nɔ́:əð di ég ka fènə ú:ˀð á:ˀ, **sga jɛ** *gɛ́rnə jɛ́lbə dəm.*	Hvis der er noget, De ikke kan finde ud af, skal jeg gerne hjælpe Dem.	If there's something you can't figure out, I'll be glad to help you.
mɛn trɛ̀ŋər du te pɛ́ŋə, **ka jɛ** *gɔ́d lɔ́:nə daj nó:ən.*	Men trænger du til Penge, kan jeg godt laane dig nogle.	But if you need money, I can lend you some.
sgu jɛ égə vɛ́:ər hər, **ka di** *jo gí: bəsgé:ˀð te mi:n sɛgrətɛ́:ˀr;*	Skulde jeg ikke være her, kan De jo give Besked til min Sekretær.	If I'm not here, you can leave a message with my secretary.
sɔ sná:ˀrd kɔ́ŋən kɔ́mˀər, **sbélər ɔrkɛ́sdərəð** *nasjoná:ˀlsàŋˀən.*	Saa snart Kongen kommer, spiller Orkesteret Nationalsangen.	As soon as the king comes, the orchestra'll play the national anthem.

You learned in Unit 5 that the normal order of the words in a Danish sentence is first the subject and then the verb. You also learned that if another part of the sentence is moved up for emphasis so that it comes first in the sentence, then the subject is moved back so that it comes after the verb. Notice now in these sentences that when the first clause in the sentence begins with the words *nɔ:ˀr* or *da*, 'when', *ves*, 'if', *sɔ sná:ˀrt*, 'as soon as', or when the "if" -idea is expressed by using inverted word order rather than the word *ves*, then in the main clause of such a sentence the subject comes after the verb; that is, you have inverted word order. This is also true if the first clause begins with the words *fɔ́r at*, 'in order that', *fɔrdí:ˀ*, 'because', *nésdə gáŋˀ*, 'next time', and *mɛ méndrə*, 'unless'.

B.

Now observe these sentences.

dí har nɔ́g famí:ˀljən ú:ðə pɔ: en lílə kǿ:ərtù:ˀr **ka jɛ sé:ˀ.**	De har nok Familien ude paa en lille Køretur, kan jeg se.	I see you have the family out for a little ride.
dé var sgám lí:ə te ǿlˀəð **mɔ: jɛ sí:ə.**	Det var skam lige til Øllet, maa jeg sige.	I must say, that was certainly a close call!
dɛr ər ed pé:ˀnd éd i nérhèðˀən a míd hotélˀ, **tró:ˀr jɛ.**	Det er et pænt et i Nærheden af mit Hotel, tror jeg.	There's a good one near my hotel, I think.

Notice that expressions like *ka jɛ sé:ˀ*, *mɔ: jɛ sí:ə* and *tró:ˀr jɛ* have inverted word order when they are tacked onto the end of a sentence.

4. Difference between *ves* and *ɔmˀ*

jɛ glémdə hé:ˀld ɔ sbǽrγə dəm i gɔr áfdəs **ɔm** *dɩ sbì:sər hávrəgrǿ:ˀð ɔm mɔ́rənən.*	Jeg glemte helt at spørge Dem i Gaar Aftes, om De spiser Havregrød om Morgenen.	I completely forgot to ask you last night $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{whether}\\\text{if}\end{matrix}\right\}$ you eat oatmeal for breakfast.
man plájər ɔ sí:ə hé:ˀr i dánmarg a man kɔ̀mər ú:ˀð ɔ rájsə **ves** *sdɔ́rgən flý:ˀr fǽrsdə gáŋˀ man sé:ˀr dɛn i ɔ́:ˀərð.*	Man plejer at sige her i Danmark, at man kommer ud at rejse, hvis Storken flyver første Gang, man ser den i Aaret.	Here in Denmark we always say that, if the stork's flying the first time you see him in the year, that means you'll go on a trip.

Notice that both *ves* and *ɔmˀ* correspond to English "if", but that *ɔmˀ* also corresponds to "whether". If you can substitute "whether" for "if" in an English sentence, you use *ɔmˀ* in Danish; otherwise you use *ves*.

5. Compounds

Here are the new compounds you had in this unit:

noun + noun

hávrəgrø̀:ˀð (Havregrød) 'oatmeal' = **hávrə** (Havre) oats + **grø:ˀð** (Grød) 'porridge'. The second part, *grø:ˀð*, is the same as in *rø̀:ˀðgrø̀:ˀð*, 'fruit pudding'.

rúbrø̀:ˀð (Rugbrød) 'pumpernickel' = **ru:ˀ** (Rug) 'rye' + **brø:ˀð** (Brød) 'bread'

sdrɔ́tà:ˀγ (Straatag) 'thatched roof' = **sdrɔ:ˀ** (Straa) 'straw' + **ta:ˀγ** (Tag) 'roof'

kó:ˀsdàlˀ (Kostald) 'cow stable' = **ko:ˀ** (Ko) cow + **sdalˀ** (Stald) 'stable'

noun + ə + noun

sví:nəsdì:ˀ (Svinesti) 'pig pen' = **svi:ˀn** (Svin) 'pig' + **ə** + **sdi:ˀ** (Sti) which, when used as a word by itself, means 'path, lane'.

hɛ́sdəsdàlˀ (Hestestald) 'horse stable' = **hɛst** (Hest) 'horse' + **ə** + **sdalˀ** (Stald) stable

noun + s + noun

béneŋsvɛ̀rk (Bindingsværk) 'half timbering' = **béneŋ** (Binding) which is rarely used as a noun by itself (it comes from the verb *bénə* (binde), 'tie, bind') + **s** + **vɛrk** (Værk) work

6. Irregular verbs

Here are the new irregular verbs you had in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
frý:sə (fryse) freeze *or* be cold	*frø:ˀs* (frøs) froze *or* was, were cold	*frósəð* (frosset) frozen *or* been cold
sɔ́və (sove) sleep	*sɔvˀ* (sov) slept	*sɔ́vəð* (sovet) slept

The irregular verb *gɔ:ˀ*, *gik*, *gɔ́:əð*, 'walk', you've had before with the meanings "go", "leave".

7. An irregular noun

The form *kǿ:ˀər/kø:ˀr* (Køer), 'cows', which you had in this unit is the irregular plural of the noun *ko:ˀ* (Ko), 'cow'.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

Read through the following sentences, putting the words in parentheses in the proper order.

1. *de ɛr jo: kéðəli a du {kɔ́mˀər / égə} te ɔ sé:ˀ sdɔ́rgən dɛr bó:ˀr pɔ: vɔ́rəs gɔ́:ˀr.*	Det er jo kedeligt, at du {kommer / ikke} til at se Storken, der bor paa vores Gaard.
2. *ves de nu {hɔ́lˀər / égə} ɔ́b mɛ ɔ rájnə, {vi / ka} égə gɔ: ú:ðənfɔ́r i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ.*	Hvis det nu {holder / ikke} op med at regne, {vi / kan} ikke gaa udenfor i Eftermiddag.
3. *nɔr di:n bró:r nu kɔ̀mər jɛ́mˀ, ja sɔ́ {vi / sga} nɔ́g hǿ:ər máŋə entrəsánˀdə téŋˀ.*	Naar din Bror nu kommer hjem, ja saa {vi / skal} nok høre mange interessante Ting.

4. *iɛ vɛ́ndəðə pɔ: tɔ́mˀ te klɔ̀gən éd, ɔ da han sɔ́ {var / égə} kɔ́məð, {jɛ / gíg} i sɛ́ŋˀ.*	Jeg ventede paa Tom til Klokken et, og da han saa {var / ikke} kommet, {jeg / gik} i Seng.
5. *vɔ́rfɔr han {ve / égə} mɛ́, {jɛ / ka} àlˀdsɔ égə fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ.*	Hvorfor han {vil / ikke} med, {jeg / kan} altsaa ikke forstaa.
6. *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr hun {ve / gɛ́rnə} a sdɛ́ð, {jɛ / vé:ˀ} vírgli égə.*	Hvornaar hun {vil / gerne} af Sted, {jeg / ved} virkelig ikke.
7. *vɔ́rfɔr ka de vɛ́:ər a di {sɔ́:ˀr / égə} vé:ðən ɔm fɔ́rɔ̀:ˀərð?*	Hvorfor kan det være, at De {saar / ikke} Hveden om Foraaret?
8. *fɔr jɛ égə lɔ́v te ɔ sɔ́və i fréð i nád, sɔ́ {jɛ / ka} égə nɔ́:ˀ ɔ gœ́:ər álˀd dé árbajˀdə i lá:ðən i mɔ́rən.*	Faar jeg ikke Lov til at sove i Fred i Nat, saa {jeg / kan} ikke naa at gøre alt det Arbejde i Laden i Morgen.
9. *mɛ méndrə dú ka kǿ:ər, {vi / mɔ:} blí:ə jɛ́mə.*	Med mindre du kan køre, {vi / maa} blive hjemme.
10. *nɔr han {har / égə} jólbəð daj, {de / ɛr} fɔrdí:ˀ han har sɔ máəð ɔ gœ́:ər.*	Naar han {har / ikke} hjulpet dig, {det / er} fordi han har saa meget at gøre.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Two Danes, Karl (karˀl) and Frederik (fréðˀərèk) are on a bicycle trip together.*

karˀl	*Karl*
jé ɛr é:ˀnli mégdi tǿrsdi.	Jeg er egentlig mægtig tørstig.
sga vi égə gɔ: énˀ ɔ prǿ:və ɔ fɔ: nɔ́:əð ɔ drégə pɔ: dénˀ gɔ́:ˀr dɛr légər dé:ˀrhènə.	Skal vi ikke gaa ind og prøve at faa noget at drikke paa den Gaard, der ligger derhenne?
vɔ́:ˀr ér vi mon é:ˀnli?	Hvor er vi mon egentlig?
fréðˀərèk	*Frederik*
dé vé:ˀ jɛ égə, jɛ ka égə sé:ˀ nɔ́:əð, hér ər sɔ mœ́rgt.	Det ved jeg ikke, jeg kan ikke se noget, her er saa mørkt.
dé mɔ: vesd vè:ər kó:ˀsdàlˀən hé:ˀr.	Det maa vist være Kostalden her.
karˀl	*Karl*
já ɔ dé:ˀr ɛr hú:ˀsəð.	Ja, og der er Huset.
dɛr ər i vé:ˀrd fálˀ nó:ən jémə, jɛ ka sé:ˀ dɛr ər ed lý:ˀs enú.	Der er i hvert Fald nogen hjemme, jeg kan se, der er et Lys endnu.
lá ɔs báŋgə pɔ́:ˀ.	Lad os banke paa.

gɔ́ràjˀərən	*Gaardejeren*
vɛ́mˀ ɛr dé?	Hvem er det?
karˀl	*Karl*
vi ve gɛ́rnə sbœ́rɣə ɔm vi ku fɔ: léd ɔ drégə;	Vi vil gerne spørge, om vi kunde faa lidt at drikke.
gɔ́ràjˀərən	*Gaardejeren*
já vɛ́rs gó:ˀ, kɔm énənfɔ̀r.	Ja, værsaagod, kom indenfor.
vɔ́:ˀr sga i dɔɣ hɛ́n pɔ: dɛ́nə tí:ˀð a nádən?[1]	Hvor skal I dog hen paa denne Tid af Natten?
fréðˀərèk	*Frederik*
vi kɔ́mˀər fra købənhávˀn ɔ ɛr pɔ: vájˀ ɔ́b te mi:n óŋˀgəl;	Vi kommer fra København og er paa Vej op til min Onkel.
gɔ́ràjˀərən	*Gaardejeren*
ɛr de láŋˀd hərfrá:ˀ;	Er det langt herfra?
ves i har løsd, ka i gɔ́d kɔ̀mə te ɔ sɔ́və hɛ́:ˀr i lá:ðən i nád, mɛn i mɔ: lɔ́:və maj égə ɔ rý:ə;	Hvis I har Lyst, kan I godt komme til at sove her i Laden i Nat, men I maa love mig ikke at ryge.
jɛ tró:ˀr égə kǿ:ˀrnə ve fɔrsdýrˀə jɛr rɛ́d máəð.	Jeg tror ikke, Køerne vil forstyrre jer ret meget.
nú sga jɛ bé:ˀ mó:r ɔm ɔ fɔ: nɔ̀:əð máð pɔ: bó:ˀərð, fɔr i ɛr ségərd súlˀdnə ɛ̀fdər dɛn láŋə kǿ:ərtù:ˀr.	Nu skal jeg bede Mor om at faa noget Mad paa Bordet, for I er sikkert sultne efter den lang Køretur.
2. *The farmer's wife gets some food ready.*	
gɔ́ràjˀərən	*Gaardejeren*
nɔ́ dɛ́:ˀr kɔ́mˀər hun mɛ má:ˀðən.	Naa, der kommer hun med Maden.
vɛ́rs gó:ˀ ɔ sbí:ˀs.	Værsaagod og spis.

---

[1] Country people often use *du* and *i* even to people they don't know.

karˀl	*Karl*
máŋə tág, dé ser hɛ́rli ú:ˀð.	Mange Tak, det ser herligt ud.
vɔr sdó:ˀr ɛr gɔ́:ˀərn hɛ́:ˀr?	Hvor stor er Gaarden her?
gɔ́ràjˀərəns kó:nə	*Gaardejerens Kone*
vɩ́ há:ˀr imɛ́lˀəm haltrés ɔ trés tø̀nər lánˀ, ɔ dé ɛr mé:ər ɛn nɔ́g fɔ́r ɔs.	Vi har imellem 50-60 Tønder Land, og det er mere end nok for os.
ɔ i ɔ́:ˀr har vi lɩ́:ə fɔ́:əð ný:ˀ svɩ́:nəsdɩ̀:ˀ.	Og i Aar har vi lige faaet ny Svinesti.
fréðˀərèk	*Frederik*
nɔ́ vɔr máŋə grɩ́:sə há:ˀr di da?	Naa, hvor mange Grise har De da?
gɔ́ràjˀərəns kó:nə	*Gaardejerens Kone*
fá vɔr máŋə ɛ́r de fá:r?	Ja, hvor mange er det, Far?
gɔ́ràjˀərən	*Gaardejeren*
fɛ́mˀ ɔ tý:və, ɔ vi har tó:ˀ hɛ́sdə ọ fɛ́mˀdən kø̀:ˀr.	Fem og tyve, og vi har to Heste og femten Køer.
karˀl	*Karl*
di har vɛl égə sɔ trávˀld i ɔgtó:ˀbər mɔ́:nəð, nu da di har fɔ̀:əð kórˀnəð énˀ;	De har vel ikke saa travlt i Oktober Maaned, nu da De har faaet Kornet ind?
gɔ́ràjˀərən	*Gaardejeren*
jó: vi har sɔ̀mən trávˀl hé:lə ɔ́:ˀərð rónˀd hɛ́:ˀr pɔ: lánˀəð.	Jo, vi har saamænd travlt hele Aaret rundt her paa Landet.
i dá:ˀ har vi vɛ̀:ərð ú:ðə ɔ sɔ́:ˀ.	I Dag har vi været ude at saa.
vi sɔ́:ˀr jo: rú:ˀ ɔ vé:ðə i ɔgtó:ˀbər ɔ býg ɔ hávrə i aprɩ́:ˀl.	Vi saar jo Rug og Hvede i Oktober og Byg og Havre i April.

mɛn nú sga jɛ vɩ:sə jɛr ɔ́vʔər i lá:ðən, fɔr i ɛr nɔ́g trɛ́də.	Men nu skal jeg vise jer over i Laden, for I er nok trætte.
ves i ve há:ʔ no:n lɛ́bər, sɔ́ si tél, vi há:ʔr álʔtiðʔ no:n ɛ́gsdrə.	Hvis I vil have nogle Tæpper, saa sig til, vi har altid nogle ekstra.
fréðʔərèk	*Frederik*
já tág, ɔ máŋə tág fɔr máð.	Ja, Tak, og mange Tak for Mad.
gɔ́ràjʔərən	*Gaardejeren*
já sɛ́lʔ ták.	Ja, selv Tak.
gonád ɔ sɔ́vʔ gɔ́t.	God Nat og sov godt.
karʔl	*Karl*
tág i lɩ:ə mɔ́:ðə.	Tak i lige Maade.
3. Early the next morning.	
fréðʔərèk	*Frederik*
ɔ́ di fɔrbánʔəðə hœ́nʔs.	Aah, de forbandede Høns!
já sɔ́ ɛr fréðʔən fɔrbɩ:ʔ.	Ja, saa er Freden forbi.
la ɔs sé:ʔ ɔ kɔ̀mə né:ʔð ɔ fɔ́:ʔ nɔ́:əð mɔ́rənmàð, sɔ́ ka vi bá:ʔɛ̀fdər sé:ʔ pɔ: gɔ́:ʔərn sámʔən.	Lad os se at komme ned og faa noget Morgenmad, saa kan vi bagefter se paa Gaarden sammen.
karʔl	*Karl*
dú dé ɛ vírgli en pɛ́:ʔn gáməl gɔ́:ʔr mɛ fɩ:ər lɛ́ŋər.	Du, det er virkelig en pæn gammel Gaard med fire Længer.

dɛn har bɔ̀:ðə bénenswɛ̀rg ɔ sdrɔ́tà:ˀɣ, de sé:ˀr nu sɔ́ hýgəli ú:ˀð.

ɔ du ka sé:ˀ, sdɔ́rgən plájər ɔ bó:ˀ dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə pɔ: tá:ˀɣəð ɔm sɔ́mərən.

gɔ́ràjˀərəns kó:nə

nɔ́ go: mɔ́rən;

vɔrdán har i sɔ́vəð?

frɛ́ðˀərɛ̀k

úðmɛrgəð ták.

gɔ́ràjˀərəns kó:nə

i har vɛl égə frósəð;

karˀl

ɩ: nájˀ, égə de ménˀsdə.

de var dájli várˀmd i lá:ðən.

mɛn vi ve máəð gɛ́rnə ha lɔ́v te ɔ bətá:ˀlə;

gɔ́ràjˀərəns kó:nə

nájˀ égə tá:lə ɔ́mˀ.

mi:n mánˀ bá:ˀð hílsə, han var ké:ˀð á han égə ku vɛ́:ər hər ɔ sɩ́:ə farvél;

han ɛr alərέ:ðə i márgən.

Den har baade Bindingsværk og Straatag, det ser nu saa hyggeligt ud.

Og du kan se, Storken plejer at bo deroppe paa Taget om Sommeren.

Gaardejerens Kone

Naa, God Morgen.

Hvordan har I sovet?

Frederik

Udmærket, Tak.

Gaardejerens Kone

I har vel ikke frosset?

Karl

Ih nej, ikke det mindste.

Det var dejlig varmt i Laden.

Men vi vil meget gerne have Lov til at betale.

Gaardejerens Kone

Nej, ikke Tale om.

Min Mand bad hilse, han var ked af, han ikke kunde være her og sige Farvel.

Han er allerede i Marken.

ka i égə sé:ʔ ham, han gɔ́:ʔr dɛ́:ʔrù:ðə;	Kan I ikke se ham, han gaar derude.
jɛ har mɔ́rənmà:ʔðən pará:ʔd té jɛr.	Jeg har Morgenmaden parat til jer.
karʔl	*Karl*
máŋə tág, mɛn dè ɛ vírgli álʔd fɔr máəð.	Mange Tak, men det er virkelig alt for meget.
gɔ́ràjʔərəns kó:nə	*Gaardejerens Kone*
vɛ́rs gó:ʔ, hɛ́:ʔr ɛr várʔm hávrəgrø̀:ʔð ɔ mɛ́lʔg ɔ álʔd de rúbrø̀:ʔð ɔ ósd i ka sbí:sə.	Værsaagod, her er varm Havregrød og Mælk og alt de Rugbrød og Ost, I kan spise.
ves i ve ha mé:ər, mɔ: i bá:ər bé:ʔ ɔ́mʔ də.	Hvis I vil have mere, maa I bare bede om det.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You, a Danish friend, Niels, who's a farmer, and his wife.

You go out to spend the week-end with Niels and his wife on their farm. When you get there, Niels' wife greets you and tells you that Niels was awfully sorry he couldn't be there but he asked her to say hello fos him. He had to go in town to buy some pigs and he war afraid he wouldn't be back until around eight o'clock. You thank her for the invitation out there (*tág fɔrdí:ʔ jɛ mɔ́də kɔ́mə*). You talk with her for a while and then your friend comes. You and he compare notes about your farms, yours in America and his in Denmark. You talk about how large the farms are, how many horses, cows, pigs and chickens each of you has, when you plant wheat and rye and barley and oats, etc. Finally Niels suggests going to bed, since he has to be up early in the morning. He says that he hopes the children won't make too much noise and disturb you—then you can sleep in peace as long as you want to. You say that you'd rather get up early too and ask him to knock on your door around seven-thirty. His wife asks if you eat oatmeal in the morning and you tell her that you like it very much. Then Niels shows you to your room, says he hopes it won't be too cold for you and tells you that there's another blanket on the chair in the corner. You say good-night to one another and he leaves.

2. Describe to a friend the Danish farm you spent the week-end on.

It has four wings, is half-timbered and has a thatched roof. It's quite large—200 *tø̀nər lán?*. There are six horses, 40 cows and 80 pigs on the farm, and there's a stork living on the roof. You saw the cow and horse stables, the granary, and the pig-sty, and went out into the fields to help plant oats and barley.

Finder List

báŋgə, -ðə (banke, -de) knock
béneŋsvɛ̀rk, -əð (Bindingsværk, -et) half-timbering
byk, -ən, (Byg, -gen) barley
ɛ́:ʔɣənli/ɛ́:ʔnli (egentlig) actually
énənfɔ̀r/énənfɔr (indenfor) inside
freð, frêðʔən (Fred, -en) peace
fréðʔərèk (Frederik) Fredrick
frý:sə, frý:ʔsər, frø:ʔs, frósəð (fryse, frøs, frosset) be cold, freeze
fɔrbánʔəð, -ə (forbandet, forbandede) darn
fɔrsdýrʔə, -ðə (forstyrre, -de) disturb
gri:ʔs, -ən, grí:sə (Gris, -en, -e) pig
gɔ:ʔ, gik, gɔ́:əð (gaa, gik, gaaet) walk
hávrə, -n (Havre, -n) oats
hávrəgrø:ʔð, -ən (Havregrød, -en) oatmeal
hɛ́sdəsdàlʔ, -ən, hɛ́sdəsdàlə (Hestestald, -en, -e) horse stable
hɛst, -ən, -ə (Hest, -en, -e) horse

hœnʔs (Høns) (*plural*) chickens, poultry

i: (ih) gosh

i vɛ́:ʔrd fálʔ (i hvert Fald) at least

igɛ́nʔəm (igennem) through

imɛ́lʔəm (imellem) between, among

karʔl (Karl) Carl

ké:ʔð á:ʔ (ked af) sorry (about)

ko:ʔ, -ən, kǿ:ʔər/kø:ʔr (Ko, -en, Køer) cow

korʔn, -əð (Korn, -et) grain

kó:ʔsdàlʔ, -ən, kó:ʔsdàlə (Kostald, -en, -e) cow stable

kɔ̀mə (*kɔmʔ, kɔ̀məð*) *tél at* (komme) (kom, kommet) (til at) get to, happen to

lá:ðə, -n, -r (Lade, -n, -r) granary

lɛ́ŋə, -n, -r (Længe, -n, -r) wing (*of a building*)

lí:ə (lige) equal

i lí:ə mɔ́:ðə (i lige Maade) the same to you

lɔv, lɔ́:ʔvən (Lov, -en) permission

fɔ: lɔ́v te (faa Lov til) get permission to, be allowed to, be able to

mark, -ən, -ər (Mark, -en, -er) field

mɔ́:ðə, -n, -r (Maade, -n, -r) manner, way

i lí:ə mɔ́:ðə (i lige Maade) the same to you

plájə (*-ðə*) *at/ɔ* (pleje) (-de) (at) be accustomed to, be in the habit of

rúbrø̀:ʔð, -ən (Rugbrød, -en) pumpernickel

ru:ʔ, -ən (Rug, -en) rye

sámʔən (sammen) together

sdalʔ, -ən, sdálə (Stald, -en, -e) stable

sdrɔ́tà:ʔɣ, -əð, sdrɔ́tà:ɣə (Straatag, -et, -e) thatched roof

sdɔrk, -ən, -ə (Stork, -en, -e) stork

sigá:ʔr, sigá:ʔərn, sigá:ʔər (Cigar, -en, -er) cigar

sví:nəsdì:ʔ, -ən, sví:nəsdì:ər (Svinesti, -en, -er) pigsty

sɔ:ʔ, sɔ́:əðə, sɔ́:əð (saa, -ede, -et) plant, sow

sɔ́və, sɔ́vʔər, sɔvʔ, sɔ́vəð (sove, sov, sovet) sleep

ta:ʔɣ, -əð, tá:ɣə (Tag, -et, -e) roof

tɛ́bə, -ð, -r (Tæppe, -t, -r) blanket

ti:ʔð: ve ni: tí:ʔðən (ved ni Tiden) around nine o'clock

tǿnə (*-n, -r*) *lánʔ* (Tønde) (-n, -r) (Land) measure of land equal to 1.37 acres

vé:ðə, -n (Hvede, -n) wheat

vɛrk, -əð, -ər (Værk, -et, -er) work

ɔmʔ (om) if, whether

UNIT 24

REVIEW

SECTION A—WORD STUDY

This section is just like section A of Units 6, 12 and 18. Work through the exercises individually, following the instructions carefully. Read aloud the completed or altered sentences, but don't write anything down. Be prepared to do on sight any one of the exercises when your Leader calls on you.

1. Change the English expressions given in parentheses in these sentences into Danish.

1. *dɛn ɛ lí:ə* (half past four) *nú.*	Den er lige (*half past four*) nu.
2. *vi mǿdəs* (at twenty-five minutes past eleven) *pɔ: hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn.*	Vi mødtes (*at twenty-five minutes past eleven*) paa Hovedbanegaarden.
3. *vi sga vɛ́:ər dər* (at five minutes past eight) *vɛ́:ˀr mɔ́rən.*	Vi skal være der (*at five minutes past eight*) hver Morgen.
4. *ka i kɔ́mə te méda hos ɔ́s* (the 13th of November at half past seven);	Kan I komme til Middag hos os (*the 13th of November at half past seven*)?
5. *já nú ɛr klɔ́gən* (twenty-five minutes of ten) *ɔ hun ɛr égə kɔ́məð enú.*	Ja, nu er Klokken (*twenty-five minutes of ten*) og hun er ikke kommet endnu.
6. *ka vi sbì:sə frógɔsd* (at quarter of one);	Kan vi spise Frokost (*at quarter of one*)?
7. *vi kǿ:ər hɛ́:ˀrfrà* (at twenty minutes past eleven).	Vi kører herfra (*at twenty minutes past eleven*).
8. *kámˀbən bəgǿnˀdər* (at twenty minutes of three).	Kampen begyndter (*at twenty minutes of three*).

9. *vi rájsdə fra dánmarg* (May 25, 1940) *ɔ kɔm te amé:ˀrika* (the 10th of June).	Vi rejste fra Danmark (*May 25, 1940*) og kom til Amerika (*the 10th of June*).
10. *klɔ́gən blé:ˀ* (twenty minutes past two) *fœ́:ˀr dɔ́gdərən kɔ́mˀ.*	Klokken blev (*twenty minutes past two*), før Doktoren kom.
11. *kasé:ˀərən rájsdə te svɛ́rˀi* (June 27th).	Kassereren rejste til Sverrig (*June 27th*).
12. *ka du [illegible]ɛ́:ər pɔ: mid kontó:ˀr* (at twenty-five minutes past one);	Kan du være paa mit Kontor (*at twenty-five minutes past one*)?
13. *di gí:ˀr en méda fɔr hénə* (January 2nd).	De giver en Middag for hende (*January 2nd*).
14. *tɔ́:ˀɣəð gɔ́:ˀr* (at 19:15).	Toget gaar (*at 19:15*).
15. *di ble: gífd* (September 20, 1920).	De blev gift (*September 20, 1920*).
16. (When) *vi kɔ́mˀ te báŋˀgən, var dən álərе:ðə lógəð.*	(*When*) vi kom til Banken, var den allerede lukket.
17. (When) *vi kǿ:bər en ný:ˀ gɔ́:ˀr, mɔ: dən bəsdɛ́mˀd ha en bɛ́ðrə lá:ðə ɛn dɛ́nə.*	(*When*) vi køber en ny Gaard, maa den bestemt have en bedre Lade end denne.
18. (This morning) *to: vi te sgɔ́vˀən ɔ* (this afternoon) *sbéləðə vi tɛ́nes.*	(*This morning*) tog vi til Skoven og (*this afternoon*) spillede vi Tennis.
19. *ka i vɛ̀:ər pará:ˀdə* (in twenty minutes);	Kan I være parate (*in twenty minutes*)?
20. *jɛ barbé:ˀər maj álˀtiðˀ* (in the morning).	Jeg barberer mig altid (*in the morning*).
21. *mi:n mánˀ ɔ jáj har bó:ˀəð pɔ: dɛ́nə gɔ́:ˀr* (for 25 years).	Min Mand og jeg har boet paa denne Gaard (*for 25 years*).
22. *vɔ́:ˀr sga du hɛ́nˀ* (this afternoon);	Hvor skal du hen (*this afternoon*)?
23. (When) *di ble: gífd, var han báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀd, mɛn nú ɛr han kasé:ˀər.*	(*When*) de blev gift, var han Bankassistent, men nu er han Kasserer.

24. *di bətá:ˀlər dèrəs pí:ə en hálˀ kró:nə* (an hour).	De betaler deres Pige en halv Krone (*an hour*).
25. (When) *man har légəð pɔ: hosbitá:ˀləð en hé:ˀl mɔ́:nəð, glɛ́:ðər man saj té ɔ kɔ̀mə jɛ́mˀ.*	(*When*) man har ligget paa Hospitalet en hel Maaned, glæder man sig til at komme hjem.
26. *sɔm ré:ˀɔl ka man nɔ́:ˀ bý:ˀən* (in twenty minutes), *mɛn dɛ́nə gáŋˀ kɔ́mˀər vi dər fœ́rsd* (in half an hour).	Som Regel kan man naa Byen (*in twenty minutes*), men denne Gang kommer vi der først (*in half an hour*).
27. *man ka flý:və te ɛ́ŋlànˀ* (in five hours).	Man kan flyve til England (*in five hours*).
28. *te sígəllø̀:ˀb ka han kǿ:ər é:ˀn kilomé:ˀdər* (a minute).	Til Cykelløb kan han køre en Kilometer (*a minute*).
29. *ves vi nɔ́:ˀr dé tɔ́:ˀɣ, sɔ́ ɛr vi i købənhávˀn* (in forty minutes).	Hvis vi naar det Tog, saa er vi i København (*in forty minutes*).
30. *sɔ́ sé:ˀs vi* (in a quarter of an hour).	Saa ses vi (*in a quarter of an hour.*)

2. Read through these sentences, putting the words in parentheses in the proper order:

1. *ves du* $\begin{Bmatrix}\textit{jɛ́lˀbər}\\ \textit{égə}\end{Bmatrix}$ *maj mɛ dɛ́nˀ págə,*	Hvis du $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{hjælper}\\ \text{ikke}\end{Bmatrix}$ mig med den Pakke,
$\begin{Bmatrix}\textit{du}\\ \textit{fɔ́:ˀr}\end{Bmatrix}$ *égə dɛ́nˀ ká:ɣə jɛ har lɔ́:vəð daj.*	$\begin{Bmatrix}\text{du}\\ \text{faar}\end{Bmatrix}$ ikke den Kage, jeg har lovet dig.
2. *sɔ sná:ˀrt han* $\begin{Bmatrix}\textit{har}\\ \textit{égə}\end{Bmatrix}$ *nɔ́:əð ɔ bəsdélˀə,*	Saa snart han $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{har}\\ \text{ikke}\end{Bmatrix}$ noget at bestille,
$\begin{Bmatrix}\textit{han}\\ \textit{begǿnˀər}\end{Bmatrix}$ *ɔ drégə fɔr máəð.*	$\begin{Bmatrix}\text{han}\\ \text{begynder}\end{Bmatrix}$ at drikke for meget.

3. *ves du* $\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{ka}\\ \textit{égə}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *kɔ́mə klɔ̀gən fí:ər,*	Hvis du $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{kan}\\ \text{ikke}\end{matrix}\right\}$ komme Klokken fire,
$\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{ka}\\ \textit{jɛ}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *égə sé:ˀ daj i dá:ˀ.*	$\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{kan}\\ \text{jeg}\end{matrix}\right\}$ ikke se dig i Dag.
4. *ves du* $\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{ve}\\ \textit{gɛ́rnə}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *a sdɛ́ð nú,*	Hvis du $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{vil}\\ \text{gerne}\end{matrix}\right\}$ af Sted nu,
$\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{ve}\\ \textit{jɛ}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *réŋə ɛ́fdər en tágsa fɔ́r daj.*	$\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{vil}\\ \text{jeg}\end{matrix}\right\}$ ringe efter en Taxa for dig.
5. *vɔ́:ˀr han* $\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{ve}\\ \textit{égə}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *hɛ́nˀ,* $\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{jɛ}\\ \textit{ve}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *hɛ́lˀər égə hɛ́nˀ.*	Hvor han $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{vil}\\ \text{ikke}\end{matrix}\right\}$ hen, $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{jeg}\\ \text{vil}\end{matrix}\right\}$ heller ikke hen.
6. *nɛ́sdə gáŋˀ du* $\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{gœ́r}\\ \textit{égə}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *va jɛ bé:ˀr daj ɔ́mˀ,*	Næste Gang du $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{gør}\\ \text{ikke}\end{matrix}\right\}$, hvad jeg beder dig om,
$\left\{\begin{matrix}\textit{jɛ}\\ \textit{síər}\end{matrix}\right\}$ *dé te di:n fá:r.*	$\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{jeg}\\ \text{siger}\end{matrix}\right\}$ det til din Far.

7. *fɔr ɔ dɛn lílə drɛ́ŋˀ* $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{sgùlə}\\\text{égə}\end{Bmatrix}$ *fálə né:ˀð a tråbən,* $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{vi}\\\text{bá:ˀr}\end{Bmatrix}$ *ham.*	For at den lille Dreng $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{skulde}\\\text{ikke}\end{Bmatrix}$ falde ned ad Trappen, $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{vi}\\\text{bar}\end{Bmatrix}$ ham.
8. *mɛ méndrə du har øl,* $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{jɛ}\\\text{ve}\end{Bmatrix}$ *égə bé:ˀ pé:ˀdər i áfdən.*	Med mindre du har Øl, $\begin{Bmatrix}\text{jeg}\\\text{vil}\end{Bmatrix}$ ikke bede Peter i Aften.

3. Change the English expressions given in parentheses into Danish.

1. *hun* (has just run) *né:ˀð pɔ: majərí:ˀəð ɛ́fdər en dé:silìdər flø:ðə.*	Hun (*has just run*) ned paa Mejeriet efter en Deciliter Fløde.
2. *di sɪər égə a han* (has come) *jɛ́mˀ alərè:ðə.*	De siger ikke, at han (*has come*) hjem allerede?
3. *han* (had just been shaved), *da teləfó:ˀnən réŋəðə.*	Han (*had just been shaved*), da Telefonen ringede.
4. *blɛ́gəð mɔ:* (have fallen) *ú:ˀð a véndu:ˀəð da hun gjó:ər ré:ˀnt.*	Blækket maa (*have fallen*) ud af Vinduet, da hun gjorde rent.
5. *jɛ tró:ˀr han* (has gone) *ú:ˀð i kó:ˀsdàlˀən.*	Jeg tror, han (*has gone*) ud i Kostalden.
6. *hé:lə dɛ̀rəs hú:ˀs* (has been examined) *a polətí:ˀəð.*	Hele deres Hus (*has been examined*) af Politiet.
7. *mi:n søsdər* (has bicycled) *te sdránˀən mɛ pé:ˀdər.*	Min Søster (*has bicycled*) til Stranden med Peter.
8. *han* (has just begun) *ɔ rý:ə sigá:ˀər.*	Han (*has just begun*) at ryge Cigarer.

4. Read through the following conversation, filling in the proper comparison forms of the adjectives given in parentheses.

karˀl:	*kέnər du néls lársən;*	Kender du Niels Larsen?
krésdən:	*ɔ́m jɛ kέnər ham.*	Om jeg kender ham.
	hán ɛr de (fleŋˀk) mέnəsgə jɛ kέnər.	Han er det (flink) Menneske, jeg kender.
karˀl:	*kέnər du ɔ́sə hans kó:nə;*	Kender du ogsaa hans Kone?
krésdən:	*já hun ɛr da vέldi sø:ˀð.*	Ja, hun er da vældig sød.
	jɛ var fɔrέsdən dərú:ðə sísdə lœ́rda ɔ vi há:ðə de (dájli) vέ:ˀr mɔ: jɛ sɨ:ə.	Jeg var forresten derude sidste Lørdag, og vi havde det (dejlig) Vejr, maa jeg sige.
karˀl:	*var dər máŋə mέnəsgər;*	Var der mange Mennesker?
krésdən:	*já ɔ έrli tá:ˀld de var é:ˀn a di (mórsɔmˀ) méda:ə jɛ nó:ən sénə har vέ:ərð té.*	Ja, og ærlig talt, det var en af de (morsom) Middage, jeg nogen Sinde har været til.
karˀl:	*mɛn di bó:ˀr láŋˀd ú:ðə pɔ: lánˀəð. égə;*	Men de bor langt ude paa Landet, ikke?
krésdən:	*jó:ˀ de (nɛ:ˀr) hú:ˀs lègər tre:fɨ:ər kilomé:ˀdər dərfrá:ˀ.*	Jo, det (nær) Hus ligger tre-fire km. derfra.
karˀl:	*vɔrdán ɛr hú:ˀsəð?*	Hvordan er Huset?
krésdən:	*de ɛ máəð (sdo:ˀr) ɔ (ly:ˀs) ɛn de gámlə di bó:ðə ɨ:ˀ fœ́:ˀr.*	Det er meget (stor) og (lys) end det gamle, de boede i før.
karˀl:	*nɔ́ ɔ vá lá:vəðə i sɔ́ èfdər méda?*	Naa, og hvad lavede I saa efter Middag?
krésdən:	*vi dánsəðə ú:ðə hé:lə áfdənən.*	Vi dansede ude hele Aftenen.
	jɛ har desvέrə fɔ́:əð dɛn (frøgli) fɔrkø:ˀləlsə, ka du nɔ́g hø:ər.	Jeg har desværre faaet den (frygtelig) Forkølelse, kan du nok høre.

	mɛn jɛ tráf dɛn (sø:ʔð) ɛ́ŋʔəlsgə pí:ə.	Men jeg traf den (sød) engelske Pige.
	mɛn la maj hø:ər, vá gjó:ər dú i gɔ́:ʔr?	Men lad mig høre, hvad gjorde du i Gaar?
karʔl:	*jɛ to: te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr;*	Jeg tog til Aalborg.
krésdən:	*te ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr; dé sí:ər du égə.*	Til Aalborg? Det siger du ikke!
karʔl:	*jó:ʔ jɛ fég de (sbɛ́nənə) teləgrámʔ ɔm mɔ́rənən fra é:ʔn a mi:n fá:rs vɛ́nər sɔm bá:ʔð maj kɔ̀mə dɛrɔ́wʔər mɛ de sámə.*	Jo, jeg fik det (spændende) Telegram om Morgenen fra en af min Fars Venner, som bad mig komme derover med det samme.
	sɔ jɛ flɔ́jʔ dɛrɔ́wʔər.	Saa jeg fløj derover.
	de var dɛn (hɛ́rli) tú:ʔr mɔ: jɛ sí:ə.	Det var den (herlig) Tur, maa jeg sige.
	de gɔ́:ʔr jo: sɔ máəð (hórdi) ɔ flý:və a man fɔr slɛ́d égə tí:ʔð te ɔ blì:ə trɛ́t.	Det gaar jo saa meget (hurtig) at flyve, at man faar slet ikke Tid til at blive træt.
krésdən:	*nɔ́ ɔ vá sgé:də dər sɔ́ dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀wrə?*	Naa, og hvad skete der saa derovre?
karʔl:	*jó:ʔ jɛ ónərsgrè:ʔv en kontrágt;*	Jo, jeg underskrev en Kontrakt.
	jɛ sga árbajʔdə mɛ é:ʔn a di (go:ʔ) ensjənjø:ʔər dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀wrə, ɔ jɛ sga bəgønʔə pɔ: nɛ́sdə mánʔda.	Jeg skal arbejde med en af de (god) Ingeniører derovre og jeg skal begynde paa næste Mandag.
krésdən:	*ɛr də gɔ́d bətá:ʔlt;*	Er det godt betalt?
karʔl:	*já de ɛ máəð (gɔt) bətá:ʔld ɛn dé jɛ nú há:ʔr.*	Ja, det er meget (godt) betalt, end det jeg nu har.
	ɔ jɛ kùnə égə ha fɔ́:əð en (fleŋʔk) mánʔ ɔ árbajʔdə mɛ́.	Og jeg kunde ikke have faaet en (flink) Mand at arbejde med.

5. Change the English words in parentheses in these sentences into Danish:

1. *han ha:ʔr tó:ʔ* (married) *søsdrə i dánmarg ɔ en* (unmarried) *bró:r i ɛ́ŋlànʔ.* Han har to (*married*) Søstre i Danmark og en (*unmarried*) Bror i England.

2. *di kɔ́mʔər mɔ:sgé:ʔ i áfdən, mɛn de ɛ réd* (uncertain)	De kommer maaske i Aften, men det er ret (*uncertain*).
3. *hènəs mánʔ kø̀:ər máəð* (carelessly).	Hendes Mand kører meget (*carelessly*).
4. *han vár sɔ* (unlucky) *ɔ fálə i vánʔəð i gɔr áfdəs.*	Han var saa (*unlucky*) at falde i Vandet i Gaar Aftes.
5. *ɛr hun álʔtìðʔ sɔ* (unkind) *imó:ʔð dáj;*	Er hun altid saa (*unkind*) imod dig?
6. *de ɛr frø̀gli* (uninteresting) *árbajʔdə han gœ́r.*	Det er frygtelig (*uninteresting*) Arbejde, han gør.

6. Do the following in Danish:

1. Tell a salesman that you don't like that suit and ask him to show you another one.
2. Tell a friend who's asking you about your farm that you had six cows, but you've just bought another, so now you have seven.
3. Refuse an invitation to go on a bicycle trip with a friend because your bicycle's being fixed right now.
4. Tell a friend that your brother's been sick for two weeks, but he was examined by (*a*) three doctors yesterday and they couldn't find anything wrong with him.
5. Tell another farmer that the wheat and rye on your farm were planted a week ago.
6. Tell a business acquaintance that those typewriters were bought during the war—that's why they make so much noise.
7. Tell a customer that the package he ordered was sent three days ago.
8. Tell your father that you almost bought a new car yesterday, but it was much too expensive.

7. The following compounds are made up of words you know. What do you think they mean?

butígsvèndu	Butiksvindue	*kórnmàrk*	Kornmark	*rájnvɛ:rsdà:ʔ*	Regnvejrsdag
sý:əvɛ̀:ərlsə	Sygeværelse	*hœ́nsəkøðssòbə*	Hønsekødssuppe	*béneŋsvɛrgshù:ʔs*	Bindingsværkshus
sdó:lərø̀k	Stoleryg	*aví:ʔskontò:ʔr*	Aviskontor	*sigá:ʔrèsgə*	Cigaræske

fabrégsàrbajˀdə	Fabriksarbejde	*dɔ́:səmàð*	Daasemad	*vé:ðəmàrk*	Hvedemark
kontó:ˀràrbajˀdə	Kontorarbejde	*mέlgəflàsgə*	Mælkeflaske	*biográ:ˀfteà:ˀdər*	Biografteatre
sέŋəlὲbə	Sengetæppe	*hǽnsəbὲ:ˀn*	Hønseben	*ílpɔ̀st*	Ilpost
hέsdəkø̀ð	Hestekød	*bɔ́:γhànˀlər*	Boghandler	*iέmvàjˀ*	Hjemvej

SECTION B—CONVERSATION

Take parts and work through the following suggested conversations. When you can do them easily, branch out and include anything discussed in the previous units.

1. You have just heard that a friend of yours has had an accident and is in the hospital. Call his wife, and ask her how he is, how it happened, how long he'll have to be in the hospital, etc. Ask if he can have visitors and find out when the visiting hours are. Tell her that you'll try to go and see him tomorrow evening.
2. Go shopping for your wife and buy food for the week-end—meat, fresh and canned vegetables, milk, eggs, sugar, flour, cheese, cakes, etc.
3. Talk with a friend about a business trip you're planning to make to England. The director of your factory is sending you, and you're looking forward to it, because you've never been to England before. You hope you can fly—you've never been in an airplane either. You'll be gone a month and will travel around England, visit the different factories, and talk with the men who work in them.
4. Go to the bank on business. Draw out some money, cash a check, open an account, etc.
5. Ask a friend about his farm—how big it is, how many animals he has, what grains and vegetables he plants, etc. He asks if you wouldn't like to come out and see it some day. You tell him you would. He sets a day and you arrange what time you should go, how you get there, etc.
6. Go to the post office and do various errands there. Buy stamps, mail letters and a package, send a telegram, etc.
7. Arrive at your office in the morning, greet your

secretary, ask her what appointments you have for the day, find out if there were any messages the afternoon before when you weren't there. Tell her that 'Director Olesen' is coming in this morning to sign a contract and ask her if it's ready. Tell her that you'll be so busy today that you won't have time to eat lunch with Mr. Petersen; ask her to call him and tell him that.

8. Compare accidents with a friend. You fell down the stairs at your sister's house. There was supposed to be a light there, but you couldn't find it and it was so dark that you couldn't see where you were going. You fell over some magazines that were lying on the stairs. You thought you had a broken leg, it hurt so much, but you didn't. You were lucky that it wasn't more serious. Your friend actually did break his leg when he was run over by a car out in the country. The car didn't stop and he couldn't move, so he had to wait until a boy came by on a bicycle. The boy rode to the nearest farm and called a doctor

SECTION C—LISTENING IN (QUESTIONS)

Listen to the Guide as each one of the conversations is read. The second time listen carefully for points you may have missed the first time. Then answer the questions listed below on each conversation.

1. *Per tells his girl about a trip he and his brother Ole went on.*

1. *vɔ́:ˀr kǿ:rdə pé:r ɔ ó:lə hɛ́nˀ?*	Hvor kørte Per og Ole hen?
2. *vɔrdán vésdə óŋˀglən a di kɔ́mˀ?*	Hvordan vidste Onkelen, at de kom?
3. *vá bəsdélˀdə di i márgən?*	Hvad bestilte de i Marken?
4. *var lá:ðən fúlˀ;*	Var Laden fuld?
5. *vɔrnɔ́:ˀr tó:ˀ di jɛ́mˀ?*	Hvornaar tog de hjem?
6. *vá sgé:də dər pɔ: vájˀən jɛ́mˀ?*	Hvad skete der paa Vejen hjem?

2. *Two Danish girls, Kirsten and Marianne, talk about a wedding.*

1. *vɛ́mʔ blé:ʔ bó:dil kɛ́:ʔr gífd mɛ́?*	Hvem blev Bodil Kær gift med?
2. *vɛ́mʔ gig hun ú:ʔð mɛ́ hé:lə sísdə ɔ́:ʔr?*	Hvem gik hun ud med hele sidste Aar?
3. *vá sgé:də dər ɔm áfdənən?*	Hvad skete der om Aftenen?
4. *vɔr lɛ́ŋə blé:ʔ gɛ́sdərnə?*	Hvor længe blev Gæsterne?
5. *vá gjó:ər di?*	Hvad gjorde de?
6. *vɔ́:ʔr rájsdə hɛ́r ɔ frú í:ʔvərsən hɛ́nʔ?*	Hvor rejste Herr og Fru Iversen hen?
7. *vɔr lɛ́ŋə sga di vɛ́:ər vɛ́k?*	Hvor længe skal de være væk?
8. *vɔ́:ʔr sga di bó:ʔ nɔr di kɔ́mʔər tebá:ɣə?*	Hvor skal de bo, naar de kommer tilbage?

3. *Svendsen tells Andersen about his secretary.*

1. *vɔ́:ʔr ər svɛ́nʔsəns sɛgrətɛ́:ʔr?*	Hvor er Svendsens Sekretær?
2. *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr blé:ʔv hun énlàgt?*	Hvornaar blev hun indlagt?
3. *vá ɛ́r dər i vájʔən mɛ́ hɛ̀nə?*	Hvad er der i Vejen med hende?
4. *vɔr lɛ́ŋə tró:ʔr svɛ́nʔsən hun sga vɛ́:ər dər?*	Hvor længe tror Svendsen, hun skal være der?
5. *vɛ́mʔ kɔ́mʔər fɔr ɔ jɛ́lbə ham?*	Hvem kommer for at hjælpe ham?

4. *A Trip to England*

1. *har hɛ́ljə vɛ̀:ərð i ɛ́ŋlànʔ;*	Har Helge været i England?
2. *vɔrnɔ́:ʔr var han dɛ́:ʔrɔ̀wrə?*	Hvornaar var han derovre?
3. *vɔr lɛ́ŋə blé:ʔv han i lɔ́ndɔn?*	Hvor længe blev han i London?

4. *vá gjó:ər han dər?*	Hvad gjorde han der?
5. *vɔ́:ˀr vár han hɛ́nə rɛ́sdən a tí:ˀðən?*	Hvor var han henne Resten af Tiden?
6. *vɔ́:ˀr gig han hɛ́nˀ mɛ si:n ɛ́ŋˀəlsgə vɛ́n?*	Hvor gik han hen med sin engelske Ven?
7. *vá ɛr dər sgé:ˀd te hans ɛ́ŋˀəlsgə vɛ́nər ónˀər krí:ˀən?*	Hvad er der sket til hans engelske Venner under Krigen?

5. *An Embarassing Moment*

1. *vá hà:ðə mó:ərn fɔrklá:ˀərð si:n lílə pí:ə?*	Hvad havde Moderen forklaret sin lille Pige?
2. *vɔ́:ˀr gig mó:ərn ɔ dɛn lílə pí:ə hɛ́nˀ?*	Hvor gik Moderen og den lille Pige hen?
3. *vá var dər i vájˀən mɛ dɛ́nˀ mánˀ dɛr sádə saj ve sí:ðən á dəm?*	Hvad var der i Vejen med den Mand, der satte sig ved Siden af dem?
4. *húsgəðə dɛn lílə pí:ə va hènəs mó:r hà:ðə ságd te hɛ́nə;*	Huskede den lille Pige, hvad hendes Mor havde sagt til hende?
5. *vá gjó:ər hun dá?*	Hvad gjorde hun da?

6. *A Busy Day*

1. *vɔ́rfɔr ve ɛ́ŋreð ú:ˀð te méda?*	Hvorfor vil Ingrid ud til Middag?
2. *vɔ́rfɔr sgùlə ɛ́ŋreð pɔ: pɔ́sdhù:ˀsəð?*	Hvorfor skulde Ingrid paa Posthuset?
3. *vá var dər i págən te ɛ́ŋlànˀ?*	Hvad var der i Pakken til England?
4. *vɔ́:ˀr gig hun fǽrsd pɔ: vájˀən jɛ́mˀ?*	Hvor gik hun først paa Vejen hjem?
5. *kùnə hun bɛ́:ər va hun købdə;*	Kunde hun bære, hvad hun købte?
6. *vɔ́:ˀr gig hun bá:ˀɣɛ̀fdər?*	Hvor gik hun bagefter?
7. *vɔ́:ˀr vèlə hun gɔ́:ˀ te síst?*	Hvor vilde hun gaa til sidst?
8. *vɔ́rfɔr mɔ: hun vɛ́ndə mɛ ɔ gɔ́:ˀ dɛrhɛ́nˀ tel i mɔ́rən?*	Hvorfor maa hun vente med at gaa derhen til i Morgen?

PART FIVE

UNIT 25

GOVERNMENT

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Bill and Mr. Knudsen discuss the Danish government.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Bill		
How long have you lived here, Mr. Knudsen?	*vɔr lέŋə har di έ:ˀnli bó:ˀəð hέ:ˀr sàγfφ:ər knúsən?*	Hvor længe har De egentlig boet her Sagfører Knudsen?
Mr. Knudsen		
Let's see, it must be almost ten years.	*iá la mə sέ:ˀ, dé mɔ: sná:ˀrd vὲ:ər tí:ˀ ɔ́:ˀr;*	Ja, lad mig se, det maa snart være ti Aar.
birthday	*fφsəlsdà:ˀ*	Fødselsdag
We moved in the 25th of September, the day before the king's birthday.	*vi flφdəðə nὲmli én ˀ dεn fέmˀ ɔ tý:vənə sεbtέmˀbər, dá:ˀən fœ́:ˀr kɔ́ŋəns fφsəlsdà:ˀ.*	Vi flyttede nemlig ind den 25. September, Dagen før Kongens Fødselsdag.
How time flies!	*iá sɔm tí:ˀðən dɔγ gɔ́:ˀr.*	Ja, som Tiden dog gaar.

the throne	*tró:nən*	Tronen
I remember well when King Christian came to the throne in 1912.	*jɛ húsgər sɔ gɔ́d da kɔŋ kréstjan kɔm pɔ: tró:nən i nédən húnrəðə ɔ tɔ́lʔ.*	Jeg husker saa godt, da Kong Christian kom paa Tronen i 1912.
flags	*fla:ʔγ*	Flag
It certainly was a great day with flags all over the city.	*de var en sdó:ʔr dá:ʔ ka di tró.ʔ, mɛ flá:ʔγ ɔ́vʔər hé:lə bý:ʔən.*	Det var en stor Dag, kan De tro, med Flag over hele Byen.
Bill		
strange *or* remarkable	*mɛ́rglit*	mærkeligt
same	*sámə*	samme
It must seem strange to have the same king year after year.	*dé mɔ: vɛ̀:ər mɛ́rgli ɔ há:ʔ dɛn sámə kɔ́ŋə ɔ́:ʔr ɛ́fdər ɔ́:ʔr.*	Det maa være mærkeligt at have den samme Konge Aar efter Aar.
elect *or* choose	*vɛ́ljə*	vælge
president	*prɛsidɛ́nʔt*	Præsident
In America we couldn't imagine not electing a president every four years.	*i amé:ʔrika ku vi égə tɛ́ngə ɔs ánəð ɛn ɔ vɛ̀ljə prɛsidɛ́nʔd vɛr[1] fjɛ́:ər ɔ́:ʔr.*	I Amerika kunde vi ikke tænke os andet end at vælge Præsident hvert fjerde Aar.
even	*sɛlʔ*	selv
election	*valʔγ*	Valg
Even during the war we had an election.	*sɛ̀lʔ ɔ̀nʔər krí:ʔən var dər jo válʔγ.*	Selv under Krigen var der jo Valg.
Mr. Knudsen		
Yes, and in Denmark we couldn't imagine being without a king.	*iá ɔ i dánmarg ku vi égə tɛ́ŋgə ɔs égə ɔ há:ʔ ən kɔ́ŋə.*	Ja, og i Danmark kunde vi ikke tænke os ikke at have en Konge.

---

[1] Rapid pronunciation of *vɛ:ʔrt.*

You see, we've had kings ever since the year 860.	*ví har jo hafd kɔ́ŋər lí:ə sí:ðən ɔ́:ˀr ɔ́:də húnrəðə ɔ trés.*	Vi har jo haft Konger lige siden Aar 860.
Bill		
consist(s) of	*bəsdɔ́:ˀr á:ˀ*	bestaar af
government	*regé:ˀreŋ*	Regering
What does the Danish government consist of?	*vá bəsdɔ́:ˀr dən dánsgə regé:ˀreŋ á:ˀ?*	Hvad bestaar den danske Regering af?
Mr. Knudsen		
the ministers *or* cabinet members	*minísdrənə*	Ministrene
Of the king and the ministers.	*a kɔ́ŋən ɔ minísdrənə.*	Af Kongen og Ministrene.
Bill		
the power	*mágdən*	Magten
Does the king have much power in Denmark?	*har kɔ́ŋən mágdən i dánmark;*	Har Kongen Magten in Danmark?
Mr. Knudsen		
the people	*fɔ́lˀgəð*	Folket
the members	*mɛ́ðlɛmˀərnə*	Medlemmerne
the Parliament	*rí:sdà:ˀən*	Rigsdagen
No, the power's in the hands of the people—they elect the members of Parliament.	*nɛ́: mágdən ɛr hos fɔ́lˀgəð dɛr vɛ́ljər mɛ́ðlɛmˀərnə te rí:sdà:ˀən.*	Næh, Magten er hos Folket, der vælger Medlemmerne til Rigsdagen.

House of Commons *or* Lower House	*fɔ́lgəlèŋˀ*	Folketing
House of Lords *or* Upper House	*lánˀstèŋˀ*	Landsting
Parliament's made up of the House of Lords and the House of Commons.	*ɔ rɪ́:sdà:ˀən bəsdɔ́:ˀr a fɔ́lgəlèŋˀ ɔ lánˀstèŋˀ.*	Og Rigsdagen bestaar af Folketing og Landsting.
the laws	*lɔ́:vənə*	Lovene
prepared *or* worked out	*úðarbàjˀdəð*	udarbejdet
be approved	*góðkɛ̀nˀəs*	godkendes
be signed	*ónərsgrì:ˀvəs*	underskrives
The laws are prepared by Parliament and have to be approved and signed by the king and the ministers.	*lɔ́:vənə blìər úðarbàjˀdəð i rɪ́:sdà:ˀən ɔ sga góðkɛ̀nˀəs ɔ ónərsgrì:ˀvəs a kɔ́ŋən ɔ minísdrənə.*	Lovene bliver udarbejdet i Rigsdagen og skal godkendes og underskrives af Kongen og Ministrene.
Bill		
formed	*dánəð*	dannet
How's the government formed?	*vɔrdán blɪ́ər regé:ˀreŋˀən dánəð?*	Hvordan bliver Regeringen dannet?
Mr. Knudsen		
appoint(s)	*úðnɛ̀vˀnər*	udnævner
prime minister	*sdá:ˀdsminìsdər*	Statsminister
strongest	*sdɛ́rgəsdə*	stærkeste
party	*partɪ́:ˀ*	Parti
The king appoints a prime minister from the strongest party in	*kɔ́ŋən úðnɛ̀vˀnər en sdá:ˀdsminìsdər fra de sdɛ́rgəsdə partɪ́:ˀ i fɔ́lgəlèŋˀ-*	Kongen udnævner en Statsminister fra det stærkeste Parti i Folketinget, og

the House of Commons and the prime minister chooses his own ministers.	*əð, ɔ sdá:ˀdsminìsdərən vɛ́ljər sì:nə minísdrə.*	Statsministeren vælger sine Ministre.
By the way, were you in at Amalienborg on the king's birthday this year?	*hǿ:ˀr fɔrɛ̀sdən, var dí énə pɔ: amá:ˀljənbɔ̀:ˀr pɔ: kɔ́ŋəns fǿsəlsdà:ˀ i ɔ́:ˀr.*	Hør forresten, var De inde paa Amalienborg paa Kongens Fødselsdag i Aar?
Bill		
No, I was in Aalborg that day.	*nɛ́: jɛ var desvɛ́rə i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr dɛ́nˀ dá:ˀ.*	Næh, jeg var desværre i Aalborg den Dag.
Mr. Knudsen		
usually	*ɛ́lˀərs*	ellers
It's usually quite a day in Copenhagen.	*de ɛ ɛ́lˀərs en máəð mórsɔmˀ dá:ˀ i købənhávˀn.*	Det er ellers en meget morsom Dag i København.
crowds	*másər*	Masser
the parade of the Guard	*vágdparà:ðən*	Vagtparaden
fly a flag	*flá:ɣə*	flage
The schools close, crowds of people go in to Amalienborg Castle to see the parade of the King's Guard, and flags are flown all over the city.	*sgó:lərnə lógər, másər a mɛ́nəsgər tar énˀ pɔ: amá:ˀljəńbɔ̀:ˀr slɔ́d ɔ sé:ˀr vágdparà:ðən, ɔ dər flá:ɣəs ɔ́vˀər hé:lə bý:ˀən.*	Skolerne lukker, Masser af Mennesker tager ind paa Amalienborg Slot og ser Vagtparaden, og der flages over hele Byen.
the queen	*drɔ́neŋˀən*	Dronningen
wave(s)	*véŋgər*	vinker
The king and queen drive across Amalienborg Square, and the children carry flags, and everyone waves and cheers.	*kɔ́ŋən ɔ drɔ́neŋˀən kǿ:ər ɔ́vˀər amá:ˀljən bɔ̀:ˀr plás, ɔ bœ́rˀnənə har flá:ˀɣ i hɔ́nˀən, ɔ álə véŋgər ɔ rɔ́:bər hurá:.*	Kongen og Dronningen kører over Amalienborg Plads, og Børnene har Flag i Haanden, og alle vinker og raaber Hurra.

Bill		
Yes, Tom and Miss Larsen were in there together.	*já tɔ́mˀ ɔ frògən lársən var dərénə sámˀən.*	Ja, Tom og Frøken Larsen var derinde sammen.
engaged	*fɔrlɔ́:ˀvəð*	forlovet
By the way, did you know they were engaged?	*vé:ˀ di fɔrɛ́sdən a dí ɛ blèəð fɔrlɔ́:ˀvəð.*	Ved De forresten, at de er blevet forlovet?
Mr. Knudsen		
You don't say so?	*nɛ́: de siər di égə.*	Næh, det siger De ikke?
in love	*fɔrɛ́lˀsgəð*	forelsket
I could see that Tom's been in love with her ever since he met her.	*jɛ har nɔ́g sé:ˀd a tɔ́mˀ har vɛ̀:ərð fɔrɛ́lˀsgəð i hénə lí:ə sí:ðən han tráf hénə.*	Jeg har nok set, at Tom har været forelsket i hende, lige siden han traf hende.
Bill		
hard *or* difficult	*svɛ:ˀrt*	svært
get used to	*vɛ́nə sə té*	vænne sig til
It'll be a little hard for her to get used to living in America so far from her family.	*de blìər nɔ́g svɛ́:ˀrd fɔ́r hènə ɔ vɛ́nə sə te ɔ bó:ˀ i amé:ˀrika sɔ láŋˀd fra famí:ˀljən hɛ́:ˀr.*	Det bliver nok svært for hende at vænne sig til at bo i Amerika saa langt fra Familien her.
Mr. Knudsen		
easy	*lɛt*	let
It may not be so easy to begin with.	*já dé blìər mɔ̀:sge: égə sɔ léd te ɔ bəgø̀nˀə mɛ.*	Ja, det bliver maaske ikke saa let til at begynde med.
need(s)	*bəhø̀:ˀvər*	behøver
But I don't think you need to worry about Miss Larsen.	*mɛn jɛ tró:ˀr égə di bəhø̀:ˀvər ɔ vɛ̀:ər báŋə fɔr frø̀gən lársən.*	Men jeg tror ikke, De behøver at være bange for Frøken Larsen.

get along	*klá:ər saj*	klare sig
wherever	*vɔ́:ˀr . . . ɛ́n*	hvor . . . end
the world	*vɛ́rdən*	Verden
She'll get along all right, wherever she is.	*hun sga nɔ́g klá:ər saj vɔ́:ˀr i vɛ́rdən hun ɛ́n ɛ́r.*	Hun skal nok klare sig, hvor i Verden hun end er.
Bill		
the radio	*rá:ˀdjo:ˀən*	Radioen
By the way, I heard on the radio that there's going to be an election for the House of Commons.	*jɛ hǿ:rdə fɔrɛ̀sdən i rá:ˀdjo:ˀən a dɛr sga vɛ̀:ər válˀɣ te fɔ́lgətɛ̀ŋˀəð.*	Jeg hørte forresten i Radioen, at der skal være Valg til Folketinget.
Mr. Knudsen		
take(s) place	*fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀr*	foregaar
Yes, that takes place every four years.	*já dé fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀr vɛr fjɛ́:ər ɔ́:ˀr.*	Ja, det foregaar hvert fjerde Aar.
Bill		
be able to	*kúnə*	kunne
vote	*sdɛ́mə*	stemme
How old do you have to be to be able to vote?	*vɔr gáməl sga man vɛ́:ər fɔr ɔ ku sdɛ́mə?*	Hvor gammel skal man være for at kunne stemme?
Mr. Knudsen		
Twenty-five.	*fɛ́mˀ ɔ tý:və ɔ́:ˀr.*	Fem og tyve Aar.
I'd like to show you Parliament some day.	*jɛ ku fɔrɛ̀sdən ha lǿsd te ɔ ví:sə dəm rí:sdà:ˀən en dá:ˀ.*	Jeg kunde forresten have Lyst til at vise Dem Rigsdagen en Dag.
politics	*polətík*	Politik
gradually	*ɛfdərhɔ́nˀən*	efterhaanden

When I was young, I didn't care for politics, but gradually I've come to be more and more interested in it.	*da jɛ var óŋ?, ké:ðəðə polətíg maj, mɛn ɛfdərhɔ́n?ən ɛr jɛ blèəð mé:ər ɔ mé:ər entrəsé:?ərð i də.*	Da jeg var ung, kedede Politik mig, men efterhaanden er jeg blevet mere og mere interesseret i det.
We were so well off here in Denmark before the war.	*vi há:ðə de sɔ gɔ́d i dánmarg énən krí:?ən.*	Vi havde det saa godt i Danmark inden Krigen.
mind our own business	*pásə ɔs sɛ́l?*	passe os selv
We only wanted to be able to live in peace and mind our own business.	*vi ønsgəðə bá:ər ɔ fɔ: lɔ́v te ɔ vɛ́:ər i fréð ɔ pásə ɔs sɛ́l?.*	Vi ønskede bare at faa Lov til at være i Fred og passe os selv.
keep *or* preserve	*bəhɔ́l?ə*	beholde
But we did nothing to keep the peace.	*mɛn vi gjò:ər éŋəntèŋ? fɔr ɔ bəhɔ́l?ə fréð?ən.*	Men vi gjorde ingenting for at beholde Freden.
had to	*mɔ́dəð*	maattet
We thought too well of people, and we've had to pay for it.	*vi tró:ðə fɔr gɔ́d ɔm mɛ́nəsgənə,[1] mɛn vi har mɔ̀dəð bətá:?lə fɔ́r də.*	Vi troede for godt om Menneskene, men vi har maattet betale for det.
Bill		
Yes, so has the whole world.	*já dé har hé:lə vɛ́rdən.*	Ja, det har hele Verden.
In America, too, we didn't realize that until it was too late.	*i amé:?rika fɔrsdó:?ð vi de jo ɔ́sə fœ́rsd da de var fɔr sé:?nt;*	I Amerika forstod vi det jo ogsaa først, da det var for sent.
Mr. Knudsen		
defend	*fɔrsvá:?ər*	forsvare
A country has to be able to defend itself.	*já ed lán? mɔ: kùnə fɔrsvá:?ər saj.*	Ja, et Land maa kunne forsvare sig.

---

[1] Notice that, although the plural form is *mɛ́nəsgər*, the the-form is *mɛ́nəsgənə* without the *r*.

invite	*invité:ʔər*	invitere
the enemy	*fjɛ́nən*	Fjenden
Otherwise it's just inviting the enemy right in.	*ɛ́lʔərs ɛr də de sámə sɔm ɔ invitè:ər fjɛ́nən lí:ə énʔ i lánʔəð.*	Ellers er det det samme som at invitere Fjenden lige ind i Landet.
Bill		
That's right.	*já dé ɛ régdit.*	Ja, det er rigtigt.
the Germans	*týsgərnə*	Tyskerne
last *or* endure	*vá:ər*	vare
We can only hope that people have learned enough from the war against the Germans, so that the peace will really last this time.	*vi mɔ: bá:ər hɔ́:bə a mɛ́nəsgənə har lɛ́:ʔrd sɔ máəð a krí:ʔən imòð týsgərnə a fréðʔən vírgli ka vá:ər dɛ́nə gáŋʔ.*	Vi maa bare haabe, at Menneskene har lært saa meget af Krigen imod Tyskerne, at Freden virkelig kan vare denne Gang.

2. Hints on Spelling

You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following new words:

mærkelig	*mɛ́rgli*	remarkable, strange
Politik	*polətík*	politics
Radio	*rá:ʔdjo*	radio
vælge, valgte, valgt	*vɛ́ljə, valdə, valʔt*	choose, elect
Jørgen[1]	*jœ́rən*	*man's name*

---

[1] See *Listening In.*

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

From now on the examples in the *Word Study* sections will be given in the regular Danish spelling only.

1. Passive forms ending in *s*.

Lovene bliver udarbejdet i Rigsdagen og skal **godkendes** *og* **underskrives** *af Kongen og Ministrene.*	The laws are prepared by Parliament and have to be approved and signed by the king and the cabinet members.
Nej, det **behøves** *ikke.*	No, I won't need to do that. ('No, that is not needed.')

You learned in Unit 21 that passive sentences, that is, sentences in which the subject is affected by the action of the verb, have a verb phrase made up of some form of the verb *blive* plus the participle of another verb. If you look at the words in heavy type in these sentences, you will see that there are also passive verb forms which end in *s*. They are used with very much the same meaning as the verb phrases with *blive*. *Underskrive*, for instance, means "sign" while *underskrives* means "be signed", *behøve* means "need" while *behøves* means "is needed".

This one form ending in *s* is both the basic form, as in the first sentence where *godkendes* and *underskrives* are used after *skal*, and the present form, as in the second sentence. As you see, it is made by simply adding *s* to the regular basic form of the verb. The past s-form is made by adding *s* to ordinary past forms ending in a vowel, as for instance, *behøvedes* [*bəhǿ:ʔvəðəs*], 'was needed', and by adding *es* to the past forms of those irregular verbs which end in a consonant, as for example, *fandtes*, [*fándəs*], 'was found', (compare *fanʔt*, 'found', and notice that the catch is lost in the s-form). However, in the case of many irregular verbs, a passive verb phrase with *blive* is used more often than the past s-form

The question arises as to when you do use a passive verb phrase with *blive* and when a passive s-form. Look at the following new sentences and you will see one place where the s-form is used:

Der **skal dannes** *en ny Regering i næste Maaned.*	A new government will be chosen next month.

Bagagen **maa** *bestemt* **indskrives** *i Aften.*	The baggage will certainly have to be checked through tonight.
Skal *det Brev ikke* **lukkes,** *inden du sender det af Sted?*	Shouldn't that letter be sealed before you send it?
Den Pakke **skal sendes** *til Aalborg.*	That package is going to Aalborg.
Den Blanket **maa udfyldes** *i Aften, hvis den skal naa at være paa Posthuset i Morgen tidlig.*	That blank'll have to be filled out tonight, if it's going to be at the post office tomorrow morning.
Min Bror **skal indlægges** *paa Hospitalet i Morgen, og der* **skal** *han* **røntgenfotograferes** *og* **undersøges** *over det hele.*	My brother's going to be admitted to the hospital tomorrow and there he'll be X-rayed and examined thoroughly.
Den Pakke **skal bæres** *forsigtigt, ellers falder Kagerne ud af den.*	That package has to be carried carefully or the cakes will fall out of it.
Mit Vindue **skal gøres** *i Stand i Dag.*	My window's going to be fixed today.
Kan *det* **tænkes** *at han bliver valgt?*	Can it be (thought) that he'll be elected?

You can see from these examples that the passive s-form, rather than a passive phrase with *blive*, is used after the auxiliaries *skal*, *maa*, and *kan;* for example, *skal dannes, maa indskrives, kan tænkes.*

Now look at the following sentences and you will see where else the s-form is used:

Statsministeren **udnævnes** *af Kongen*	The prime minister is appointed by the king.
Statsministeren **bliver udnævnt** *i denne Uge.* *Statsministeren* **vil blive udnævnt** *i denne Uge.* *Statsministeren* **skal udnævnes** *i denne Uge.*	The prime minister will be appointed (*or* is going to be appointed) this week.
Den Mand **vil udnævnes** *til Statsminister.*	That man wants to be appointed prime minister.

Notice that the first of these sentences talks about something that is done habitually—the prime minister is always appointed by the king—, and that here the s-form is used. Now notice that the next three sentences talk about a specific act that is to be done at a definite time. Here there are three alternatives: *a*) a passive phrase consisting of *bliver* plus a participle, as in the first of the three sentences, *b*) the auxiliary *vil* and a passive phrase consisting of *blive* plus a participle, as in the second sentence, and *c*) the auxiliary *skal* plus a passive s-form, as in the third sentence. All three of these alternatives are used in the same situation with the same meaning.

Notice finally that when the passive s-form is used after *vil*, as in the last sentence, then *vil* has the meaning of "wants to" rather than "will".

We can summarize this as follows:

1. The s-form rather than a phrase with *blive* is always used after the auxiliaries *maa*, *skal*, and *kan*. After the auxiliary *vil* both the s-form and the passive phrase are used, but *vil* has the meaning "want(s) to" when followed by the s-form and the meaning "will" when followed by the passive phrase with *blive*.

2. When not used after an auxiliary, the s-form indicates something that is done habitually or repeatedly or for long periods of time, while the passive phrase with *blive* generally indicates something that is done once or for a short period of time.

Vi kan jo **mødes** *der om et Kvarter.*	We can meet there in fifteen minutes.
Saa **ses** *vi paa Hovedbanegaarden.*	Then I'll see you at *Hovedbanegaarden*. ('Then we'll see each other at *Hovedbanegaarden*.')

As you see, the words printed in heavy type in these two sentences are s-forms of verbs like those just discussed. Notice, though, that here they don't have the passive meaning, "be met" and "be seen", but rather the meaning "meet each other" and "see each other". This is true of a few verbs whose basic meaning makes it possible for them to be used in this way. In most cases, however, any s-form you hear will have a passive meaning.

Men jeg **synes** *ogsaa, Bill skal se Skoven.*	I think Bill should see the woods, too.
Vi kan **nøjes** *med at gaa til Bageren paa Vejen hjem.*	We'll just stop at the baker's on the way home.

There are a few Danish verbs like *synes* and *nøjes* that are always used in the s-form even though they don't have passive meanings. *Synes*, means, as you know, "think", while *nøjes* means "be content with" or "be satisfied with".

2. The basic form and the participle of the auxiliaries.

Hvor gammel skal man være for at **kunne** *stemme?*	How old do you have to be to be able to vote?
Ja, et Land maa **kunne** *forsvare sig.*	Yes, a country has to be able to defend itself.
Vi troede for godt om Menneskene, men vi har **maattet** *betale for det.*	We thought too well of people and we've had to pay for it.

The word *kunne* in the first two sentences above is, as you see, not the past form but rather the basic form of *kan*. Although it is pronounced exactly like the past form, still it is used in these sentences where the basic form of a verb is always used, namely, after *for at* and after *maa*. (You might notice that it is spelled *kunne* while the past form is spelled *kunde*.) This form corresponds, as you see, to English "be able to", since we don't use any form of "can" in a corresponding position.

Now look at the word *maattet* in the third sentence. This, as you see, is the participle going with the auxiliary *maa*. It is made by adding the [ð]-sound to the past form [*mɔ́də*]. Notice that *har maattet* corresponds to English "have had to".

All four of the auxiliaries that you know have both basic forms and participles. Here they are:

Present form	*Basic form*	*Past form*	*Participle*
maa [*mɔ:ʔ*]	**maatte** [*mɔ́də*]	**maatte** [*mɔ́də*]	**maattet** [*mɔ́dəð*]
kan [*kanʔ*]	**kunne** [*kúnə*]	**kunde** [*kúnə*]	**kunnet** [*kúnəð*]
skal [*sgalʔ*]	**skulle** [*sgúlə*]	**skulde** [*sgúlə*]	**skullet** [*sgúləð*]
vil [*vel*]	**ville** [*vélə*]	**vilde** [*vélə*]	**vildet** [*véləð*][1]

---

[1] You will find that many people pronounce the basic form, the past form and the participle with *i* rather than *e*, that is, as [*vílə*] and [*víləð*].

Notice that the basic form and the past form of all four auxiliaries are pronounced the same way and that the participle is made by adding the [ð]-sound to the basic or past form. Now look at the spelling and notice that the basic form and the past form of the last three auxiliaries are spelled differently, the basic form having *nn* or *ll* and the past form having *nd* or *ld*. The spelling of the participle, as you see, is that of the basic form with *t* added.

Look at the following new sentences and you will see how the basic forms and participles of the auxiliaries are used:

Det er ikke saa let at **skulle** *begynde paa noget nyt, naar man er 55 Aar gammel.*	It's not so easy to have to start on something new, when you're 55 years old.
Min Bror har aldrig **skullet** *betale en Øre for at bo hjemme.*	My brother's never had to pay an *Øre* to live at home.
Naar hun ikke synes at **ville** *gøre det, skal du ikke bede hende mere om det.*	If she doesn't think she wants to do it, don't ask her any more.
Han har aldrig **villet** *gøre, hvad jeg sagde.*	He's never wanted to do what I said.
Det maa være frygteligt ikke at **kunne** *læse og skrive.*	It must be awful not to be able to read and write.
Jeg tror, han vilde være kommet, hvis han havde **kunnet.**	I think he'd have come if he'd been able to.
De har **maattet** *sende ham ud af Landet.*	They've had to send him out of the country.

Notice that you don't have any example here with *maatte* used as the basic form. It is rarely used in this way; *skulle* is generally used instead.

3. Komme til at.

Jeg skal nok sørge for, at der ikke er nogen, der **kommer til at** *forstyrre Dem.*	I'll see to it that nobody disturbs you.

The expression *komme til at* which is printed in heavy type in this sentence is used quite frequently in Danish. It's a little hard for you to tell from the above example just how it is used, but you will see more clearly in the following new sentences:

Jeg kom til at sige det til hende i Gaar Aftes.	I accidentally told her last evening.
Hun kom til at skrive min Søsters Navn paa Brevet, saa derfor kom det saa sent.	She happened to write my sister's name on the letter—that's why it came so late.
Vi kommer til at hjælpe hendes Mand, mens hun er væk.	We'll have to help her husband while she's away.
Der er ingen af os, der kommer til at betale noget.	None of us'll have to pay anything.
Jeg ved, at han ikke kan lide hende, og saa kommer han til at sidde ved Siden af hende.	I know he doesn't like her and then he has to sit next to her.
Jeg kommer til at rejse til København i næste Uge.	I'll have to go to Copenhagen next week.
Han kom pludselig til at spille med i Kampen alligevel.	He suddenly got to play in the game anyway.
Min Onkel kom til at bære de tungeste Ting.	My uncle got to carry the heaviest things.
Jeg haaber ikke, De kommer til at fryse i Nat.	I hope you won't be cold tonight.
Det kommer til at gøre frygtelig ondt, er jeg bange for.	I'm afraid it's going to hurt a lot.
Tror du ikke, vi kan komme til at spise lidt tidligere i Aften?	Don't you think we can eat a little earlier tonight?
Han kom pludselig til at tænke paa, at det var hans Kones Fødselsdag.	He suddenly realized that it was his wife's birthday.

As you see from these examples, the Danish expression *komme til at* has a variety of English equivalents, "happen to", "have to", "get to", "is (am, are) going to", "will", etc. As you listen to Danish people talk, you will gradually learn just what it means when they use it and just when to use it yourself.

4. *man*, *ens* and *en*.

De ved, naar **man** *har været ude at rejse, venter* **ens** *Familie altid, at man kommer hjem med noget til dem.*	You know, when you've been away, your family always expect you to bring them home something.
Aah, de forbandede Høns, de løber da ogsaa altid imellem Benene paa **en.**	Oh, these darn chickens, they're always getting under foot.

We told you in Unit 11 that the Danish word *man* means "you" in the sense of "people in general" and that it is used only as the subject of a sentence or clause. In these sentences you see that to express the same meaning when the word is not the subject of the sentence, you use *ens* [*e:ʔns*] to refer to the possessor of something, as in the first sentence, and you use *en* [*e:ʔn*] in other cases, as *paa en* in the last sentence.

5. Participles used as adjectives.

Ved De forresten, at de er blevet **forlovet?**	Incidentally, did you know that they were engaged?
Jeg har nok set, at Tom har været **forelsket** *i hende, lige siden han traf hende.*	I've noticed that Tom's been in love with her ever since he met her.
Aah, di **forbandede** *Høns, di løber da ogsaa altid imellem Benene paa en.*	Oh, these darn chickens, they're always getting under foot.

Look at the words *forlovet*, *forelsket*, and *forbandede* in these sentences, and notice that they are used here as adjectives. You say, for instance, *de er blevet forlovet*, 'they've gotten engaged', just as you say *di er blevet brune*, 'they've gotten brown'. But these same words are also participles of verbs. *Forlove (-de) sig (med)* means "get engaged (to)", *forelske (-de) sig (i)* means "fall in love (with)", and *forbande, -de* means "curse".

Many other Danish participles, such as *interesseret*, 'interested', *brækket*, 'broken', *kendt*, 'known, well-known', are also used as adjectives, just as are the corresponding English participles. As adjectives they have two forms, a basic form ending in *-et*, [-əð] or *-t*, like *forelsket* and *kendt*, and an ə-form, like *forelskede* (notice that the *t* in the regular spelling changes to *d* in this form) and *kendte*. They work just as do ordinary adjectives with two forms, with the following exception: after a verb and without a following noun, as *forlovet* in the first sentence above, some Danish speakers use the basic form rather than the ə-form to describe or refer to a plural noun or a plural word like *de*. In that sentence, for instance, you will hear both *forlovet* and *forlovede*. When used right with a noun, however, as is *forbandede* in the third example, the ə-form is used.

6. Compounds.

Here are the new compounds you had in this unit:

noun + noun

Vagtparaden, 'the parade of the Guard' = **Vagt,** 'guard' + **Parade,** 'parade'

noun + ə + noun

Folketing, 'House of Commons' = **Folk,** 'people' + ə + **Ting,** 'council, assembly'. *Ting* is not generally used as a noun alone with this meaning.

noun + s + noun

Landsting, 'House of Lords' = **Land,** 'country, land' + **s** + **Ting** (see above).

Statsminister, 'prime minister' = **Stat,** 'state' + **s** + **Minister,** 'minister'

7. Irregular verbs.

Here are the irregular verbs you had in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
vælge [*vɛ́ljə*], 'elect, choose'	***valgte*** [*váldə*], 'elected, chose'	***valgt*** [*valʔt*], 'elected, chosen'
bestaa af, 'consist of'	***bestod af***, 'consisted of'	***bestaaet af***, 'consisted of'
foregaa, 'take place'	***foregik***, 'took place'	***foregaaet***, 'taken place'

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

A. The following questions are based on the material contained in the *Basic Sentences*. Be prepared to give your answers in Danish.

1. Hvornaar er det Kong Christian den Tiendes Fødselsdag?
2. Hvor længe har han været Konge?
3. Hvor længe har Danmark haft Konger?
4. Hvem vælger Medlemmerne til Rigsdagen?
5. Hvad bestaar Rigsdagen af?
6. Hvor bliver de danske Love udarbejdet og hvem skal godkende dem?
7. Hvordan bliver man Statsminister?
8. Hvem udnævner de andre Ministre?
9. Hvad sker der i København paa Kongens Fødselsdag?
10. Hvor gammel skal man være for at kunne stemme i Danmark?

B. Change the words given in parentheses in the following sentences into Danish.

1. Jeg har altid gerne (*wanted to*) se Rigsdagen.
2. De skulde nok (*be able to*) være i England i Eftermiddag, hvis De flyver.
3. Den Cykel skal (*be picked up*) i Dag, det har jeg lovet.
4. At (*want to*) er nu ikke det samme som at (*have to*).
5. Jeg kan ikke lide at (*have to*) tage med Toget hver Morgen.
6. Hver Gang jeg har bedt ham om en Regning, har han aldrig (*wanted to*) sende mig en.
7. Det skulde (*be explained*) to Gange for hende, før hun forstod det.
8. Hvor vilde det have været morsomt, om vi havde (*been able to*) faa ham ud til Middag.
9. Skal den Pakke ikke (*be weighed*), før den skal (*be sent*) af Sted?
10. Hvis der er nogen, der skal (*be asked*), maa det da være hende.
11. Jeg har (*had to*) betale hele hans Rejse.
12. Han skal (*be treated*) meget forsigtigt.
13. Han maatte (*be driven*) lige paa Hospitalet.

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

From now on the material in the *Listening In* section will be given in the regular Danish spelling only. Be sure that you don't change your pronunciation at all, even though you don't have the *Aids to Listening* to guide you.

1. *Tom and Inge talk about their plans for the future.*

Tom: Hvornaar er det din Fødselsdag Inge?

Inge: Det er den 9. Juli.

Tom: Det skulde jeg bare have vidst.

Du kan tro, du skulde have faaet en fin Gave.

Inge: Hvornaar er det da din?

Tom: Den 24. December, saa du har god Tid til at tænke paa en Gave til mig.

Inge: Jeg haaber at kunne give dig en ny Radio, saa vi kan høre, hvad der foregaar rundt omkring i Verden.

Men den skal være saa god, at vi kan faa selv Danmark paa den.

Det er forresten morsomt, at du har Fødselsdag samme Dag som Dronningen.

Tom: Ja, men til den Tid er jeg desværre tilbage i Chicago.

Inge: Naar du kommer til Amerika igen, finder du saamænd nok en amerikansk Pige, som du meget bedre vil kunne lide.

Hvad skal jeg saa gøre?

Tom: Men hvem ved, om du ikke forelsker dig i en eller anden Dansker og glemmer mig!

Inge: Aah, hvordan kan du dog sige det?

Du ved jo godt, at naar man først er forlovet, er der ikke nogen, der inviterer en ud mere.

Nej, du behøver ikke at være bange, jeg kommer saamænd nok til at gaa her og passe mig selv, til du kommer tilbage.

Tom: Ja, jeg maa nok hellere komme og hente dig, saa jeg kan være sikker paa, at du kommer med mig hjem.

2. *The conversation continues.*

Tom: Der bliver nok mange Ting, du maa vænne dig til, naar du kommer til at bo i Amerika.

Og efterhaanden lærer du nok at forstaa Amerikanerne og deres Politik.

Jeg haaber, vi kan tage en Tur rundt i Amerika, saa du kan se hele Landet.

Inge: Ja, det kan du tro, jeg gerne vil.

Men jeg er bange for, at Politik ikke interesserer mig ret meget.

Tom: I Amerika vil det sikkert hurtigt komme til at interessere dig.

Men kan du ikke forklare mig lidt om Danmarks Regering, og hvordan den er dannet?

Saa skal jeg fortælle dig om Amerikas Præsidenter!

Inge: Jo, det kan jeg jo godt, hvis du saa gerne vil.

Du ved jo, at Kong Christian den X. kom paa Tronen i 1912, saa det behøver jeg altsaa ikke at fortælle dig.

Du ved vel ogsaa, at Rigsdagen bestaar af Landstinget med 79 Medlemmer og Folketinget med 149, og at alle kan stemme.

Tom: Ja, men jeg ved ikke, hvor gammel man skal være for at kunne stemme.

Inge: Man skal være 25 Aar.

Tom: Hvad sker der saa efter Valget?

Inge: Saa udnævner Kongen en Mand fra det stærkeste Parti til Statsminister, og han vælger saa de andre Ministre.

Tom: Hvem har Magten i Danmark—Kongen eller Folket?

Inge: Det har Folket.

Tom: Og hvordan med Lovene?

Hvem udarbejder dem?

Inge: Det gør Folketinget, men Landstinget skal godkende dem, før Kongen og Ministrene underskriver dem.

Hør, nu maa det være nok, eller vil du høre mere?

Tom: Nej Tak, nu forstaar jeg det hele meget bedre.

Det er let at forstaa, naar du forklarer det.

Inge: Kan vi saa ikke vente med Præsidenterne til en anden Dag?

Tom: Jo, lad os det.

3. *Inge tells Tom about her brother.*

Tom: Du Inge, tænk, at jeg har maattet rejse helt til Danmark for at finde Verdens sødeste Pige.

Den Dag vi blev forlovet, er den bedste Dag, jeg har haft.

Jeg vidste godt, at det var Kongens Fødselsdag, og at der var Flag og Vagtparade og Masser af Mennesker paa Amalienborg Plads, men jeg saa ærlig talt ikke, hvad der foregik.

Jeg saa bare dig.

Inge: Ja, er det ikke mærkeligt, at det netop skulde blive den Dag, vi blev forlovet?

Min Brør Jørgen [*jærən*] blev nemlig dræbt den 26. September i 1943, da Fjenden endnu var i Landet.

Tom: Det maa have været en frygtelig Tid for jer allesammen.

Inge: Ja, Tyskerne kom hver Dag for at finde ud af, hvor Jørgen var, men vi vidste det selvfølgelig ikke.

Sent en Nat kom han saa pludselig ind gennem Vinduet.

Han var syg og havde brækket den ene Haand og det højre Ben.

Vi hjalp ham saa godt, vi kunde, og gav ham Mad, for han havde ikke spist i flere Dage.

Tom: Hvor længe varede det da, inden Tyskerne kom?

Inge: De kom ikke den Nat.

Men tidligt næste Morgen stod 8 Tyskerne uden for Døren.

Jørgen prøvede at forsvare sig, men han kunde selvfølgelig ikke klare sig ret længe.

Saa tog de ham med sig.

Han sagde ikke noget, bare vinkede Farvel.

Bagefter fik vi kun at vide, at han var død samme Dag.

Det var en frygtelig, sørgelig Tid.

I mange Maaneder tænkte vi jo ikke paa andet.

Tom: Hvor gammel blev han?

Inge: Kun 19 Aar.

Nu forstaar du nok, hvor svært det er for Far og Mor, at de heller ikke kan faa Lov at beholde mig hjemme.

Tom: Ja, men din Far og Mor kan jo komme over at besøge os, naar de vil. Og jeg skal love dig, at du skal faa det saa godt, som noget Menneske kan have det.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. Discuss the Danish government with one of the other members of the group. Include the fact that it's made up of the king, his ministers, and the Parliament; that the people elect the members of Parliament and after the election the king appoints from the strongest party in the House of Commons

the prime minister, who then chooses the other ministers; that the laws are prepared by Parliament and then approved and signed by the king and the ministers. Whenever you can, compare this system of government with the American and the British systems.

2. You're talking to a Danish girl who tells you that tomorrow is the king's birthday and asks you if you wouldn't like to go in to Amalienborg with her. You ask what happens there. She tells you that quantities of people go there on that day to look at the parade of the Guard and to see the king and queen who drive across Amalienborg Square. You tell her that that sounds interesting, and ask what else happens. She goes on to say that the schools close, so all the children are there with flags in their hands and they wave and shout. There are flags all over the city too and everyone has a good time. You tell her you'd like to go very much—it must be quite exciting.

3. You ask a Danish friend of yours if he has heard that your sister (who is with you on a visit to Denmark) and Mogens Finsen are engaged. He says no, he hadn't heard. He tells you that he doesn't know Mogens Finsen and asks you what he does. You tell him that he's a bank clerk in the National Bank and that his father's a member of the Lower House. Your friend asks if you think your sister will like living in Denmark and having to speak Danish all the time. You tell him you think she will. It won't be easy for her, of course, but she'll get along all right wherever she is. He asks if your family knows about it. You say that your sister wrote a letter to them last week and told them about it. He wants to know if she's going home with you next month. You tell him that she is. Mogens is going over to America next summer and they'll be married in New York. They'll travel around in America a little and then will come back to Denmark together.

Finder List

bəhø:ˀvə, -ðə (behøve, -de) need

bəhɔlˀə, -də (beholde, -te) keep, preserve

bəsdɔ:ˀ (*bəsdó:ˀð, bəsdɔ:ˀəð*) *á:ˀ/a* (bestaa) (bestod, bestaaet) (af) consist of

dánə, -ðə (danne, -de) form

drɔneŋ, drɔneŋˀən, drɔneŋˀər (Dronning, -en, -er) queen

ɛfdərhɔnˀən (efterhaanden) gradually

fjɛ́nə, -n, -r (Fjende, -n, -r) enemy

fla:ˀγ, -əð, — (Flag, -et, —) flag

flá:γə, -ðə (flage, -de) fly a flag

føsəlsdàːˀ, -ən, føsəlsdàːə (Fødselsdag, -en, -e) birthday

fɔlˀk, -əð, — (Folk, -et, —) people

fɔ́lgətèŋˀ, -əð (Folketing, -et) House of Commons, Lower House

fɔrɛ́lˀsgə (-ðə) saj (i) (forelske) (-de) (sig) (i) fall in love (with)

fɔrɛ́lˀsgəð, -ə (forelsket, forelskede) in love

fɔ́rəgɔ̀ːˀ, fɔ́rəgìk, fɔ́rəgɔ̀ːˀəð (foregaa, foregik, foregaaet) take place

fɔrlɔ́ːˀvə (-ðə) saj (mɛ) (forlove) (-de) (sig) (med) become engaged (to)

fɔrlɔ́ːˀvəð, -ə (forlovet, forlovede) engaged

fɔrsváːˀər, -ðə (forsvare, -de) defend

góðkɛ̀nˀə, -də (godkende, -te) approve

ìnvitéːˀər, -ðə (invitere, -de) invite

jœ́rən (Jørgen) *man's name*

kúnə, -ð (kunne, -t) be able to, been able to

kláːər (-ðə) saj (klare) (-de) (sig) get along

lánˀstèŋˀ, -əð (Landsting, -et) House of Lords, Upper House

lɛt (let) easy

lɔv, lɔ́ːˀvən, lɔ́ːvə (Lov, -en, -e) law

magt, -ən, -ər (Magt, -en, -er) power

másə, -n, -r (Masse, -n, -r) crowd

mɛ́ðlɛ̀mˀ, -əð, -ər (Medlem, -met, -mer) member

mɛ́rgli (mærkelig) strange, remarkable

minísdər, -ən, minísdrə (Minister, -en, Ministre) minister, cabinet member

mɔ́də, -ð (maatte, -t) basic form and past form going with *mɔːˀ*, 'must', 'may'.

paráːðə, -n, -r (Parade, -n, -r) parade

partíːˀ, -əð, -ər (Parti, -et, -er) party (*political*)

pásə (-ðə) saj sɛ́lˀ (passe) (-de) (sig selv) mind your own business

polətík, -ən (Politik, -ken) politics

prɛsidɛ́nˀt, -ən, -ər (Præsident, -en, -er) president

ráːˀdjo, ráːˀdjoːˀən, ráːˀdjoːˀər (Radio, -en, -er) radio

regéːˀreŋ, regéːˀreŋˀən, regéːˀreŋˀər (Regering, -en, -er) government

sámə (samme) same

sdáːˀdsminìsdər, -ən, sdáːˀdsminìsdrə (Statsminister, -en, Statsministre) prime minister

sdɛ́mə, -də (stemme, stemte) vote

sdɛrk (stærk) strong
sɛl? (selv) even
sgúlə, *-ð* (skulle, -t) have to, had to
svɛ:?r, *-t*, *svɛ́:ər* (svær) hard, difficult
tró:nə, *-n*, *-r* (Trone, -n, -r) throne
týsgər, *-ən*, *-ə* (Tysker, -en, -e) German
úðarbàj?də, *-ðə* (udarbejde, -de) prepare, work out
úðnɛ̀v?nə, *-də* or *-ðə* (udnævne, -te *or* -de) appoint
vágdparà:ðən (Vagtparaden) the Parade of the Guard
val?γ, *-əð*, — (Valg, -et, —) election, choice
vá:ər, *-ðə* (vare, -de) last
vélə, *-ð* (ville, -t) want to, wanted to
véŋgə, *-ðə* (vinke, -de) wave
vɛ́ljə, *váldə* (vælge, valgte) elect, choose
vɛ́nə (*-ðə*) *saj tel* (vænne) (-de) (sig til) get used to
vɛ́rdən, *-ən*, *vɛ́rdnər* (Verden, -en, -er) world

UNIT 26

CULTURE

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Bill and the Knudsens are walking home from Thorvaldsen's Museum.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Mr. Knudsen		
glad *or* happy	*glað*	glad
museum	*musέ:əm*	Museum
I'm glad we got to see Thorvaldsen's Museum.	*jε εr nu gláð fɔ́r vi feg sé:ˀd tórvàlˀsəns musέ:əm.*	Jeg er nu glad for, vi fik set Thorvaldsens Museum.
sculptors	*bíləðhògərə*	Billedhuggere
He's really one of our greatest sculptors.	*hán ε nèmli é:ˀn a vɔ́rəs sdœ́rsdə bíləðhògərə.*	Han er nemlig en af vores største Billedhuggere.
Bill		
live	*lé:vəðə*	levede
When did he live?	*vɔrnɔ́:ˀr lé:vəðə han?*	Hvornaar levede han?
Mrs. Knudsen		
From 1770 to 1844.	*han lé:vəðə fra sødən húnrəðə ɔ halfjέrs te ádən húnrəðə ɔ fí:ər ɔ fœ́rə.*	Han levede fra 1770 til 1844.

like Frankly I like Kai Nielsen better, but then we can't all like the same things.	*syns ɔ́mʔ* *fɔr ɔ vɛ̀:ər hé:ʔld ɛ́rli, ka jɛ nu bɛ́ðrə lí:ʔ kaj nélsən, mɛn man ka jo égə álʔtiðʔ sýns ɔm di sámə tɛ́ŋʔ.*	synes om For at være helt ærlig, kan jeg nu bedre lide Kai Nielsen, men man kan jo ikke altid synes om de samme Ting
Mr. Knudsen		
That's true.	***nɛ́:*** ***dé ɛ régdit.***	Næh, det er rigtigt.
for example paintings For example, I can't understand why you like Skovgaard's paintings better than Marstrand's.	*fɔr ɛgsɛ́mʔbəl* *malərí:ʔər* *iɛ fərsdɔ́:ʔr fɔr ɛgsɛ̀mʔbəl égə a du syns bɛ́ðrə ɔm sgɔ́vgɔ̀:ʔrs malərí:ʔer ɛn ɔm mársdràn ʔs;*	for Eksempel Malerier Jeg forstaar for Eksempel ikke, at du synes bedre om Skovgaards Malerier end om Marstrands.
What do you say, Mr. Butler?	***vá siər dí ènsjənjør bɔ́dlər?***	Hvad siger De, Ingeniør Butler?
Bill		
Unfortunately I don't know very much about Danish painters.	***jɛ kɛ́nər desvɛ́rə égə réd máəð te dánsgə malərí:ʔər.***	Jeg kender desværre ikke ret meget til danske Malerier.
science literature I've always been more interested in science and literature.	*ví:ðənsgà:ʔp* *lidəratú:ʔr* *jɛ har álʔtìðʔ vɛ̀:ərð mé:ər entrəsé:ʔərð i ví:ðənsgà:ʔb ɔ lidəratú:ʔr;*	Videnskab Litteratur Jeg har altid været mere interesseret i Videnskab og Litteratur.
poets But the only Danish poet I know is Hans Christian Andersen.	*dégdərə* *mɛn a dánsgə dégdərə kɛ́nər jɛ kón ho: se: ánərsən;*	Digtere Men af danske Digtere kender jeg kun H. C. Andersen.

fairy tales	*ɛ́:vəntỳ:ˀr*	Eventyr
famous	*bərœ́mˀt*	berømt
His fairy tales are famous all over the world.	*háns ɛ́:vəntỳ:ˀr ɛr jo: ɔ́sə bərœ́mˀd ɔ́vˀər hé:lə vɛ́rdən.*	Hans Eventyr er jo ogsaa berømt over hele Verden.
scientists	*ví:ðənsgabsmɛ̀nˀ*	Videnskabsmænd
authors	*fɔrfádərə*	Forfattere
the Nobel prize	*nobɛ́lprì:ˀsən*	Nobelprisen
Aren't there quite a few Danish scientists and authors who've gotten the Nobel prize?	*ɛr dər fɔrɛ̀sdən égə flé:ər dánsgə ví:ðənsgabsmɛ̀nˀ ɔ fɔrfádərə dɛr har fɔ́:əð nobɛ́lprì:ˀsən.*	Er der forresten ikke flere danske Videnskabsmænd og Forfattere, der har faaet Nobelprisen?
Mr. Knudsen		
Yes, there are.	*jó: dé ɛ́r dər.*	Jo, det er der.
The last Danish author to get it was Johannes V. Jensen.	*dɛn sísdə dánsgə fɔrfádər sɔm fég dən var johànˀəs vé:ˀ jɛ́nsən;*	Den sidste danske Forfatter som fik den, var Johannes V. Jensen.
Incidentally, that was for a book about America.	*dé var fɔrɛ̀sdən fɔr en bɔ́:ˀɣ ɔm amé:ˀrika;*	Det var forresten for en Bog om Amerika.
And since you're an engineer, you must have heard of the famous Danish scientists, H. C. Ørsted and Niels Bohr.	*mɛn dí sɔm ɛr ensjənjǿ:ˀr mɔ: da ha hø:ˀrd ɔm di bərœ́mˀdə dánsgə ví:ðənsgabsmɛ̀nˀ ho: se: œ́rsdɛð ɔ nels bó:ˀr;*	Men De, som er Ingeniør, maa da have hørt om de berømte danske Videnskabsmænd H. C. Ørsted og Niels Bohr.
Bill		
Yes, of course I have.	*iá dé há:ˀr jɛ sgam ɔ́sə.*	Ja, det har jeg skam ogsaa.

play ballet	*sdøgə* *balɛ́t*	Stykke Ballet
Last Friday I went to the royal theatre and saw a play by Holberg and a short ballet.	*i lœ́rdas var jɛ i de kɔ́ŋəliə teá:ʔdər, vɔr jɛ sɔ́:ʔ ed sdøgə a hɔ́lbɛ̀r, ɔ bá:ʔɛ̀fdər en lílə balɛ́t.*	I Lørdags var jeg i det kongelige Teater, hvor jeg saa et Stykke af Holberg og bagefter en lille Ballet.
It was very good.	*de var vɛ́ldi mórsɔmʔt;*	Det var vældig morsomt.
Mrs. Knudsen		
any opera	*no:n* *ó:ʔbəra*	nogen Opera
Have you been to an opera?	*har di vɛ̀:ərð te no:n ó:ʔbəra;*	Har De været til nogen Opera?
Bill		
No, not yet.	*nɛ́: égə enú.*	Næh, ikke endnu.
I hope I can get to one before I leave.	*jɛ hɔ́:bər jɛ nɔ́:ʔr de énən jɛ rájʔser.*	Jeg haaber, jeg naar det, inden jeg rejser.
music	*musík*	Musik
I've always been very much interested in music.	*jɛ́ har nɛ̀mli álʔtiðʔ vɛ̀:ərð máəð entrəsé:ʔərð i musík;*	Jeg har nemlig altid været meget interesseret i Musik.
known *or* well-known in the field of	*kɛnʔt* *énənfɔr*	kendt indenfor
Who's actually most widely known among Danish musicians?	*vɛ́mʔ ɛr é:ʔnli mé:ʔsd kɛ́nʔd énənfɔr dánsʔsg musík?*	Hvem er egentlig mest kendt indenfor dansk Musik?

Mr. Knudsen		
composers	*komponɪ́sdər*	Komponister
I suppose Niels V. Gade and Carl Nielsen are our greatest composers.	*nels vé:ʔ gá:ðə ɔ karl nɛ́lsən ɛr vel nɔ́g vɔ̀rəs sdǽrsdə komponɪ́sdər.*	Niels W. Gade og Carl Nielsen er vel nok vores største Komponister.
Bill		
Tell me, what's that building there?	*sɪ́:ʔ maj, vá ɛr dé fɔr en býgneŋ dɛ́:ʔr?*	Sig mig, hvad er det for en Bygning der?
Mr. Knudsen		
university	*onivɛrsité:ʔt*	Universitet
That's the University of Copenhagen and next to it is "*Frue Kirke.*"	*dé ɛ købənháv ʔns onivɛrsité:ʔd, ɔ dɛ́:ʔr ve sɪ́:ðən á:ʔ légər frú:ə kɪ́rgə.*	Det er Københavns Universitet, og der ved Siden af ligger Frue Kirke.
almost	*nɛ́sdən*	næsten
Lutherans	*ludərá:ʔnərə*	Lutheranere
Almost all Danes are Lutherans.	*nɛ́sdən álə dánsgərə ɛr ludərá:ʔnərə;*	Næsten alle Danskere er Lutheranere.
Bill		
How old's the university?	*vɔr gáməld ɛr onivɛrsité:ʔdəð?*	Hvor gammelt er Universitetet?
Mr. Knudsen		
It's almost 500 years old.	*de ɛ sná:ʔrd fɛ́mʔ húnrəðə ɔ́:ʔr gáməlt.*	Det er snart 500 Aar gammelt.
Some years ago we established another university in Aarhus.	*mɛn fɔr no:n ɔ́:ʔr sɪ́:ðən feg vi ɔ́sə onivɛrsité:ʔd i ɔ́rhù:ʔs.*	Men for nogle Aar siden fik vi ogsaa Universitet i Aarhus.

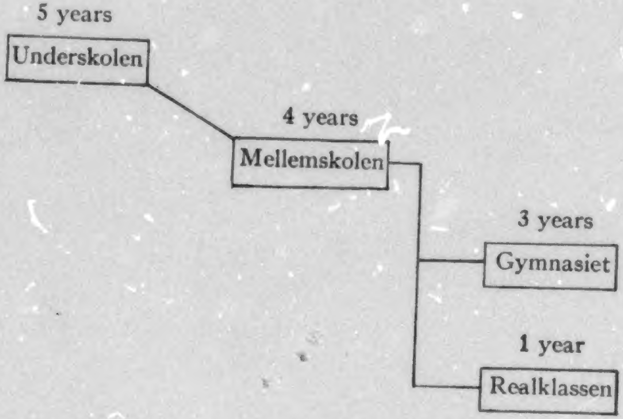
Bill

school	*sgóːlə*	Skole
How many years do you have to go to school in Denmark?	*vɔr máŋə ɔ́ːʔr sga man gɔː i sgóːlə i dánmark?*	Hvor mange Aar skal man gaa i Skole i Danmark?
From the time you're seven until you're fourteen.	*fra man ɛr sýʋʔ te man ɛr fjórdən.*	Fra man er 7 til man er 14.
decide	*bəsdɛ́mʔə*	bestemme
After that you can decide for yourself what you want to do.	*báːʔɛ̀fdər ka man sɛ́lʔ bəsdɛ́mʔə va man vé.*	Bagefter kan man selv bestemme, hvad man vil.
study	*sdudéːʔər*	studere
"student"	*sdudɛ́nʔt*	Student
To go to the university you have to be a "student".	*mɛn fɔr ɔ sdudéːʔər vɛ onivɛrsitéːʔdəð mɔː man vɛ̀ːər sdudɛ́nʔt;*	Men for at studere ved Universitetet, maa man være Student.
the grammar school	*ónərsgɔ̀ːlən*	Underskolen
the junior high school	*mɛ́ləmsgɔ̀ːlən*	Mellemskolen
the high school	*gymnáːʔsjəð*	Gymnasiet
That means that you've gone to school for twelve years—five years to grammar school, four to junior high school, and three to high school.	*de ve síːə a man har gɔ̀ːəð tɔ́lʔ ɔ́ːʔr i sgóːlə, nɛ̀mli fɛ́mʔ ɔ́ːʔr i ónərsgɔ̀ːlən, fíːər ɔ́ːʔr i mɛ́ləmsgɔ̀ːlən ɔ tréːʔ ɔ́ːʔr i gymnáːʔsjəð.*	Det vil sige, at man har gaaet tolv Aar i Skole—nemlig fem Aar i Underskolen, fire Aar i Mellemskolen og tre Aar i Gymnasiet.

"Real"-exam[1]	*reá:ʔlegsàmən*	Realeksamen
If you don't want to become a "student", you can finish up in a year after junior high school by taking an exam.	*ves man égə har løsd te ɔ blì:ə sdudέnʔd, ka man blì:ə fέrdi pɔ: ed ɔ́:ʔr mɛ reá:ʔlegsàmən ὲfdər mέləmsgò:lən.*[1]	Hvis man ikke har Lyst til at blive Student, kan man blive færdig paa et Aar med Realeksamen efter Mellemskolen.

---

[1] The following chart shows you how the Danish school system works:



When a boy or girl gets through *Mellemskolen*, he either goes to the *Gymnasiet* for three years, after which he can go on to the university, or he goes to *Realklassen* [*reá:ʔlklàsən*] for one year, at the end of which he takes the *Realeksamen*. After passing the *Realeksamen* he can go on to commercial school or to certain technical schools.

established *or* founded	*ɔ́brɛ̀dəð*	oprettet
the 'folk schools'	*hɔ́jsgò:lərnə*	Højskolerne
The 'folk schools' were established by Grundtvig.	*gróndvi har ɔ́brɛ̀dəð hɔ́jsgò:lərnə.*	Grundtvig har oprettet Højskolerne.
adult *or* grown up	*vɔ́gsnə*	voksne
history	*hisdó:ˀrjə*	Historie
art	*konˀst*	Kunst
language	*sbrɔ:ˀɣ*	Sprog
the population *or* the people	*bəfɔ́lˀgneŋˀən*	Befolkningen
All adults who are interested in learning more about history, art, music, and the Danish language can go there, but these schools are specially for people who live in the country.	*álə vɔ́gsnə sɔm ɛr entrəsé:ˀərð i ɔ lɛ̀:ər mé:ˀr ɔm hisdó:ˀrjə kónˀsd ɔ musíg ɔ ɔm de dánsgə sbrɔ́:ˀɣ ka gɔ́:ˀ dər, mɛn dísə sgó:lər ɛr sɛ́rli fɔr bəfɔ́lˀgneŋˀən pɔ: lánˀəð.*	Alle voksne, som er interesseret i at lære mere om Historie, Kunst, og Musik, og om det danske Sprog, kan gaa der, men disse Skoler er særlig for Befolkningen paa Landet.
Bill		
I've never heard about them before.	*dɛ́m har jɛ égə hø̀:ˀrd ɔ́mˀ fœ́:ˀr.*	Dem har jeg ikke hørt om før.
That's really a good idea.	*dé ɛ vírgli en gó:ˀ idé:ˀ.*	Det er virkelig en god Ide.
What do you do for the sick and the aged here in Denmark?	*vá gœ́r man fɔr di sý:ə ɔ gámlə hɛ́:ˀr i lánˀəð?*	Hvad gør man for de syge og gamle her i Landet?
old-age assistance	*álˀərsrɛ̀ndə*	Aldersrente
Do they get old-age assistance?	*fɔr di álˀərsrɛ̀ndə;*	Faar de Aldersrente?

Mr. Knudsen		
everyone	*envɛ́:ˀr*	enhver
support himself	*ónərhɔ̀lˀə saj sɛ́lˀ*	underholde sig selv
Yes, everyone who's over sixty and can't support himself, can get old-age assistance.	*já envɛ́:ˀr dɛr ər ɔ́vˀər trés ɔ́:ˀr ɔ égə ka ónərhɔ̀lˀə saj sɛ́lˀ ka fɔ́:ˀ ál:ˀərsrɛ̀ndə.*	Ja, enhver der er over tres Aar og ikke kan underholde sig selv, kan faa Aldersrente.
the health insurance organization	*sý:əkàsən*	Sygekassen
And everybody has to be a member of the health insurance organization.	*ɔ álə mɔ: vɛ̀:ər mɛ́ðlɛ̀mˀ a sý:əkàsən.*	Og alle maa være Medlem af Sygekassen.
amount	*bəlǿ̞:ˀp*	Beløb
taken care of *or* looked after	*pásəð*	passet
You pay a small amount every month, and then, if you're sick at home, you get help from the health insurance organization.	*man bətá:ˀlər ed lílə bəlǿ̞:ˀb ɔm mɔ́:nðən, ɔ sgu man blì:ə sý:ˀ jɛ́mə, fɔr man jɛ́lˀb a sý:əkàsən.*	Man betaler et lille Beløb om Maaneden, og skulde man blive syg hjemme, faar man Hjælp af Sygekassen.
free of charge	*grá:tis*	gratis
And if you're laid up in the hospital, you're taken care of there free of charge.	*ɔ blìər man énlàgd pɔ: hosbitá:ˀləð, blìər man pásəð hé:ˀld grá:tis dɛ́:ˀr.*	Og bliver man indlagt paa Hospitalet, bliver man passet helt gratis der.
Bill		
enjoy	*ný:ˀðər*	nyder
Does everybody benefit from the health insurance organization?	*nỳ:ðər álə gɔ́d a sý:əkàsən;*	Nyder alle godt af Sygekassen?

Mr. Knudsen		
income	*éntὲgt*	Indtægt
No, only those people who have less than a certain income.	*nájˀ de ɛ kón dí mɛ́nəsgər dɛr har ónˀər en bəsdémˀd éntὲgt.*	Nej, det er kun de Mennesker, der har under en bestemt Indtægt.
Those who have a larger income have to pay to the health insurance organization, but they don't get help from it.	*di dɛr har sdœ́rə éntὲgd sga bətá:ˀlə te sý:əkàsən, mɛn di fɔr égə jɛ́lˀb frá dən.*	De der har større Indtægt, skal betale til Sygekassen, men de faar ikke Hjælp fra den.
Bill		
rich	*rí:ə*	rige
That way, then, the rich help those who don't have so much.	*já pɔ: dɛ́nˀ mɔ́:ðə jɛ́lˀbər di rí:ə àlˀdsɔ di dɛr égə há:ˀr sɔ máəð.*	Ja, paa den Maade hjælper de rige altsaa de, der ikke har saa meget.
Mr. Knudsen		
difference between poor	*fɔ́rsgὲlˀ pɔ:* *fádi*	Forskel paa fattig
Yes, but here in Denmark there's not such a big difference between poor and rich, as there is in many other countries.	*já mɛn hɛ́:ˀr i dánmarg ɛr dər égə sɔ sdó:ˀr fɔ́rsgὲlˀ pɔ: fádi ɔ rí:ˀ sɔm man sé:ˀr i máŋə ándrə lánə.*	Ja, men her i Danmark er der ikke saa stor Forskel paa fattig og rig, som man ser i mange andre Lande.
no one	*éŋən*	ingen
I think you can really say that there's no one who needs to go to bed hungry or not have a roof over his head.	*jɛ tror gɔ́d man ka sí:ə a dɛr ər éŋən dɛr bəhǿ:ˀvər ɔ gɔ: súlˀdən i sɛ́ŋˀ ὲlər égə ha tá:ˀɣ ɔ́vˀər hó:ðəð.*	Jeg tror godt, man kan sige, at der er ingen, der behøver at gaa sulten i Seng eller ikke have Tag over Hovedet.

2. Hints on Spelling

You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following new words:

Gymnasium, Gymnasiet, Gymnasier[1]	*gymná:ˀsjəm, gymná:ˀsjəð gymná:ˀsjər*	high school
Historie	*hisdó:ˀrjə*	history
Lutheraner	*ludərá:ˀnər*	Lutheran
Museum, Museet, Museer[1]	*musɛ́:əm, musɛ́:əð, musɛ́:ər*	museum
Bohr	*bo:ˀr*	Bohr (*last name*)
Claus[2]	*klavˀs*	Claus (*man's name*)
Holberg	*hɔ́lbɛ̀r*	Holberg (*last name*)
Nielsen	*nélsən*	Nielsen (*last name*)
Stephensen[2]	*sdɛ́fənsən*	Stephensen (*last name*)
Thorvaldsen	*Tórvàlˀsən*	Thorvaldsen (*last name*)

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Using "the" rather than "my", "your", etc.

Hvad har De Øjne i **Hovedet** *for?*	What have you got eyes in your head for?
Ligger De godt, eller vil De have en Pude til i **Ryggen?**	Are you comfortable or do you want another pillow in back of you ('at your back')?

---

[1] See *Word Study*, page 719.

[2] See *Listening In*.

Mange Tak, men jeg vil nu alligevel have, at De banker paa **Døren** *ved ni Tiden.*	Thanks a lot, but I'd really like to have you knock on my door around nine o'clock.
Det bliver nok svært for hende at vænne sig til at bo i Amerika saa langt fra **Familien** *her.*	It'll be a little hard for her to get used to living in America so far from her family.
Børnene har Flag i **Haanden,** *og alle vinker og raaber Hurra.*	The children carry flags ('have flags in their hands') and everyone waves and cheers.
Jeg tror godt, man kan sige, at der er ingen, der behøver at gaa sulten i Seng eller ikke have Tag over **Hovedet.**	I think you can really say that there's no one who needs to go to bed hungry or not have a roof over his head.

Look at the words printed in heavy type and notice that where in English we say "your head", "your back", "my door", "her family", "their hands", and "his head", in Danish you use just the the-form of the nouns in question, *Hovedet, Ryggen, Døren,* etc. You do this in Danish when you're speaking of parts of the body or things like "the door" and "the family" when it's obvious from the rest of the conversation whose door or whose family is being referred to. Observe that in the next to the last sentence you say *Haanden,* 'the hand', even though you're talking about more than one child.

2. Omission of *en* or *et*

Nej, der er **Sporvogn** *og* **Tog.**	No, there's a streetcar and a train.
Er der **Spisevogn** *i Lyntoget?*	Is there a dining car on the express train?
Skulde jeg ikke være her, kan De jo give **Besked** *til min Sekretær.*	If I'm not here, you can leave a message with my secretary.
Nu er vi lige ved at faa **Maal.**	We're going to make a goal.
Hun ligger selv i Sengen med **Hovedpine.**	She's in bed herself with a headache.
I Amerika kunde vi ikke tænke os andet end at vælge **Præsident** *hvert fjerde Aar.*	In America we couldn't imagine not electing a president every four years.

Selv under Krigen var der jo **Valg.**	Even during the war we had an election.
Jeg tror godt, man kan sige, at der er ingen, der behøver at gaa sulten i Seng eller ikke have **Tag** *over Hovedet.*	I think you can really say that there's no one who needs to go to bed hungry or not have a roof over his head.

Notice that in Danish you don't use *en* or *et* with the words that are printed in heavy type, although in English we do use "a" or "an".

You omit the *en* and *et* in Danish, as you can see from the sentences above, when the noun refers, not to a particular streetcar, train, dining car, message, etc., but to any streetcar, train, dining car or message. In the third example, for instance, *Besked* does not refer to a special message, but to any message the man may happen to want to leave.

3. *Gennem, igennem*, etc.

Saa kan vi jo køre hjem **gennem** *Landet.*	Then we can come home through the country.
Her ligger Svinestien, vi kan gaa lige **igennem,** *saa kommer vi ind i Laden.*	Here's the pigsty—we can go right through into the granary.

As you see, in these sentences you have the words *gennem* and *igennem*, both corresponding to English "through". Notice that *gennem* is used in a phrase with the noun *Landet—gennem Landet*, 'through the country', while *igennem* is not used with any noun. In Danish, when you have a phrase like "through the country", "through the door", "through them", etc., you can use either *gennem* or *igennem*, but when you have the word "through" by itself you always use *igennem*.

The pair of words *mellem* and *imellem*, 'between', works in the same way. You had *imellem* in the following sentence:

Aah, di forbandede Høns, di løber da ogsaa altid **imellem** *Benene paa en.*	Og, these darn chickens, they're always getting under foot.

Here you could say *mellem* as well as *imellem*, since it is used in the phrase (*i*)*mellem Benene*, 'between the legs'. Now look at the following two sentences:

De kan ringe (**i**)**mellem** *syv og ni om Morgenen.*	You can call between seven and nine in the morning.
Du ved, hvor Jensens bor? Og du ved, hvor Apoteket ligger? Vi bor lige **imellem.**	You know where the Jensens live? And you know where the pharmacy is? Well, we live right in between.

In the first of these sentences, as you see, you can use either *mellem* or *imellem* in the phrase (*i*)*mellem syv og ni*, but in the last sentence where it's not "between something and something", but just "in between", you always use *imellem*.

The pair of words *mens* and *imens* works a little differently. You had *mens*, 'while', in the following sentence:

Kan du ikke gaa derover, **mens** *jeg er hos Grønthandleren?*	Can't you go over there while I'm getting the vegetables?

Imens can mean "while", too, and be used in place of *mens*, but it can also mean "meanwhile" or "in the meantime" and be used as in the following:

Jeg skal gaa hen at faa den Medicin til dig.	I'll go get that medicine for you.
Ja, gør det. **Imens** *skal jeg sørge for at faa din Kuffert pakket.*	Yes, do that. In the meantime I'll see about getting your suitcase packed.

4. Difference between *bo* and *leve*

Hvor **bor** *han?*	Where does he live?
Hvornaar **levede** *han?*	When did he live?

As you see, both *bo* and *leve* correspond to English "live", but they are used differently. You use *bo* when you're talking about "having a home", while you use *leve* when you're talking about "being alive" or "existing".

5. Special ways of saying things

A

Jo, det skal De nok **faa at se.**	You'll see all right!
Men Bill, det var forresten kedeligt, at du ikke **fik set** *Storken.*	It's too bad you didn't get to see the stork, Bill.
Jeg er nu glad for, vi **fik set** *Thorvaldsens Museum.*	I'm glad we got to see Thorvaldsen's Museum.

Notice that the expressions *faa at se* and *fik set* in these sentences correspond to English "get to see" and "got to see". Observe that, although you use *at* plus the basic form *se* after the basic form *faa* in the first sentence, you use the participle *set* after the past form *fik* in the last two sentences. You can also say *har faaet set*, 'have gotten to see'.

B

Sig mig, **hvad er det for en Bygning** *der?*	Tell me, what's that building there?

Notice that what you really say in this Danish sentence is "What is that for a building?". This expression *hvad for en* or *hvad for et* is quite common in Danish. Here are some new sentences to show you how it's used:

Hvad for en Skjorte *kan De bedst lide—den der eller den hvide derhenne?*	Which shirt do you like best—that one or the white one over there?
Kan De sige mig, **hvad for et Hus** *Doktoren bor i?*	Can you tell me which house the doctor lives in?
Hvad er det for en Bog, *du læser der?*	What book is that you're reading?
Hvad for en Højskole *gik hun paa?*	Which folk school did she go to?
Hvad *var han egentlig* **for en Slags Mand?**	What kind of a man was he actually?

Hvad er det *dog* **for en mærkelig Bygning** *derovre?*	What's that odd building over there?
Hvad for et Vindue *er det, du vil have lukket?*	What window is it you want closed?
Hvad er det *nu* **for en Forretning,** *du skal ind i?*	Now what store are you going into?

6. Compounds

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit:

noun + noun

Nobelpris, 'Nobel prize', = **Nobel,** 'Nobel', (*a name*) + **Pris,** 'prize'

Billedhugger, 'sculptor', = **Billede,** 'picture', + **-hugger,** which is not used as a noun by itself, but comes from the verb *hugge* [*hógə*] 'chop'. The first noun is pronounced [*bílðə*] and spelled *Billede* when used as a word by itself, but is pronounced *bíləð-* and spelled *Billed-* in the compound.

adjective + noun

Højskole, 'folk school' = **høj,** 'high' + **Skole,** 'school'

Sygekasse, 'health insurance organization', = **syge,** ə-form of the adjective *syg*, 'sick' + **Kasse,** 'box'

noun + s + noun

Videnskabsmand, 'scientist', = **Videnskab,** 'science', + **s** + **Mand,** 'man'

Aldersrente, 'old age assistance', = **Alder,** 'age', + **s** + **Rente,** 'interest' (*on money*)

miscellaneous

Underskole, 'grammar school', = **under,** 'under', + **Skole,** 'school'

Mellemskole, 'junior high school', = **mellem,** 'between', + **Skole,** 'school'

7. Irregular nouns

The nouns *Museum* [*musɛ́:əm*] and *Gymnasium* [*gymná:ʔsjəm*] have the irregular the-forms *Museet* [*musɛ́:əð*] and *Gymnasiet* [*gymná:ʔsjəð*] and the irregular plurals, *Museer* [*musɛ́:ər*] and *Gymnasier* [*gymná:ʔsjər*].

The plural *Videnskabsmænd*, of course, goes with the singular *Videnskabsmand*, 'scientist'.

8. Irregular verbs

Here are the two irregular verbs you had in this unit.

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
nyde [*ný:ðə*] 'enjoy'	***nød*** [*nø:ʔð*] 'enjoyed'	***nydt*** [*nyt*] 'enjoyed'
underholde [*ónərhɔ̀lʔə*] 'support'	***underholdt*** [*ónərhɔ̀lʔt*] 'supported'	***underholdt*** [*ónərhɔ̀lʔt*] 'supported'

9. Three adjectives to notice

The adjective *ri:ʔ* (rig) has the regular ə-form *rí:ə* (rige), but the irregular t-form *rigt* (rigt.) Notice, though, that the spelling is regular in all three forms.

The word ***voksne***, 'adult, grown-up', which you had in this unit is the ə-form of the adjective *voksen* [*vɔ́gsən*].
You learned that when the basic form of an adjective ends in *ər* or *əl*, like *sikker* [*ségər*] and *gammel* [*gáməl*], the
ə before the *r* and *l* is left out when the ending *-ə* is added—*sikre* [*ségrə*] and *gamle* [*gámlə*]. Now you see that the
same thing happens when the basic form ends in *ən*. The word ***voksen*** is always an adjective in Danish, but it is
often used without a following noun and it then corresponds to the English noun "adult, grown-up". The Danish
equivalent of "the adult" is ***den voksne*** and of "the adults", ***de voksne***.

The adjective *glað* (glad), 'glad, happy', has the ə-form *glá:ðə* (glade) with a long vowel.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

The following questions are based on the material contained in the *Basic Sentences*. Be prepared to give your answers in Danish.

1. Hvem var Thorvaldsen og hvornaar levede han?
2. Hvad skrev H. C. Andersen?
3. Hvem var den sidste danske Forfatter, der har faaet Nobelprisen?
4. Kender De Navnene paa to berømte danske Videnskabsmænd?
5. Hvor mange Universiteter er der i Danmark?
6. Hvor ligger de?
7. Hvornaar begynder man at gaa i Skole i Danmark?
8. Hvor mange Aar gaar man i Underskolen og i Mellemskolen?
9. Hvad lærer man om i Højskolerne?
10. Hvem gaar i de Skoler?
11. Hvem har oprettet dem?
12. Hvem faar Aldersrente i Danmark?
13. Hvor mange er Medlemmer af Sygekassen?
14. Hvem nyder godt af den?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Quiz in a Danish classroom.*

Professor Stephensen: I Dag har De lært om H. C. Andersen.

[*profèsər sdéfənsən*] Hvornaar levede han, Mogens Finsen?

Mogens Finsen: Han levede fra 1805-1875.

Professor Stephensen: Ja, det er rigtigt.
Hvad kan De ellers fortælle om H. C. Andersen?

Mogens Finsen: Han er Danmarks største Digter og berømt over hele Verden.
Han kom fra Odense [*ó:ˀðənsə*] paa Fyn fra et meget fattigt Hjem.[1]
Da han var 14-15 Aar gammel, rejste han til København, hvor han arbejdede nogen Tid ved det kongelige Teater, for han var meget interesseret i Musik og Ballet.

Professor Stephensen: Ja Tak, saa kan Svend Bøg [*svénˀ bǿ:ˀγ*] maaske gaa videre.

Svend Bøg: Da H. C. Andersen kom til København, havde han Hovedet fuldt af de mærkeligste Ideer, og det var hans største Ønske[2] at blive berømt.
Det blev han jo ogsaa, men han var berømt ude i Verden længe før han blev det i Danmark.
Danskerne forstod ham ikke, og ingen syntes egentlig rigtigt om ham.

---

[1] As a noun *Hjem*, 'home' has the the-form *Hjemmet* and the plural *Hjem*.

[2] As a noun *Ønske*, 'wish', has the the-form *Ønsket* and the plural *Ønsker*.

Han rejste rundt i hele Europa og var ogsaa i England, hvor han besøgte Charles Dickens.

Man har senere fundet flere interessante Breve, som H. C. Andersen har skrevet til Dickens.

Han skrev en Del Teaterstykker paa sine Rejser og sendte dem hjem til det kongelige Teater.

Han skrev ogsaa et Par Operaer, som den danske Komponist Hartmann har skrevet Musikken til.

Men det var først, da han begyndte at skrive sine Eventyr, som nu er læst af Børn og voksne over hele Verden, at man fandt ud af, hvor stor en Digter han egentlig var.

Han blev aldrig gift, og han døde i København, da han var 70 Aar gammel.

Professor Stephensen: Kan De sige mig, hvad nogle af hans mest kendte Eventyr hedder?

Svend Bøg: Ja, han har for Eksempel skrevet "Den lille Havfrue", "De røde Sko"[1], "Store Claus og lille Claus", "Den lille Pige med Svovlstikkerne"[2], "Snedronningen", "Den flyvende Kuffert"[3], "Svinedrengen", "Den grimme Ælling"[4] og "Prinsessen paa Ærten"[5].

2. *Tom and Inge talk about school.*

Inge: Hvad er det for en Bog, du læser Tom?

Tom: Det er "Den lange Rejse" af Johannes V. Jensen, som jeg har laant af din Far.

Inge: Han har skrevet en Masse gode Bøger.

Han er en af de Forfattere, jeg synes bedst om.

Vi læste "Den lange Rejse" baade i Underskolen og Mellemskolen.

Jeg kan huske, vi syntes nu og da, at Rejsen godt kunde have været lidt kortere, men i Skolen faar man jo let for meget af alting.

---

[1] "The Red Shoes".

[2] *svɔ́wlsdèk* (Svovlstik) is an old word for "match".

[3] "The Flying Suitcase".

[4] "The Ugly Duckling".

[5] "The Princess on the Pea".

Senere har jeg læst de fleste af hans Bøger, og de er vældig godt skrevet og mægtig spændende.

Tom: Din Far fortalte, at han har faaet Nobelprisen for en Bog om Amerika.

Inge: Ja, der er mange Danskere indenfor Litteratur og Videnskab, der har faaet Nobelprisen.

En af Fars gode Venner, som er Videnskabsmand, fik den for et Par Aar siden.

Tom: Læser du ellers meget, Inge?

Inge: Nej desværre, jeg har ikke haft Tid i de sidste Par Aar.

Men jeg har læst næsten alt af Shakespeare, Dickens og Kipling og selvfølgelig en Masse danske Bøger.

Tom: Er du Student?

Inge: Nej, jeg har kun Realeksamen.

Jeg kunde nemlig ikke lide at gaa i Skole, saa jeg havde ikke Lyst til at gaa i Gymnasiet.

Ti Aar var mere end nok for mig.

Tom: Hvad gjorde du, da du var færdig med Skolen?

Inge: Først kunde jeg ikke rigtig bestemme mig.

Derfor gik jeg paa en Højskole uden for[1] København i nogle Maaneder, til jeg vidste, hvad jeg vilde.

Har I Højskoler i Amerika?

Tom: Det ved jeg ikke, hvad lærer man der?

Inge: Man lærer alt om Danmarks Historie og Litteratur og om det danske Sprog.

Grundtvig har oprettet Højskolerne.

Alle kan gaa der, men det er særlig Befolkningen paa Landet, som gaar der om Vinteren, naar der ikke er saa meget at gøre paa Gaardene.

Jeg kunde godt lide at være der, men det var selvfølgelig morsommere, da jeg fik Lov til at rejse til Frankrig bagefter for at studere Kunst og Musik.

Jeg gik paa Museer hver Dag og studerede Billedhuggerkunst og lærte en Masse ved at se paa alle de dejlige Malerier, der er i Frankrig.

Tom: Hvornaar var du da i England?

Inge: Der rejste jeg over bagefter for at lære Sprog.

Jeg var i Oxford i nogle Maaneder og studerede ved Universitetet.

Jeg er bange for, at jeg havde lært lidt mere, hvis jeg havde moret mig lidt mindre!

Tom: Du taler da udmærket Engelsk.

Og det kan du være glad for, for naar du kommer til Amerika, maa du jo tale Engelsk hele Dagen.

---

[1] When used with a noun, *uden for* is spelled as two words. Otherwise it is spelled as one.

Inge: Det skal du ikke være bange for, jeg skal nok klare mig.
Sig mig Tom, er din Mor Lutheraner?

Tom: Ja, det er hele Familien.
Kirken ligger ikke mere end 10 Minutter fra vores Gaard.

Inge: Tom, ih hvor jeg dog glæder mig til at komme til Amerika.
Jeg kan næsten ikke vente med at rejse derover.

Tom: Du kan tro, at Far og Mor ogsaa bliver glade, naar du kommer.
Og jeg vil slet ikke tale om mig selv!

3. *Social security in Denmark.*

Enhver der ikke kan underholde sig selv, og som er over 60 Aar gammel, kan faa Aldersrente i Danmark.

Rundt omkring i Byerne er der mange Hjem for de gamle og syge.

Man betaler et mindre Beløb om Aaret til Sygekassen, og bliver man syg, kan man blive indlagt paa Hospitalet og blive passet helt gratis.

Det er dog ikke alle, der nyder godt af Sygekassen.

Har man over en bestemt Indtægt om Aaret, skal man betale til den, men man faar ikke Hjælp fra den.

Paa den Maade hjælper de rige de, der ikke har saa meget, men der er heldigvis ikke saa stor Forskel paa rig og fattig i Danmark, som i mange andre Lande.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. Three of you talk about the things you are most interested in. One of you likes music and art. He plays in an orchestra and goes to art museums several times a week. He hopes to be a composer. Another one is more interested in literature—he reads all the time. He wants to learn something

about Danish literature now that (***nu da***) he understands Danish. He'd like to read some of Johannes V. Jensen's books and also Hans Christian Andersen's fairy tales. He read them in English when he was a little boy, but now he'll be able to read them in Danish. The third person in the group is a scientist. He'd learned about Niels Bohr in school, and now Bohr has become one of the world's most famous scientists.

2. A Dane and an American chat about their respective school-days. The American asks the Dane about the schools in Denmark and the Dane explains that he began when he was seven and went first to grammar school for five years, then to junior high school for four years. Then he decided that he wouldn't go to high school and become a "student", because he didn't really want to go to the university. So he went to "*Realklassen*" for a year and then took the "*Real*"-exam. But later when he was working on a farm in the country he wanted to study some more, so he went to a "folk school" for a couple of years. Then he asks the American about his schooling. The American tells him that he began when he was six years old. He lived in a city so he went to grammar school for six years, to junior high school for three years and to high school also for three years. He explains that if you live in the country, you generally go to grammar school for eight years and then to high school for four years. The Dane asks him what he did after high school. He says that he took an exam and went to a university. He'd been studying there for two years when the war began. Now he's going to go back and study some more, because he wants to be an engineer.

3. Tell a friend about a trip you and your wife took to New York a few weeks ago. Your wife wanted to go to the opera and to a ballet and you wanted to see a couple of plays. Your friend asks if you could get any tickets. You say that you knew it was hard to get them so you wrote and ordered them four weeks before you went. He asks how you got a hotel room—he thought they were all full. You tell him that you had to write to five hotels before you could find one, and then it was very small and you had to share the bath. Your friend asks you to tell him about the plays. You say that they were both awfully amusing and that you had good seats so you could hear and see very well. He asks how you liked the ballet and the opera. You tell him that you thought they were rather boring, but your wife is very much interested in music so she liked them very much.

4. Tell another member of the group about Danish health insurance and old-age assistance. He asks questions and you answer them.

Finder List

álˀərsrɛ̀ndə, -n, -r (Aldersrente, -n, -r) old age assistance
balɛ́t, -ən, -ər (Ballet, -ten, -ter) ballet
bəfɔ́lˀgneŋ, bəfɔ́lˀgneŋˀən (Befolkning, -en) population
bəlǿ:ˀp, -əð, — (Beløb, -et, —) amount
bərœ́mˀt, -ə (berømt, -e) famous
bəsdɛ́mˀə, -də (bestemme, bestemte) decide
bíləðhògər, -ən, -ə (Billedhugger, -en, -e) sculptor
bo:ˀr (Bohr) *last name*
bǿ:ˀɣ (Bøg) *last name*
dégdər, -ən, -ə (Digter, -en, -e) poet
egsámən, -ən, egsámnər (Eksamen, -en, -er) exam
énənfɔ̀r/énənfɔr (indenfor) in the field of
éntɛ̀gt, -ən, -ər (Indtægt, -en, -er) income
envɛ́:ˀr (enhver) everyone
éŋən (ingen) no one
ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl, ɛgsɛ́mˀbləð, ɛgsɛ́mˀblər (Eksempel, -et, Eksempler) example
  fɔr ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl (for Eksempel) for example
ɛ́:vəntỳ:ˀr, -əð, — (Eventyr, -et, —) fairy tale
fádi (fattig) poor

fénˀsən (Finsen) *last name*
fɔ: ɔ sé:ˀ, feg sé:ˀt, fɔ̀:əð sé:ˀt (faa at se, fik set, faaet set) get to see
fɔrfádər, -ən, -ə (Forfatter, -en, -e) author
fɔ́rsgɛ̀lˀ, -ən, fɔ́rsgɛ̀lə (Forskel, -len, -le) difference
glað, glá:ðə (glad) happy, glad
grá:tis (gratis) free of charge
gróndvi (Grundtvig) *last name*
gymná:ˀsjəm, gymná:ˀsjəð, gymná:ˀsjər (Gymnasium, Gymnasiet, Gymnasier) high school
hárdmànˀ (Hartmann) *last name*
hisdó:ˀrjə, -n (Historie, -n) history
hɔ́jsgò:lə, -n, -r (Hojskole, -n, -r) 'folk school' (*for adults*)
hɔ́lbɛ̀r (Holberg) *last name*
imɛ́nˀs (imens) while, meanwhile, in the meantime
jɛmˀ, -əð, — (Hjem, -met, —) home
johánˀəs (Johannes) *man's name*
kásə, -n, -r (Kasse, -n, -r) box
kɛnˀt, -ə (kendt, -e) known, well-known

klavˀs (Claus) *man's name*

komponíst, -ən, -ər (Komponist, -en, -er) composer

konˀst, -ən (Kunst, -en) art

lé:və, -ðə (leve, -de) live

lidəratú:ˀr, lidəratú:ˀərn, lidəratú:ˀər (Litteratur, -en, -er) literature

ludərá:ˀnər, -ən, -ə (Lutheraner, -en, -e) Lutheran

malərí:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Maleri, -et, -er) painting

mársdrànˀ (Marstrand) *last name*

mélˀəm (mellem) between

méləmsgò:lə, -n, -r (Mellemskole, -n, -r) junior high school

musé:əm, musé:əð, musé:ər (Museum, Museet, Museer) museum

musík, -ən (Musik, -ken) music

nélsən (Nielsen) *last name*

nésdən (næsten) almost

nobélprì:ˀs, -ən, nobélprì:sər (Nobelpris, -en, -er) Nobel prize

no:n (nogen) any

ný:ðə, ný:ˀðər, nø:ˀð, nyt (nyde, nød, nydt) enjoy

ó:ˀðənsə (Odense) *city on Fyn*

ónərhɔ̀lˀə, ónərhɔ̀lˀt, ónərhɔ̀lˀt (underholde, underholdt, underholdt) support

ónərhɔ̀lˀə saj sélˀ (underholde sig selv) support yourself

ónərsgò:lə, -n, -r (Underskole, -n, -r) grammar school

onivɛrsité:ˀt, -əð, -ər (Universitet, -et, -er) university

ó:ˀbəra, ó:ˀbəra:ˀən, ó:ˀbəra:ˀər (Opera, -en, -er) opera

pásə, -ðə (passe, -de) look after, take care of

pri:ˀs, -ən, prí:sər (Pris, -en, -er) prize

pɔ:ˀ: fɔ́rsgèlˀ pɔ: (Forskel paa) difference between

reá:ˀlegsàmən, -ən, reá:ˀlegsàmnər (Realeksamen, -en, -er) exam taken after one year course following *Mellemskolen*

ri:ˀ, rigt, rí:ə (rig) rich

sbrɔ:ˀγ, -əð, — (Sprog, -et, —) language

sdéfənsən (Stephensen) *last name*

sdudé:ˀər, -ðə (studere, -de) study

sdudénˀt, -ən, -ər (Student, -en, -er) "student" = graduate of a "Gymnasium"

sdøgə, -ð, -r (Stykke, -t, -r) play

sgó:lə, -n, -r (Skole, -n, -r) school

sgɔ́vgɔ̀:ˀr (Skovgaard) *last name*

svɛnʔ (Svend) *man's name*

syns (*sỳndəs* or *syns*) *ɔ́mʔ* (synes) (syntes) (om) like

sý:əkàsə, -n, -r (Sygekasse, -n, -r) health insurance organizat[illegible]

tórvàlʔsən (T[illegible]ldsen) *last name*

vá fɔr en(ed) [illegible]vad for en(et) . . .) what, which

ví:ðənsgà:ʔb, -ən, -ər (Videnskab, -en, -er) science

ví:ðənsgabsmànʔ, -ən, ví:ðənsgabsmɛ̀nʔ (Videnskabsmand, -en, Videnskabsmænd) scientist

vɔ́gsən, vɔ́gsnə (voksen, voksne) adult

ǿnsgə, -ð, -r (Ønske, -t, -r) wish

ǿrsdɛð (Ørsted) *last name*

ɔ́brɛ̀də, -ðə (oprette, -de) establish, found

ɔ́rhù:ʔs (Aarhus) *city in Jutland*

UNIT 27

INDUSTRY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Tom and Peter are talking.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Tom		
cooperative system	*ándelssysdè:ˀm*	Andelssystem
Can't you explain the Danish cooperative system to me?	*ka du égə fɔrklá:ˀər maj léd ɔm de dánsgə ándelssysdè:ˀm.*	Kan du ikke forklare mig lidt om det danske Andelssystem?
admit *or* confess	*énrœ̀mˀə*	indrømme
clear	*kla:ˀr*	klar
I've heard a lot about it, but I must admit that I'm not quite sure how it works.	*jɛ ar hǿ:ˀrd sɔ máəð ɔ́mˀ də, mɛn jɛ mɔ: énrœ̀mˀə a jɛ égə ɛ hé:ˀld klá:ˀr ɔ́vˀər va də ɛ́r.*	Jeg har hørt saa meget om det, men jeg maa indrømme, at jeg ikke er helt klar over, hvad det er.
Peter		
It's really quite easy to understand.	*dé ɛ sɔ̀mən máəð léd ɔ fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ.*	Det er saamænd meget let at forstaa.

instead of	*i sdɛ́ðˀəð fɔ́r*	i Stedet for
compete	*kɔŋkuré:ˀər*	konkurrere
help one another out	*jɛ́lbəs áð*	hjælpe ad
Instead of the small farm trying to compete with the large one, the farmers all help each other by lending one another machines, horses and lots of other things.	*i sdɛ́ðˀəð fɔr ɔ dɛn lílə gɔ́:ˀr prǿ:vər ɔ kɔŋkuré:ˀər mɛ dɛn sdó:ər, jɛ́lbəs man áð ve ɔ lɔ́:nə hinánən hɛ́sdə ɔ masgí:nər ɔ máŋə ándrə téŋˀ.*	I Stedet for at den lille Gaard prøver at konkurrere med den store, hjælpes man ad ved at laane hinanden Heste og Maskiner og mange andre Ting.
the farmer	*bónən*	Bonden
deliver(s)	*ávləvè:ˀər*	afleverer
the cattle	*kvɛ́:ˀɣəð*	Kvæget
the cooperative slaughter house	*ándelsslagdərì:ˀəð*	Andelsslagteriet
the cooperative dairy	*ándelsmajərì:ˀəð*	Andelsmejeriet
The farmer delivers his cattle to a cooperative slaughter house and his milk to a cooperative dairy.	*bónən ávləvè:ˀər kvɛ́:ˀɣəð pɔ: ándelsslagdərì:ˀəð ɔ mɛ́lˀgən pɔ: ándelsmajərì:ˀəð.*	Bonden afleverer Kvæget paa Andelsslagteriet og Mælken paa Andelsmajeriet.
produce(s)	*produsɛ́:ˀər*	producerer
at the same time that	*sámtìðˀi mɛ́ a*	samtidig med at
earns *or* makes	*tjɛ́:ˀnər*	tjener
proportion	*fɔ́rhɔ̀lˀ*	Forhold
In this way the small farm can produce better goods and at the same time earn as much as the large farm in proportion to what it produces.	*pɔ: dɛ́nˀ mɔ́:ðə ka dɛn lílə gɔ́:ˀr produsè:ər bɛ́ðrə vá:ər sámtìðˀi mɛ́ a dɛn tjɛ́:ˀnər lí:ə sɔ máəð sɔm dɛn sdó:ər gɔ́:ˀr i fɔ́rhɔ̀lˀ te dé dɛn produsé:ˀər.*	Paa den Maade kan den lille Gaard producere bedre Varer samtidig med, at den tjener lige saa meget som den store Gaard i Forhold til det, den producerer.

Tom		
So that's why you see so many cooperative dairies and slaughter houses all over the country.	*sɔ̀ ɛr də àlˀdsɔ dɛ́:ˀrfɔr man sé:ˀr sɔ máŋə ándelsmajərì:ˀər ɔ ándelsslagdərì:ˀər ɔ̀vˀər hé:lə lánˀəð.*	Saa er det altsaa derfor, man ser saa mange Andelsmejerier og Andelsslagterier over hele Landet.
Peter		
exactly	*nɛ́dɔ̀p*	netop
Yes, exactly.	*iá nɛ́dɔ̀p.*	Ja netop.
Tom		
export(s)	*ɛgsbɔrté:ˀər*	eksporterer
agricultural products	*lánbrusprodògdər*	Landbrugsprodukter
Who do you export your agricultural products to?	*vɛ́mˀ ɛgsbɔrté:ˀər i jɛ̀rəs lánbrusprodògdər té?*	Hvem eksporterer I jeres Landbrugsprodukter til?
Peter		
bacon	*bé:kɔn*	Bacon
We export eggs, bacon and butter to England.	*vi ɛgsbɔrté:ˀər ɛ́:ˀg bé:kɔn ɔ smœ́r te ɛ́ŋlànˀ.*	Vi eksporterer Æg, Bacon og Smør til England.
Germany	*týsglànˀ*	Tyskland
And before the war, cattle and some agricultural products went to Germany.	*mɛn kvɛ́:ˀɣ ɔ en dé:ˀl lánbrusprodògdər gig te týsglànˀ énən krí:ˀən.*	Men Kvæg og en Del Landbrugsprodukter gik til Tyskland inden Krigen.
industry	*indusdrí:ˀ*	Industri
handicraft	*hɔ́nvɛ̀rk*	Haandværk
most important	*vígdisdə*	vigtigste
means of livelihood *or* occupations *or* industries	*nɛ́:reŋsvàjə*	Næringsveje

After agriculture, industry and handicraft are the [next] most important means of livelihood.	*èfdər lánbrù:ˀ ɛr indusdrí:ˀ ɔ hɔ́nvèrg di vígdisdə nɛ́:reŋsvàjə.*	Efter Landbrug er Industri og Haandverk de vigtigste Næringsveje.
applied art	*kónsdindusdrì:ˀ*	Kunstindustri
high	*hɔjˀt*	højt
And applied art is very important.	*ɔ kónsdindusdrì:ˀən sdɔr máəð hɔ́jˀt.*	Og Kunstindustrien staar meget højt.
silver	*søl*	Sølv
porcelain	*pɔrsəlɛ́nˀ*	Porcelain
You must have heard of George Jensen's silver and of Copenhagen porcelain.	*du har ségərd hǿ:ˀrd ɔm gèɔɣ jɛ́nsəns sǿl ɔ ɔm købənhávˀns pɔrsəlɛ́nˀ.*	Du har sikkert hørt om Georg Jensens Sølv og om Københavns Porcelain.
Tom		
Yes, we have some of it at home.	*já dé há:ˀr vi nɔ́:əð á:ˀ jɛ́mə.*	Ja, det har vi noget af hjemme.
Peter		
finally	*ɛ́nəli*	endelig
commerce	*hánˀəl*	Handel
fishing	*fesgərí:ˀ*	Fiskeri
And finally, there's commerce and fishing.	*ɛ́nəli ɛr dər hánˀəl ɔ fesgərí:ˀ.*	Endelig er der Handel og Fiskeri.
merchant marine	*hánˀəlsflɔ̀:ðə*	Handelsflaade
Denmark has a very large merchant marine in proportion to the size of the country.	*dánmarg há:ˀr en máəð sdó:ˀr hánˀəlsflɔ̀:ðə i fɔ́rhɔ̀lˀ te lánˀəðs sdœ́rəlsə.*	Danmark har en meget stor Handelsflaade i Forhold til Landets Størrelse.

large quantities	*másəvì:ʔs*	massevis
ships	*sgí:bə*	Skibe
built	*býgəð*	bygget
shipyards	*sgíbsvὲrfdər*	Skibsværfter
And large numbers of ships are built in Danish shipyards even for other countries.	*ɔ másəvì:ʔs a sgí:bə blìər býgəð pɔ: dánsgə sgíbsvὲrfdər ɔ́sə fɔr ándrə lánə.*	Og Massevis af Skibe bliver bygget paa danske Skibsværfter ogsaa for andre Lande.
Tom		
skillful	*dǿgdiə*	dygtig
I know that Danish engineers are well-known for their skill.	*já jε vé:ʔ nɔ́g a dánsgə ensjənjǿ:ʔər εr kέnʔd fɔr ɔ vὲ:ər máəð dǿgdiə;*	Ja, jeg ved nok, at danske Ingeniører er kendt for at være meget dygtige.
cement factories	*semέnʔdfabrègərnə*	Cementfabrikkerne
Bill said that too, when he came home from Aalborg after seeing the cement factories over there.	*dé sá:ə bél ɔ́sə da han kɔm jέmʔ fra ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr έfdər ɔ ha sé:ʔd semέnʔdfabrègərnə derɔ́vrə.*	Det sagde Bill ogsaa, da han kom hjem fra Aalborg efter at have set Cementfabrikkerne derovre.
Peter		
the cement industry	*semέnʔdindusdrì:ʔən*	Cementindustrien
Yes, the cement industry is one of the largest in Denmark.	*já semέnʔdindusdrì:ʔən εr έ:ʔn a di sdǽrsdə i dánmark.*	Ja, Cementindustrien er en af de største i Danmark.
distilleries	*sbrídfabrègər*	Spritfabrikker
By the way, the Danish distilleries are in Aalborg, too.	*fɔrέsdən légər di dánsgə sbrídfabrègər jo: ɔ́sə i ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr.*	Forresten ligger de danske Spritfabrikker jo ogsaa i Aalborg.
"Aalborg aquavite"	*ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr agvavít*	Aalborg Akvavit
That's where Aalborg aquavite's made.	*de ε dέ:ʔr ɔ́lbɔ̀:ʔr agvavít blìər lá:vəð.*	Det er der, Aalborg Akvavit bliver lavet.

Tom		
You spoke of fishing before.	*du tá:ldə fœ́:ˀr ɔm fesgərí:ˀ;*	Du talte før om Fiskeri.
What kind of fish do you have here in Denmark?	*vá slags fésg há:ˀr i hɛ́:ˀr i dánmark?*	Hvad Slags Fisk har I her i Danmark?
Peter		
codfish	*tɔrsk*	Torsk
mackerel	*makrɛ́lˀ*	Makrel
herring	*silˀ*	Sild
We have codfish and mackerel and lots of herring.	*vi har tɔ́rsg ɔ makrɛ́lˀ ɔ másər a sílˀ.*	Vi har Torsk og Makrel og Masser af Sild.
by far	*laŋˀt*	langt
But still agriculture's by far the most important industry.	*mɛn lánbrù:ˀəð ɛr alí:əvɛl láŋˀd dɛn vígdisdə nɛ́:reŋsvàjˀ.*	Men Landbruget er alligevel langt den vigtigste Næringsvej.
Tom		
paid attention to	*lagd mɛ́rgə te*	lagt Mærke til
By the way, do you know what I've noticed here in Denmark?	*vé:ˀ du fɔrɛ́sdən va jɛ har lagd máəð mɛ́rgə te hɛ́:ˀr i dánmark.*	Ved du forresten, hvad jeg har lagt meget Mærke til her i Danmark?
Peter		
No.	*nájˀ;*	Nej.
Tom		
earth *or* land	*jo:ˀr*	Jord
cultivated	*dýrgəð*	dyrket
That you don't see any land at all that's not being cultivated.	*a man sléd égə sɛ́:ˀr nɔ́:əð jó:ˀr dɛr égə ɛr dýrgəð;*	At man slet ikke ser noget Jord, der ikke er dyrket.
You see so much of it in America.	*dé sɛ́:ˀr man álˀtìðˀ i amé:ˀrika.*	Det ser man altid i Amerika.

Peter

Well, that's not really so remarkable.	*dé ɛ vɛl é:ʔnli égə sɔ mɛ́rglit.*	Det er vel egentlig ikke saa mærkeligt.
the reason	*grónʔən*	Grunden
can afford to	*har rɔ́:ʔð te*	har Raad til
without	*ú:ðən*	uden
The reason is that a small country like Denmark can't afford to let any land lie around without cultivating it.	*grónʔən ɛr jo: dɛ́nʔ a ed lílə lánʔ sɔm dánmarg égə har rɔ́:ʔð te ɔ la jó:ʔərn lègə hɛ́nʔ ú:ðən ɔ dýrgə dən.*	Grunden er jo den, at et lille Land som Danmark ikke har Raad til at lade Jorden ligge hen uden at dyrke den.

2. Hints on Spelling

You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following new words:

aflevere	*ávlevè:ʔər*	deliver
Bacon	*bé:kɔn*	bacon
Cementfabrik	*semɛ́nʔdfabrὲk*	cement factory
Cementindustri	*semɛ́nʔdindusdrì:ʔ*	cement industry
konkurrere	*kɔŋkuré:ʔər*	compete
Porcelæn	*pɔrsəlɛ́nʔ*	porcelain
producere	*produsé:ʔər*	produce
Georg	*géɔγ*	George

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Expressions like *bange for*, *ked af*, etc.

Jeg er **bange for,** *at Skrivemaskinerne laver temmelig meget Spektakel.*	I'm afraid the typewriters make an awful lot of noise.
Han var **ked af,** *at han ikke selv kunde vise Dem rundt.*	He was sorry he couldn't show you around himself.
Vi var ikke helt **sikre paa,** *at man maatte ryge her.*	We weren't quite sure that you could smoke here.

Look carefully at these Danish sentences. In English, as you know, we say, "I was afraid of that.", "I was sorry about that.", and "I was sure of that.", but when after one of these expressions we put a clause beginning with "that" or with the "that" omitted, we leave out the "of" after "afraid", and "sure" and the "about" after "sorry", as in the English sentences above. The Danish expressions *bange for*, *ked af*, and *sikre paa* correspond to English "afraid of", "sorry about", and "sure of", but notice that in Danish you use the *for*, *af* and *paa* even when a clause beginning with *at* follows, as in the above examples.

2. Use of *at* and the basic form of the verb after *paa*, *ved*, *af*, etc.

Men nu maa jeg vist tænke **paa at komme** *hjem.*	Well, I have to think about getting home.
Jeg kan lære meget **ved at gaa** *med dig i Byen.*	I can learn a lot by going shopping with you.
Ja, saa maa vi maaske hellere tænke **paa at gaa** *i Seng.*	Then maybe we'd better think about going to bed.
Jeg er ved at blive træt **af at ligge** *her og kede mig.*	I'm getting tired of lying here being bored.
De er for voksne, som er interesseret **i at lære** *mere om Historie . . .*	They're for adults who are interested in learning more about history . . .

Ja, jeg ved nok, at danske Ingeniører er kendt **for at være** *meget dygtige.*	Yes, I know that Danish engineers have the reputation of being very skillful.
Det sagde Bill ogsaa, da han kom hjem fra Aalborg **efter at have set** *Cementfabrikkerne derovre.*	Bill said so too, when he came home from Aalborg, after seeing the cement factories over there.
Grunden er jo den, at et lille Land som Danmark ikke har Raad til at lade Jorden ligge hen **uden at dyrke** *den.*	The reason is that a small country like Denmark can't afford to let any land lie around without cultivating it.
Ja, og vi kunde ikke tænke os **ikke at have** *en Konge.*	Yes, and we couldn't imagine being without ('not having') a king.
Ellers er det det samme **som at invitere** *Fjenden lige ind i Landet.*	Otherwise it's just (the same as) inviting the enemy right in.
I Amerika kunde vi ikke tænke os andet **end at vælge** *Præsident hvert fjerde Aar.*	In America we couldn't imagine not electing ('other than electing') a president every four years.

Pay special attention to the words printed in heavy type in these sentences. As you see, when you have a verb after a word like *paa, ved, af, i, for, efter, uden*, etc., you use in Danish *at* [ɔ] plus the basic form of the verb: *paa at komme, ved at gaa, af at ligge*, etc. Notice that in the corresponding position in English we generally use the ing-form of the verb, "about getting", "by going", "of lying", etc.

Observe also that in the last three sentences Danish has *at* plus the basic form of a verb after *ikke, som*, and *end*, and that here too, we use the ing-form of the corresponding verb in English.

3. *Til, paa, i*, etc.

In learning any new language, it's often the little words that will give you the most difficulty. In Danish, for instance, you have probably found the words *til, paa* and *i* somewhat troublesome. You have undoubtedly noticed that *til* generally corresponds to English "to", *paa* to English "on", and *i* to English "in", but you must have also noticed that there are a number of cases where they are not used in this way. Here are some of them:

Jeg skal møde Bill **paa Hotellet.**	I'm going to meet Bill at the hotel.
Og saa maa De gaa **paa Nationalmuseet.**	And then you ought to go to the National Museum.
Jeg saa paa et Enkeltværelse **paa et andet Hotel.**	I looked at a single room in another hotel.
Rejser De **paa første Klasse?**	Are you going first class?
Saa ses vi **paa Hovedbanegaarden.**	Then I'll see you at the station.
Har du nok Benzin **paa Vognen,** *Kristian?*	Have you got enough gas in the car, Christian?
Jeg tror hellere, jeg vil gaa **paa Posthuset.**	I think I'd rather go to the post office.
Det kan du faa **paa Apoteket.**	You can get it at the pharmacy.
Og saa skal vi **i Biografen.**	And then we're going to the movies.
Og saa skal vi **i Tivoli.**	And then we're going to Tivoli.
Skal De ikke **i Dyrehaven?**	Aren't you going to Dyrehaven?
Jeg skal over **i Sæbehuset.**	I'm going over to the store.
Saa kan vi maaske gaa **i det kongelige Teater,** *naar det aabner.*	Then maybe we can go to the royal theatre when it opens.
Jeg skal **i Banken.**	I'm going to the bank.
Er der Tid **til det?**	Is there time for that?

You can see from these examples that Danish and English don't always agree in their use of these little words. In some cases Danish uses the word that generally corresponds to "on" where we use the words "at" or "to"; in some cases Danish uses the word that generally corresponds to "in" where we use the word "to", etc. Even from the point of view of Danish alone there's little rhyme or reason to the use of these words. If you should happen to say *Jeg skal paa Banken* instead of *Jeg skal i Banken*, a Dane would undoubtedly laugh because that would mean to him that you were going up on top of the bank, and yet in the next breath he himself would say, as you can see from the seventh sentence above, *Jeg skal paa Posthuset* and would mean "I'm going *to* the post office." The only way to tell when to use *paa, til,* etc. is to listen to what Danes say and then copy them. Actually you already know what to say in a great many cases without even thinking about it, because you've learned the *Basic Sentences* in which such expressions occur.

4. Difference between *have* and *faa*

Jeg **har** *en Ven, som bor i Amerika.*	I have a friend who lives in America.
Lad os gaa ind og **faa** *et Glas Øl.*	Let's go in and have a glass of beer.

Notice that in these sentences both *have* and *faa* correspond to English "have". You know by now that *faa* differs from *have* in that it means "have" in the sense of "getting" or "acquiring" something. You will find this same difference in the two variants of each of the expressions printed in heavy type in the following sentences:

Nu skal De **faa Lov til** *at være i Fred til i Morgen, Bill.*	You can sleep in peace tomorrow morning, Bill.
Men vi vil meget gerne **have Lov til** *at betale.*	But we'd like very much to pay.
Maaske kunde vi ogsaa **faa Raad til** *at købe noget af Georg Jensens Sølv.*	Maybe we could afford to buy some Georg Jensen silver too.
Grunden er jo den, at et lille Land som Danmark ikke **har Raad til** *at lade Jorden ligge hen uden at dyrke den.*	The reason is that a small country like Denmark can't afford to let any land lie around without cultivating it.

The expression *faa Lov til* in the first sentence really means "get permission to", while *have Lov til* in the second sentence means "have permission to". In the same way, *faa Raad til* in the third sentence means "get the means to" and *have Raad til* in the last sentence means "have the means to". You will see the difference more clearly in the following new examples:

Han **har Lov til** *at sige, hvad han mener, uden først at skulle* **faa Lov** *af dig.*	He can ('has permission to') say what he thinks without having to get permission from you first.

Jeg **har** *ikke* **Raad til** *at købe en ny Frakke i Aar, men jeg skal nok* **faa Raad til** *det til Foraaret.*	I can't afford to buy a new coat now, but I should certainly be able to afford one by spring.

You will notice that the English equivalents of these expressions often don't show up the difference in meaning. Both *faa Lov til* and *have Lov til* frequently have the equivalent "can" or "be able to" and both *faa Raad til* and *have Raad til* generally have the equivalent "can afford" or "be able to afford". However, you should keep in mind the fact that *faa* means "get" and *have* means "have", for this will help you to tell which of the two variants to use.

In connection with the use of *faa* and *have,* you might notice the following sentences:

Vi **fik** *Kylling til Middag i Gaar.*	We had chicken for dinner yesterday.
Hvad skal vi **have** *til Frokost i Dag?*	What're we going to have for lunch today?

The meaning of the verbs in these two sentences is to all intents and purposes the same, but the fact remains that when you talk about what you had to eat in the past, you use the verb *faa*, and when you talk about what you're going to have to eat in the future, you use the verb *have.*

5. Compounds

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit:

noun + noun

Landbrug, 'agriculture' = **Land,** 'land' + **Brug,** 'use'
Cementindustri, 'cement industry' = **Cement,** 'cement' + **Industri,** 'industry'
Cementfabrik, 'cement factory' = **Cement,** 'cement' + **Fabrik,** 'factory'
Spritfabrik, 'distillery' = **Sprit,** 'alcohol, liquor' + **Fabrik,** 'factory'
Haandværk, 'handicraft' = **Haand,** 'hand' + **Værk,** 'work'

noun + *s* + *noun*

Andelssystem, 'cooperative system' = **Andel** [*ándè:ʔl*], 'share, part' + **s** + **System,** 'system'

Andelsslagteri, 'cooperative slaughter house' = **Andel,** 'share, part' + **s** + **Slagteri,** 'slaughter house'

Landbrugsprodukt, 'agricultural product' = **Landbrug,** 'agriculture' + **s** + **Produkt,** 'product'

Næringsvej, 'occupation, industry' = **Næring,** 'food, nourishment' + **s** + **Vej,** 'way'

Skibsværft, 'shipyard' = **Skib,** 'ship' + **s** + **Værft,** 'shipyard'

6. An irregular verb

The verb *lægge* [*lɛ́gə*], which is used in the expression *lægge Mærke til* has the past form *lagde*, pronounced [*lá:ə*], and the participle *lagt* [*lagt*]. When used by itself, it means "put" or "lay".

7. An irregular noun

The noun Bonde [*bónə*], 'farmer, peasant', has the irregular plural form, *Bønder* [*bǿnʔər*].

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

The following questions are based on the material contained in the *Basic Sentences*. Be prepared to give your answers in Danish.

1. Hvor afleverer den danske Bonde Kvæget og Mælken under Andelssystemet?
2. Hvad eksporterer Danmark?
3. Hvad er den vigtigste Næringsvej i Danmark?
4. Hvad er nogle andre vigtige Næringsveje?
5. Har Danmark en stor Handelsflaade?
6. Hvad er Georg Jensen særlig kendt for?
7. Hvad Slags Fabrikker ligger i Aalborg?
8. Er Cementindustrien vigtig?
9. Hvad Slags Fisk har man i Danmark?
10. Hvorfor ser man aldrig udyrket Jord i Danmark?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. *Danish agriculture*

Den danske Bonde arbejder fra Morgen til Aften.

Dagene gaar med at dyrke Jorden, passe Gaarden og Kvæget.

Hver Morgen kører en Mand rundt og henter Mælken paa Bøndernes Gaarde og afleverer den paa Andelsmejeriet.

Paa samme Maade afleverer Landmændene Kvæg og Svin til Andelsslagterierne, som bagefter sender Kødet ud til Forretningerne.

Efter at vi har faaet Andelssystemet i Danmark, er der ikke længere Grund til, at de smaa Gaarde konkurrerer med de store Gaarde, for i Stedet for, tjener de nu det samme i Forhold til, hvad de producerer.

De danske Landbrugsprodukter staar meget højt, og for Eksempel Bacon, Ost og Smør, som vi ikke selv bruger, bliver eksporteret i Massevis.

Det bliver sendt med Handelsflaadens Skibe til England og andre Lande, og inden Krigen ogsaa til Tyskland.

Efter Landbrug er Danmarks vigtigste Næringsveje Industri, Haandværk, Handel og endelig Fiskeri.

2. *A business conference*

Hr. Gram: Inden vi underskriver den Kontrakt, synes jeg, vi skal sende en af Deres dygtigste Ingeniører op, saa han kan undersøge, hvor meget Cement vi behøver for at bygge den Fabrik.

Ingeniør Ølgaard: Ja, jeg har saamænd selv tænkt mig at tage derop. Jeg har nemlig et Møde paa De Danske Spritfabrikker og noget Arbejde paa Skibsværftet, som jeg kan gøre samtidig.

Hr. Gram: Nu maa De passe paa, De ikke drikker for meget Akvavit. Jeg har nok lagt Mærke til, at De kan lide en Snaps nu og da.

Ingeniør Ølgaard: Nej, De behøver ikke at være bange.
Det faar jeg saamænd slet ikke Tid til.
Desuden skal jeg nok tage en Flaske med hjem til Dem!

3. *Tom and Inge talk about buying china and silver for their home.*

Tom: Er du klar over, at jeg skal rejse herfra om en Uge?

Inge: Ja Tom, hvor er det dog frygteligt.
Tiden er gaaet altfor hurtigt!
Jeg ved slet ikke, hvordan jeg skal klare mig, naar du ikke er her.

Men naar vi nu taler om at rejse, synes du saa ikke, vi skulde se paa noget Københavns Porcelæn, som vi kunde tage med til Amerika?

Tom: Jo, det synes jeg, er en udmærket Ide.
Det havde jeg netop selv tænkt paa.
Mor gik paa Kunstindustriskolen, da hun var ung, saa det vil sikkert interessere hende at se det igen.

Inge: Maaske kunde vi ogsaa faa Raad til at købe noget Sølv hos Georg Jensen.

Tom: Er det ikke frygtelig dyrt?

Inge: Nej, det tror jeg ikke.
Det vilde i hvert Fald være langt dyrere, hvis vi skulde købe det i Amerika, og det koster jo ikke noget at se paa det.

Tom: Men vi lovede din Mor at købe Fisk til Middag, det maa vi hellere gøre først.

Inge: Aah ja, jeg maa indrømme, det havde jeg helt glemt.
Og jeg kan heller ikke huske, hvad Slags hun vilde have.
Var det Sild eller Makrel?

Tom: Jeg tror, det var Torsk.

Inge: Saa er du altsaa lige saa god til at huske en Besked, som jeg er.
Men vi kan jo gaa hen hos Fiskehandleren og se, hvad han har.
Og saa kan vi gaa til Georg Jensen bagefter, hvis vi faar Tid.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

Take turns in groups of two or three discussing the industrial set-up in Denmark. One group will start the discussion and after they have talked for a few minutes, another group will take it up. Include the following:

1. The country's most important occupations are agriculture, handwork and applied art, the cement industry, fishing, commerce.

2. The most important agricultural products are bacon, eggs, milk, butter, and cattle. Many of these products are exported to England and other countries in Europe, for Denmark has more food now after the war than many other countries. Before the war some agricultural products were exported to Germany. Denmark is so small that it can't afford to let any land go uncultivated.

3. In the field of applied art Georg Jensen's silver and Copenhagen porcelain are specially well-known. Georg Jensen has a large store in New York.

4. Denmark has a large merchant marine and many ship-yards where ships are built both for the Danish merchant marine and for other countries.

5. Under the Danish cooperative system, the small farm can earn as much as the large farm in proportion to what it produces. Small and large farms don't compete because both deliver their products to cooperative dairies and slaughter houses. From there the milk and meat is sent to the stores. Danish farmers help one another by lending each other horses, machines and many other things.

Finder List

agvavít, -ən (Akvavit, -en) aquavite

ándelsmajərì:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Andelsmejeri, -et, -er) cooperative dairy

ándelsslagdərì:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Andelsslagteri, -et, -er) cooperative slaughter house

ándelssysdè:ˀm, -əð, -ər (Andelssystem, -et, -er) cooperative system

ávlevè:ˀər, -ðə (aflevere, -de) deliver

bé:kɔn (Bacon) bacon

bónə, -n, bǿnˀər (Bonde, -n, Bønder) farmer, peasant

býgə, -ðə (bygge, -de) build

dǿgdi (dygtig) skilled

énrœ̀mˀə, -ðə (indrømme, -de) admit, confess

ɛgsbɔrté:ˀər, -ðə (eksportere, -de) export

ɛ́nəli (endelig) finally

fesgərí:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Fiskeri, -et, -er) fishing

flɔ́:ðə, -n, -r (Flaade, -n, -r) fleet, navy *fɔ́rhɔ̀lʔ, -əð,* — (Forhold, -et, —) proportion

géɔγ (Georg) George

gramʔ (Gram) *last name*

gronʔ, -ən, grónə (Grund, -en, -e) reason

hánʔəl, -ən, hánʔlər (Handel, -en, Handler) commerce

hánʔəlsflɔ̀:ðə, -n, -r (Handelsflaade, -n, -r) merchant marine

hɔjʔ (høj) high

hɔ́nvɛ̀rk, -əð (Haandværk, -et) handicraft

indusdrí:ʔ, -ən, -ər (Industri, -en, -er) industry

i sdɛ́ðʔəð fɔr (i Stedet for) instead of

jo:ʔr, jó:ʔərn (Jord, -en) earth

kla:ʔr, -t, klá:ər (klar) clear

kónsdindusdrì:ʔ, -ən, -ər (Kunstindustri, -en, -er) applied art

kvɛ:ʔγ, -əð (Kvæg, -et) cattle

kɔŋkuré:ʔər, -ðə (konkurrere, -de) compete

lɛ́gə, lá:ə, lagt (lægge, lagde, lagt) put, lay

makrɛ́lʔ, -ən, -ər (Makrel, -len, -ler) mackerel

másəvì:ʔs (Massevis) quantities

mɛ́rgə: lɛ̀gə (là:ə, lagd) mɛ́rgə te (lægge) (lagde, lagt) (Mærke til) pay attention to, notice

nɛ́dɔ̀p/nɛ́dɔp (netop) exactly

nɛ́:reŋsvàjʔ, -ən, nɛ́:reŋsvàjə (Næringsvej, -en, -e) occupation, industry, means of livelihood

pɔrsəlɛ́nʔ, -əð (Porcelæn, -et) porcelain

produsé:ʔər, -ðə (producere, -de) produce

rɔ:ʔð (Raad): *ha (hà:ðə, hafd) rɔ́:ʔð te* (have) (havde, haft) (Raad til) have the means to

fɔ: (feg, fɔ̀:əð) rɔ́:ʔð te (faa) (fik, faaet) (Raad til) get the means to

sámtìðʔi (samtidig) at the same time

sámtìðʔi mɛ́ a (samtidig med at) at the same time that

sbrídfabrɛ̀k, -ən, -ər (Spritfabrik, -ken, -ker) distillery

semɛ́nʔdfabrɛ̀k, -ən, -ər (Cementfabrik, -ken, -ker) cement factory

semɛ́nʔdindusdrì:ʔ, -ən, -ər (Cementindustri, -en, -er) cement industry

sgíbsvɛ̀rft, -əð, -ər (Skibsværft, -et, -er) shipyard

sgi:ʔp, -əð, sgí:bə (Skib, -et, -e) ship

silˀ, -ən, — (Sild, -en, —) herring

slagdəríːˀ, -əð, -ər (Slagteri, -et, -er) slaughter house

sysdéːˀm, -əð, -ər (System, -et, -er) system

søl, sølˀəð (Sølv, -et) silver

tjéːnə, tjéːˀnər, -də (tjene, -te) earn, make

tɔrsk, -ən, — (Torsk, -en, —) codfish

týsglànˀ (Tyskland) Germany

végdi (vigtig) important

vɛrft, -əð, -ər (Værft, -et, -er) shipyard

ølgɔ̀ːˀr (Ølgaard) *last name*

UNIT 28

GEOGRAPHY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

Tom is leaving Denmark. As he goes to Esbjærg to get the boat to England, he talks to a man sitting beside him on the train.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
Tom		
inhabitants	*énbỳgərə*	Indbyggere
How many people are there in Denmark?	*vɔr máŋə énbỳgərə ɛ́r dər i dánmark?*	Hvor mange Indbyggere er der i Danmark?
Mr. X		
figure(s) *or* calculate(s)	*rájnər*	regner
take(s) into account	*rájnər mɛ́*	regner med
Greenland	*grœ́nlànˀ*	Grønland
the Faroe Islands	*fɛ́:rø̀:ˀərnə*	Færøerne
millions	*miljó:ˀnər*	Millioner
If you include Greenland and the Faroe Islands, there are around four million.	*ves di rà jnər grœ́nlànˀ ɔ fɛ́:ˀrø̀:ˀərnə mɛ, ɛr dər ɔmkréŋˀ fí:ər miljó:ˀnər.*	Hvis De regner Grønland og Færøerne med, er der omkring fire Millioner.

Tom		
mountains	*bjɛ́rγə*	Bjerge
Are there really no mountains at all anywhere in Denmark?	*ɛr dər vírgli sléd éŋən bjɛ́rγə nɔ́:əð sdɛ́ð i dánmark.*	Er der virkelig slet ingen Bjerge noget Sted i Danmark?
Mr. X		
truly	*sánəli*	sandelig
Mountains? No, there really aren't.	*bjɛ́rγə; nájʔ dé ɛr dər sánəli égə.*	Bjerge? Nej, det er der sandelig ikke.
Himmelbjerget ('the Heaven Mountain')	*híməlbjɛ̀rʔγəð*	Himmelbjerget
Jutland	*jýlànʔ*	Jylland
points	*póŋdər*	Punkter
Himmelbjerget in Jutland is one of the highest points in Denmark and it's only 157 meters above sea level.	*híməlbjɛ̀rʔγəð i jýlànʔ ɛr éd a di hɔ́jəsdə póŋdər i dánmarg, ɔ dé légər kon húnrəðə ɔ sýʋʔ ɔ haltrés mé:ʔdər ɔ́ʋʔər há:ʔʋəð.*	Himmelbjerget i Jylland er et af de højeste Punkter i Danmark, og det ligger kun 157 m. over Havet.
Tom		
call(s)	*kálər*	kalder
And you call that a mountain!	*ɔ dé kálər di alí:əʋɛ̀lʔ ed bjɛ́rʔγ;*	Og det kalder De alligevel et Bjerg!
I suppose you know Denmark in and out and have been all over the country?	*di kɛ́nər ʋɛl ɛ́lʔərs dánmarg ú:ʔð ɔ énʔ ɔ har ʋɛ́:ərð ɔ́ʋʔər hé:lə lánʔəð;*	De kender vel ellers Danmark ud og ind og har været over hele Landet?
Mr. X		
No, indeed I haven't.	*nájʔ dé ka di tró:ʔ jɛ égə há:ʔr.*	Nej, det kan De tro, jeg ikke har.

islands	*ǿ:ˀər*	Øer
You see, Denmark's made up of five hundred large and small islands.	*dánmarg bəsdɔ́:ˀr jo a fέmˀ húnrəðə sdó:ər ɔ smɔ́:ˀ ǿ:ˀər.*	Danmark bestaar jo af 500 store og smaa Øer.
Zealand	*sjέlànˀ*	Sjælland
Of course I've been in Jutland and on Fyn and Zealand.	*mεn jε har sεfǿləli vὲ:ərð i jýlànˀ ɔ pɔ: fý:ˀn ɔ sjέlànˀ;*	Men jeg har selvfølgelig været i Jylland og paa Fyn og Sjælland.
Bornholm	*bɔrnhɔ́lˀm*	Bornholm
And all last year I worked in a bank on Bornholm.	*ɔ hé:lə sísdə ɔ́:ˀr árbajˀdəðə jε i en báŋˀg pɔ: bɔrnhɔ́lˀm.*	Og hele sidste Aar arbejdede jeg i en Bank paa Bornholm.
Tom		
Where's Bornholm?	*vɔ́:ˀr légər bɔrnhɔ́lˀm?*	Hvor ligger Bornholm?
Mr. X		
the Baltic Sea	*ǿsdərsǿ:ˀən*	Østersøen
south	*syð*	syd
east	*øst*	øst
southeast	*syðøst*	sydøst
It's in the Baltic Sea quite a ways southeast of Zealand.	*dεn légər i ǿsdərsǿ:ˀən ed gɔ́d sdǿgə syðǿsd fɔr sjέlànˀ.*	Den ligger i Østersøen et godt Stykke sydøst for Sjælland.
sail	*sájlə*	sejle
It takes eight hours to get there by boat from Copenhagen.	*de tá:ˀr ɔ́:də tí:mər ɔ sájlə dərɔ́vˀər fra købənhávˀn.*	Det tager otte Timer at sejle derovre fra København.
rest of *or* remaining	*ǿvriə*	øvrige
Bornholm doesn't look at all like the rest of Denmark.	*mεn bɔrnhɔ́lˀm lí:nər sléd égə de ǿvriə dánmark.*	Men Bornholm ligner slet ikke det øvrige Danmark.

only	*é:nəsdə*	eneste
rocks	*klébər*	Klipper
It's the only place where there are rocks.	*de ɛ nὲmli de é:nəsdə sdɛ́ð dɛr ər klébər;*	Det er nemlig det eneste Sted, der er Klipper.
Tom		
no matter where	*lí:əgỳlˀdi vɔ́:ˀr*	ligegyldigt hvor
spit	*sbǿdə*	spytte
One of my Danish friends always used to say that no matter where you stand in Denmark, you can spit in the ocean!	*é:ˀn a mì:nə dánsgə vɛ́nər plájəðə álˀtìðˀ ɔ sí:ə a lí:əgỳlˀdi vɔ́:ˀr man sdɔ́:ˀr i dánmarg ka man sbǿdə i vánˀəð.*	En af mine danske Venner plejede altid at sige, at ligegyldigt hvor man staar i Danmark, kan man spytte i Vandet.
Mr. X		
car *or* automobile	*bi:ˀl*	Bil
Well, I can't spit that far, but it is true that you can get to the water by car in about an hour, wherever you are.	*nɔ́ já sɔ́ láŋˀd ka jɛ́ nu égə sbǿdə, mɛn de ɛ régdi a man ka kɔ̀mə ú:ˀð te vánˀəð pɔ: ɔmkréŋˀ ɛn tí:mə i bí:ˀl vɔ́:ˀr man ɛ́n ɛ́r.*	Naa ja, saa langt kan jeg nu ikke spytte, men det er rigtigt, at man kan komme ud til Vandet paa omkring en Time i Bil, hvor man end er.
Møen's Cliff[1]	*mǿ:ˀəns klénˀt*	Møens Klint
By the way, have you been to Møen's Cliff?	*har di fɔrɛ́sdən vὲ:ərð pɔ: mǿ:ˀəns klénˀt;*	Har De forresten været paa Møens Klint?
Tom		
No, I'm sorry to say I haven't.	*nɛ́: dé há:ˀr jɛ desvɛ́rə égə.*	Næh, det har jeg desværre ikke.

---

[1] On the island of Møen which is off the southern coast of Zealand.

Lolland[1] Falster[1]	*lɔ́làn*ˀ *fálˀsdər*	Lolland Falster
And I haven't been to Lolland and Falster either.	*jɛ har hɛ́lˀər égə vɛ̀:ərð pɔ: lɔ́lànˀ ɔ fálˀsdər;*	Jeg har heller ikke været paa Lolland og Falster.
on the whole	*i de hé:lə tá:ˀəð*	i det hele taget
On the whole I haven't been around in Denmark as much as I'd have liked.	*jɛ har i de hé:lə tá:ˀəð égə vɛ̀:ərð sɔ máəð rónˀd i dánmarg sɔm jɛ gɛ́rnə vélə.*	Jeg har i det hele taget ikke været saa meget rundt i Danmark, som jeg gerne vilde.
love(s)	*ɛ́lsgər*	elsker
I'm sorry about it too, because I like to get out into the country.	*ɔ dé ɛr jɛ ké:ˀð á:ˀ, fɔr jɛ ɛ́lsgər ɔ vɛ́:ər pɔ: lánˀəð.*	Og det er jeg ked af, for jeg elsker at være paa Landet.
Mr. X		
Won't you have a cigarette?	*hǿ:ˀr ve di égə há:ˀ en sigərɛ́t;*	Hør, vil De ikke have en Cigaret?
Tom		
Thanks.	*jó:ˀ ták;*	Jo Tak.
I have matches.	*jɛ har sɛ́lˀ tɛ́nsdegər ták.*	Jeg har selv Tændstikker, Tak.
What does Jutland look like?	*vɔrdán se:r dər ú:ˀð i jýlànˀ?*	Hvordan ser der ud i Jylland?
Mr. X		
the moor run(s) *or* extend(s) in the middle the heather	*hé:ðən* *sdrɛ́gər saj* *met* *løŋˀən*	Heden strækker sig midt Lyngen

---

[1] Islands off the southern coast of Zealand.

bloom(s)	*blɔ́msdrə*[1]	blomstrer
entirely *or* absolutely	*aldé:ʔləs*	aldeles
beautiful	*prágdfùlʔt*	pragtfuldt
The moor runs up through the middle of the country, and in the fall when the heather's in bloom, it's very beautiful.	*hé:ðən sdrɛ́gər saj méd ɔ́b gɛ́nʔəm lánʔəð, ɔ ɔm ɛ́fdərɔ̀:ʔərð nɔr lǿŋʔən blɔ́msdrə, ɛr dər aldé:ʔləs prágdfùlʔt.*	Heden strækker sig midt op gennem Landet, og om Efteraaret, naar Lyngen blomstrer, er der aldeles pragtfuldt.
streams *or* small rivers	*ɔ́:ʔər*	Aaer
hills	*bágər*	Bakker
lakes	*sǿ:ʔər*	Søer
There are lots of small rivers in Jutland and around Himmelbjerget there are hills and large lakes.	*dɛr ər máŋə ɔ́:ʔər i jýlànʔ, ɔ ɔmkréŋʔ hímәlbjɛ̀rʔɣəð ɛr dər bágər ɔ sdó:ər sǿ:ʔər.*	Der er mange Aaer i Jylland, og omkring Himmelbjerget er der Bakker og store Søer.
toward	*mo:ʔð*	mod
north	*no:ʔr*	Nord
"Rebild hills"	*ré:bilbàgər*	Rebildbakker
celebrate	*fájrə*	fejre
A little farther north are the Rebildbakker where Danish-Americans meet every year to celebrate the Fourth of July.	*léd lɛ́ŋərə moð nó:ʔr légər ré:bilbàgər vɔr dánʔsg àmərikáːʔnərə mǿ:ðəs vɛ́:ʔrd ɔ́:ʔr fɔr ɔ fájrə dɛn fjɛ́:ər jú:ʔli.*	Lidt længere mod Nord ligger Rebildbakker, hvor Dansk-Amerikanere mødes hvert Aar for at fejre den fjerde Juli.

---

[1] See *Hints on Pronunciation*, Unit 20.

Tom		
Oh yes, I read about that last summer.	*já dé lɛ́:sdə jɛ ɔ́mˀ i sɔ́mər.*	Ja, det læste jeg om i Sommer.
Mr. X		
Skagen[1]	*sgá:ˀɣən*	Skagen
You haven't been to Skagen then, have you?	*sɔ́ har di àlˀdsɔ hɛ́lˀər égə vɛ̀:ərð pɔ: sgá:ˀɣən;*	Saa har De altsaa heller ikke været paa Skagen.
tourists	*turísdər*	Turister
its (own)	*si:ˀn*	sin
bathing beach	*bá:ðəsdràn ˀ*	Badestrand
That's usually very well known to tourists because of its wonderful bathing beach.	*de ɛ ɛ̀lˀərs máəð kɛ́nˀd a turísdər fɔr si:n hɛ́rliə bá:ðəsdrànˀ.*	Det er ellers meget kendt af Turister for sin herlige Badestrand.
Incidentally, the king lives there in the summer.	*dɛr bó:ˀr kɔ́ŋən fɔrɛ́sdən ɔm sɔ́mərən.*	Der bor Kongen forresten om Sommeren.
the west coast	*vɛ́sdkø̀sdən*	Vestkysten
the dunes	*klídərnə*	Klitterne
for miles and miles	*mí:ləvìt*	milevidt
The dunes run all the way down the west coast for miles and miles.	*nɛ́:ˀð láŋˀs hé:lə vɛ́sdkø̀sdən sdrɛ́gər klídərnə saj mí:ləvìt.*	Ned langs hele Vestkysten strækker Klitterne sig milevidt.

---

[1] The northern tip of Jutland.

the fishing boats	*fésgərbɔ̀:ðənə*	Fiskebaadene
The fishing boats go out there all year round.	*ɔ dɛ́:ˀr gɔr fésgərbɔ̀:ðənə ú:ˀð hé:lə ɔ́:ˀərð.*	Og der gaar Fiskerbaadene ud hele Aaret.
dangerous	*fá:rlit*	farligt
fishermen	*fésgərə*	Fiskere
lost	*mésdəð*	mistet
the life	*lí:ˀvəð*	Livet
the sea	*há:ˀvəð*	Havet
But it's dangerous and many fishermen have lost their lives at sea.	*mɛn dé ɛ fá:rlid, ɔ máŋə fésgərə har mésdəð lí:ˀvəð pɔ: há:ˀvəð.*	Men det er farligt, og mange Fiskere har mistet Livet paa Havet.
Tom		
the east coast	*øsdkø̆sdən*	Østkysten
What's the east coast like?	*vɔrdán sé:ˀr øsdkø̆sdən ú:ˀð?*	Hvordan ser Østkysten ud?
Mr. X		
inlets	*fjó:ər*	Fjorde
There you'll find most of the towns and inlets.	*dɛr légər láŋˀd di flé:ˀsdə bý:ˀər ɔ fjó:ər.*	Der ligger langt de fleste Byer og Fjorde.
Storebælt ('Great Belt')[1]	*sdó:ərbɛ̀lˀt*	Storebælt
In a minute now we get to Storebælt.	*nú kɔ́mˀər vi ɔm ed ɔ́jəblɛ̀g te sdó:ərbɛ̀lˀt.*	Nu kommer vi om et Øjeblik til Storebælt.

---

[1] Body of water between Zealand and Fyn.

Tom		
the bridge	*bró:ˀən*	Broen
Is that where the bridge is?	*ɛr də dɛ́:ˀr bró:ˀən ɛ́r;*	Er det der, Broen er?
Mr. X		
No, here you have to take the ferry.	*nájˀ hɛ́:ˀr mɔ: di ta mɛ fɛ́rɣən.*	Nej, her maa De tage med Færgen.
Lillebælts bridge	*lɫləbɛldsbrò:ˀən*	Lillebæltsbroen
You must be thinking of the bridge over Lillebælt[1], that was finished in 1935.	*di tɛ́ŋgər vésd pɔ: lɫləbɛldsbrò:ˀən dɛr ble fɛ́rdi i nédən húnrəðə ɔ fɛ́mˀ ɔ trɛ́ðvə.*	De tænker vist paa Lillebæltsbroen, der blev færdig i 1935.
How long have you *been* in Denmark?	*vɔr lɛ́ŋə har di é:ˀnli vɛ̀:ərð i dánmark?*	Hvor længe har De egentlig været i Danmark?
Tom		
I've been here almost six months.	*iɛ har vɛ́:ərð hər nɛ́sdən ed hálˀd ɔ́:ˀr.*	Jeg har været her næsten et halvt Aar.
Mr. X		
enjoy	*vɛ̀:ər gláð fɔr*	være glad for
Have you enjoyed it?	*har di vɛ̀:ərð gláð fɔr ɔ vɛ́:ər hər;*	Har De været glad for at være her?
used to *or* accustomed to	*vánˀd te*	vant til
You must be used to things on a much larger scale in America.	*di mɔ: jo vɛ̀:ər vánˀd te sdœ́rə fɔ́rhɔ̀lˀ i amé:ˀrika;*	De maa jo være vant til større Forhold i Amerika.

---

[1] Body of water between Fyn and Jutland.

Tom		
act(s) *or* work(s)	*vírgər*	virker
affect(s) *or* influence(s)	*vírgər pɔ:*	virker paa
smiling	*smí:lənə*	smilende
friendly	*vénli*	venlig
foreigners	*úðlɛ̀nˀeŋə*	Udlændinge
feel	*fø̂:ˀlər ɔs*	føler os
Yes I am, of course, but it's just for that reason that Denmark has such a pleasing, friendly effect on us foreigners that we feel at home right away.	*já dé ɛ́r jɛ, mɛn nɛ̀dɔb dɛ́:ˀrfɔ̀r vírgər dánmarg sɔ smí:lənə ɔ vénli pɔ: ɔ́s úðlɛ̀nˀeŋə a vi fø̂:lər ɔs jémə mɛ de sámə.*	Ja, det er jeg, men netop derfor virker Danmark saa smilende og venligt paa os Udlændinge, at vi føler os hjemme med det samme.
Mr. X.		
landscape	*lánsgà:ˀp*	Landskab
Yes, I admit there's something special about the Danish landscape that I don't think you find many places in the world.	*já jɛ ve gɛ́rnə énrœ̀mˀə a dɛr ər nɔ́:əð sɛ́rli ve de dánsgə lánsgà:ˀb sɔm jɛ égə tró:ˀr di fénˀər rɛ́d máŋə sdɛ́:ðər i vɛ́rdən.*	Ja, jeg vil gerne indrømme, at der er noget særligt ved det danske Landskab, som jeg ikke tror, De finder ret mange Steder i Verden.

2. Hints on Spelling

You should pay special attention to the spelling of these two new words:

Million	*miljó:ˀn*	million
Punkt	*poŋˀt*	point

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Collection of sentences containing the words *jo*, *ogsaa*, *nu*, etc.

We have mentioned in a number of places throughout this course words like *nu*, *ogsaa*, *jo*, *vel*, etc. which are often used to give a special meaning to the whole sentence, to imply something about the attitude of the speaker toward what he's saying. We have told you that in corresponding English sentences we often use, not an equivalent word, but a special tone of voice to express the same thing. Here we will collect a number of sentences in which these words have been used, so that you can see more clearly just what their function is.

a. *Jo* often implies that the person you're speaking to really already knows what you're telling him.

Selv under Krigen var der **jo** *Valg.*	Even during the war we had an election.
Vi har **jo** *haft Konger lige siden Aar 860.*	You see, we've had kings ever since the year 860.
I Amerika forstod vi det **jo** *ogsaa først, da det var for sent.*	In America too, we didn't realize that until it was too late.
Hans Eventyr er **jo** *ogsaa berømt over hele Verden.*	His fairy tales are famous all over the world.
Danmark bestaar **jo** *af 500 store og smaa Øer.*	You see, Denmark's made up of 500 large and small islands.
De maa **jo** *være vant til større Forhold i Amerika.*	You must be used to things on a much larger scale in America.

b. *Nok* sometimes has the meaning of "probably", sometimes of "certainly" or "of course". In the first three sentences below it implies certainty, in the other two probability.

Jeg har **nok** *set, at Tom har været forelsket i hende, lige siden han traf hende.*	I've noticed that Tom's been in love with her ever since he met her.

Hun skal **nok** *klare sig, hvor i Verden hun end er.*	She'll get along all right wherever she is.
Ja, jeg ved **nok,** *at danske Ingeniører er kendt for at være meget dygtige.*	I know that Danish engineers have the reputation of being very skillful.
Det bliver **nok** *svært for hende at vænne sig til at bo i Amerika saa langt fra Familien her.*	It'll be a little hard for her to get used to living in America so far from her family.
Niels W. Gade og Carl Nielsen er vel **nok** *vores største Komponister.*	I suppose Niels W. Gade and Carl Nielsen are our greatest composers.

c. *Vist* also sometimes has the meaning of "probably", and sometimes the meaning of "certainly".

Det er **vist** *alt for koldt for mig.*	It's probably much too cold for me.
Men her er **vist** *ikke mere at se, vi har været over det hele.*	Well, I guess there's nothing else to see here, we've looked at everything.
Men nu maa jeg **vist** *tænke paa at komme hjem.*	Well, I have to think about getting home.
Det er **vist** *tungt, nu skal jeg bære det for dig.*	That must be heavy—I'll carry it for you.
Ja, **vist** *har vi det.*	We certainly do.

d. *Vel* either makes a statement into a question or corresponds roughly to English "I suppose" or "I guess".

Niels W. Gade og Carl Nielsen er **vel** *nok vores største Komponister.*	I suppose Niels W. Gade and Carl Nielsen are our greatest composers.
Det er **vel** *egentlig ikke saa mærkeligt.*	Well, that's really not so remarkable.
De kender **vel** *ellers Danmark ud og ind og har været over hele Landet.*	I suppose you know Denmark in and out and have been all over the country.
Nu har De **vel** *ikke glemt Deres Badetøj, Tom?*	You haven't forgotten your bathing suit, have you, Tom?

e. *Nemlig* is used much as we use "you see" but occurs more frequently. In the last example below it corresponds to English "namely".

Vi flyttede **nemlig** *ind den 25. September, Dagen før Kongens Fødselsdag.*	We moved in the 25th of September, the day before the king's birthday.
Han er **nemlig** *en af vores største Billedhuggere.*	He's really one of our greatest sculptors.
Jeg har **nemlig** *altid været meget interesseret i Musik.*	I've always been very much interested in music.
Det er **nemlig** *det eneste Sted, der er Klipper.*	That's the only place where there are rocks.
Det vil sige, at man har gaaet tolv Aar i Skole, **nemlig** *fem Aar i Underskolen, fire Aar i Mellemskolen og tre Aar i Gymnasiet.*	That means that you've gone to school for 12 years, five years to grammar school, four years to junior high school and three years to high school.

f. *Forresten* is generally used when you're changing the subject or adding details about a subject, much as we use "by the way" or "incidentally" in English.

Ved De **forresten,** *at de er blevet forlovet?*	By the way, did you know they were engaged?
Er der **forresten** *ikke flere danske Videnskabsmænd og Forfattere, der har faaet Nobelprisen?*	Aren't there quite a few Danish scientists and authors who've gotten the Nobel prize?
Det var **forresten** *for en Bog om Amerika.*	Incidentally, that was for a book about America.
Der bor Kongen **forresten** *om Sommeren.*	Incidentally, the king lives there in the summer.

g. *Dog* is generally used in exclamations or to make a statement very emphatic.

Hør, pas **dog** *paa den Mand!*	Hey, look out for that man!
Det var **dog** *frygteligt mange.*	That's a lot!

h. *Ogsaa, godt, nu* and *da* are all used to make a sentence more definite and emphatic.

ogsaa

Hans Eventyr er jo **ogsaa** *berømt over hele Verden.*	His fairy tales are famous all over the world.
Ja, det har jeg skam **ogsaa.**	Yes, of course I have.
De løber da **ogsaa** *altid mellem Benene paa en.*	They're always getting under your feet.
Ja, det er **ogsaa** *en af Københavns bedste Restauranter.*	Yes, that's really one of the best restaurants in Copenhagen.

godt

Men trænger du til Penge, kan jeg **godt** *laane dig nogle.*	But if you need money, I can lend you some.
Jeg ved **godt,** *at Skrivemaskinerne laver temmelig meget Spektakel.*	I know the typewriters make a great deal of noise.
Jeg tror **godt,** *man kan sige, at der er ingen, der behøver at gaa sulten i Seng eller ikke have Tag over Hovedet.*	I think you can really say that there's no one who needs to go to bed hungry or not have a roof over his head.

nu

Nu *kommer vi.*	We're coming!
Nu *glemte jeg at faa en Tandbørste.*	Oh, I forgot to get a toothbrush.
Det interesserer **nu** *ikke min Far.*	That doesn't make any difference to my father, though.
Nu *har De vel ikke glemt Deres Badetøj, Tom?*	You haven't forgotten your bathing suit, have you, Tom?
Nu *er vi lige ved at faa Maal.*	We're going to make a goal!
Men se **nu** *der!*	Look at that!

Aah, **nu** *var jeg lige ved at glemme et Brev til New York.*	Oh, I almost forgot a letter to New York.
Men **nu** *maa jeg vist tænke paa at komme hjem.*	Well, I have to think about getting home.
Nu *skal jeg tænde Lyset for dem.*	I'll turn on the light for you.
Det er vist tungt, **nu** *skal jeg bære det for Dem.*	That must be heavy—I'll carry it for you.
Nu *skal jeg løbe over efter det med det samme.*	I'll run right over and get it.
Nej, mange Tak, **nu** *skal jeg ikke ryge mere i Dag.*	No thanks, I don't think I'll smoke any more today.

da

Men De kunde **da** *umuligt forstaa det hele.*	But you didn't really understand it all.
Det var **da** *dejligt.*	That's swell.
Aah, de forbandede Høns, de løber **da** *ogsaa altid imellem Benene paa en.*	Oh, those darn chickens, they're always getting under foot.

2. Uses of *der*

A.

Hvor langt er **der?**	How far is it?
Næh, hvor er **der** *fuldt af Mennesker.*	Gosh, it's packed. ('Oh, how full of people it is!')
Der *er fuldt af Tæpper i Kufferten under Sengen.*	There are plenty of blankets ('it's full of blankets') in the trunk under the bed.
Hvordan ser **der** *ud i Jylland?*	What does Jutland look like? ('How does it look in Jutland?')
Om Efteraaret naar Lyngen blomstrer, er **der** *aldeles pragtfuldt.*	In the fall when the heather's in bloom, it's very beautiful.

Notice that in these sentences you have *der* used as the equivalent of English "it". You do this in Danish when in the corresponding English sentence you could add "there", so that you would have a combination of "it" and "there". For instance, in the next to the last sentence you could say "How does it look there in Jutland?" and in the last sentence you could say "It's very beautiful there." In such cases Danish uses just the word for "there", *der*.

B.

Hvis **der** *ikke sker noget paa Vejen hjem, kan vi jo gøre det paa mindre end to Timer.*	If nothing happens on the way home, we can do it in less than two hours.
Det var en pæn Restaurant, men desværre kom **der** *en Herre og en Dame ind og satte sig ved Bordet ved Siden af os.*	It was a good place, but unfortunately a man and a woman came in and sat down at the table next to us.

Notice that in these sentences there is what seems from the English point of view to be an extra *der* stuck in. This is the same kind of "there" that we have with the verb "be" in sentences like "There's a man over there that I know." or "There were crowds of people in the streets.", but in Danish it is also used with the verbs *ske*, 'happen', *komme*, 'come', and a few others. Here are two more examples:

Der kommer ikke andre end os.	There's nobody coming but us.
Der skal foregaa noget særligt i Morgen i Rigsdagen.	Something special's going to take place in Parliament tomorrow.

C.

Der flages *over hele Byen.*	Flags are flown all over the city.

In this sentence you see another way in which *der* is used. Notice that the verb in the sentence is passive, but that there isn't any definite subject which names the thing or person affected by the action of the verb, as has been the case in the passive sentences we have discussed before. The word *der* in this sentence takes the place of such a subject. Here are some more examples of this use of *der:*

Der skal aabnes *en ny Restaurant derhenne paa Hjørnet.*	A new restaurant will be opened there on the corner.
Der skal dannes *en ny Regering, saa snart Valget er forbi.*	There'll be a new government chosen as soon as the election's over.
Der blev skrevet *om ham i alle Aviserne.*	He was written about in all the newspapers.
Der blev spist og drukket *godt hele Aftenen.*	There was eating and drinking all evening.
Der blev vinket *med Flag over hele Byen.*	Flags were being waved all over the city.
Der blev skudt *i flere Timer.*	Several shots were fired.
Der blev spist *meget mere, end jeg havde troet.*	There was more eaten than I'd thought would be.
I Morgen **skal der lukkes** *i alle Butikkerne.*	All the stores will be closed tomorrow.

In all of these sentences, as you see, the verbs are passive, either s-forms or phrases with *blive*, and in all of them *der* fills in as the subject of these verbs.

3. Difference between *Bil* and *Vogn*

Det er rigtigt, at man kan komme ud til Vandet paa omkring en Time i **Bil,** *hvor man end er.*	It's true that you can get to the water in about an hour by car, wherever you are.
Har du nok Benzin paa **Vognen,** *Kristian?*	Have you got enough gas in the car, Kristian?

Notice that both *Bil* and *Vogn* in these sentences have as their English equivalents "car". Actually *Vogn* refers to any kind of a vehicle on wheels, a two-wheeled cart drawn by a horse, an automobile, a railroad car, etc., while *Bil* is used only of an automobile.

4. *Halv* as an adjective

Vi kan mødes her paa dette Hjørne **om en halv Time.**	We can meet here on this corner in half an hour.
Jeg har været her næsten **et halvt Aar.**	I've been here almost six months.

Notice that *halv*, 'half', is an adjective. You say *en halv Time*, but *et halvt Aar*. *Halv* also has an ə-form, as in the following:

Der ligger **tre halve Appelsiner** *paa Bordet.* There are three half oranges on the table.

5. Points of the compass

Here are the points of the compass in Danish. You had some of them in this unit:

no:ʔr	Nord	north
øst	Øst	east
syð	Syd	south
vεst	Vest	west
no:røst	Norøst	northeast
no:ró:ʔst	Nordost	
syðøst	Sydøst	southeast
syðó:ʔst	Sydost	
syðvέst	Sydvest	southwest
no:rvέst	Nordvest	northwest

6. More about verbs used with *sig*

Heden **strækker sig** *midt op gennem Landet.*	The moor runs ('stretches') up through the middle of the country.
Ja, det er jeg, men netop derfor virker Danmark saa smilende og venligt paa os Udlændinge, at vi **føler os** *hjemme med det samme.*	Yes, I am, of course, but it's for that very reason that Denmark has such a pleasing, friendly effect on us foreigners, that we feel at home right away.

Look at the verbs in heavy type in these two sentences. In English we use the verb "stretch" both with or without an object; that is, we say, "You're stretching your sweater." and also "The moor stretches from here to there." We do the same thing with the verb "feel". We say, "She's feeling the cloth." and also, "I always feel at home there." But, while in Danish you use the verb *strække* to correspond to "stretch" and the verb *føle* to correspond to "feel" when they have an object, notice that when they do not have an object, as in the two sentences above, then you use *strække sig* to correspond to "stretch" and *føle sig* to correspond to "feel".

When we mentioned verbs like this in Unit 11, we told you that *sig* was used after the verb when the subject was *han, hun* or *de*. Now notice in the first sentence above that *sig* is also used when the subject is a noun (or a word like *den, det, denne, dette, disse,* which stands for a noun). And notice in the following sentence that *sig* is also used when the subject is a word like *enhver*.

Ja, **enhver** *der er over tres Aar og ikke kan* **underholde sig** *selv, kan faa Aldersrente.*	Yes, everyone who's over sixty and can't support himself, can get old-age assistance.

7. Compounds

Here are the new compounds you had in this unit:

noun + noun

Himmelbjerget, 'the Heaven Mountain' = **Himmel,** 'sky, heaven' + **Bjerget,** 'the mountain'
Rebildbakker, 'Rebild Hills' = **Rebild** (*name*) + **Bakker,** 'hills'
Fiskerbaad, 'fishing boat' = **Fisker,** 'fisherman' + **Baad,** 'boat'
Vestkyst, 'west coast' = **vest,** 'west' + **Kyst,** 'coast'
Østkyst, 'east coast' = **Øst,** 'east' + **Kyst,** 'coast'

adjective + noun

Storebælt, 'Great Belt' = **store,** ə-form of the adjective *stor*, 'large' + **Bælt** (-et, -er) 'belt, strait, narrow body of water'
Lillebælt, 'Little Belt' = **lille,** 'little' + **Bælt** (see above)

noun + s + noun

Lillebæltsbroen, 'Little Belt Bridge' = **Lillebælt,** 'Little Belt' + **s** + **Broen,** 'the bridge'

verb + noun

Badestrand, 'bathing beach' = **bade,** 'bathe' + **Strand,** 'beach'

miscellaneous

Østersøen, 'the Baltic Sea' = **Øster-,** 'east' (used only in compounds) + **Søen,** 'the sea'

8. Irregular verb

The only irregular verb in this unit is *strække*, 'stretch', which has the past form, *strakte* and the participle, *strakt*.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

The following questions are based on the material contained in the *Basic Sentences*. Be prepared to give your answers in Danish.

1. Hvor mange Bjerge er der i Danmark?
2. Hvor højt er Himmelbjerget?
3. Hvor mange Indbyggere har Danmark?
4. Hvad er det eneste Sted, hvor der er Klipper?
5. Hvor mange danske Øer er der?
6. Hvor ligger Rebildbakker?
7. Hvad sker der hvert Aar?
8. Hvad er Skagen særlig kendt for?
9. Hvornaar er der særlig pragtfuldt i Jylland?
10. Hvordan ser Vestkysten ud?
11. Hvad ligger langs Østkysten?
12. Hvordan kommer man over Storebælt?
13. Hvor ligger Fyn?
14. Hvor lang Tid tager det at sejle fra København til Bornholm?
15. Hvad ligger der omkring Himmelbjerget?
16. Hvor bor de fleste danske Fiskere?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

Mr. Knudsen tells Bill about a trip he took when he was a student.

Sagfører Knudsen: Har De nogen Sinde været paa Himmelbjerget i Jylland, Ingeniør Butler?

Bill: Hvad kalder De det? Himmelbjerget?

Sagfører Knudsen: Ja, De ved, det er et af de højeste Punkter i Danmark.

Bill: Nej, det har jeg ikke.
Jeg er saa ked af, at jeg i det hele taget ikke har faaet Tid til at rejse rundt i Landet, det danske Landskab virker saa smilende og venligt.
Men jeg har kørt gennem Sjælland og Fyn og midt op gennem Jylland.
Det øvrige Danmark kender jeg desværre ikke.

Sagfører Knudsen: Saa har jeg heldigvis set mere end De.
Forresten er Bornholm et af de Steder, jeg ikke selv har været.
Det er det eneste Sted i Danmark, hvor vi har Klipper.
Kan De forresten lide at fiske?

Bill: Ja, jeg elsker at fiske!

Sagfører Knudsen: Saa skulde De sandelig tage til Jylland, for der ligger mange dejlige Søer og Aaer.

Bill: Naa, det lyder herligt, men jeg er bange for, at det maa vente, til jeg kommer til Danmark næste Gang.

Sagfører Knudsen: De har altsaa heller ikke været paa Skagen?

Bill: Jeg var inviteret derop med nogle Venner, da jeg var i Aalborg.

Men jeg havde saa travlt, at jeg ikke naaede det.

Sagfører Knudsen: Der er den herligste Badestrand, De kan tænke Dem, og hver Sommer er der fuldt af Udlændinge og Sommergæster.

Fra Skagen strækker Klitterne sig milevidt ned langs Vestkysten, og der er aldeles pragtfuldt.

Jeg synes, det er spændende at se Fiskerne gaa ud med Baadene, men det er farligt, og der er mange af dem, der har mistet Livet paa Havet.

Bill: Men sig mig, hvor ligger Rebildbakker?

Sagfører Knudsen: Lige Syd for Aalborg.

De har vel hørt, at det er der, Dansk-Amerikanerne mødes hvert Aar den 4. Juli.

Jeg var der for mange Aar siden, da jeg cyklede rundt i Danmark med tre af mine Venner.

De kan tro, jeg er glad for, at jeg tog den Tur, for vi fik set det meste af Danmark.

Bill: Hvor længe var De væk?

Sagfører Knudsen: Lidt over fem Uger.

Efterhaanden blev vi seks, for vi mødte nogle engelske Turister, som kørte med os et Stykke af Vejen.

Bill: Hvad Vej kørte De?

Sagfører Knudsen: Først ned gennem Sjælland til Møens Klint.

Der er pragtfuldt dernede.

Saa cyklede vi videre over til Lolland og Falster.

Derfra tog vi med en Fiskerbaad over Storebælt til en Ø lidt Nord for Lolland og videre til Fyn, hvor vi cyklede rundt i et Par Dage.

Det var længe inden Broen blev bygget over Lillebælt, saa vi maatte sejle over til Jylland.

De ved ikke, hvor pragtfuld Heden er om Efteraaret, naar Lyngen blomstrer.

Man maa se det for at tro det.

Bill: Hvor boede De om Natten?

Sagfører Knudsen: Aah, rundt omkring paa smaa billige Hoteller eller paa Bondegaardene.

Vi var jo fattige Studenter, maa De huske, og ikke vant til at bruge Penge.

Men Folk var flinke og venlige imod os, ligegyldigt hvor vi kom.

Bill: Det maa virkelig have været en morsom Tur!

Sagfører Knudsen: Ja, kedelig var den sandelig ikke, kan De tro.

De skulde bare have set os en Dag, da vi sad i en Baad og fiskede paa Fjorden.
Min Ven Valdemar og jeg konkurrerede om, hvem af os der kunde spytte længst, da han pludselig faldt paa Hovedet i Vandet, og han var ligeved at blive dernede.

Bill: Kunde han da ikke svømme?
Det troede jeg, alle Danskere kunde!

Sagfører Knudsen: Jo, men vi havde lige fejret hans Fødselsdag og spist en mægtig Frokost.
Desuden havde vi drukket en hel Flaske Snaps.
Han vilde ikke have, at vi hjalp ham, og han sagde hele Tiden, at han nok skulde vise os, at han kunde gaa paa Vandet.
Endelig fik vi ham dog op og hjem i Seng, og den næste Dag havde han det godt igen.
Ja, det var virkelig en herlig Tur.

Bill: Jeg har aldrig haft Lyst til at cykle i Amerika, for der er saa mange Bjerge og Bakker, at jeg bliver træt bare at tænke paa det.
Men vi har en Bil for hver fjerde Indbygger, saa vi behøver heller ikke at cykle ret meget.
Jeg tror, vi regner med, at der er omkring tredive Millioner Biler i det hele.

Sagfører Knudsen: Hvor maa Danmark virke lille og fladt i Forhold til Amerika.
Men heldigvis føler vi sikkert alligevel allesammen, at Øst—Vest—hjemme er dog bedst.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. Explain to someone who doesn't know much geography just how Denmark is made up. He asks if it's all one island. You explain that it's not. Jutland isn't an island at all, and the rest of Denmark is made up of 500 islands, some of them quite large, and many of them very small. The two largest are Zealand—that's where Copenhagen is—and Fyn. He asks where Fyn is. You explain that it's between Jutland and Zealand. Between Zealand and Fyn is "Storebælt"—there's no bridge over it so you have to take the ferry across. Between Fyn and Jutland is "Lillebælt" and there's a bridge there. He asks you the names of some of the other islands. You tell him that there's Lolland and Falster and Møen—they're all south of Zealand. And there's Bornholm which is quite a ways southeast of Zealand in the Baltic Sea.

2. You tell a friend about a trip you made to Jutland. You took the train to Skagen and stayed there several days. You went to the beach every day you were there—you've never seen such a wonderful bathing beach. Then you bicycled down along the west coast, where the dunes extend for miles and miles. You saw the fishermen going (*som gik*) out in their boats. Afterwards you rode up through the country along the moor. You saw Himmelbjerget and fished in some of the lakes near there. Then you went on to Rebildbakker and were there to celebrate the Fourth of July with the other Danish-Americans. Finally you bicycled to Aalborg and took the train from there back to Copenhagen.

3. After your return from Denmark a friend asks you if you enjoyed your trip. You tell him you did very much. He says that Denmark must be very small and flat. You agree that of course it is a small country and there aren't any mountains at all. But all the little islands are very interesting, and the moors in Jutland when the heather's in bloom and

the dunes and beaches along the west coast are especially beautiful. He asks you if there are any lakes. You tell him that there are, and lots of little rivers, too. And along the east coast of Jutland there are many inlets and towns with lots of interesting old buildings. And of course Copenhagen is one of the most wonderful cities in the world. He says yes, he thinks it must be. He's never talked to anyone who hasn't had a good time in Copenhagen.

Finder List

aldɛ́:ˀləs (aldeles) absolutely, entirely

*bá:ðəsdràn*ˀ, *-ən*, *bá:ðəsdrànə* (Badestrand, -en, -e) bathing beach

bágə, *-n*, *-r* (Bakke, -n, -r) hill

bɛlˀt, *-əð*, *-ər* (Bælt, -et, -er) belt, strait, narrow body of water

bi:ˀl, *-ən*, *-ər* (Bil, -en, -er) car, automobile

bjɛrˀɣ, *-əð*, *bjɛ́rɣə* (Bjerg, -et, -e) mountain

bro:ˀ, *-ən*, *-ər* (Bro, -en, -er) bridge

bɔ:ˀð, *-ən*, *bɔ́:ðə* (Baad, -en, -e) boat

bɔrnhɔ́lˀm (Bornholm) *island southeast of Zealand*

énbỳgər, *-ən*, *-ə* (Indbygger, -en, -e) inhabitant

é:nəsdə (eneste) only, single

fájrə, *-ðə* (fejre, -de) celebrate

fálˀsdər (Falster) Falster

fá:rli (farlig) dangerous

fésgər, *-ən*, *-ə* (Fisker, -en, -e) fisherman

fésgərbɔ̀:ˀð, *-ən*, *fésgərbɔ̀:ðə* (Fiskerbaad, -en, -e) fishing boat

fɛ́:rø̀:ˀərnə (Færøerne) the Faroe Islands

fjo:ˀr, *fjó:ˀərn*, *fjó:ər* (Fjord, -en, -e) inlet

fǿ:lə, *fǿ:ˀlər*, *-də* (føle, -te) feel (*with an object*)
fǿ:lə saj (føle sig) feel (*without an object*)

glað: vɛ̀:ər gláð fɔr (være glad for) enjoy

*grœ́nlàn*ˀ (Grønland) Greenland

hav, *há:ˀvəð*, *há:və* (Hav, -et, -e) sea

hé:ðə, *-n*, *-r* (Hede, -n, -r) moor

híməlbjɛ̀rˀɣəð (Himmelbjerget) *hill in Jutland*

*jýlàn*ˀ (Jylland) Jutland

kálə, *-də* (kalde, -te) call

klenˀt, -ən, kléndər (Klint, -en; -er) cliff
  mǿ:ˀəns klénˀt (Møens Klint) (*on the island of Møen which is off the southern coast of Zealand*)

klit, -ən, -ər (Klit, -ten, -ter) dune

lánsgà:ˀp, -əð, -ər (Landskab, -et, -er) landscape

lí:əgỳlˀdi vɔ́:ˀr (ligegyldigt hvor) no matter where

lílәbɛ̀lˀt (Lillebælt) *body of water between Fyn and Jutland*

li:ˀv, -əð, — (Liv, -et, —) life

lɔ́lànˀ (Lolland) *island off southern coast of Zealand*

met (midt) in the middle

miljó:ˀn, -ən, -ər (Million, -en, -er) million

mí:ləvìt (milevidt) for miles and miles

mésdə, -ðə (miste, -de) lose

mǿ:ˀən (Møen) *island off the southern coast of Zealand*

no:ˀr (Nord) north
  no:rǿst (Nordøst) or *no:ró:ˀst* (Nordost) northeast
  no:rvɛ́st (Nordvest) northwest

poŋˀt, -əð, póŋdər (Punkt, -et, -er) point

prágdfùlˀ (pragtfuld) beautiful, wonderful

rájnə, -ðə (regne, -de) figure, calculate
  rájnə mɛ (regne med) take into account

rɛ́:bilbàgər (Rebildbakker) *hills in Jutland*

sánəli (sandelig) truly

sájlə, -ðə (sejle, -de) sail

sbǿdə, -ðə (spytte, -de) spit

sdó:ərbɛ̀lˀt (Storebælt) *body of water between Zealand and Fyn*

sdrɛ́gə, sdrágdə (strække, strakte) stretch
  sdrɛ́gə saj (strække sig) extend, run

sgá:ˀγən (Skagen) *northern tip of Jutland*

sjɛ́lànˀ (Sjælland) Zealand

smí:lənə (smilende) smiling

syð (syd) south
  syðǿst (sydøst) or *syðó:ˀst* (sydost) southeast
  syðvɛ́st (sydvest) southwest

sø:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Sø, -en, -er) lake, sea

turíst, -ən, -ər (Turist, -en, -er) tourist

úðlɛ̀nˀeŋ, úðlɛ̀nˀeŋˀən, úðlɛ̀nˀeŋə (Udlænding, -en, -e) foreigner

váldəmar (Valdemar) *man's name*

vánˀt te (vant til) accustomed to
  vɛ̀:ər vánˀd te (v[illegible] vant til) be used to

vénli (venlig) friendly

vɛst (Vest) west

vésdkø̆st, -ən (Vestkyst, -en) west coast

vírgə, -ðə (virke, -de) act, work

vírgə pɔ: (virke paa) affect, influence

ø:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Ø, -en, -er) island

øst (Øst) east

øsdərśø̆:ˀən (Østersøen) the Baltic Sea

øsdkø̆st, -ən (Østkyst, -en) east coast

øvri (øvrig) remaining

ɔ:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Aa, -en, -er) stream *or* small river b

UNIT 29

THE MILITARY

SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

1. Basic Sentences

An American soldier in England speaks to an R.A.F. flier just after the European War is over.

ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS	AIDS TO LISTENING	CONVENTIONAL SPELLING
American		
Excuse me for disturbing you, but I see you're reading a Danish newspaper.	*ónsgỳlʔ jɛ fərsdýrʔə dəm, mɛn jɛ sé:ʔr di séðʔər ɔ lɛ́:ʔsər en dánʔsg aví:ʔs.*	Undskyld jeg forstyrrer Dem, men jeg ser, De sidder og læser en dansk Avis.
My father and mother are Danish.	*mi:n fá:r ɔ mó:r ɛr nèmli dánsgə;*	Min Far og Mor er nemlig Danske.
Dane		
I'm Danish too, but I've been in England for four years.	*já jɛ́ ɛr ɔ́sə dánʔsg, mɛn jɛ́ har vɛ̀:ərð hɛ́:ʔr i ɛ́ŋlànʔ i fí:ər ɔ́:ʔr.*	Ja, jeg er ogsaa Dansk, men jeg har været her i England i fire Aar.
American		
How did you get out of Denmark?	*vɔrdán kɔm di dɔɣ ú:ʔð a dánmark?*	Hvordan kom De dog ud af Danmark?

Dane		
fled *or* escaped	*fløgdəðə*	flygtede
I escaped to Sweden and from there to England.	*jɛ fløgdəðə te svɛ́rʔi ɔ dɛ́:ʔrfrà:ʔ ví:ðərə te ɛ́ŋlànʔ.*	Jeg flygtede til Sv[illegible]g og derfra videre til England.
American		
flyer	*flý:vər*	Flyver
How long have you been a flyer?	*vɔr lɛ́ŋə har di vɛ̀:rð flý:vər?*	Hvor længe har De været Flyver?
Dane		
Almost four years.	*sná:ʔrd i fí:ər ɔ̃:ʔr.*	Snart i fire Aar.
American		
alone	*alé:nə*	alene
Are you alone here or is your family over here too?	*ɛr di alé:nə hɛ́:ʔr i lánʔəð, ɛ̀lər ɛr dɛ̀rəs famí:ʔljə ɔ̃sə hərɔ̃vrə.*	Er De alene her i Landet, eller er Deres Familie ogsaa herovre?
Dane		
No, my family's still in Denmark.	*nɛ́: mi:n famí:ʔljə ɛr énu i dánmark.*	Næh, min Familie er endnu i Danmark.
American		
the Air Force	*flý:vəvɛ̀:ʔsnəð*	Flyvevæsenet
Were you in the Air Force at home too?	*var di ɔ̃sə ve flý:vəvɛ̀:ʔsnəð da di var jɛ́mə;*	Var De ogsaa ved Flyvevæsenet, da De var hjemme?

Dane		
No, I was in the navy there.	*nɛ́: dá var jɛ i flɔ́:ðən;*	Næh, da var jeg i Flaaden.
compulsory military service	*vɛ́rnəplègt*	Værnepligt
You see, we have compulsory military service in Denmark.	*vi har nèmli vɛ́rnəplègt i dánmark.*	Vi har nemlig Værnepligt i Danmark.
We've had it for the last hundred years.	*dé har vi háfd di sísdə húnrəðə ɔ́:ʔr.*	Det har vi haft de sidste hundrede Aar.
the army	*hɛ́:ʔərn*	Hæren
How long have *you* been in the army?	*vɔr lɛ́ŋə har dí vɛ̀:ərð i hɛ́:ʔərn?*	Hvor længe har De været i Hæren?
American		
For two and a half years.	*i tó:ʔ ed hálʔd ɔ́:ʔr.*	I to et halvt Aar.
But tell me something about Denmark.	*mɛn fɔrtɛ́lʔ maj léd ɔm dánmark.*	Men fortæl mig lidt om Danmark.
the occupation	*bəsɛ́dəlsən*	Besættelsen
You must have been there during the occupation.	*dí mɔ: jo ha vɛ́:ərð dər ónʔər bəsɛ́dəlsən.*	De maa jo have været der under Besættelsen.
Dane		
Yes, I certainly was.	*já dé ka di tró:ʔ jɛ vár.*	Ja, det kan De tro, jeg var.
the invasion	*envasjó:ʔnən*	Invasionen
I'll never forget the invasion on April 9th, 1940.	*jɛ glɛ́mər áldri envasjó:ʔnən dɛn ní:ʔənə aprí:ʔl nédən húnrəðə ɔ fǽrə.*	Jeg glemmer aldrig Invasionen den 9. April, 1940.

the freedom	*frí:hè:ʔðən*	Friheden
I fled from the country because I felt that I could never be happy until I was able to help in getting the Germans out of the country and our freedom back.	*ɔ jɛ fløgdəðə ú:ʔð a lánʔəð fɔrdí:ʔ jɛ fǿ:ldə a jɛ áldri vèlə fɔ́:ʔ en gláð dá:ʔ fœ́:ʔr jɛ feg lɔ́w ɔ jɛ́lbə mɛ́ te ɔ fɔ: týsgərnə ú:ʔð a lánʔəð ɔ fɔ: frí:hè:ʔðən tebá:γə.*	Og jeg flygtede ud af Landet, fordi jeg følte, at jeg aldrig vilde faa en glad Dag, før jeg fik Lov at hjælpe med til at faa Tyskerne ud af Landet og faa Friheden tilbage.
If you know anything about Danish history, you must know that this is not the first time we've been at war with Germany.	*ves di kènər nɔ́:əð te dánʔsg hisdó:rjə, vé:ʔ di ségərd a de égə ɛr fœ́rsdə gáŋʔ vi har vɛ̀:ərð i krí:ʔ imó:ʔð týsglànʔ.*	Hvis De kender noget til dansk Historie, ved De sikkert, at det ikke er første Gang, vi har været i Krig imod Tyskland.
The Germans have been our enemies from way back.	*týsgərnə har jo vɛ̀:ərð vɔ̀rəs fjɛ́nər fra gáməl tí:ʔð.*	Tyskerne har jo været vores Fjender fra gammel Tid.
crushed	*knu:ʔst*	knust
But this time I hope they've been crushed so they'll never be able to rise again.	*mɛn dɛ́nə gáŋʔ hɔ́:bər jɛ a di ɛr blèəð knú:ʔsd sɔ di áldri sga kun rájsə saj igɛ́n.*	Men denne Gang haaber jeg, at de er blevet knust, saa de aldrig skal kunne rejse sig igen.
American		
Yes, I certainly hope so too.	*já dé hɔ́:bər jɛ sánəli ɔ́sə.*	Ja, det haaber jeg sandelig ogsaa.
World War	*vɛ́rdənskrì:ʔ*	Verdenskrig
My father was in the first World War and I'm sure he didn't ever imagine that his son would have to go to war twenty years later.	*mi:n fá:r var mɛ́ i dɛn fœ́rsdə vɛ́rdənskrì:ʔ, ɔ jɛ ɛr ségər pɔ́:ʔ a han égə hà:ðə tɛ́ŋʔd saj a hans sœ́n sgu i krí:ʔ tý:və ɔ́:ʔr ɛ́fdər.*	Min Far var med i den første Verdenskrig, og jeg er sikker paa, at han ikke havde tænkt sig, at hans Søn skulde i Krig tyve Aar efter.

But what happened there during the occupation?	*mɛn vá sgéːdə dər ónˀər bəsɛ́dəlsən?*	Men hvad skete der under Besættelsen?
How did the king get along during all those difficult years?	*vɔrdán kláːərðə kɔ́ŋən saj igɛ́nˀəm álə di alvɔ́ːˀrliə ɔ́ːˀr?*	Hvordan klarede Kongen sig igennem alle de alvorlige Aar?
Dane		
brilliant *or* splendid	*glémrənə*	glimrende
It wasn't an easy time for him, of course, but he was a wonderful example for the Danish people.	*de var sánəli égə noːn lɛ́d tɪ́ːˀð fɔ́r ham, mɛn han var ed glémrənə ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl fɔr de dánsgə fɔ́lˀk.*	Det var sandelig ikke nogen let Tid for ham, men han var et glimrende Eksempel for det danske Folk.
American		
And the government?	*ɔ regéːˀreŋˀən;*	Og Regeringen?
Dane		
the revolt	*ɔ́bsdànˀən*	Opstanden
There wasn't any government in Denmark after the revolt of the 29th of August, 1943.	*dɛr vár égə noːn regéːˀreŋ ɪ dánmarg ɛ̀fdər ɔ́bsdànˀən dɛn nɪ́ːˀ ɔ týːvənə avgósd nédən húnrəðə tréːˀ ɔ fǿrə.*	Der var ikke nogen Regering i Danmark efter Opstanden den 29. August, 1943.
That was the day we'd all been waiting for—we knew it had to come sooner or later.	*de var dɛ́nˀ dáːˀ vi álə hàːðə vɛ́ndəð pɔ́ːˀ ɔ vésdə mɔ̀də kɔ́mə fǿːˀr ɛ̀lər séːnərə.*	Det var den Dag, vi alle havde ventet paa og vidste maatte komme før eller senere.
American		
sank *or* scuttled	*sɛ́ŋgəðə*	sænkede
Was that the time the Danes scuttled the fleet?	*var de dɛ́nˀ gáŋˀ dánsgərnə sɛ́ŋgəðə flɔ́ːðən;*	Var det dengang, Danskerne sænkede Flaaden?

picture	*bílðə*	Billede
I remember seeing a picture of it in the paper.	*jɛ ka húsgə jɛ sɔ́:ˀ ed bílðə á de i aví:ˀsən.*	Jeg kan huske, jeg saa et Billede af det i Avisen.
Dane		
resigned house arrest	*gig á:ˀ* *húsarèsi*	gik af Husarrest
Yes and the same day the Danish government resigned and the Germans put the king under arrest in a castle outside Copenhagen.	*já ɔ sámə dá:ˀ gíg dɛn dánsgə regé:ˀreŋ á:ˀ, ɔ týsgərnə sádə kɔ́ŋən i húsarèsd pɔ: ed slɔ́d ú:ðənfɔr købənhávˀn.*	Ja, og samme Dag gik den danske Regering af, og Tyskerne satte Kongen i Husarrest paa et Slot uden for København.
American		
arms	*vɔ́:ˀbən*	Vaaben
Did the Danes have any arms?	*hà:ðə dánsgərnə da éŋən vɔ́:ˀbən;*	Havde Danskerne da ingen Vaaben?
Dane		
Only what they got from Sweden and England or what they took from the Germans during the occupation.	*kón va di feg fra svɛ́rˀi ɔ ɛ́ŋlànˀ, ɛ̀lər va di tó:ˀ fra týsgərnə ónˀər bəsɛ́dəlsən.*	Kun hvad de fik fra Sverrig og England, eller hvad de tog fra Tyskerne under Besættelsen.
the conditions worse	*télsdànənə* *vɛ́rə*	Tilstandene værre
After the 29th of August conditions grew worse and worse.	*sì:ðən den ní:ˀ ɔ tý:vənə avgósd ble télsdànənə vɛ́rə ɔ vɛ́rə.*	Siden den 29. August blev Tilstandene værre og værre.

arrested	*arəsdé:ˀərðə*	arresterede
concentration camps	*kɔnsəntrasjó:ˀnslàjrə*	Koncentrationslejre
The Germans arrested large numbers of people and sent the Danish police to concentration camps in Germany.	*týsgərnə arəsdé:ˀərðə en másə ménəsgər ɔ sɛ̀ndə de dánsgə poləti:ˀ te kɔnsəntrasjó:ˀnslàjrə i týsglànˀ.*	Tyskerne arresterede en Masse Mennesker og sendte det danske Politi til Koncentrationslejre i Tyskland.
succeeded	*løgəðəs*	lykkedes
some of them succeeded ('it succeeded some of them')	*de løgəðəs nó:n á dəm*	det lykkedes nogle af dem
Fortunately some of them managed to escape to Sweden on the way, while others went underground.	*mɛn hɛ́ldiuì:ˀs løgəðəs de nó:n á dəm ɔ fløgdə te svɛ́rˀi énən, mɛnˀs ándrə gig ónˀər jó:ˀərn.*	Men heldigvis lykkedes det nogle af dem at flygte til Sverrig inden, mens andre gik under Jorden.
papers hide Gestapo	*papí:ˀər* *sgjú:lə* *gesdá:po*	Papirer skjule Gestapo
They took new names and got new papers and had to move from one place to another in order to hide from the Gestapo.	*di to:ˀ ándrə návnə ɔ feg ný:ˀ papí:ˀər ɔ mɔ̀də flødə fra sdɛ́ð te sdɛ́ð fɔr ɔ sgjú:lə saj fɔr gesdá:po.*	De tog andre Navne og fik nye Papirer og maatte flytte fra Sted til Sted for at skjule sig for Gestapo.
American civilized	*sivilisé:ˀərð*	civiliseret
And then we say we live in a civilized world!	*ɔ sɔ́ siər man a vi lé:vər i en sivilisé:ˀərð vɛ́rdən.*	Og saa siger man, at vi lever i en civiliseret Verden!

shot	*sgut*	skudt
allied	*aljé:ˀərðə*	allierede
Were many allied fliers shot down over Denmark?	*ble dər sgud máŋə aljé:ˀərðə flý:vərə né:ˀð ɔ́vˀər dánmark;*	Blev der skudt mange allierede Flyvere ned over Danmark?
Dane		
Yes, of course there were some, but a lot of them were helped out of the country.	*já dɛr blé:ˀ sɛføləli sgud nó:ən né:ˀð, mɛn en dé:ˀl á dəm ble jólbəð ú:ˀð a lánˀəð.*	Ja, der blev selvfølgelig skudt nogle ned, men en Del af dem blev hjulpet ud af Landet.
the story	*hisdó:ˀrjən*	Historien
lavish	*flɔt*	flot
welcome	*móðtà:ˀɣəlsə*	Modtagelse
Didn't you read the story about the American fliers who came down in Denmark and got such a wonderful welcome?	*lɛ́:sdə di égə hisdó:ˀrjən ɔm di àmərikáːˀnsgə flý:vərə dɛr fald né:ˀð ɔ́vˀər dánmarg ɔ feg en vɛ́ldi flɔ́d móðtà:ˀɣəlsə;*	Læste De ikke Historien om de amerikanske Flyvere, der faldt ned over Danmark og fik en vældig flot Modtagelse?
American		
No, what happened to them?	*náj? vá sgé:d dər mɛ dɛ́m?*	Nej, hvad skete der med dem?
Dane		
patriots	*patrió:ˀdər*	Patrioter
They were shown all around Copenhagen by Danish patriots.	*di ble vi:sd rónˀd i hé:lə købənhávˀn a dánsgə patrió:ˀdər.*	De blev vist rundt i hele København af danske Patrioter.
often	*ɔ́fdə*	ofte
German	*týsgə*	tyske
officers	*ɔfisé:ˀər*	Officerer

They amused themselves by eating in the best restaurants, often right next to German officers.	*ɔ di mó:ərðə saj mɛ ɔ sbí:sə pɔ: di fí:nəsdə resdoráŋʔər ɔ́fdə lí:ə ve sí:ðən a týsgə ɔfisé:ʔər.*	Og de morede sig med at spise paa de fineste Restauranter, ofte lige ved Siden af tyske Officerer.
Later they were helped to get over to Sweden in a little fishing boat.	*sé:nərə ble di jɔ̀lbəð ɔ́vʔər te svɛ́rʔi i en lílə fésgərbɔ̀:ʔð.*	Senere blev de hjulpet over til Sverrig i en lille Fiskerbaad.
American		
That was certainly great!	*dé var sánəli gɔ́d gjórʔt.*	Det var sandelig godt gjort.
illegal	*íllegà:ʔlə*	illegale
Weren't there a lot of illegal newspapers in Denmark?	*var dər égə en másə íllegà:ʔlə blá:ðə i dánmark;*	Var der ikke en Masse illegale Blade i Danmark?
Dane		
published	*úðgì:ʔəð*	udgivet
by the hundreds	*i húnrəðəvì:ʔs*	i Hundredevis
the nose	*nɛ́:sən*	Næsen
Yes, they were published by the hundreds and passed from hand to hand right under the noses of the Germans.	*jó:ʔ di ble: úðgì:ʔəð i húnrəðəvì:ʔs, ɔ gíg fra hɔ́nʔ te hɔ́nʔ lí:ə fɔr nɛ́:sən a týsgərnə.*	Jo, de blev udgivet i Hundredevis, og gik fra Haand til Haand lige for Næsen af Tyskerne.
American		
the sabotage	*sabotá:sjən*	Sabotagen
I've heard that there was more sabotage in Denmark than in any other country.	*jɛ har hǿ:ʔrd a sabotá:sjən i dánmarg var sdœ́rə ɛn i nɔ́:əð ánəð lánʔ.*	Jeg har hørt, at Sabotagen i Danmark var større end i noget andet Land.

organized	*ɔrganisé:ˀərð*	organiseret
It must have been awfully well organized.	*vɔr mɔ́:ˀ dən dɔɣ ha vɛ̀:ərð gɔ́d ɔrganisé:ˀərð.*	Hvor maa den dog have været godt organiseret!
Dane		
Yes, it certainly was.	*já dé var dən sánəli ɔ́sə.*	Ja, det var den sandelig ogsaa.
be done	*la saj gœ́:ər*	lade sig gøre
united	*sámləð*	samlet
behind	*ba:ˀɣ*	bag
risked	*resiké:ˀərðə*	risikerede
again *or* once more	*ádər*	atter
free	*frit*	frit
The reason that it could be done at all was that all the Danish people were united behind the patriots, who risked their lives every single day so that Denmark could be free again.	*mɛn grónˀən té a de i de hé:lə tá:ˀəð ku la saj gœ́:ər vár a hé:lə de dánsgə fɔ́lˀg sdo:ˀð sámləð bá:ˀɣ patrió:ˀdərnə sɔm vɛr é:nəsdə dá:ˀ resiké:ˀərðə lí:ˀvəð fɔr ɔ dánmarg ádər kùnə blì:ə frít.*	Men Grunden til, at det i det hele taget kunde lade sig gøre var, at hele danske Folk stod samlet bag Patrioterne, som hver eneste Dag risikerede Livet, for at Danmark atter kunde blive frit.

2. Pronunciation Drill

In this unit we will give you some final statements about the Danish catch. Unfortunately there are no rules that will tell you just which Danish words have the catch and which don't. You have to learn it as part of a word, just as you have to learn the other sounds that make up the word.

We can, however, make a statement as to where you will not find the catch. It does not occur in any word or syllable which is made up of a short vowel followed by one or more of the consonants *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *k*, *g*, *f*, or *s;* for example, in the words *kɔp*, 'cup', *rɛt*, 'quite', *vɛk*, 'away', *traf*, 'met', *klásə*, 'class', *bɛ́gə*, 'both', *bɛst*, 'best', etc. In the speech of most Danes, moreover, the catch does not occur in any word or syllable ending in a short vowel; for example, in *vi*, 'we', *ja*, 'yes', *mɛ*, 'with', etc. However, you will hear some Danish speakers pronounce a catch in expressions like *mɛ́ˀ ɔs*, 'with us', *áˀ ɔs*, 'by us', etc. and also before the ending *-ərə* in words like *bíliˀərə*, 'cheaper', *dájliˀərə*, 'more pleasant', etc. Finally, in the speech of many Danes the catch does not occur in any word ending in a short vowel followed by *r;* for example, in the words *par*, 'couple, pair', *ɛr*, 'is', *gær*, 'do, does', etc. But you will hear some Danish speakers pronounce a catch in expressions like *fɔ́rˀ ɔ*, 'in order to', *ɛ́rˀ əð*, 'is it', etc.

Below are summaries of statements which have been scattered through the book telling in which forms of nouns, adjectives and verbs the catch is added and in which it is dropped. Remember that when we say the catch is added wherever possible, we mean whenever the word or syllable is not made up like those mentioned above, where the catch does not occur.

A. Nouns

We pointed out in Unit 3 that there are some Danish nouns that have no catch in the basic form of the singular, but do have the catch in the singular the-form and, in some cases, in the plural also. These nouns fall into two groups:

1. Nouns which end in a short vowel followed by *l*, *n*, *ŋ*, *r*, *v*, *j* and *ð*. Here are those you have had:

øl, *ǿlˀəð* (Øl, -let) beer
nol, *nólˀəð*, *nólˀər* (Nul, -let, -ler) zero
sbel, *sbéiˀəð*, — (Spil, -let, —) game
søl, *sǿlˀəð* (Sølv, -et) silver
sœn, *sœ́nˀən*, *sœ́nər* (Søn, -nen, -ner) son
vɛn, *vɛ́nˀən*, *vɛ́nər* (Ven, -nen, -ner) friend
bɛ́ðreŋ, *bɛ́ðreŋˀən* (Bedring, -en) recovery
bəfɔ́lˀgneŋ, *bəfɔ́lˀgneŋˀən* (Befolkning, -en) population
býgneŋ, *býgneŋˀən*, *býgneŋˀər* (Bygning, -en, -er) building
drɔ́neŋ, *drɔ́neŋˀən*, *drɔ́neŋˀər* (Dronning, -en, -er) queen

fɔrέdneŋ, fɔrέdneŋˀən, fɔrέdneŋˀər (Forretning, -en, -er) store
kýleŋ, kýleŋˀən, kýleŋˀər (Kylling, -en, -er) chicken
ónsgỳlˀneŋ, ónsgỳlˀneŋˀən, ónsgỳlˀneŋˀər (Undskyldning, -en, -er) excuse
pərɔ́ŋ, pərɔ́ŋˀən, pərɔ́ŋˀər (Perron, -en, -er) platform (*at railroad station*)
rájneŋ, rájneŋˀən, rájneŋˀər (Regning, -en, -er) bill
regé:ˀreŋ, regé:ˀreŋˀən, regé:ˀreŋˀər (Regering, -en, -er) government
resdoráŋ, resdoráŋˀən, resdoráŋˀər (Restaurant, -en, -er) restaurant
svǿmneŋ, svǿmneŋˀən (Svømning, -en) swimming
úðlὲnˀeŋ, úðlὲnˀeŋˀən, úðlὲnˀeŋə (Udlænding, -en, -e) foreigner
par, párˀəð (Par, -ret) pair
smœr, smœ́rˀəð (Smør, -ret) butter
hav, há:ˀvəð, há:və (Hav, -et, -e) sea, ocean
lɔv, lɔ́:ˀvən, lɔ́:və (Lov, -en, -e) law
tɔj, tɔ́jˀəð (Tøj, -et) clothes
blað, blá:ˀðəð, blá:ðə (Blad, -et, -e) blade, magazine
mað, má:ˀðən (Mad, -en) food
smeð, sméðˀən, smé:ðə (Smed, -en, -e) blacksmith
freð, fréðˀən (Fred, -en) peace
sdεð, sdέðˀəð, sdέ:ðər (Sted, -et, -er) place
køð, kǿðˀəð (Kød, -et) meat

Notice that the short *a* in *blað* and *hav* becomes long *a:* in the the-form and the plural, that the short *a* in *mað* becomes long in the the-form, that the short *ɔ* in *lɔv* becomes long in the the-form and the plural, and that the short *ε* in *sdεð* and the short *e* in *smeð* become long in the plural.

2. Nouns ending in a short vowel. In this case the vowel becomes long when the catch is added. Of these you have had the following:

kílo, kílo:ʔəð, — (Kilo, -et, —) kilogram
kɔ́nto, kɔ́nto:ʔən, kɔ́nto:ʔər (Konto, -en, -er) account
ó:ʔbəra, ó:ʔbəra:ʔən, ó:ʔbəra:ʔər (Opera, -en, -er) opera
rá:ʔdjo, rá:ʔdjo:ʔən, rá:ʔdjo:ʔər (Radio, -en, -er) radio
tágsa, tágsa:ʔən, tágsa:ʔər (Taxa, -en, -er) taxi
véndu, véndu:ʔəð, véndu:ʔər (Vindue, -t, -r) window
méda, méda:ʔən, méda:ə (Middag, -en, -e) dinner, noon
mánʔda, mánʔda:ʔən, mánʔda:ə (Mandag, -en, -e) Monday (*and other days of the week*)

Many nouns whose plural forms are made by adding *-ə* have the catch in the singular but not in the plural. You have had a lot of nouns of this type; here are a few examples:

lanʔ, lánə (Land, -e) country
gaŋʔ, gáŋə (Gang, -e) time
fɔ́rsgɛ̀lʔ, fɔ́rsgɛ̀lə (Forskel, -le) difference
ɔ́bsdànʔ, ɔ́bsdànə (Opstand, -e) revolt

A very few nouns whose plural forms are made by adding *-ər* have the catch in the singular but not in the plural; for example, *tí:ʔð, tí:ðər* (Tid, -er) 'time'.

In compound nouns the catch is often (but not always) left out of the noun forming the first part; for example:

rúbrǿ:ʔð (Rugbrød) 'pumpernickel' (compare *ru:ʔ* (Rug) 'rye')
sdrɔ́tà:ʔγ (Straatag) 'thatched roof' (compare *sdrɔ:ʔ* (Straa) straw)
lánmànʔ (Landmand) 'farmer' (compare *lanʔ* (Land) country, land)

but

lánˀstèŋˀ (Landsting) Upper House	(compare *lanˀ* (Land) country, land)
kó:ˀsdàlˀ (Kostald) cow stable	(compare *ko:ˀ* (Ko) cow)
bəsø̀:ˀstì:ˀð (Besøgstid) visiting hours	(compare *bəsø̀:ˀγ* (Besøg) visit)

B. Adjectives

A catch in the basic form of an adjective remains in the *t*-form, but is lost in the *ə*-form; for example:

kɔlˀ, kɔlˀt, kɔ́lə (kold, -t, -e) 'cold'

It is also lost in the comparison forms; for example:

kɔ́lərə, kɔ́ləst (koldere, koldest) 'colder, coldest'

Adjectives ending in *-sɔmˀ* have the catch throughout; for example:

láŋsɔmˀ, láŋsɔmˀt, láŋsɔmˀə, láŋsɔmˀərə, láŋsɔmˀst (langsom, -t, -me, -mere, -st) 'slow, slower, slowest'

There are a few adjectives that have a long vowel in the basic form and the *ə*-form, but a short vowel in the *t*-form. The resulting *t*-forms are such that they cannot have the catch. Here are those you have had:

Basic form	*t-form*	*ə-form*	
ly:ˀs (lys)	*lyst* (lyst)	*lý:sə* (lyse)	light
sø:ˀð (sød)	*søt* (sødt)	*sø̀:ðə* (søde)	sweet
go:ˀð/go:ˀ (god)	*gɔt* (godt)	*gó:ðə/gó:ə* (gode)	good
fla:ˀð (flad)	*flat* (fladt)	*flá:ðə* (flade)	flat
vi:ˀð (hvid)	*vit* (hvidt)	*ví:ðə* (hvide)	white

Basic form	*t-form*	*ə-form*	
ny:ʔ (ny)	*nyt* (nyt)	*ný:ə/ny:ʔ* (nye)	new
fri:ʔ (fri)	*frit* (frit)	*frí:ə/fri:ʔ* (frie)	free
sy:ʔ (syg)	*sygt* (sygt)	*sý:ə* (syge)	sick
ri:ʔ (rig)	*rigt* (rigt)	*rí:ə* (rige)	rich

Notice that all these adjectives, with the exception of *ly:ʔs*, have basic forms ending in ð or in a long vowel with the catch.

When *u-* is added at the beginning of an adjective to give it the opposite meaning, the resulting form has the catch whenever possible; for example:

uhɛ́lʔdi (uheldig) 'unlucky' (compare *hɛ́ldi* (heldi) 'lucky')
umú:ʔli (umulig) 'impossible' (compare *mú:li* (mulig) 'possible')
uró:ʔli (urolig) 'restless, worried' (compare *ró:li* (rolig) 'calm, quiet')
uvɛ́nʔli (uvenlig) 'unkind' (compare *vɛ́nli* (venlig) 'kind')

The word, *uvírgli* (uvirkelig), 'unreal' which does not have the catch is an exception.

C. Verbs

1. Some verbs which do not have the catch in the basic form add it in the present form. There is no way of telling which verbs do this except to learn them. You have had many such verbs; here are a few examples:

Basic form	*Present form*	
tá:lə (tale)	*tá:ʔlər* (taler)	speak
kɔ́mə (komme)	*kɔ́mʔər* (kommer)	come
fénə (finde)	*fénʔər* (finder)	find
ný:ðə (nyde)	*ný:ʔðər* (nyder)	enjoy

2. Verbs which do not have the catch in the basic form add it in the command form whenever possible, with the exception of *kɔ́mə*, 'come'. For example:

Basic form	*Command form*	
tá:lə (tale)	*ta:ˀl* (tal)	speak
hø:ər (høre)	*hø:ˀr* (hør)	listen
sí:ə (sige)	*si:ˀ* (sig)	say

3. Past forms of regular verbs which end in *-də* (-te) have the catch only when the basic form does. Participles ending in *-t* have the catch whenever they can. For example:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*	
ví:sə (vise)	*ví:sdə* (viste)	*vi:ˀst* (vist)	show
bəsdélˀə (bestille)	*bəsdélˀdə* (bestilte)	*bəsdélˀt* (bestilt)	do, order, reserve

4. Past forms of regular verbs which end in *-ðə* (-de) and participles which end in *-əð* (-et) have the catch only when the basic form does. For example:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*	
flødə (flytte)	*flødəðə* (flyttede)	*flødəð* (flyttet)	move
árbajˀdə (arbejde)	*árbajˀdəðə* (arbejdede)	*árbajˀdəð* (arbejdet)	work

5. You have undoubtedly noticed that Danish has compound verbs as well as compound nouns. They have, as the first part, syllables like *en-* (ind-), *ónər-* (under-), *fɔr-* (for-), *bə-* (be-), *uð-* (ud-), etc. and, as the second part, ordinary verbs; for example, *bətá:ˀlə*, 'pay', *énsgrì:ˀvə*, 'check through', *ónərsgrì:ˀvə*, 'sign', *fɔrklá:ˀər*, 'explain',

úðnèvˀnə, 'appoint', etc. A verb which forms the second part of such compounds has the catch in all forms whenever possible, even though it doesn't have it when used alone. Compare, for example, *tá:lə*, 'speak', and *bətá:ˀlə*, 'pay', *sgrí:və*, 'write', and *ónərsgrì:ˀvə*, 'sign', *klá:ər saj*, 'get along', and *fɔrklá:ˀər*, 'explain'.

D. jɛmˀ, ɔ̀vˀər, etc.

The group of words including *jɛmˀ*, 'home', *ɔ̀vˀər*, 'over', *enˀ*, 'in', etc., which have a basic form used to show motion in the direction indicated and an ə-form used to show position in the place indicated, lose the catch in the ə-form; for example, *jɛmˀ, jɛ́mə*, 'home', *ɔ̀vˀər, ɔ̀vrə*, 'over', *enˀ, énə*, 'in', etc.

3. Hints on Spelling

You should pay special attention to the spelling of the following new words:

allieret	*aljé:ˀərð*	allied
Invasion	*envasjó:ˀn*	invasion
Koncentrationsleir	*kɔnsəntrasjó:ˀnslàjˀr*	concentration camp
Modtagelse	*móðtà:ˀγəlsə*	welcome
Sabotage	*sabotá:sjə*	sabotage
udgive, udgav, udgivet	*úðgì:ˀ, úðgà:ˀ, úðgì:ˀəð*	publish, published
Krenchel[1]	*krɛ́ŋˀgəl*	Krenchel (*last name*)

---

[1] See *Listening In*.

SECTION B—WORD STUDY

1. Word Study

1. Verb forms ending in *-nde*

Jeg synes virkelig, det er pænt af Dem, at De vil have os Amerikanere **boende.**	It's awfully nice of you to have us Americans stay with you.
Ja, det er jeg, men netop derfor virker Danmark saa **smilende** *og venligt paa os Udlændinge, at vi føler os hjemme med det samme.*	Yes, I am, of course, but it's for that very reason that Denmark has such a pleasing, friendly effect on us foreigners, that we feel at home right away.

Notice the words in heavy type in these sentences. They are made from verbs and are used as adjectives. *Boende,* as you can see, comes from the verb *bo,* 'live', while *smilende* comes from the verb *smile,* 'smile'. Look at the following examples and you will see how such forms are made:

Basic form	*-nde form*
smí:lə (smile) 'smile'	*smí:lə***nə** (smile**nde**) 'smiling'
kɔ́mə (komme) 'come'	*kɔ́mə***nə** (komme**nde**) 'coming'
lǿ:bə (løbe) 'run'	*lǿ:bə***nə** (løbe**nde**) 'running'
bo:ˀ (bo) 'live'	*bó:***ənə** (bo**ende**) 'living'
gɔ:ˀ (gaa) 'go, walk'	*gɔ́:***ənə** (gaa**ende**) 'going, walking'

As you see, when the basic form ends in *e,* you add *-nde* [*-nə*] to make the form in question, while when the basic form ends in a vowel, you add *-ende* [*-ənə*] and leave out the catch. These forms generally correspond to English verb forms ending in *-ing,* 'smiling', 'coming', 'running', etc., but only when these English forms are used as adjectives. (For the Danish equivalents of English *-ing* forms used in other ways see the *Word Study* of Units 14, 21, 27). Here are some more sentences containing these forms:

Politiet kom **løbende,** *saa snart de saa, hvad der var sket.*	The police came running as soon as they saw what had happened.
Hun fandt Pengene **liggende** *paa Bordet.*	She found the money lying on the table.
De kan blive **boende** *her ligesaa længe, De vil.*	You can stay (living) here just as long as you want to.
Han kom **bærende** *med alle hendes Skolebøger.*	He came along carrying all her schoolbooks.
Matrosen kom **gaaende** *langs Stranden med sin Pige.*	The sailor came walking along the beach with his girl.

As you see, in each case the form ending in *-nde* describes what someone or something is doing.

The adjectives *glimrende* and *spændende*, which you have had, are actually made from verbs, like those described above, but their meaning has changed so that it is no longer so closely related to that of the verb. *Glimrende* came originally from the verb *glimre* [glémrə] which means "glitter" or "shine", but the adjective now has the meaning, "brilliant" or "splendid". And *spændende* came originally from the verb *spænde* [*sbénə*] 'stretch, strain, tighten', but it has now come to mean "exciting".

All adjectives ending in *-nde* have just this one form, no matter how they are used.

2. *Ind i* and *inde i*

In some of the *What Would You Say?* exercises you have had the following sentences:

De kan indskrive Deres Bagage eller tage Deres Kufferter med **ind i Kupéen,** *hvis de ikke er for store.*	You can check your baggage through or you can take your suitcases into the compartment with you, if they're not too big.
Om Vinteren bor vi som Regel **inde i Byen.**	In the winter we generally live in the city.

Look at the expressions in heavy type in these sentences. The combination *ind i* will cause you no trouble, since it corresponds to English "into". But notice that just as you say *ind i* in Danish, you also say *inde i*. You know that in English we say "up in", "down in", "over in", etc. In Danish you say all these things and also *inde* i, 'in in'. Notice that the difference between *ind/inde* and *i*, both of which correspond to English "in", is that *i* is used in a phrase with a following noun, as *i Byen, i Kupéen*, while *ind/inde* is used with no noun following. An apparent exception is the following sentence:

Men kom, lad os gaa i nu.	Come on, let's go in now.

when speaking of going in swimming.

3. *Ja* and *jo* used to begin a sentence

Look at the following bit of conversation:

Bill	
Hvor længe har De egentlig boet her Sagfører Knudsen?	How long have you lived here, Mr. Knudsen?
Mr. Knudsen	
Ja, *lad mig se, det maa snart være ti Aar.*	Let's see, it must be almost ten years.

You can see in this bit of conversation and you must have noticed by this time that you often start a sentence with *ja* or *jo* in Danish when you don't really mean "yes". It's just a way of beginning, used like "well" or "oh" in English. You learned early in the course that *nej* and *næh* are used in the same way.

4. *Lykkes*

Men heldigvis **lykkedes det nogle af dem** *at flygte til Sverrig inden, mens andre gik under Jorden.*	Fortunately some of them managed to escape (succeeded in escaping) to Sweden on the way, while others went underground.

Look carefully at the words in heavy type here. *Lykkes* is another Danish verb that is always used in the s-form, although it doesn't have a passive meaning. Notice that what you really say is "it succeeded some of them", using *det* as the subject of *lykkedes* and *nogle af dem*, which refers to the people doing the succeeding, as a kind of object. Look at the following sentences and you will see that this is always the case:

Det lykkedes ham *at faa en ny Bil i 1944.*	He succeeded in getting a new car in 1944.
Jeg prøvede at komme ud af Danmark under Besættelsen, men **det lykkedes mig** *ikke.*	I tried to get out of Denmark during the occupation, but I didn't succeed.

As you see, the object forms of the pronouns *ham* and *mig* are used in these sentences and the subject of the verb *lykkedes* in both cases is *det*.

5. Difference between *Gang* and *Tid*

Hvis De kender noget til dansk Historie, ved De sikkert, at det ikke er første **Gang,** *vi har været i Krig imod Tyskland.*	If you know anything about Danish history, you must know that this is not the first time we've been at war with Germany.
Men denne **Gang** *haaber jeg, at de er blevet knust, saa de aldrig skal kunne rejse sig igen.*	But this time I hope they've been crushed so they'll never be able to rise again.
Tyskerne har jo været vores Fjender fra gammel **Tid.**	The Germans have been our enemies from way back.
Det var sandelig ikke nogen let **Tid** *for ham.*	It wasn't an easy time for him, of course.

Both *Gang* and *Tid*, as you know, correspond to English "time", but the Danish words are used differently. You can see from the above sentences that *Gang* is used to refer to a particular point in time or a particular occasion, while *Tid* refers to a period of time or an amount of time.

6. *Nogen, noget* and *nogle*

Pay special attention to the words *nogen* and *noget* in the following sentences:

Har De været til **nogen Opera?**	Have you been to an opera?

Da han var 14-15 Aar gammel, rejste han til København, hvor han arbejdede **nogen Tid** *ved det kongelige Teater.*	When he was 14 or 15 years old, he went to Copenhagen, where he worked for a time at the royal theatre.
Det var sandelig ikke **nogen** *let* **Tid** *for ham.*	It wasn't an easy time for him, of course.
Der var ikke **nogen Regering** *i Danmark efter Opstanden den 29. August, 1943.*	There wasn't any government in Denmark after the revolt of the 29th of August, 1943.
Jeg har lovet at købe **noget Medicin** *til hende.*	I promised to get some medicine for her.
Vi har ikke **noget Mælk.**	We don't have any milk.
At man slet ikke ser **noget Jord,** *der ikke er dyrket.*	That you don't see any land at all that's not being cultivated.

Notice that both *nogen* and *noget* in these sentences are used with en-nouns. You learned in Unit 9 that *noget* is used with et-nouns to correspond to English "some" or "any", and we mentioned there that it is also used with en-nouns, although you had had no examples at that time. Now you see that not only *noget,* but also *nogen* is used with en-nouns.

Compare the nouns used with *nogen* in the first group of sentences with those used with *noget* in the second group. Notice that *nogen* is used with en-nouns which refer to things which you can speak of as "one" or "several". For instance, you can talk about "one opera" or "three operas", about "the government of that country" or "the governments of those two countries". And notice that *noget* is used with en-nouns which refer to things that you speak about, not as individual units of one or more than one, but as a whole mass, like "medicine", "milk", "land" (in the sense of earth to cultivate). You might notice also that with nouns such as those used with *nogen* we often use in English, not "some" or "any", but "a" or "an".

We can summarize what you know about the three Danish words *nogen, noget* and *nogle* as follows:

Nogen is used only with those en-nouns which refer to things spoken of as units, *noget* is used with all et-nouns and with those en-nouns which refer to things spoken of as a whole mass, and *nogle* is used with plural nouns. You know, of course, that *nogen* and *nogle* are pronounced in the same way, [*nó:ən/no:n*].

In addition, *nogen* corresponds to English "someone" or "anyone", *noget* to "something" or "anything", while *nogle* when used without a noun refers to more than one person or thing, as in *nogle af dem,* "some of them".

7. Compounds

Here are the new compound nouns you had in this unit:

verb + noun

Flyvevæsen, 'air corps' = **flyve,** 'fly' + **Væsen,** 'department, service'

noun + s + noun

Koncentrationslejr, 'concentration camp' = **Koncentration,** 'concentration' + **s** + **Lejr,** 'camp'

Verdenskrig, 'world war' = **Verden,** 'world' + **s** + **Krig,** 'war'

8. Irregular verbs

You had the following irregular verbs in this unit:

Basic form	*Past form*	*Participle*
skyde [*sgý:ðə*] shoot	skød [*sgø:?ð*] shot	skudt [*sgut*] shot
udgive [*úðgì:?*] publish	udgav [*úðgà:?*] published	udgivet [*úðgì:?əð*] published

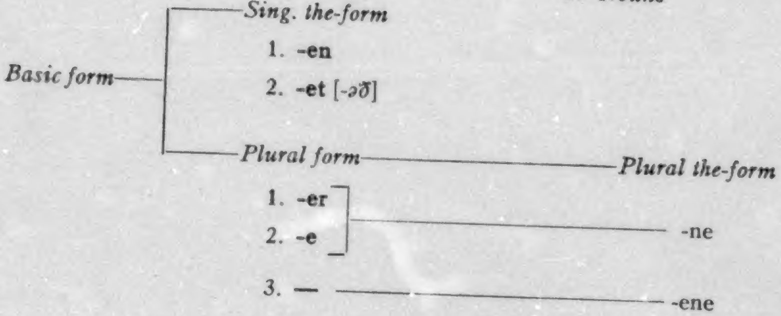
9. An adjective to notice

The adjective *fri:?* (fri), 'free', works exactly like the adjective *ny:?* (ny), 'new'. The *t*-form *frit* (frit) has a short vowel. The *ə*-form is either *frí:ə* (frie) or it is identical with the basic form *fri:?* (See Unit 9, *Word Study*, comment 6).

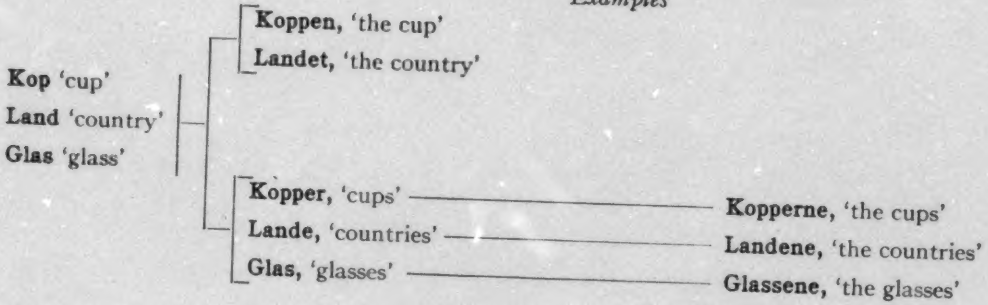
10. Summary of form changes

There follows a summary of the changes in form that different types of Danish words have. For statements about the addition or loss of the catch in these forms, see the *Hints on Pronunciation* of this unit.

1. *Nouns*


Basic form
Sing. the-form
1. **-en**
2. **-et** [-əð]
Plural form
Plural the-form
1. **-er**
2. **-e**
-ne
3. —
-ene

Examples


Kop 'cup'
Land 'country'
Glas 'glass'
Koppen, 'the cup'
Landet, 'the country'
Kopper, 'cups'
Lande, 'countries'
Glas, 'glasses'
Kopperne, 'the cups'
Landene, 'the countries'
Glassene, 'the glasses'

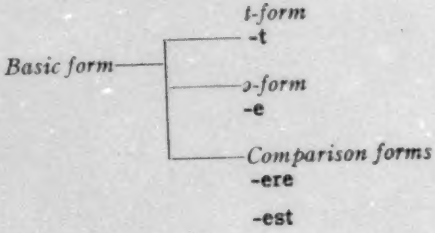
The endings *-en*, *-et*, and *-er* become *-n*, *-t*, and *-r* when added to a noun whose basic form ends in *-e*.

The possessive form of a noun is made by adding *-s* either to the basic form (*min Brors*, 'my brother's') or to the the-forms (*Kongens*, 'the king's').

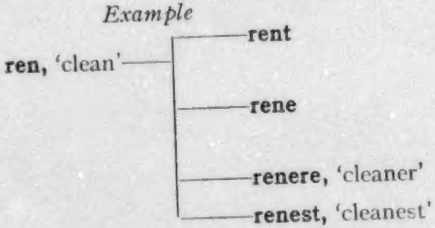
2. *Words used with Nouns*

	en-nouns	*et-nouns*	*plural nouns*
a, an	**en**	**et**	
that, those, the (before adjectives)	**den**	**det**	**de**
this, these	**denne**	**dette**	**disse**
my	**min**	**mit**	**mine**
your	**din**	**dit**	**dine**
his own, her own	**sin**	**sit**	**sine**
other	**anden**	**andet**	**andre**
some, any	**nogen, noget**	**noget**	**nogle**

3. *Adjectives*



Basic form
t-form
-t
ə-form
-e
Comparison forms
-ere
-est



Example
ren, 'clean'
rent
rene
renere, 'cleaner'
renest, 'cleanest'

Adjectives whose basic forms end in *-t*, in *-et* [-əð], or in groups of consonants like *nsk* or *lsk* don't have any special *t*-form.

Adjectives whose basic form ends in *-e* have only that one form.

The basic form is used to describe or refer to en-nouns.

The *t*-form is used to describe or refer to et-nouns. It is also used with verbs.

The *ə*-form is used to describe or refer to plural nouns. It is also used after the words *den, det, denne, dette,* and the possessive form of either a noun or a pronoun to describe or refer to both en- and et-nouns.

4. *Pronouns*

I, we

Subject	**jeg**	**vi**
Object	**mig**	**os**
Possessive	**min, mit, mine**	**vores**

he, she, it, they

Subject	**han**	**hun**	**den, det**	**de**
Object	**ham**	**hende**	**den, det**	**dem**
Possessive	**hans**	**hendes**	**dens, dets**	**deres**
or	**sin, sit, sine**	**sin, sit, sine**	**sin, sit, sine**	———
Form used with verbs like *skynde sig*, etc.	**sig**	**sig**	**sig**	**sig**

you

	singular familiar	*plural familiar*	*sing. and pl. formal*	*general*
Subject	**du**	**I**	**De**	**man**
Object	**dig**	**jer**	**Dem**	**en**
Possessive	**din, dit, dine**	**jeres**	**Deres**	**ens**

5. *Verbs*

Basic form
- *Command form*
  leave off **-e**
- *Present form*
  -r
- *-nde form*
  -nde/**-ende**
- *Past form* (regular verbs)

Past form (regular verbs)	*Participle*
1. change **-e** to **-te**	1. leave off **-e**
2. add **-de** [-ðə]/**-ede** [-əðə]	2. leave off **-e.** In the spelling, change **d** to **t**; pronunciation remains [-ð].

Examples

vise, 'show'
haabe, 'hope'
- **vis,** 'show!', **haab,** 'hope!'
- **viser,** 'show(s)', **haaber,** 'hope(s)'
- **visende,** 'showing', **haabende,** 'hoping'
- **viste,** 'showed' — **vist,** 'shown'
- **haabede,** 'hoped' — **haabet,** 'hoped'

The endings *-ende* and *-ede* are added to verbs whose basic form ends in a vowel. For these verbs the command form is the same as the basic form.

Certain verbs which make the past form by changing the *-e* of the basic form to *-te* have irregular vowels in the past form. In some cases the vowel is shortened, in other cases actually changed. The participle, however, is made regularly from the past form. For example, **købe** [*kø:bə*], **købte** [*købdə*], **købt** [*købt*], 'buy', **sætte, satte, sat,** 'set, put'.

A limited number of verbs have past forms and participles made in no regular way; for example, **gaa, gik, gaaet,** 'go', **se, saa, set,** 'see'.

For a summary of the changes in verbs whose basic form ends in a long vowel followed by *re* [*-ər*], see the *Pronunciation Drill* of Unit 20.

For statements as to which verb forms have the catch, see the *Pronunciation Drill* of this unit.

6. *Words Indicating Place*

(*hjem*, *ind*, *over*, etc.)

Basic form	*ə-form*
ind, 'in'	**inde,** 'in'

The basic form is used to express motion to the place or in the direction indicated.
The ə-form is used to indicate position in the place indicated.

2. Covering the English and Danish of the Word Study

3. Review of Basic Sentences

SECTION C—REVIEW OF BASIC SENTENCES

1. Review of Basic Sentences (*Cont.*)

2. Covering the English of the Basic Sentences

3. What Would You Say?

The following questions are based on material contained in the *Basic Sentences*. Be prepared to give your answers in Danish.

1. Hvornaar var Invasionen af Danmark?
2. Hvor længe har man haft Værnepligt i Danmark?
3. Har Danmark nogen Sinde været i Krig imod Tyskland før?
4. Var der nogen Regering i Danmark under hele Besættelsen?
5. Hvornaar var der Opstand i Danmark?
6. Hvad skete der med Flaaden paa den Dag?
7. Hvad skete der ellers?
8. Hvor fik Danskerne Vaaben fra?
9. Hvad gjorde Tyskerne med det danske Politi?
10. Hvad lykkedes det nogle af dem at gøre?
11. Hvad gjorde de Patrioter, som gik under Jorden?
12. Hvad skete der med de allierede Flyvere, der faldt ned over Danmark?
13. Hvor spiste de?
14. Var Sabotagen i Danmark godt organiseret?

SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. What Did You Say?

Give your answers to the preceding exercise as the Leader calls for them.

2. Word Study Check-Up

3. Listening In

1. Bicycle Trip

Sagfører Knudsen: Var der Værnepligt i Amerika inden Krigen?

Bill: Nej, men nu er den amerikanske Hær og Flaade den største i Verden.

Men hvis jeg skulde vælge, vilde jeg nu hellere ind i Flyvevæsenet, det har altid interesseret mig.

Sagfører Knudsen: Jeg traf et Par allierede Flyvere under Krigen, som var blevet skudt ned over Danmark.

Nogle danske Patrioter havde fundet Maskinen knust paa Jorden, og det lykkedes dem at finde Flyverne, inden Tyskerne fandt dem.

Patrioterne gav dem Mad og Vaaben og skjulte dem i flere Dage paa en Gaard, og hjalp dem til sidst over til Sverrig lige for Næsen af Tyskerne.

Kender De forresten Historien om Tyskeren og Cycelturen?

Bill: Nej, maa jeg høre den?

Sagfører Knudsen: Jo, det var en Tysker, der sad ved Siden af en Dansker i et Tog.

Tyskeren vilde hele Tiden snakke og begyndte at fortælle om, hvor meget han glædede sig til Krigen var forbi, og han igen kunde komme hjem til Tyskland.

Der var saa mange Ting, han skulde gøre, naar han kom hjem, men først skulde han nu alligevel cykle Tyskland rundt med sin Kone.

Uden at se op, sagde Danskeren koldt og uinteresseret:

„Hvad Pokker vil De saa gøre om Eftermiddagen."

2. *Proper Answer*

Efter Opstanden i Danmark den 29. August, blev Tilstandene værre og værre.

Danskerne sænkede Flaaden, før Tyskerne kunde tage den, og derfor sendte de det danske Politi og en Masse andre Danske til Koncentrationslejre i Tyskland, hvor de blev behandlet frygteligt og mange døde.

Civiliserede Mennesker er Tyskerne jo ikke, det ved hele Verden.

Flere Tusind Danskere maatte flygte til Sverrig for ikke at blive sendt til Tyskland.

Til sidst gik den danske Regering af, og Kongen blev sat i Husarrest.

Efter at alt dette var sket, fortæller man, at en tyskvenlig Sagfører ved Navn Krenchel en Dag gik op til Kongen og fortalte ham, at han vilde danne en ny Regering.

Kongen laa endnu i Sengen, efter han var faldet med Hesten paa Langelinie.

Da han hørte, hvad Krenchel vilde, saa han bare koldt paa ham og sagde roligt:

„Min gode Mand! Det er ikke mit Hoved, der er noget i Vejen med, det er mine Ben!"

3. *A Fitting Title*

Det fortælles ogsaa, at i en Forretning i København kunde man i et Vindue se et Billede af Hitler paa den ene Side og et Billede af Mussolini paa den anden.

Lige midt imellem laa Victor Hugo's berømte Bog „Les Miserables".

4. *Dinner Date*

Det første illegale Blad, der blev udgivet, hed „De frie Danske", men efterhaanden kom der mange andre.

Der fortælles ofte en Historie om, at Tyskerne havde arresteret en ung Pige og hendes Brødre, fordi de arbejdede ved et af de illegale Blade, og Gestapo havde fundet nogle vigtige Papirer i deres Hus.

Da den unge Pige havde siddet nogen Tid i et af Gestapos Kontorer, saa hun pludselig, at hun var helt alene i Værelset.

Hun blev vældig glad og skyndte sig hen og aabnede Døren og løb lige ind i to tyske Officerer, som saa meget interesseret paa hende.

Hun blev pludselig ogsaa venlig og smilede til dem, og da de inviterede hende ud til Middag, sagde hun, „Ja Tak." og gik med dem.

Da de kom hen paa Restauranten, satte de sig ned og snakkede lidt sammen.

Da de havde bestilt Middagen, undskyldte den unge Pige sig et Øjeblik—hun skulde lige ud at telefonere. Hun kom selvfølgelig aldrig tilbage!

5. *Freedom Once More*

Den 5. Maj 1945 var den bedste Dag i Danmarks Historie, men man maa have været med under Besættelsen for virkelig at forstaa, hvordan det er at leve i et frit Land igen.

Og den Dag Montgomery kom til Landet, vil Danskerne aldrig glemme.

Ingen har nogen Sinde faaet en flottere Modtagelse i København end han.

Gaderne var fulde af Mennesker, alle raabte Hurra og vilde hilse paa ham og trykke ham i Haanden, og der blev vinket og flaget fra hver eneste Bil og Sporvogn og fra alle Vinduer over hele Byen.

Senere sagde han i en Tale, at han syntes, Sabotagen havde været glimrende organiseret—bedre end i noget andet Land.

At Sabotagen virkelig kunde lade sig gøre, var jo kun fordi hele Befolkningen stod samlet bag Patrioterne, som hver Dag risikerede Livet for Landets Frihed.

Nu arbejder Kongen og Regeringen igen som før, Politiet er tilbage i Danmark og der er atter Lys over Landet.

Folk kan tale og tænke frit uden at behøve at være bange for Gestapo, og alle der levede under Jorden eller flygtede til Sverrig efter Invasionen er kommet tilbage til deres Hjem og kan igen føle sig som frie Mennesker.

Danmark er allerede begyndt at eksportere Bacon, Smør og Æg til de Lande, der trænger mest til det.

Og det varer nok ikke saa mange Aar, før de danske Fabrikker, Skibsværfter og Landets øvrige Industri kan begynde at arbejde som i gamle Dage.

Dog maa man regne med, at der sikkert er mange Ting, der aldrig bliver det samme i Europa efter denne Krig.

Men Danmark er frit, og det er det vigtigste.

Danmark kan aldrig faa takket alle de Mennesker, unge og gamle, rige og fattige, som levede og døde for Friheden under Besættelsen, men deres Navne vil for altid staa skrevet i Danmarks Historie.

SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. Covering the Danish of the Basic Sentences

2. Vocabulary Check-Up

3. Conversation

1. You ask a Danish friend of yours about the invasion of Denmark on April 9, 1940 and the occupation by the Germans. He tells you of the revolt of August 29, 1943, the scuttling of the Danish fleet, the resignation of the government, the arrest of the king, the sending of the Danish police to concentration camps in Germany, and finally the great day of May 5, 1945 when Denmark became free again.

2. You ask the same Danish friend what he did during the occupation. He tells you that he was studying at the university when the Germans came, but of course then he wanted to do something to help Denmark get her freedom back, so he started to work on one of the illegal newspapers. You ask if that wasn't quite dangerous. He says it was, but it was very important. He tells you how in these illegal newspapers you could find the names of those Danes who were friendly toward the Germans. In that way the other Danes could watch out for them, and many of them were killed by Danish patriots. He tells you that he was arrested by the Gestapo in the winter of 1942. You ask what happened then. He says that he succeeded in escaping after a couple of weeks and then he went underground right away. You ask what he actually did when he went underground. He explains that he took another name and got new papers and moved from one place to another in order to hide from the Germans. You ask about the rest of his family. He tells you that his brother helped to organize the sabotage on Fyn. He tells you about one thing the patriots did there. There were trains

that carried weapons which were being sent to Germany. The patriots saw to it that these trains went north up through Jutland instead of south to Germany. Then other patriots in Jutland took the weapons. You tell him that that was certainly well done, and ask what his brother's doing now. He tells you that he was finally taken and shot by the Gestapo.

3. Discuss among yourselves what you did during the war. Tell whether you were in the Army, the Navy, the Air Corps, working in a factory, etc.

Finder List

ádər (atter) again, once more
alé:nə (alene) alone
aljé:ˀərð, -ə (allieret, allierede) allied
arəsdé:ˀər, -ðə (arrestere, -de) arrest
ba:ˀγ (bag) behind, in back of
bəsɛ́dəlsə, -n, -r (Besættelse, -n, -r) occupation
bílðə, -ð, -r (Billede, -t, -r) picture
envasjó:ˀn, -ən, -ər (Invasion, -en, -er) invasion
flý:vər, -ən, -ə (Flyver, -en, -e) flyer
flý:vəvɛ̀:ˀsən, flǿ:vəvɛ̀:ˀsnəð, flý:vəvɛ̀:ˀsnər (Flyvevæsen, -et, -er) air force
flǿgdə, -ðə (flygte, -de) flee, escape
flɔt (flot) lavish
frí:hè:ˀð, -ən, -ər (Frihed, -en, -er) freedom
fri:ˀ, frit, fri:ˀ or *frí:ə* (fri) free
gesdá:po (Gestapo) Gestapo
glémrənə (glimrende) brilliant, splendid
gɔ: (gig, gɔ̀:əð) á:ˀ (gaa) (gik, gaaet) (af) resign
hɛ:ˀr, hɛ́:ˀərn, hɛ́:ər (Hær, -en, -e) army
hisdó:ˀrjə, -n, -r (Historie, -n, -r) story
húnrəðəvì:ˀs: i húnrəðəvì:ˀs (i Hundredevis) by the hundreds
húsɑrɛ̀st, -ən, -ər (Husarrest, -en, -er) house arrest
íllegà:ˀl (illegal) illegal
knú:sə, knú:ˀsər, -də (knuse, -te) crush
krɛ́ŋˀgəl (Krenchel) *last name*

kɔnsəntrasjó:ˀnslàjˀr, *-ən*, *kɔnsəntrasjó:ˀnslàjrə* (Koncentrationslejr, -en, -e) concentration camp

la (*lo:ˀð*, *là:ðəð*) *saj gœ́:ər* (lade) (lod, ladet) (sig gøre) be done

lajˀr, *-ən*, *lájrə* (Lejr, -en, -e) camp

lǿgəs, *lǿgəðəs* (lykkes, lykkedes) succeed
de lǿgəs ham (det lykkes ham) he succeeds

móðtà:ˀγəlsə, *-n*, *-r* (Modtagelse, -n, -r) welcome, reception

nɛ́:sə, *-n*, *-r* (Næse, -n, -r) nose

papí:ˀr, *papí:ˀərð*, *papí:ˀər* (Papir, -et, -er) paper

patrió:ˀt, *-ən*, *-ər* (Patriot, -en, -er) patriot

resiké:ˀər, *-ðə* (risikere, -de) risk

sabotá:sjə, *-n* (Sabotage, -n) sabotage

sámlə, *-ðə* (samle, -de) gather, collect
sámləð, *-ə* (samlet, samlede) united

sɛ́ŋgə, *-ðə* (sænke, -de) sink, scuttle

sgjú:lə, *sgjú:ˀlər*, *-də* (sgjule, -te) hide

sivilisé:ˀərð, *-ə* (civiliceret, civilicerede) civilized

sgý:ðə, *sgý:ˀðər*, *sgø:ˀð*, *sgut* (skyde, skød, skudt) shoot

télsdànˀ, *-ən*, *télsdànə* (Tilstand, -en, -e) condition

tysk, *-ə* (tysk, -e) German

úðgì:ˀ, *úðgà:ˀ*, *úðgì:ˀəð* (udgive, udgav, udgivet) publish

vɛ́rdənskrì:ˀ, *-ən*, *vɛ́rdənskrì:ə* (Verdenskrig, -en, -e) world war

vɛ́rə (værre) worse

vɛ́:ˀsən, *vɛ́:ˀsnəð*, *vɛ́:ˀsnər* (Væsen, -et, -er) department, service

vɔ́:ˀbən, *vɔ́:ˀbnəð*, — (Vaaben, -et, —) weapon

ɔ́bsdànˀ, *-ən*, *ɔ́bsdànə* (Opstand, -en, -e) revolt

ɔ́fdə (ofte) often

ɔfisé:ˀr, *ɔfisé:ˀərn*, *ɔfisé:ˀər* (Officer, -en, -er) officer

ɔrganisé:ˀər, *-ðə* (organisere, -de) organize

UNIT 30

REVIEW

SECTION A—WORD STUDY

This section is just like section A of Units 6, 12, 18 and 24. Work through the exercises individually following the instructions carefully. Read aloud the completed or altered sentences, but don't write anything down. Be prepared to do on sight any one of the exercises when your Leader calls on you.

1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the Danish expressions for "afraid", "sure", or "sorry", whichever fits in each case.

1. De var ————, at de vilde blive taget af Gestapo.
2. Min Kone var ————, at hun aldrig havde set ham før.
3. Hun var ————, at hun ikke kendte noget mere til amerikansk Litteratur.
4. Jeg er ————, at han har noget med Fiskeri at gøre.
5. Du behøver saamænd ikke at være ————, at han drikker for meget Akvavit, for han kan ikke lide det.
6. Min Kone er ————, at det er for koldt for Børnene at gaa i Vandet i Dag.
7. Er De ————, at Bornholm ligger Øst for Sjælland?
8. De allierede Flyvere, der blev skudt ned over Danmark, var ————, at Tyskerne vilde finde dem, inden de danske Patrioter kunde hjælpe dem.
9. Jeg er ————, at jeg ikke kunde være her, da De kom.
10. Jeg er ————, at han kommer hjem i Overmorgen.

2. In the following sentences fill in the blanks with the basic form or the participle of the auxiliary indicated.

1. I Aar er det første Gang, jeg har __________ stemme. (*kan*)
2. Det var ikke altid let at __________ skjule sig for Gestapo. (*skal*)
3. Den danske Industri har __________ arbejde for Tyskerne under Besættelsen. (*maa*)
4. Hun har aldrig __________ have sine Penge staaende i nogen anden Bank. (*vil*)
5. De maa ikke glemme, at hun ikke har været vant til at __________ arbejde. (*skal*)
6. Forfatteren har ikke __________ lade sin Søn blive Videnskabsmand. (*vil*)
7. Patrioterne har __________ risikere Livet hver Dag, for at Danmark atter kunde blive frit. (*maa*)
8. Jeg har aldrig __________ bo alene. (*vil*)

3. Change the basic form of the verbs given in parentheses here into the form which fits in these sentences.

1. I næste Uge skal det (*bestemme*), hvem af de to Forfattere der skal have Nobelprisen.
2. Det Pund Smør skal (*aflevere*) hos min Tante inden Klokken fem.
3. Der (*dyrke*) Jorden hele Aaret rundt.
4. Næste Aar skal der (*saa*) tre Gange saa meget Korn som i Aar.
5. Der (*eksportere*) en Masse Æg og Bacon til England hvert Aar.
6. Den Bygning (*bygge*) i 1938.
7. Der skal (*bygge*) et nyt Krigsskib til Flaaden.
8. Hans Fødselsdag (*fejre*) hvert Aar med en stor Middag paa Langelinie.
9. Den ny Statsminister (*udnævne*) af Kongen i Gaar.
10. Arbejdet skal (*organisere*) paa en hel anden Maade.
11. Der skal (*oprette*) en ny Skole paa Hjørnet af Gammelkongevej og H. C. Ørsteds Vej.
12. Der (*udgive*) mange illegale Aviser i Danmark under Besættelsen.

4. Change the words given in parentheses in English in the following sentences into Danish:

1. (*After having*) købt Wienerbrød med hjem, kom Gæsterne alligevel ikke.
2. Hun gik ud af Forretningen (*without paying*).
3. (*After having been*) væk i fem Aar, var det herligt at komme hjem.
4. Man kan jo desværre ikke leve (*without earning*) Penge.
5. Han laante ham 100 Kroner (*without knowing*), hvad han gjorde.
6. (*After having been arrested*) fire Gange, blev han skudt.
7. Det er ikke morsomt at bo i et Land (*without being able to*) tale Sproget.
8. (*By giving*) ham lidt Penge, kan du faa ham til at gøre, hvad det skal være.
9. (*After having sent*) ham sit Billede, hørte hun aldrig fra ham mere.
10. Han faldt ned ad Trappen og brækkede (*his leg*).
11. Ved De, hvornaar H. C. Andersen (*lived*)?
12. Ved De, hvor min Ven Sagfører Ølgaard (*lives*)?
13. (*What*) Gade bor De i?
14. Han kom (*running*) for at se, hvad jeg havde købt til ham.
15. (*What*) Stykke saa De i Aftes i det kongelige Teater?
16. Jeg er saa glad for, at (*my father and mother succeeded*) at flygte fra Gestapo.
17. Der er Døren; gaa lige (*through*), saa kommer De ind i Direktørens Kontor.
18. Her er Kostalden og derovre er Hestestalden, og Laden ligger lige (*in between*).
19. Jeg arbejder hjemme, (*while*) mit Kontor bliver gjort i Stand.
20. Du kan sidde her og høre paa Radioen; (*in the meantime*) skal jeg lave Middagen.
21. (*Only two men succeeded*) at flygte fra Koncentrationslejren.
22. Lille Svend tog Kagen i (*his hand*) og løb ud i Marken.

5. The following compound nouns are made up of words you know. What do you think they mean?

Landstingsmand
Bondemand
Bondekone
Vandvæsenet
Skydevaaben
Officerskole

Livshistorie
Landskabsbillede
Landskabsmaleri
Sejlskib
Sejlbaad

Sølvpenge
Sølvsmed
Porcelænsfabrik
Porcelænsindustri
Glasvare

Torskefiskeri
Studentereksamen
Teaterstykke
Dørklokke
Landbrugsskole
Landbrugsminister

SECTION B—CONVERSATION

Take parts and work through the following suggested conversations. When you can do them easily, branch out and include anything discussed in the entire course.

1. After your return from Denmark you talk with a new acquaintance of yours who was born there. He asks you if you enjoyed your trip and you tell him that you did very much. The people you met were all very friendly and you felt at home right away. He asks if you went to Aarhus. You say that unfortunately you didn't. He tells you that he lived there when he was young, in a little house right near the university. He went to grammar school and junior high school there and then his family moved to Copenhagen. Then he asks if you weren't in Jutland at all. You tell him that you stayed in Skagen for a few weeks last summer. He says that his father's brother lives on the west coast a little south of Skagen. He's a fisherman. He (your friend) used to visit his uncle when he was a little boy and go out fishing with him. It was exciting, but it was awfully dangerous. You tell him that you liked to watch the fishing boats go out in the morning and come in again in the evening, and that you think the west coast of Jutland with the sand dunes and the beaches is one of the most beautiful places in the world.

2. You continue your conversation with your new Danish-American friend. He asks where you stayed in Copenhagen. You tell him that you lived in a hotel near Hovedbanegaarden for six months, and

then in the spring you went out and lived on a farm with a friend of yours. You ask him how long he lived in Copenhagen. He tells you only one year. He went to "Realklassen" there and then took the "Real"-exam. Then he started to work at a cooperative dairy outside Copenhagen. He worked there for five years. He used to drive around to the farms and pick up the milk and deliver it to the dairy. Then he came to America. He asks you what else you did while you were over there. You tell him that you went to lots of soccer games and bicycle races, that you went in to Amalienborg on the king's birthday and saw the king and queen, that you went to Parliament one day with a friend of yours who is a member of the Lower House, that you sailed over to Bornholm, and took a bicycle trip around Lolland and Falster, etc., etc.

3. You and a Danish friend of yours are sitting in your hotel room in Copenhagen and you're reading the newspaper. As you go through it, your friend asks you to tell him what you're reading. You tell him that the king appointed Svend Ølgaard prime minister today and tomorrow Ølgaard is supposed to choose the other ministers. The king moved back to Amalienborg from Skagen last week—he'd been there all summer. Your friend asks about sports. You tell him that Norway won the soccer game 5-0, and that Georg Finsen won the bicycle race last night—he went a kilometer a minute. Your friend asks what else there is in the paper. You tell him that three fishermen lost their lives at sea on the west coast last week when the weather was so awful. Two others succeeded in swimming in to the beach. He says that's too bad—it's really very dangerous to be a fisherman. You go on to the society news and tell him that Mr. and Mrs. Stephensen have just come back from Fyn, that Miss Kirsten Larsen was married yesterday to "engineer" Niels Petersen, and that Mrs. Georg Søgaard has gone to Norway to visit her daughter. He interrupts you and tells you that that's terribly boring—he's not at all interested in hearing about Mrs. Søgaard or Miss Larsen or Mr. and Mrs. Stephensen. If there's nothing more interesting than that in the paper, he'd rather listen to the radio. You tell him that Peter Knudsen is giving a speech about the cooperative system at eight o'clock and ask if he'd like to hear that. He says no, he'd rather hear some good music.

4. You ask a friend when the next Danish election is. He says he doesn't know—that politics bores him, so he doesn't pay much attention to it. You ask him if he never votes. He says no—he doesn't think it makes any difference whether one man votes or not. You say you think it's very important. He asks why,

and says that he just wants to mind his own business and live in peace—he'll get along all right. You tell him you think that's impossible in the world today. You say that if all Danes felt like that and if none of them voted, Denmark would soon have a government like Germany's before the war, when the people had no power at all. A country is made up of the people who live in it and they should all be able to vote and choose their own government. If every country in the world has a government which the people have chosen and if all the countries work together, then we can hope that the whole world will be able to enjoy peace again. Your friend says that maybe you're right—maybe he's lucky to be able to vote. He'll ask today when the next election is.

SECTION C—LISTENING IN (QUESTIONS)

Listen to the Guide as each one of the conversations is read. The second time through listen carefully for points you may have missed the first time. Then answer the questions listed below on each question.

1. *The Director Makes a Mistake*

1. Hvad gjorde Drengen i Forretningen?
2. Hvorfor var Direktøren saa rasende?
3. Hvad spurgte han Drengen?
4. Hvor meget fik Drengen om Ugen?
5. Hvad skete der saa?
6. Hvorfor var Drengen saa glad, da han gik ud af Butikken?

2. *First Flight*

1. Hvad saa den gamle Bonde og hans Kone paa?
2. Hvad spurgte Flyveren dem?
3. Hvad var de bange for?
4. Hvorfor vilde Flyveren alligevel gerne tage dem op?
5. Hvad maatte de love ham?
6. Hvor fløj de hen?
7. Hvor længe var de oppe at flyve?
8. Hvem var væk, da de kom tilbage?
9. Hvad var der sket?

3. *Getting a Loan*

1. Hvad vilde Bonden Jensen købe?
2. Hvad sagde hans Ven, at han skulde gøre?
3. Hvor gik han hen, da han tog til Byen?
4. Hvor mange Penge vilde han laane?
5. Hvem skulde han se for at laane dem?
6. Hvorfor kunde han ikke faa Pengene der?
7. Hvad var der i Vejen med Direktørens Øjne?
8. Hvorfor var han særlig glad for det?
9. Hvordan kunde Jensen faa Pengene?
10. Hvordan vidste Jensen, hvad for et af Direktørens Øjne var Glasøjet?

4. *An Experienced Traveler*

1. Hvor stod den danske Dame?
2. Hvor skulde hun hen?
3. Hvor længe havde hun været i København?
4. Hvorfor var hun der?
5. Hvad forklarede Damen om sig selv, da den Herre ved Siden af hende begyndte at tale til hende.
6. Hvad spurgte Herren hende saa om?
7. Kendte Damen nogle af de Steder, han spurgte hende om?
8. Hvad var det sidste, han sagde til hende?

5. *The Germans Give In*

1. Hvornaar foregik alt dette?
2. Hvad havde Tyskerne gjort?
3. Hvad gjorde Kongen?
4. Hvad sagde den tyske Officer hertil?
5. Hvad sagde saa Kongen?
6. Hvad vilde Tyskerne gøre ved Soldaten?
7. Hvem kom Klokken tolv?
8. Hvad skete der saa?

6. *Denmark*

1. For bedre at kunne tale paa et andet Sprog, hvad skal man forstaa?
2. Hvis man taler med en Bonde, hvad skulde man ikke kalde hans Heste for?
3. Og hvad skulde man ikke kalde ham selv for?
4. Naar man taler med Danskere, hvad hører man ofte om?
5. Hvad hører man ikke saa ofte om?
6. Hvad elsker alle Danskere?
7. Hvad kender de fleste Udlændinge til?
8. Hvad kender de ikke til?

7. *Kaj reads Henrik the latest news*

1. Hvorfor har Henrik ikke læst Avisen?
2. Hvad læser Kaj om Amerikas Præsident?
3. Hvad læser han om Valget?
4. Hvad er der sket til hans Onkel Otto?
5. Hvor var Kongen og Dronningen i Aftes?
6. Hvad staar der under Sporten?
7. Hvad skete der til de to unge Mennesker, der lige var blevet forlovede?
8. Hvad staar der i Avisen om Madvarer?
9. Hvad læser Kaj ellers?

8. *Telephone Conversation*

1. Hvad hedder de to Brødre?
2. Hvem er det, der taler sammen?
3. Hvorfor ringer Erik?
4. Hvad Tid skal Middagen være?
5. Hvad er Karl vant til i Eriks Hus?
6. Hvem kommer til Middagen?
7. Hvem er den eneste, som Karl kender?
8. Hvad har Forfatteren skrevet?
9. Hvad siger Karl om ham?
10. Hvad har Komponisten skrevet og hvad siger Erik om det?

9. *Copenhagen*

1. Hvor ligger København?
2. Hvor mange Mennesker bor der i Byen?
3. Hvem tager til København om Sommeren?
4. Hvorfor kan Folk saa godt lide at bo der?
5. Hvor kan man spise i København?
6. Hvad synes mange, er det bedste af det hele?
7. Hvad er seks Ting, man kan gøre i Tivoli?
8. Hvad bestaar Tivolis Vagtparade af?
9. Hvad for Museer ligger i København?
10. Hvem har skrevet de Teaterstykkerne, der spilles paa det kongelige Teater?
11. Hvad kan man ellers se der?

A FEW ADDITIONAL USEFUL WORDS AND PHRASES

In adding new words to your Danish vocabulary, you will find occasion to use a Danish-English and English-Danish dictionary. The best one for your purpose is that by Johannes Magnussen, Otto Madsen and Hermann Vinterberg, published in Copenhagen by Gyldendalske Boghandel and in London by George Allen & Unwin, Ltd., 1936.

The Danish word for 'dictionary' is *ó:rbɔ̀:ˀɣ, -ən, ó:rbǿ̀:ˀɣər* (Ordbog, -en, Ordbøger). The following phrases you will find useful in increasing your vocabulary:

spell(s)	*sdá:vər*	staver
word	*o:ˀr*	Ord
How do you spell that word?	*vɔrdán sdá:vər man dé ó:ˀr?*	Hvordan staver man det Ord?
pronounce(s)	*úðtà:ˀlər*	udtaler
How do you pronounce it?	*vɔrdán úðtà:ˀlər man də?*	Hvordan udtaler man det?
mean(s)	*bətý:ˀðər*	betyder
What does it mean?	*vá bətý:ˀðər də?*	Hvad betyder det?

bətý:ˀðə, bətǿ:ˀð, bətý:ˀðəð (betyde, betød, betydet) mean

o:ˀr, ó:ˀərð, — (Ord, -et, —) word

ó:rbɔ̀:ˀɣ, -ən, ó:rbǿ̀:ˀɣər (Ordbog, -en, Ordbøger) dictionary

sdá:və, -ðə (stave, -de) spell

úðtà:ˀlə, -də (udtale, -te) pronounce

SPELLING CHECK-LISTS

The following check lists will help you in using the regular Danish spelling. The first one shows you how each Danish sound is represented in the regular spelling. The second shows you what sounds each letter of the spelling stands for.

I.

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
Vowels	
i:	i, ie*
i	i, y*, e*
e:	e
e	e, i, ie*
ε:	æ, e
ε	e, æ
a:	a
a	a, e*
u:	u
u	u
o:	o
o	o, u, au*
ɔ:	aa, o
ɔ	o, aa
y:	y
y	y, u*
ø:	ø
ø	ø, y
œ:	ø
œ	ø, y*
ə	e, a*, i*, æ*, u*, o*, aa*
Consonants	
p	p, b
b	b, p, pp
t	t, dt, d*, th*
d	d, t, tt, dt, th*
ð	d, dd
k	k, g*, ck*, ch*, c*
g	g, gg, k, kk, ck*, ch*

*An asterisk is used to indicate an equivalent which occurs only rarely. For instance, the *i*-sound is represented by the letter *y* in the words *Cykel*, 'bicycle', *cykle*, 'ride a bicycle', *Cykelløb*, 'bicycle race', etc., but this is true only in a very few words. Therefore, we mark the letter *y* opposite the sound *i* with an asterisk. Only those rare equivalents which occur in words contained in this book are indicated here. No attempt has been made to make the list complete for Danish spelling in general.

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
γ	g
s	s, ss, ds, c, z*
f	f, ff, ph*
v	v, hv, f*, w*
l	l, ll, ld, lv
m	m, mm
n	n, nn, nd
ŋ	ng, n, nt*
r	r, rr, rd
j	j, hj, i*, g*

Combinations

Aids to Listening	*Danish Spelling*
ɔj	øj, øg*
aj	ej, eg, ig*
sj	sj, ti, g*, ch*, si*
tj	tj, ch*
dj	j*

II

Danish Spelling	*Aids to Listening*
a	*aː, a, ə**
aa	*ɔː, ɔ, ə**
b	*b, v**
c	*s, k**
d	*d, ð, —*[1]
e	*eː, e, ɛː, ɛ, ə, a*, i*, —**
f	*f, v**
g	*g, γ, k, —, j*, sj**
h	*h, —*
i	*iː, i, e, ə*, j*, —**
j	*j, dj*, —**
k	*k, g, —**
l	*l*
m	*m*
n	*n, ŋ*
o	*oː, o, ɔː, ɔ, ə**
p	*p, b*
q	*k*
r	*r, —**
s	*s*
t	*t, d, ð, —**
u	*uː, u, o, y*, ə**
v	*v, —*
w	*v*
x	*ks*
y	*yː, y, ø, i*, œ**
z	*s*
æ	*ɛː, ɛ, ə**
ø	*øː, ø, œː, œ*

---

[1] A dash alone means that the letter is not pronounced.

Danish Spelling	*Aids to Listening*
Combinations[1]	
aa	*ɔː, ɔ, ə**
øj	*ɔj*
ej	*aj*
eg	*aj*
ie*	*iː, e*
au*	*o*
ll	*l*
ld	*l, ld, lt**
lv	*l, lv*
mm	*m*
nn	*n*
nd	*n, nd*
ng	*ŋ*
rr	*r*
rd	*r, rd*
pp	*b*
tt	*d*
dd	*ð*
kk	*g*
gg	*g*
ss	*s*
ff	*f*
hj	*j*
hv	*v*
ds	*s*
dt	*t, d*
sj	*sj*
tj	*tj*
ch*	*sj, k, g*
th*	*t, d*
ck*	*k, g*
ph*	*f*

---

[1] The pairs of letters in the left-hand column above are 'combinations' only when they occur within one part of a word. When the first letter ends one part of a word and the second letter begins the second part, then each is pronounced separately. For instance, the combination of letters *dt* generally has the pronunciation of the letter *t* alone, as in *godt* [*gɔt*], 'well'. But in two part words like *udtale* [*úðtàːˀlə*], 'pronounce' and *Modtagelse* [*móðtàːˀɣəlsə*], 'welcome' the *d* corresponds to the sound [*ð*] and the *t* to the sound [*t*].

DANISH-ENGLISH WORD LIST

The following list contains all the Danish words you have had in this course, with the following exception: it does not include those compound nouns made up of words you already knew which were given in the last three review units or which were used from time to time in the *Listening In* and *What Would You Say* sections.

The list is arranged alphabetically according to the *Aids to Listening* used throughout the course. The ordinary letters and special symbols appear in the following order: *a*, *a:*, *b*, *d*, *ð*, *e*, *e:*, *ɛ*, *ɛ:*, *ə*, *f*, *g*, *γ*, *h*, *i*, *i:*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *ŋ*, *o*, *o:*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *u:*, *v*, *y*, *y:*, *ø*, *ø:*, *æ*, *æ:*, *ɔ*, *ɔ:*.

You will find the following exceptions to strict alphabetical listing. Related words are grouped together under the main word of the group. For instance, under **amé:ˀrika**, 'America', you will find the noun **àmərikáː:ˀnər** and the adjective **àmərikáː:ˀnsk**, 'American'; under **barbé:ˀr,** 'barber' you will find **barbé:ˀər,** 'shave'; and under the noun **hɔ:ˀp,** 'hope', you will find the verb **hɔ́:bə,** 'hope'. Compound nouns are listed under the noun forming the first part of the compound. For example, **báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀt,** 'bank clerk', is entered under **baŋˀk,** 'bank'. Phrases are listed under the most important word. **i bý:ˀən,** 'in town', for instance, is given under **by:ˀ,** 'town'.

Nouns, verbs and adjectives are entered just as in the *Finder Lists* of the individual units. For nouns, the basic form is given first followed by an indication of the singular the-form and the plural form. These two forms are given in full only when they are irregular in some way. The only departure from the method of entering nouns used in the *Finder Lists* is the following: when the the-form or the plural form adds the catch but there is no other irregularity, this is indicated by writing **-ˀən, -ˀəð, -ˀər,** instead of writing the full form out.

For verbs, the forms are entered in the following order: basic form, present form, past form, participle. The present form is given only when it adds the catch or is irregular in some other way. The past form is always indicated, but is written out in full only when it is irregular. The participle is included only for irregular verbs.

For adjectives, the basic form only is entered, except where the t-form and ə-form have irregularities. In the case of those adjectives ending in *t*, *nsk*, *lsk*, *əð*, etc. which have only two forms, the ə-form is included. When an adjective has special comparison forms, this is indicated by writing **-ərə** and **-əst** or **-st** at the end of the entry. If the comparison forms are irregular, they are given in full.

Irregular forms which might be difficult to find are listed in alphabetical order with a cross reference to the basic form.

Variant pronunciations of the same word are separated by a slanting line (/).

The regular Danish spelling is entered in parentheses after the *Aids to Listening*. For all but basic forms it is given in full only when it is irregular.

The numbers after the entries refer to the units in which the words or expressions first occur.

a; see **at, a:ˀ**
abəlsí:ˀn, -ən, -ər (Appelsin, -en, -er) orange (22)
aboté:ˀk, -əð, -ər (Apotek, -et, -er) pharmacy (22)
ádən (atten) eighteen (7); **ádənə** (attende) eighteenth (WS 20)
ádər (atter) again, once more (29)
adrɛ́sə, -n, -r (Adresse, -n, -r) address (13)
áfdən, -ən, áfdnər (Aften, -en, -er) evening (4); **i áfdən** (i Aften) tonight (4)
agúrgəsalà:ˀt/agórgəsalà:ˀt, -ən, -ər (Agurkesalat, -en, -er) cucumber salad (9)
agvavít, -ən (Akvavit, -en) aquavite (27)
ájˀər, -ən, -ə (Ejer, -en, -e) owner (WS 13)
alˀ (al) all (10)
aldé:ˀləs (aldeles) absolutely, entirely (28)
áldri (aldrig) never (7)
álˀdsɔ (altsaa) so, then (20)
alé:nə (alene) alone (29)

aləré:ðə/áləre:ðə (allerede) already (19)
álˀərsrɛ̀ndə, -n, -r (Aldersrente, -n, -r) old-age assistance (26)
áləsàmˀən (allesammen) all together (21)
alí:əvɛ̀lˀ/alí:əvɛl (alligevel) anyway (16)
aljé:ˀərð, -ə (allieret, allierede) allied (29)
alménˀli (almindelig) ordinary (19)
álˀtèŋˀ (alting) everything (22)
álˀtìðˀ (altid) always (7)
alvɔ́:ˀrli (alvorlig) serious (21)
amá:ˀljənbɔ̀:ˀr slɔ́t (Amalienborg Slot) Amalienborg Castle (*home of the king in Copenhagen*) (5)
ambuláŋsə, -n, -r (Ambulance, -n, -r) ambulance (21)
amé:ˀrika (Amerika) America (2); **àməriká:ˀnər, -ən, -ə** (Amerikaner, -en, -e) American (2); **àməriká:ˀnsk, àməriká:ˀnsgə** (amerikansk, -e) American (3)
ándelsmajərì:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Andelsmejeri, -et, -er) cooperative dairy (27); **ándelsslagdərì:ˀ, -əð, -ər** (Andelsslagteri, -et, -er) cooperative slaughter-house (27); **ándelssysdè:ˀm, -əð, -ər** (Andelssystem, -et, -er) cooperative system (27)
ándrə; see **ánən**
ánəð; see **ánən**
ánən, ánəð, ándrə (anden, andet, andre) other (5), second (20); **ándrə** (andre) others (8)
ánərs (Anders) Andrew (2)
ángrè:ˀp, -əð, — (Angreb, -et, —) attack (WS 20)
aprí:ˀl (April) April (WS 20)

apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð (Apolloteateret) the Apollo Theatre (16)

árbajˀdə/árbajˀðə, -ðə (arbejde, -de) work (3); **árbajˀdə, -n, -r** (Arbejde, -n, -r) work (WS 14)

arəsdé:ˀər, -ðə (arrestere, -de) arrest (29)

asisdɛ́nˀt, -ən, -ər (Assistent, -en, -er) assistant, clerk (WS 19)

at/a (at) that (5); **/ɔ** (at) to (2)

avgóst (August) August (WS 20)

aví:ˀs, -ən, -ər (Avis, -en, -er) newspaper (20)

ávləvè:ˀər, -ðə (aflevere, -de) deliver (27)

ávtà:lə, -n, -r (Aftale, -n, -r) agreement, appointment (20)

a:ˀ/a (af) of (3), by (21)

bagá:sjə, -n (Bagage, -n) luggage, baggage) (13)

bágə, -n, -r (Bakke, -n, -r) hill (28)

balɛ́t, -ən, -ər (Ballet, -ten, -ter) ballet (26

báŋə (bange) afraid (20); **báŋə fɔr** (bange for) afraid of (20)

báŋgə, -ðə (banke, -de) knock (23)

baŋˀk, -ən, -ər (Bank, -en, -er) bank (19); **báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀt, -ən, -ər** (Bankassistent, -en, -er) bank clerk (19); **báŋgbɔ̀:ˀɣ, -ən, báŋgbø̀:ˀɣər** (Bankbog, -en, Bankbøger) bankbook (19)

barbé:ˀr, barbé:ˀərn, barbé:ˀər (Barber, -en, -er) barber (11); **barbé:ˀər, -ðə** (barbere, -de) shave (11); **barbé:ˀər saj** (barbere sig) shave (*yourself*) (11); **barbé:ˀrblàð, barbé:ˀrblà:ˀðəð, barbé:ˀrblà:ðə** (Barberblad, -et, -e) razor blade (11); **barbé:ˀrmasgì:nə, -n, -r** (Barbermaskine, -n, -r) razor (11)

barˀn, -əð, bœrˀn (Barn, -et, Børn) child (4); **bárnəbàrˀn, -əð, bœ́rnəbœ̀rˀn** (Barnebarn, -et, Børnebørn) grandchild (WS 16)

bá:ðəsdrànˀ, -ən, bá:ðəsdrànə (Badestrand, -en, -e) bathing beach (28); **bá:ðətɔ̀j, -ˀəð** (Badetøj, -et) bathing things (*includes suit, towel, bathrobe, etc.*) (15); **bá:ðəvɛ̀:ərlsə, -ð, -r** (Badeværelse, -t, -r) bathroom (8)

bá:ər (bare) only (17)

ba:ˀɣ (bag) behind (29)

bá:ˀɣɛ̀fdər/bá:ˀɛ̀fdər/bà:ˀɣɛ́fdər/bà:ˀɛ́fdər (bagefter) afterwards (9)

bá:ɣər, -ən, -ə (Bager, -en, -e) baker (22)

ba:ˀr; see **bɛ́:ər**

bel (Bill) Bill (*name*) (2)

béneŋsvɛ̀rk, -əð (Bindingsværk, -et) half-timbering (23)

be:ˀ/bé:ðə, ba:ˀð, be:ˀt (bede, bad, bedt) ask (21); **bé:ˀ ɔ́mˀ** (bede om) ask for

bé:kɔn (Bacon) bacon (27)

be:ˀn, -əð, — (Ben, -et, —) leg, bone (21)

bɛ́ðrə (bedre) better (17); see **go:ˀ**; **bɛ́ðreŋ, -ˀən** (Bedring, -en) improvement, recovery (21); **gó:ˀ bɛ́ðreŋ** (God Bedring) Hope you feel better (21)

bɛ́gə (begge) both (WS 17)

bɛlˀt, -əð, -ər (Bælt, -et, -er) belt (*narrow body of water*) (WS 28)

bɛnsí:ˀn, -ən (Benzin, -en) gasoline, gas (14); **bɛnsí:ˀntàŋˀk, -ən, bɛnsí:ˀntàŋgə** (Benzintank, -en, -e) gas station, gas pump (14)

bɛ́sdəfà:r, bɛ́sdəfà:ərn, bɛ́sdəfɛ̀ðrə (Bedstefar, Bedstefaderen, Bedstefædre) grandfather (WS 16); **bɛ́sdəmò:r, bɛ́sdəmò:ərn, bɛ́sdəmǿðrə** (Bedstemor, Bedstemoderen, Bedstemødre) grandmother (WS 16)

bɛst, bɛ́sdə (bedst, -e) best (5); see **go:ˀ**

bɛ́:ər, bɛ́:ər *or* **bɛ:ˀr, ba:ˀr, bɔ́:ˀərð** (bære, bar, baaret) carry (22)

bəfɔ́lˀgneŋ, -ˀən (Befolkning, -en) population, people (26)

bəgǿnˀə, -də (begynde, -te) begin (1)

bəhánˀlə, -ðə (behandle, -de) treat (21)

bəhá:ˀr; va bəhá:ˀr; (Hvad behager?) What did you say? (1)

bəhǿ:ˀvə, -ðə (behøve, -de) need (25)

bəhɔ́lˀə, -də (beholde, -te) keep, preserve (25)

bəlǿ:ˀp, -əð, — (Beløb, -et, —) amount (26)

bərœ́mˀt, -ə (berømt, -e) famous (26)

bəsdélˀə, -də (bestille, bestilte) do (3), reserve (13), order (16)

bəsdɛ́mˀə, -də (bestemme, bestemte) decide (26); **bəsdɛ́mˀt, -ə** (bestemt, -e) certain (5)

bəsdɔ́:ˀ (**bəsdó:ˀð, bəsdɔ́:ˀəð**) **á:ˀ** (bestaa) (bestod, bestaaet) (af) consist of (25)

bəsɛ́dəlsə, -n, -r (Besættelse, -n, -r) occupation (29)

bəsgé:ˀð, -ən, -ər (Besked, -en, -er) message (20)

bəsǿgdə; see **bəsǿ:ˀɣə**

bəsǿ:ˀɣ, -əð, — (Besøg, -et, —) visit (21); **bəsǿ:ˀɣə, bəsǿgdə** (besøge, -te) visit (13); **bəsǿ:ˀstì:ˀð, -ən, bəsǿ:ˀstì:ðər** (Besøgstid, -en, -er) visiting hours (21)

bətá:ˀlə, -də (betale, -te) pay (2)

bíləðə, -ð, -r (Billede, -t, -r) picture (29); **bíləðhògər, -ən, -ə** (Billedhugger, -en, -e) sculptor (26)

bilɛ́t, -ən, -ər (Billet, -ten, -ter) ticket (13)

bíli (billig) cheap (8); **-ərə, -st**

biográ:ˀf, -ən, -ər (Biograf, -en, -er) movie (1)

bi:ˀl, -ən, -ər (Bil, -en, -er) car, automobile (27)

bjɛrˀɣ, -əð, bjɛ́rɣə (Bjerg, -et, -e) mountain (28)

blað, blá:ˀðəð, blá:ðə (Blad, -et, -e) magazine (20), blade (WS 13)

blaŋkɛ́t, -ən, -ər (Blanket, -ten, -ter) blank (19)

blek, -əð, -ə (Blik, -ket, -ke) glance, look (WS 15)

ble:ˀ; see **blí:və**

ble:ˀv; see **blí:və**

blɛk, -əð (Blæk, -ket) ink (19)

blɛ́:sə, blɛ́:ˀsər, -də (blæse, -te) blow (7)

blí:və/blí:ə, blí:ˀər/bli:ˀr/blíər, ble:ˀv/ble:ˀ/ble, blé:vəð/blé:əð/bléəð (blive, blev, blevet) become, get (9), stay (WS 21), be (WS 21); **blí:ˀər/bli:ˀr/blíər** (bliver) will be (5)

bóːnə, -n, bǿnˀər (Bonde, -n, Bønder) farmer, peasant (27)

boːˀ, bóːðə, bóːˀəð (bo, -ede, -et) live (3)

boːˀr, bóːˀərð, bóːər (Bord, -et, -e) table (4)

boːˀr (Bohr) *last name* (26)

breːˀv, -əð, bréːvə (Brev, -et, -e) letter (19)

brɛ́gə, -ðə (brække, -de) break (21)

brógdə; see **brúːə**

broːˀ, -ən, -ər (Bro, -en, -er) bridge (28)

broːr, bróːərn, brǿðrə (Bror, Broderen, Brødre) brother (3)

bruːˀ, -ən, — (Brug, -en, —) use (WS 22); **brúːə, brógdə** (bruge, brugte) use (10)

bruːˀn (brun) brown (10)

brǿðrə; see **broːr**

brøːˀð, -əð (Brød, -et) bread (9)

bus, -ən, -ər (Bus, -sen, -ser) bus (5)

butík, -ən, -ər (Butik, -ken, -ker) store (22)

býgə, -ðə (bygge, -de) build (27); **býgneŋ, -ˀən, -ˀər** (Bygning, -en, -er) building (5)

byk, -ən (Byg, -gen) barley (23)

byːˀ, -ən, -ər (By, -en, -er) town, city (3); **i býːˀən** (i Byen) in town (3)

bøf, -ən, -ər (Bøf, -fen, -fer) beefsteak (WS 13)

bǿːˀɣər; see **bɔːˀɣ**

bǿnˀər; see **bóːnə**

bœ́nə, -n, -r (Bønne, -n, -r) bean (22)

bœrˀn; see **barˀn**

bœ́rsdə, -n, -r (Børste, -n, -r) brush (WS 13)

bɔ́dlər (Butler) *last name* (2)

bɔlˀt, -ən, bɔ́ldə (Bold, -en, -e) ball (WS 17)

bɔrnhɔ́lˀm (Bornholm) *island in Baltic Sea southeast of Zealand* (28)

bɔːˀð, -ən, bɔ́ːðə (Baad, -en, -e) boat (28)

bɔ̀ːðə . . . ɔ (baade . . . og) both . . . and (17)

bɔ́ːˀərð; see **bɛ́ːər**

bɔːˀɣ, -ən, bǿːˀɣər (Bog, -en, Bøger) book (WS 19)

da (da) then, when (16)

dádər, -ən, dǿdrə (Datter, -en, Døtre) daughter (4); **dádərdàdər. -ən, dádərdǿdrə** (Datterdatter, -en, Datterdøtre) granddaughter ('daughter's daughter') (WS 16); **dádərsœ̀n, -ˀən, -ər** (Dattersøn, -nen, -ner) grandson ('daughter's son') (WS 16)

daj (dig) you (11)

dájli (dejlig) pleasant (7), wonderful (9)

dánə, -ðə (danne, -de) form (25)

dánmark (Danmark) Denmark (2)

danˀs, -ən, dánsə (Dans, -en, -e) dance (WS 22); **dánsə, -ðə** (danse, -de) dance (16)

danˀsk, dánsgə (dansk) Danish (1); **pɔː dánˀsk** (paa Dansk) in Danish (1); **dánsgər, -ən, -ə** (Dansker, -en, -e) Dane (17)

daːˀ; see **daːˀɣ**

daːˀɣ/daːˀ, -ən, dáːɣə/dáːə (Dag, -en, -e) day (2); **i dáːˀ** (i Dag) today (7)

dá:mə, -n, -r (Dame, -n, -r) lady (16)

de/də (det) it, that (1), this (3), the (5)

dégdər, -ən, -ə (Digter, -en, -e) poet (26)

desɛ́mˀbər (December) December (WS 20)

desɛ́:ˀrt, -ən, -ər (Dessert, -en, -er) dessert (9)

desú:ðən (desuden) besides (22)

desvɛ́rə (desværre) unfortunately (10)

de:ˀl, -ən, dé:lə (Del, -en, -e) lot (22), part (WS 22); **dé:lə, dé:ˀlər, -də** (dele, -te) share (8)

dé:silìdər, -ən, — (Deciliter, -en, —) deciliter (22)

dé:simè:ˀdər, -ən, — (Decimeter, -en, —) decimeter (WS 22)

dɛ́də (dette) this (8)

dɛm (dem) them (10), (Dem) you (1)

dɛn (den) it (1), the (5)

dɛnˀ (den) that (13)

dɛ́nə (denne) this (10)

dɛr (der) who, that, which (8)

dɛ́rəs (deres) their, theirs (WS 11), (Deres) your, yours (3)

dɛ:ˀr/dɛr/dər (der) there (1); **dɛ́:ˀrènˀ/dɛrénˀ, dɛ́:ˀrènə/dɛrénə** (derind, -e) in there (WS 16); **dɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ/dɛrfrá:ˀ/dɛ́:ˀrfrà/dɛrfrá** (derfra) from there (15); **dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ/dɛrhɛ́nˀ, dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nə/dɛrhɛ́nə** (derhen, -ne) there (WS 16); **dɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð/dɛrné:ˀð, dɛ́:ˀrnè:ðə/dɛrné:ðə** (derned, -e) down there (WS 16); **dɛ́:ˀrtèl/dɛ́:ˀrtè/dɛrtél/dɛrté** (dertil) there (5); **dɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð/dɛrú:ˀð, dɛ́:ˀrù:ðə/dɛrú:ðə** (derud, -e) out there (WS 16); **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p/dɛrɔ́p, dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə/dɛrɔ́bə** (derop, -pe) up there (WS 16); **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər/dɛrɔ́vˀər, dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə/dɛrɔ́vrə** (derover, derovre) over there (14)

dɛ́:ˀrfɔ̀r/dɛ́:ˀrfɔr (derfor) for that reason, therefore (21)

di (de) they (3), the (7), those (17), (De) you (1)

dirɛgtø:ˀr, dirɛgtø:ˀərn, dirɛgtø:ˀər (Direktør, -en, -er) director, president (*of a company*) (20)

dísə (disse) these (WS 17)

dit; see **dí:nə**

di:ˀn, dit, dí:nə (din, dit, dine) your, yours (11)

drak; see **drégə**

drá:ɣər, -ən, -ə (Drager, -en, -e) porter (13)

drégə, drak, drógəð (drikke, drak, drukket) drink (4); **drégəpɛ̀ŋə** (Drikkepenge) (*plural*) tip (9)

drɛŋˀ, -ən, drɛ́ŋə (Dreng, -en, -e) boy (14)

drɛ́:bə, drɛ́bdə (dræbe, -te) kill (20)

drogəð; see **drégə**

drɔ́neŋ, -ˀən, -ˀər (Dronning, -en, -er) queen (25)

du (du) you (11)

dýrgə, -ðə (dyrke, -de) cultivate (27)

dý:ərhà:vən (Dyrehaven) *a park outside Copenhagen* (5)

dy:ˀr, -t, dý:ər (dyr) expensive (8); **dý:ərə, dý:ərst**

dødrə; see **dádər**

døðkèðəli/døðkeðəli (dødkedelig) extremely dull, very boring (16)

døgdi (dygtig) skillful (27); **-ərə, -st;**

dø:ˀ, dø:ðə, dø:ˀð (dø, -de, død) die (20). The participle

dø:ˀð (død) is generally used as an adjective meaning 'dead'. It has the t-form **døt** (dødt) and the ə-form **dø:ðə** (døde).
dœ:ˀr, dœ́:ˀərn, dœ́:ər (Dør, -en, -e) door (20)
dɔ́gdər, -ən, -ər (Doktor, -en, -er) doctor (4)
dɔɣ (dog) 'for heaven's sakes' (14)
dɔ́rli (daarlig) bad (16); **-ərə, -st**
dɔ́:sə, -n, -r (Daase, -n, -r) can (22)

égə (ikke) not (1); **slɛ́d égə** (slet ikke) not at all (22)
egsámən, -ən, egsámnər (Eksamen, -en, -er) exam (WS 26)
en (en) a, an (1)
enˀ, énə (ind, -e) in (2, WS 16)
énbỳgər, -ən, -ə (Indbygger, -en, -e) inhabitant (28)
énən (inden) before (15)
énənfɔ̀r/énənfɔr (indenfor) inside (23), in the field of (26)
énlàgt; see **énlɛ̀gə**
énlà:ə; see **énlɛ̀gə**
énlɛ̀gə, énlà:ə, énlàgt (indlægge, indlagde, indlagt) admit (*to a hospital*) (21)
énrœ̀mˀə, -ðə (indrømme, -de) admit, confess (27)
énsgrè:ˀv; see **énsgrì:ˀvə**
énsgrè:ˀvəð; see **énsgrì:ˀvə**
énsgrì:ˀvə, énsgrè:ˀv, énsgrè:ˀvəð (indskrive, indskrev, indskrevet) check through (*of baggage*) (13)
ensjənjø:ˀr, ensjənjø:ˀərn, ensjənjø:ˀər (Ingeniør, -en, -er) engineer (3)
éntɛ̀gt, -ən, -ər (Indtægt, -en, -er) income (26)
entrəsánˀt, entrəsánˀde (interessant, -e) interesting (2)
entrəsé:ˀər, -ðə (interessere, -de) interest (14)
enú/énu (endnu) still, yet (15)
envasjó:ˀn, -ən, -ər (Invasion, -en, -er) invasion (29)
envɛ́:ˀr (enhver) everyone (26)
éŋə (Inge) *woman's name* (LI 14)
éŋən (ingen) not any, no, none (11), no one (26)
éŋəntèŋˀ (ingenting) nothing (15)
éŋreð (Ingrid) *woman's name* (LI 21)
et (et) a, an, one (1)
evró:pa (Europa) Europe (20)
é:ˀɣənli/é:ˀnli (egentlig) actually (23)
e:ˀn (een, en) one (1)
é:nəsdə (eneste) single (17), only (28)
é:ˀnli; see **é:ˀɣənli**
é:rik (Erik) Eric (4)

ɛ́fdər (efter) after (15)
ɛfdərhɔ́nˀən (efterhaanden) gradually (25)
ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ, -ən, ɛ́fdərmedà:ə (Eftermiddag, -en, -e) afternoon (WS 19); **i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ** (i Eftermiddag), **i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀs** (i Eftermiddags) this afternoon (WS 19)
ɛ́fdərɔ̀:ˀr, ɛ́fdərɔ̀:ˀərð, — (Efteraar, -et, —) fall (7)
ɛgsbədisjó:ˀn, -ən (Ekspedition, -en) service (WS 19)

ɛgsbɔrté:ˀər, -ðə (eksportere, -de) export (27)
ɛ́gsdrə (ekstra) extra (19)
ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl, ɛgsɛ́mˀbləð, ɛgsɛ́mˀblər (Eksempel, -et, Eksempler) example (26); **fɔr ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl** (for Eksembel) for example (26)
ɛ́ldrə (ældre) older; **ɛlˀst** (ældst) oldest (WS 20); see **gáməl**
ɛ́lər (eller) or (1)
ɛ́lˀərs (ellers) else (5), otherwise (17), usually (25)
ɛ́lvə (elleve) eleven (1); **ɛ́lfdə** (ellevte) eleventh (WS 20)
ɛn (end) than (8)
ɛ́ndən . . . ɛ́lər (enten . . . eller) either . . . or (15)
ɛ́nəli (endelig) finally (27)
ɛ́ŋˀəlsk, -ə (engelsk, -e) English (2)
ɛ́ŋˀgəldvɛ̀:ərlsə, -ð, -r (Enkeltværelse, -t, -r) single room (8)
ɛ́ŋlànˀ (England) England (20)
ɛr; see **vɛ́:ər**
ɛ́rli (ærlig) honest (16); **-ərə, -st; ɛ́rli tá:ˀlt** (ærlig talt) frankly (16)
ɛrˀt, -ən, ɛrdər (Ært, -en, -er) pea (9)
ɛ́sgə, -n, -r (Æske, -n, -r) box (16)
ɛ́stɔ̀:ˀɣ, -əð, — (S-Tog, -et, —) S-train (5) (*S-trains are local trains which operate in Copenhagen and its suburbs.*)
ɛ:ˀk, -əð, — (Æg, -et, —) egg (22)
ɛ́:vəntỳ:ˀr, -əð, — (Eventyr, -et, —) fairy tale (26)

fabrék, -ən, -ər (Fabrik, -ken, -ker) factory (20)
fádi (fattig) poor (26); **-ərə, -st**
fájrə, -ðə (fejre, -de) celebrate (28)
falˀ, -əð, — (Fald, -et, —) fall (WS 22); **fálə, falˀt, fáləð** (falde, faldt, faldet) fall (21)
fáləð; see **fálə**
fálˀsdər (Falster) *island south of Zeoland* (28)
falˀt; see **fálə**
famí:ˀljə, -n, -r (Familie, -n, -r) family (8)
fanˀt; see **fénə**
farvɛ́l (Farvel) good-by (1); **farvɛ́l sɔ lɛ́ŋə** (Farvel saa længe) so long (11)
fásdər, -ən, fásdrə (Faster, -en, Fastre) aunt (‘father’s sister’) (WS 16)
fa:r, fá:ərn, fɛ́ðrə (Far, Faderen, Fædre) father (2); **fá:ˀrbrò:r, fá:ˀrbrò:ərn, fá:ˀrbrø̀ðrə** (Farbror, Farbroderen, Farbrødre) uncle (‘father’s brother’) (WS 16); **fá:ˀrfà:r, fá:ˀrfà:ərn** (Farfar, Farfaderen) grandfather (‘father’s father’) (WS 16); **fá:ˀrmò:r, fá:ˀrmò:ərn** (Farmor, Farmoderen) grandmother (‘father’s mother’) (WS 16)
fá:rli (farlig) dangerous (28); **-ərə, -st**
fébrua:ˀr (Februar) February (WS 20)
fek; see **fɔ:ˀ**
fénə, fénˀər, fanˀt, fónəð (finde, fandt, fundet) find (8); **fènə ú:ˀð á:ˀ/a** (finde ud af) figure out (19)
fénˀsən (Finsen) *last name* (LI 26)
fesk, -ən, — (Fisk, -en, —) fish (9); **fésgə, -ðə** (fiske,

-de) fish (WS 22); **fésgər, -ən, -ə** (Fisker, -en, -e) fisherman (28); **fesgərí:ˀ, -əð, -ər** (Fiskeri, -et, -er) fishing (27)

fέðrə; see **fa:r**

fεmˀ (fem) (five) (1); **fέmdə** (femte) fifth (WS 20); **fέmˀdən** (femten) fifteen (7); **fέmˀdənə** (femtende) fifteenth (WS 20)

fέrdi (færdig) through, finished (22)

fέrɣə, -n, -r (Færge, -n, -r) ferry (13)

fέ:rø:ˀərnə (Færøerne) the Faroe Islands (28)

fər-; see **fɔr-**

fí:ər (fire) four (1)

fi:ˀn (fin) fine (20); **-ərə, -əst**

fi:ˀrs (firs) *or* **fí:ˀrsenstỳ:və** (firsindstyve) eighty (7); **fí:ˀrsenstỳ:vənə** (firsindstyvende) eightieth (WS 20)

fjέnə, -n, -r (Fjende, -n, -r) enemy (25)

fjέ:ər (fjerde) fourth (5)

fjómsəvàjˀ (Fjumsevej) *name of street* (22)

fjórdən (fjorten) fourteen (7); **fjórdənə** (fjortende) fourteenth (WS 20)

fjo:ˀr, fjó:ˀərn, fjó:ər (Fjord, -en, -e) inlet (28)

flásgə, -n, -r (Flaske, -n, -r) bottle (17)

fla:ˀð, flat, flá:ðə (flad, -t, -e) flat (15)

fla:ˀɣ, -əð, — (Flag, -et, —) flag (25); **flá:ɣə, -ðə** (flage, -de) fly a flag (25)

fleŋˀk, fléŋgə (flink, -e) nice, helpful (20); **-ərə, -əst**

flep, -ən, -ər (Flip, -pen, -per) collar (10)

flé:ər/fle:ˀr (flere) more (15), several (WS 19); **fle:ˀst** (flest) most (WS 19); see **máŋə**

flý:və, flý:ˀvər/fly:ˀr, flɔjˀ, flɔ́jˀəð (flyve, fløj, fløjet) fly (20); **flý:vər, -ən, -ə** (Flyver, -en, -e) flier (29); **flý:vəvὲ:ˀsən, flý:vəvὲ:ˀsnəð, flý:vəvὲ:ˀsnər** (Flyvevæsen, -et, -er) air force (29); **flý:vmasgì:nə, -n, -r** (Flyvemaskine, -n, -r) airplane (20)

fløde, -ðə (flytte, -de) move (8)

fløgdə, -ðə (flygte, -de) flee, escape (29)

flø:ðə, -n (Fløde, -n) cream (4)

flɔjˀ; see **flý:və**

flɔ́jˀəð; see **flý:və**

flɔt, -ə (flot, -te) lavish, elegant (29)

flɔ́:ðə, -n, -r (Flaade, -n, -r) navy, fleet (WS 27)

fóðbɔ̀lˀt, -ən (Fodbold, -en) soccer (17); **fóðbɔldkàmˀp, -ən, fóðbɔldkàmbə** (Fodboldkamp, -en, -e) soccer game (17)

fónəð; see **fénə**

fra; see **fra:ˀ**

frágə, -n, -r (Frakke, -n, -r) coat (10)

fráŋkri (Frankrig) France (20)

fra:ˀ/fra (fra) from (2)

freð, fréðˀən (Fred, -en) peace (23)

fréðˀərèk (Frederik) Fredrick (LI 23)

fré:ˀda, fré:ˀda:ˀən, fré:ˀda:ə (Fredag, -en, -e) Friday (13); **i fré:ˀdas** (i Fredags) last Friday

frit; see **fri:ˀ**

fri:ˀ, frit, fri:ˀ *or* **frí:ə** (fri) free (29)

frí:hè:ˀð, -ən, -ər (Frihed, -en, -er) freedom (29)

frí:mὲrgə, -ð, -r (Frimærke, -t, -r) stamp (19); **fέmˀǿ:ərs frí:mὲrgə** (femøres Frimærke) five-*Øre* stamp (19)

frogt, -ən, -ər (Frugt, -en, -er) fruit (22)

frógɔst, -ən, -ər (Frokost, -en, -er) lunch (13)

frósəð; see **frý:sə**

fru (Fru) Mrs. (1)

frú:ə, -n, -r (Frue, -n, -r) woman, wife (WS 13)

frý:sə, frý:ˀsər, frø:ˀs, frósəð (fryse, frøs, frosset) be cold, freeze (23)

frøgli (frygtelig) terrible, awful (21); **-ərə, -st**

frø:ˀgən, -ən, frø:ˀgnər (Frøken, -en, -er) young lady (1); **frø̀gən lársən** (Frøken Larsen) Miss Larsen

frø:ˀs; see **frý:sə**

fulˀ (fuld) full (17)

fy:ˀn (Fyn) *island between Zealand and Jutland* (16)

føsəlsdà:ˀ, -ən, føsəlsdà:ə (Fødselsdag, -en, -e) birthday (25)

fø:ər, -ən, -ə (Fører, -en, -e) leader (WS 13)

fø:lə, fø:ˀlər, -də (føle, -te) feel (WS 28); **fø:lə saj** (føle sig) feel (28)

fœ́rə (fyrre) *or* **fœ́rətỳ:və** (fyrretyve) forty (7); **fœ́rətỳ:vənə** (fyrretyvende) fortieth (WS 20)

fœrst (først) first (8)

fœ:ˀr (før) before (16)

fɔlˀk, -əð, — (Folk, -et, —) people (25); **fɔ́lgətèŋˀ, -əð** (Folketing, -et) House of Commons, Lower House (25)

fɔr (for) for (4), too (7), because (10), because of (17); **ɔ́lˀd fɔr** (alt for) much too (WS 15); **fɔ́r at/fɔ́r ɔ** (for at) in order to, in order that (11); **fɔr . . . sí:ðən** (for . . . siden) ago (16)

fɔránˀdrə, -ðə (forandre, -de) change (20)

fɔrbánˀə, -ðə (forbande, -de) curse (WS 25); **fɔrbánˀəð, -ə** (forbandet, forbandede) darn (23)

fɔrbí:ˀ (forbi) by, past, over, finished (17)

fɔrdí:ˀ (fordi) because (4)

fɔrέdneŋ, -ˀən, -ˀər (Forretning, -en, -er) store (10), business (3); **i fɔrέdneŋˀər** (i Forretninger) on business (3)

fɔrέlˀsgə (-ðə) saj (i) (forelske) (-de) (sig) (i) fall in love (with) (WS 25); **fɔrέlˀsgəð, -ə** (forelsket, forelskede) in love (25)

fɔrέsdən (forresten) by the way, incidentally (13)

fɔ́rəgìk; see **fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀ**

fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀ, fɔ́rəgìk, fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀəð (foregaa, foregik, foregaaet) take place (25)

fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀəð; see **fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀ**

fɔrfádər, -ən, -ə (Forfatter, -en, -e) author (26)

fɔ́rhɔ̀lˀ, -əð, — (Forhold, -et, —) proportion (27)

fɔrké:ˀrt, -ə (forkert, -e) wrong (20); **gɔ: fɔrké:ˀrt** (gaa forkert) get lost (20)

fɔrklá:ˀər, -ðə (forklare, -de) explain (17)

fɔrkø:ˀləð: blì:ə (blìər, ble:ˀ, blè:əð) fɔrkø:ˀləð (blive) (blev, blevet) (forkølet) catch cold (21); **fɔrkø:ˀləlsə, -n, -r** (Forkølelse, -n, -r) cold (21)

fɔrló:ˀvə (-ðə) saj (mɛ) (forlove) (-de) (sig) (med) become engaged (to) (WS 25); **fɔrló:ˀvəð, -ə** (forlovet, forlovede) engaged (25)

fɔrnɔ́jˀəlsə, -n, -r (Fornøjelse, -n, -r) pleasure (7); **gó:ˀ fɔrnɔ́jˀəlsə**; (God Fornøjelse!) Have a good time! (7)

fɔrsdó:ˀð; see **fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ**

fɔrsdýrˀə, -ðə (forstyrre, -de) disturb (23)

fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ, fɔrsdó:ˀð, fɔrsdɔ́:ˀəð (forstaa, forstod, forstaaet) understand (1)

fɔrsdɔ́:ˀəð; see **fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ**

fɔ́rsgɛ̀lˀ, -ən, fɔ́rsgɛ̀lə (Forskel, -len, -le) difference (26); **fɔ́rsgɛ̀lˀ pɔ́:ˀ** (Forskel paa) difference between; **fɔrsgɛ́lˀi** (forskellig) different (9)

fɔrsígdi (forsigtig) careful (22)

fɔrsvá:ˀər, -ðə (forsvare, -de) defend (25)

fɔrtálˀdə; see **fɔrtɛ́lˀə**

fɔrtɛ́lˀə, fɔrtálˀdə (fortælle, fortalte) tell (16)

fɔ́rɔ̀:ˀr, fɔ́rɔ̀:ˀərð, — (Foraar, -et, —) spring (7)

fɔ:ˀ, fek, fɔ́:əð (faa, fik, faaet) get, have (2); **fɔ: ɔ sé:ˀ, feg sé:ˀt, fɔ̀:əð sé:ˀt** (faa at se, fik set, faaet set) get to see (WS 26)

fɔ́:əð; see **fɔ:ˀ**

gáməl, -t, gámlə (gammel, -t, gamle) old (20); **ɛ́ldrə** (ældre) older, **ɛlˀst** (ældst) oldest (WS 20)

gaŋˀ, -ən, gáŋə (Gang, -en, -e) time (17)

ga:ˀ; see **gi:ˀ**

gá:ðə, -n, -r (Gade, -n, -r) street (11)

ga:ˀl (gal) bad (22)

ga:ˀv; see **gi:ˀ**

gá:və, -n, -r (Gave, -n, -r) gift, present (9)

gesdá:po (Gestapo) Gestapo (29)

géɔɣ (Georg) George (27)

gɛ́nˀəm (gennem) through (14)

gɛ́nsỳnˀ (Gensyn) seeing-again; **pɔ: gɛ́nsỳnˀ** (paa Gensyn) see you again (3)

gɛ́rnə (gerne) gladly (1); **ve gɛ́rnə** (vil gerne) would like to (1)

gɛst, -ən, -ər (Gæst, -en, -er) guest (16)

gift, -ə (gift) married (16)

gik; see **gɔ:ˀ**

gí:ˀ, ga:ˀv/ga:ˀ, gí:vəð/gí:əð (give, gav, givet) give (9)

gí:əð; see **gi:ˀ**

gí:vəð; see **gi:ˀ**

gjorˀt; see **gœ́:ər**

gjó:ər; see **gœ́:ər**

glað, glá:ðə (glad) glad, happy (26); **vɛ̀:ər (ɛr, var, vɛ̀:ərð) gláð fɔr** (være) (er, var, været) (glad for) enjoy, be glad about (28)

glas, -əð, — (Glas, -set, —) glass (1)

glémrənə (glimrende) brilliant, splendid (29)

glɛ́mə, -də (glemme, glemte) forget (11)

glɛ́:ðə (-ðə) saj tel (glæde) (-de) (sig til) look forward to (13)

godá:ˀ (Goddag) hello, how do you do (1)

góðkὲnˀə, -də (godkende, -te) approve (25)

go:ˀð/go:ˀ, gɔt, gó:ðə/gó:ə (god, -t, -e) good (4); **gɔt** (godt) well (1); **bέðrə** (bedre) better (17); **bɛst** (bedst) best (5)

gramˀ, -əð, — (Gram, -met, —) gram (28.35 grams = 1 oz.) (19)

gramˀ (Gram) *last name* (LI 27)

grá:tis (gratis) free of charge (26)

gremˀ (grim) homely (16); **-ərə, -əst**

gri:ˀs, -ən, grí:sə (Gris, -en, -e) pig (23)

gronˀ, -ən, grónə (Grund, -en, -e) reason (27)

gróndvi (Grundtvig) *last name* (26)

grø:ˀð, -ən (Grød, -en) porridge (WS 13)

grœ́ndhànˀlər, -ən, -ər (Grønthandler, -en, -er) man who sells fresh fruit and vegetables (22)

grœ́nlànˀ (Grønland) Greenland (28)

grœ́nsà:ˀɣ, -ən, grœ́nsà:ɣər (Grønsag, -en, Grønsager) vegetable (9)

gú:lərò:ˀð, gú:ləròðˀən, gú:lərø̀ðˀər (Gulerod, -den, Gulerødder) carrot (22)

gymná:ˀsjəm, gymná:ˀsjəð, gymná:ˀsjər (Gymnasium, Gymnasiet, Gymnasier) high school (26)

gœr; see **gœ́:ər**

gœ́:ər, gœr, gjó:ər, gjorˀt (gøre, gør, gjorde, gjort) do (11); **gœ̀:ər i sdánˀ** (gøre i Stand) fix, repair (15); **gœ́:ər nɔ́:əð** (gøre noget) make any difference, matter (21); **gœ̀:ər ónˀt** (gøre ondt) hurt (21); **gœ̀:ər ré:ˀnt** (gøre rent) clean (16); **la** (**lo:ð, là:ðəð**) **saj gœ́:ər** (lade) (lod, ladet) (sig gøre) be done (29)

gɔ́ràjˀər, -ən, -ə (Gaardejer, -en, -e) farmer, person who owns a farm (3)

gɔt; see **go:ˀ**

gɔ:ˀ, gik, gɔ́:əð (gaa, gik, gaaet) go, leave (1), walk (23); **gɔ: á:ˀ** (gaa af) resign (29)

gɔ́:əð; see **gɔ:ˀ**

gɔ:ˀr, gɔ́:ˀərn, gɔ́:ər (Gaard, -en, -e) farm (3), yard (WS 13)

ha; see **ha:ˀ**

haft; see **ha:ˀ**

hágəbø̀f, -ən, -ər (Hakkebøf, -fen, -fer) hamburg steak (1)

halˀ, -t, -ə (halv, -t, -e) half (1)

halfέmˀs (halvfems) *or* **halfέmˀsenstỳ:və** (halvfemsindstyve) ninety (7); **halfέmˀsenstỳ:vənə** (halvfemsindstyvende) ninetieth (WS 20)

halfjέrs (halvfjerds) *or* **halfjέrsenstỳ:və** (halvfjerdsindstyve) seventy (7); **halfjέrsenstỳ:vənə** (halvfjerdsindstyvende) seventieth (WS 20)

haltrés (halvtreds) *or* **haltrésenstỳ:və** (halvtredsindstyve) fifty (7); **haltrésenstỳ:vənə** (halvtredsindstyvende) fiftieth (WS 20)

ham (ham) him (4)

han (han) he (3)

hánˀəl, -ən, hánˀlər (Handel, -en, Handler) commerce

(27); **hánˀəlsflɔ̀:ðə, -n, -r** (Handelsflaade, -n, -r) merchant marine (27)

hans (hans) his (11)

hanˀs (Hans) *man's name*; **hánˀsən** (Hansen) *last name* (3)

hárdmànˀ (Hartmann) *last name* (LI 26)

hav, há:ˀvəð, há:və (Hav, -et, -e) sea, ocean (28); **hávfrù:ə, -n, -r** (Havfrue, -n, -r) mermaid (5)

hávrə, -n (Havre, -n) oats (23); **hávrəgrø̀:ˀð, -ən** (Havregrød, -en) oatmeal (23)

ha:ˀ/ha, há:ðə, haft (have, havde, haft) have (10)

há:ðə; see **ha:ˀ**

há:və, -n, -r (Have, -n, -r) garden (WS 13)

héðə, héðˀər, he:ˀð, héðət/héðəð (hedde, hed, heddet) be called (1)

héðəð; see **héðə**

hénə (hende) her (5)

hénəs (hendes) her, hers (11)

he:ˀð; see **héðə**

hé:ðə, -n, -r (Hede, -n, -r) moor (28)

he:ˀl (hel) whole (5); **hé:lə bý:ən** (hele Byen) the whole town; **hélə dá:ˀən** (hele Dagen) all day; **ɔ́vˀər de hé:lə** (over det hele) all over (21); **i de hé:lə tá:ˀəð** (i det hele taget) on the whole (28); **he:ˀlt** (helt) very (2), completely (13)

hɛ́fdə, -ð, -r (Hæfte, -t, -r) booklet (WS 19)

hɛ́gtolìdər, -ən, — (Hektoliter, -en, —) hectoliter (WS 22)

hɛ́ldi (heldig) lucky, fortunate (15); **hɛ́ldivì:ˀs** (heldigvis) fortunately (21)

hɛ́lˀər (heller) either (15)

hɛ́lərə (hellere) rather (9)

hɛnˀ, hɛ́nə (hen, -ne) there (3)

hɛ́ndə, -ðə (hente, -de) pick up, get (13)

hɛ́nˀər; see **hɔnˀ**

hɛr (Herr, Hr.) Mr., sir (1)

hɛ́rə, -n, — (Herre, -n, -r) gentleman (16)

hɛ́rli (herlig) wonderful (15)

hɛst, -ən, -ə (Hest, -en, -e) horse (23); **hɛ́sdəsdàlˀ, -ən, hɛ́sdəsdàlə** (Hestestald, -en, -e) horse stable (23)

hɛ:ˀr, hɛ́:ˀərn, hɛ́:ər (Hær, -en, -e) army (29)

hɛ:ˀr/hər (her) here (1); **hɛ́:ˀrènˀ/hɛrénˀ, hɛ́:ˀrènə/hɛrénə** (herind, -e) in here (WS 16); **hɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ/hɛrfrá:ˀ/hɛ́:ˀrfrà/hɛrfrá** (herfra) from here (WS 16); **hɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ/hɛrhɛ́nˀ, hɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nə/hɛrhɛ́nə** (herhen, -ne) here (WS 16); **hɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð/hɛrné:ˀð, hɛ́:ˀrnè:ðə/ hɛrné:ðə** (herned, -e) down here (WS 16); **hɛ́:ˀrtèl/hɛ́:ˀrtè/hɛrtél/hɛrté** (herti!) here (WS 16); **hɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð/hɛrú:ˀð, hɛ́:ˀrù:ðə/hɛrú:ðə** (herud, -e) out here (15); **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p/hɛrɔ́p, hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀bə/hɛrɔ́bə** (herop, -pe) up here (WS 16); **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər/hɛrɔ́vˀər, hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vrə/hɛrɔ́vrə** (herover, herovre) over here (3)

hɛ́:və, -ðə (hæve, -de) cash, draw out (*money*) (19)

hílsə, hílˀsər, -də (hilse, -te) greet (3); **hílˀs jɛ́mə**; (Hils hjemme!) Give my best to your family. (3)

híməlbjɛ̀rˀɣəð (Himmelbjerget) *hill in Jutland* (28)
hinánən (hinanden) each other (17)
hisdó:ˀrjə, -n, -r (Historie, -n, -r) history (26), story (29)
hórdi (hurtig) fast (14); **-ərə, -st**
hos (hos) with (10); **hos ɔ́s** (hos os) at our house (10); **hos barbé:ˀərn** (hos Barberen) at the barber's
hosbitá:ˀl, -əð, -ər (Hospital, -et, -er) hospital (21)
hotɛ́lˀ, -əð, -ər (Hotel, -let, -ler) hotel (1)
hó:ðə, -ð, -r (Hoved, -t, -r) head (15); **hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn** (Hovedbanegaarden) *the main railway station in Copenhagen* (13); **hó:ðəpì:nə, -n, -r** (Hovedpine, -n, -r) headache (21)
hun (hun) she (5)
húnrəðə (hundrede) hundred (7), hundredth (WS 20); **ed húnrəðə** (et Hundrede) one hundred; **húnrəðər** (Hundreder) hundreds
hurá: (Hurra) hurrah (17)
húsarɛ̀st, -ən (Husarrest, -en) house arrest (29)
húsgə, -ðə (huske, -de) remember (21)
hu:ˀs, -əð, hú:sə (Hus, -et, -e) house (WS 13)
hýgəli (hyggelig) pleasant, enjoyable (4); **-ərə, -st**
hø:ər, hø:rdə (høre, -te) listen, hear (14)
hœnˀs (Høns) (*plural*) chickens, poultry (23)
hɔjˀ (høj) loud (16), high (27); **-ərə, -əst; hɔ́jsgɔ̀:lə, -n, -r** (Højskole, -n, -r) 'folk school' (*for adults*) (26)
hɔ́jrə (højre) right (1); **te hɔ́jrə** (til højre) to the right (1)
hɔlˀ, -əð, — (Hold, -et, —) team (17)

hɔ́lbɛ̀r (Holberg) *last name* (26)
hɔ́lə, hɔ́lˀər, hɔlˀt, hɔlˀt (holde, holdt, holdt) park, stop (13)
hɔlˀt; see **hɔ́lə**
hɔnˀ, -ən, hɛ́nˀər (Haand, -en, Hænder) hand (17); **hɔ́nvɛ̀rk, -əð** (Haandværk, -et) handicraft (27)
hɔ:ˀp, -əð, — (Haap, -et, —) hope (WS 22); **hɔ́:bə, -ðə** (haabe, -de) hope (4)

i/i:ˀ (i) in, for (2), to (3)
i (I) you (14)
i áfdən (i Aften) tonight (4); **i áfdəs** (i Aftes) last evening, last night (WS 19)
i dá:ˀ (i Dag) today (7)
i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ (i Eftermiddag), **i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀs** (i Eftermiddags) this afternoon (WS 19)
i fɔ́rgɔ̀rˀs (i Forgaars) day before yesterday (WS 19)
i gɔ́:ˀr (i Gaar) yesterday (4); **i gɔr áfdəs** (i Gaar Aftes) last evening, last night (WS 19); **i gɔr ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀs** (i Gaar Eftermiddags) yesterday afternoon (WS 19); **i gɔr mɔ́rəs** (i Gaar Morges) yesterday morning (WS 19)
i mɔ́rən (i Morgen) tomorrow (3); **i mɔ̀rən áfdən** (i Morgen Aften) tomorrow evening, tomorrow night (WS 19); **i mɔ̀rən ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ** (i Morgen Eftermiddag) tomorrow afternoon (WS 19); **i mɔ̀rən tíðli** (i Morgen tidlig) tomorrow morning (WS 19); **i mɔ́rəs** (i Morges) this morning (11)

i nát (i Nat) tonight, last night (WS 19)
i sdɛ́ðˀəð fɔr (i Stedet for) instead (of) (27)
i vɛ́:ˀrd fálˀ (i hvert Fald) at least (23)
i ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən (i Overmorgen) day after tomorrow (WS 19)
i ɔ́:ˀr (i Aar) this year (7)
idé:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Ide, -en, -er) idea (20)
igɛ́n (igen) again (16)
igɛ́nˀəm (igennem) through (23)
íllegà:ˀl (illegal) illegal (29)
ílpàgə, -n, -r (Ilpakke, -n, -r) special delivery package (19)
imɛ́lˀəm (imellem) between, among (23)
imɛ́nˀs (imens) while, meanwhile, in the meantime (WS 26)
imó:ˀð (imod) against (17)
indusdrí:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Industri, -en, -er) industry (27)
invité:ˀər, -ðə (invitere, -de) invite (25)
i: (ih) gosh (23)
i:ˀ; see **i**
i:ˀs, -ən (Is, -en) ice cream (9), ice

ja (ja) yes (1)
jaj/**jɛ** (jeg) I (1)
jalˀp; see **jɛ́lbə**
jánua:ˀr (Januar) January (WS 20)
jɛ; see **jaj**
jɛlˀp, -ən (Hjælp, -en) help (WS 22); **jɛ́lbə, jɛ́lˀbər, jalˀp, jólbəð** (hjælpe, hjalp, hjulpet) help (19)
jɛmˀ, jɛ́mə (hjem, -me) home, at home (3); **jɛmˀ, -əð, —** (Hjem, -met, —) home (LI 26)
jɛ́nsən (Jensen) *last name* (1)
jɛr (jer) you (WS 14)
jɛ́rəs (jeres) your, yours (WS 14)
johánˀəs (Johannes) *man's name* (26)
jólbəð; see **jɛ́lbə**
jo:ˀ (jo) yes (4), well; of course (see *Word Study*, 28)
jo:ˀr, jó:ˀərn (Jord, -en) earth (27)
jú:ˀli (Juli) July (WS 20)
jú:ˀni (Juni) June (WS 20)
jýlànˀ (Jylland) Jutland (28)
jœ́rnə, -ð, -r (Hjørne, -t, -r) corner (1)

ka; see **kúnə**
káfə, -n (Kaffe, -n) coffee (1)
kálə, -də (kalde, -te) call (28)
kamˀ, -ən, kámə (Kam, -men, -me) comb (11)
kamˀp, -ən, kámbə (Kamp, -en, -e) game (17)
kanˀ; see **kúnə**
karˀl (Karl) Carl (LI 23)
kartɔ́fəl, kartɔ́flən, kartɔ́flər (Kartoffel, -en, Kartofler) potato (1)
kasé:ˀər, -ən, -ə (Kasserer, -en, -e) cashier (19)
kásə, -n, -r (Kasse, -n, -r) box (WS 26)
ká:ɣə, -n, -r (Kage, -n, -r) cake (22)

ké:ˀð á:ˀ (ked af) sorry about (23)

ké:ðə, -ðə (kede, -de) bore; **ké:ðə saj** (kede sig) be bored (21); **kéðəli** (kedelig) annoying (21), boring; **-ərə, -st**

kɛ́nə, -də (kende, -te) know, be acquainted with (4); **kɛnˀt, -ə** (kendt, -e) known, well-known (26)

kílo, kílo:ˀəð, — (Kilo, -et, —) *or* **kílogràmˀ, -əð, —** (Kilogram, -met, —) kilogram (22)

kilomé:ˀdər/kílomè:ˀdər, -ən, — (Kilometer, -en, —) kilometer (⅝ *of a mile*) (14)

kírgə, -n, -r (Kirke, -n, -r) church (5)

kírsdən (Kirsten) Kirsten (4)

klásə, -n, -r (Klasse, -n, -r) class (13)

klavˀs (Claus) *man's name* (LI 26)

klá:ər (-ðə) saj (klare) (-de) (sig) get along (25)

kla:ˀr, -t, klá:ər (klar) clear (27); **klá:ərə, klá:ərst**

klébə, -ðə (klippe, -de) cut (*with scissors*) (11); **blì:ə (ble:, blè:əð) klébəð** (blive) (blev, blevet) (klippet) have a hair-cut (11)

klenˀt, -ən, kléndər (Klint, -en, -er) cliff (28); **mǿ:ˀəns klénˀt** (Møens Klint) Møen's Cliff (*on the island of Møen*) (28)

klit, -ən, -ər (Klit, -ten, -ter) dune (28)

klɔ́gə, -n, -r (Klokke, -n, -r) bell (1); **vá ɛr klɔ́gən?** (Hvad er Klokken?) What time is it? (1); **klɔ̀gən ét** (Klokken et) (at) one o'clock; **klɔ́gən ɛr tó:ˀ.** (Klokken er to.) It's two o'clock.

knúsən (Knudsen) *last name* (3)

knú:sə, knú:ˀsər, -də (knuse, -te) crush (29)

kófərt, -ən, -ər (Kuffert, -en, -er) suitcase (13)

kompaní:ˀ/kómpanì:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Kompagni, -et, -er; abbrev. Co.) company (20)

komponíst, -ən, -ər (Komponist, -en, -er) composer (26)

kon (kun) only (8)

kondugtǿ:ˀr, kondugtǿ:ˀərn, kondugtǿ:ˀər (Konduktør, -en, -er) conductor (13)

kónə, -n, -r (Kunde, -n, -r) customer (20)

konˀst, -ən (Kunst, -en) art (26); **kónsdindusdrì:ˀ, -ən, -ər** (Kunstindustri, -en, -er) applied art (27)

konsɛ́rvəs (Konserves) canned food, canned goods (22)

kontó:ˀr, kontó:ˀərð, kontó:ˀər (Kontor, -et, -er) office (20)

kontrágt, -ən, -ər (Kontrakt, -en, -er) contract (20)

korˀn, -əð (Korn, -et) grain (23)

ko:ˀ, -ən, kǿ:ˀər (Ko, -en, Køer) cow (23); **kó:ˀsdàlˀ, -ən, kó:ˀsdàlə** (Kostald, -en, -e) cow stable (23)

kó:nə, -n, -r (Kone, -n, -r) wife (4)

krésdən (Kristen) *man's name* (LI 22); **krésdənsən** (Christensen) *last name* (22)

kréstjan (Christian *or* Kristian) *man's name* (5); **kréstjan dɛn fjɛ́:ər** (Christian den Fjerde) Christian the Fourth, king from 1588-1648 (5)

krɛ́mər, -ən, -ər (Kræmmer, -en, -er) dealer (WS 22)

krɛ́ŋˀgəl (Krenchel) *last name* (LI 29)

krí:ˀ, -ən, krí:ə (Krig, -en, -e) war (20)

krǿ:nə, -n, -r (Krone, -n, -r) crown (1); **krǿ:nə, -ðə** (krone, -de) crown (WS 14)
ku; see **kúna**
kun; see **kúna**
kúna, kanʔ/ka, kúna, kúnað (kunne, kan, kunde, kunnet) be able to (25); **kanʔ/ka** (kan) can (2); **kúna/kun/ku** (kunde) could (4), was (were) able to (13)
kupé:ʔ, -ən, -ər (Kupé, -en, -er) compartment (13)
kvadrá:ʔt, -əð, -ər (Kvadrat, -et, -er) square (WS 22); **kvadrá:ʔd kilomé:ʔdər** (Kvadrat Kilometer) square kilometer (WS 22)
kvart (kvart) quarter (22)
kvarté:ʔr, kvarté:ʔrəð, kvarté:ʔər (Kvarter, -et, -er) quarter (*of an hour*) (19)
kvɛ:ʔɣ, -əð (Kvæg, -et) cattle (27)
kýleŋ, -ʔən, -ʔər (Kylling, -en, -er) chicken (9)
købənháwʔn (København) Copenhagen (2)
køð, -ʔəð (Kød, -et) meat (9)
køst, -ən, -ər (Kyst, -en, -er) coast, shore (14)
kǿ:bə, kǿ:bdə (købe, -te) buy (10)
kǿ:ʔər; see **kø:ʔ**
kǿ:ər, kǿ:ər or **kǿ:ʔr, kǿ:rdə** (køre, -te) drive, ride (14); **kǿ:ər néʔð** (køre ned) run over (with a car, bicycle, etc.) (14); **kǿ:rəkɔrt, -əð, —** (Kørekort, -et, —) driver's license (14); **kǿ:rətu:ʔr, kǿ:rətu:ʔrən, kǿ:rətu:ər** (Køretur, -en, -e) ride (14)
kɔlʔ (kold) cold (7); **-ərə, -əst**

kɔmʔ; see **kɔ́ma**
kɔ́ma, kɔ́mʔər, kɔmʔ, kɔ́mað (komme, kom, kommet) come (4); *command form* **kɔm** (kom) (3); **kɔ̀ma tél at** (komme til at) get to, happen to, have to, will (23 and WS 25)
kɔ́mað; see **kɔ́ma**
kɔnsantrasjó:ʔnslàjʔr, -ɛn, kɔnsantrasjó:ʔnslàjre (Koncentrationslejr, -en, -e) concentration camp (29)
kɔnto, kɔ́nto:ʔən, kɔ́nto:ʔər (Konto, -en, -er) account (WS 19)
kɔ́ŋə, -n, -r (Konge, -n, -r) king (5); **kɔ́ŋəli** (kongelig) royal (16)
kɔŋkuré:ʔər, -ðə (konkurrere, -de) compete (27)
kɔp, -ən, -ər (Kop, -pen, -per) cup (1)
kɔrt, -ə (kort, -e) short (7); **-ərə, -əst**
kɔrt, -əð, — (Kort, -et, —) card (WS 13)
kɔ́sdə, -ðə (koste, -de) cost (8)

la; see **lá:ðə**
lagt; see **lágə**
lajʔr, -ən, lájrə (Lejr, -en, -e) camp (WS 29)
lámasdàjʔ, -ən, lámasdàjə (Lammesteg, -en, -e) roast lamb (9)
lanʔ, -əð, lánə (Land, -et, -e) country, land (14); **lánmànʔ, -ən, lánmɛ̀nʔ** (Landmand, -en, Landmænd) farmer (5); **lanská:ʔb, -əð, -ər** (Landskab, -et, -er) landscape (28); **lánsteŋʔ, -əð** (Landsting, -et) House of Lords, Upper House (28)

laŋ? (lang) long (7), far (15); **lέŋara** (længere) longer, farther (WS 19); **lέŋ?sd** (længst) longest, farthest (WS 19)

laŋalí:nja (Langelinie) *a part of Copenhagen lying along the waterfront* (5)

laŋ?s (langs) along (14)

láŋsɔm? (langsom) slow (1); **-ara, -ast**

lársan (Larsen) *last name* (4)

lat; see **lá:ða**

lá:ða/la, lo:?ð, lá:ðat/lat (lade, lod, ladet) let (2); **lá ɔs** (lad os) let's (2); **la saj gǿ:ar** (lade sig gøre) be done (29)

lá:ða, -n, -ɐ (Lade, -n, -r) granary (23)

lá:ðat; see **lá:ða**

lá:a; see **lέga**

lá:va, -ða (lave, -de) make (20)

léga, lɔ:?, légað (ligge, laa, ligget) lie (14)

légað; see **léga**

let (lidt) a little (1)

lé:va, -ða (leve, -de) live (26)

lέga, lá:a, lagt (lægge, lagde, lagt) lay, put (27); **lέga mέrga te** (lægge Mærke til) pay attention to, notice (27)

lέŋa (længe) long (2)

lέŋa, -n, -ɐ (Længe, -n, -r) wing (*of a building*) (28)

lέŋara (længere) longer, farther; **lέŋ?sd** (længst) longest, farthest (WS 19); see **laŋ?**

lέd, -a (let, -te) easy (28); **-ara, -ast**

lé:ar, lé:rda (lære, -te) learn, teach (23)

lé:ɣa, -n, -ɐ (Læge, -n, -r) doctor (3)

lé:sa, lé:?sar, -da (læse, -te) read (20)

lídar, -an, — (Liter, -en, —) liter (1.06 *qts.*) (14)

lidaratú:?r, lidaratú:?arn, lidaratú:?ar (Litteratur, -en, -er) literature (26)

líla (lille) little, small (5), *used only with singular nouns* (see **smɔ:?**); **lílabèl?t** (Lillebælt) *body of water between Fyn and Jutland* (28); **lílabeldsbrò:?an** (Lillebæltsbroen) bridge across 'Lillebælt' (28)

lí:?; see **lí:ða**

lí:ða/lí:? (lide): **ka lí:ða/lí:?, kúna lí:ða/lí:?, kúnað lí:ða/lí:?** (kan lide, kunde lide, kunnet lide) like (4)

lí:a (lige) right, just (1), equal (23); **i lí:a mɔ́:ða** (i lige Maade) the same to you (23); **lí:a ú:?ð** (ligeud) straight ahead (1); **lí:a véð/lí:a vé** (lige ved) near (3); **vɛ̀:ar** (**var, vɛ̀:arð**) **lí:a véð at/vé ɔ** (være) (var, været) (lige ved at) be on the point of, be about to (14)

lí:agyl?di vɔ́:?r (ligegyldigt hvor) no matter where, wherever (28)

lí:ɣna/lí:na, -ða (ligne, -de) look like (10), resemble

lí:na; see **lí:ɣna**

lí:?v, -að, — (Liv, -et, —) life (28)

lóftaŋgrè:?b, -að, — (Luftangreb, -et, —) air raid (30); **lóftpɔ̀sd, -an** (Luftpost, -en) airmail (19)

lóga, -ða (lukke, -de) close (19)

lo:?ð; see **lá:ða**

ludará:ˀnar, -an, -a (Lutheraner, -en, -e) Lutheran (26)
lyst: see **ly:ˀs**
lý:ða, lý:ˀðar, lø:ˀð, lyt (lyde, lød, lydt) sound (23)
lý:nta:ˀɣ, -að, — (Lyntog, -et, —) express train (13)
ly:ˀs, -að, — (Lys, -et, —) light (20); **ly:ˀs, lyst, lý:sa** (lys, -t, -e) light (7); **-ara, -ast**
lǿgas, lǿgaðas (lykkes, lykkedes) succeed (29); **det lǿgas ham** (det lykkes ham) he's succeeding (See WS 29)
løst, -an (Lyst, -en) desire, wish (9); **ha (hâ:ða, hafd) løsd te** (have) (havde, haft) (Lyst til) want, feel like (9)
lø:ˀp, -að, — (Løb, -et, —) race (WS 17); **lǿ:ba, lǿ:ˀbar, lø:ˀp, lǿ:bað** (løbe, løb, løbet) run (22)
lø:ˀs (løs) loose (10); **lǿ:ˀs fléb** (løs Flip) detachable collar (10)
lǿrda, lǿrda:ˀan, lǿrda:a (Lørdag, -en, -e) Saturday (13); **i lǿrdas** (i Lørdags) last Saturday
lɔ́lanˀ (Lolland) *island south of Zealand* (28)
lɔ́ndɔn (London) London (20)
lɔw, lɔ́:ˀwan, lɔ́:wa (Lov, -en, -e) law (25), permission (28); **fɔ: (feg, fɔ́:að) lɔw te** (faa) (fik, faaet) (Lov til) get permission to, be allowed to, be able to (28, WS 27); **ha (hâ:ða, hafd) lɔw te** (have) (havde, haft) (Lov til) have permission to, be allowed to, be able to (LI 28, WS 27)
lø:ˀɣ; see **løga**

lå:na, lå:ˀnar, -da (laane, -te) lend, borrow (19)
lå:va, -ða (love, -de) promise (20)

mað, má:ˀðan (Mad, -en) food (4); **tág for máð** (Tak for Mad) 'Thanks for the food'. (*Said at the end of a meal to the head of the family.*) (4)
máað (meget) much (1), very (2); **mé:ar/me:ˀr** (mere) more (7); **me:ˀst** (mest) most (WS 19)
magt, -an, -ar (Magt, -en, -er) power (25)
maj (mig) me (1)
majˀ (Maj) May (WS 20)
majarí:ˀ, -að, -ar (Mejeri, -et, -er) dairy (22)
makrélˀ, -an, -ar (Makrel, -len, -ler) mackerel (27)
malarí:ˀ, -að, -ar (Maleri, -et, -er) painting (26)
man (man) you (*general*) (5)
manˀ, -an, menˀ (Mand, -en, Mænd) man (WS 13), husband (14)
mánˀda, mánˀda:ˀan, mánˀda:a (Mandag, -en, -e) Monday (13); **i mánˀdas** (i Mandags) last Monday
máŋa (mange) many (1); **flé:ar/fle:ˀr** (flere) more (15); **fle:ˀst** (flest) most (WS 19)
mards (Marts) March (WS 20)
marí:a (Marie) Marie (LI 20)
marjánə (Marianne) Marian (LI 20)
mark, -an, -ar (Mark, -en, -er) field (28)
mársdranˀ (Marstrand) last name (26)
mása, -a, -a (Masse, -n, -r) crowd (25)
mádsən (Madsen) last name (LI 20)

másəvi:ˀs (massevis) quantities (27)
maskí:nə, -n, -r (Maskine, -n, -r) machine (WS 13)
matró:ˀs, -ən, -ər (Matros, -en, -er) sailor (17)
méda, méda:ˀən, méda:ə (Middag, -en, -e) dinner (5), noon (WS 19)
medəsí:ˀn, -ən (Medicin, -en) medicine (22)
méndrə (mindre) less, smaller (15, WS 19); **menˀst** (mindst) at least (16), least, smallest (WS 19); see **lílə** and **smɔ:ˀ**
menýkàrt, -əð, — (Menukort, -et, —) menu (9)
mésdə, -ðə (miste, -de) lose (28)
met (midt) in the middle (28)
mé:ˀdər, -ən, — (Meter, -en, —) meter (39.4 *in.*) (WS 22)
mé:ər/me:ˀr (mere) more (7); **me:ˀst** (mest) most (WS 19); see **máəð**
mé:nə, mé:ˀnər, -də (mene, -te) mean (15)
mεð/me (med) with (4), by, about (5), along (7); **me de sámə** (med det samme) right away (21); **me méndrə** (med mindre) unless (22)
méðlεmˀ, -əð, -ər (Medlem, -met, -mer) member (25)
mέgəli (mægtig) enormous (13); used with verbs, it is a slangy equivalent of 'very'.
méləmsgò:lə, -n, -r (Mellemskole, -n, -r) junior high school (26)
melˀk, -ən (Mælk, -en) milk (22)
men (men) but (2)
menˀs; see **mεnˀs**

mέnəsgə/mέnsgə, -ð, -r (Menneske, -t, -r) person, human being, *plural* people (13). The plural the-form is **mέnəsgənə** (Menneskene) with the **r** omitted.
mεnˀs (mens) while (22)
mέrgə, -ð, -r (Mærke, -t, -r) mark, sign, label (WS 19); **lὲgə** (**là:ə, lagd**) **mέrgə te** (lægge) (lagde, lagt) (Mærke til) pay attention to, notice (27); **mέrgli** (mærkelig) strange, remarkable (25); **-ərə, -st**
mέsdər, -ən, mέsdrə (Mester, -en, Mestre) master (WS 13)
mεt, -ə (mæt, -te) full (*of food*) (9)
milˀ (mild) mild (7); **-ərə, -əst**
míligràmˀ, -əð, — (Milligram, -met, —) milligram (WS 22)
mílimè:ˀdər, -ən, — (Millimeter, -en, —) millimeter (WS 22)
miljó:ˀn, -ən, -ər (Million, -en, -er) million (28)
minísdər, -ən, minísdrə (Minister, -en, Ministre) minister, cabinet member (25)
minút, -əð, -ər (Minut, -tet, -ter) minute (5)
mit; see **mí:nə**
mi:ˀl, -ən, — (Mil, -en, —) unit of measure equal to 7½ kilometers or 4.68 English miles; **mí:ləvìt** (milevidt) for miles and miles
mi:ˀn, mit, mí:nə (min, mit, mine) my, mine (2)
móðtà:ˀɣəlsə, -n, -r (Modtagelse, -n, -r) welcome, reception (29)

mon (mon) I wonder (10)

mórsɔmʔ (morsom) amusing, interesting (16); **-ərə, -st**

mo:ʔð (mod) toward (28)

mó:ər, -ðə (more, -de) amuse, entertain; **mó:ər saj** (more sig) enjoy yourself, have a good time (16)

mo:r, mó:ərn, mǿðrə (Mor, Moderen, Mødre) mother (2)

musɛ́:əm, musɛ́:əð, musɛ́:ər (Museum, Museet, Museer) museum (26)

musík, -ən (Musik, -ken) music (26)

mú:li (mulig) possible (WS 22)

mǿdə; see **mǿ:ðə**

mǿðrə; see **mo:r**

mǿlʔər (Møller) *last name* (21)

mǿ:ðə, mǿdə (møde, mødte) meet (3); **mǿ:ðəs** (mødes) meet (one another); **mǿ:ðə, -ð, -r** (Møde, -t, -r) meeting (WS 14)

mǿ:ʔən (Møen) *small island south of Zealand* (28)

mœrk (mørk) dark (20)

mɔ́də, mɔ:ʔ, mɔ́də, mɔ́dəð (maatte, maa, maatte, maattet) have to, be allowed to; **mɔ:ʔ** (maa) have to, must (2), may (2); **mɔ́də** (maatte) had to (13), might (21)

mɔ́dəð; see **mɔ́də**

mɔ́rən, -ən, -ər (Morgen, -en, -er) morning (3); **i mɔ́rən** (i Morgen) tomorrow (3)

mɔ́sdər, -ən, mɔ́sdrə (Moster, -en, Mostre) aunt ('mother's sister') (WS 16)

mɔ:ʔ; see **mɔ́də**

mɔ́:ðə, -n, -r (Maade, -n, -r) manner, way (23); **i lí:ə mɔ́:ðə** (i lige Maade) the same to you (23)

mɔ́:ɣəns (Mogens) *man's name* (LI 22)

mɔ:ʔl, -əð, — (Maal, -et, —) goal (17)

mɔ́:nəð, mɔ́:nðən, mɔ́:nðər (Maaned, -en, -er) month (4)

mɔ́:ʔrbrò:r, mɔ́:ʔrbrò:ərn, mɔ́:ʔrbrǿðrə (Morbror, Morbroderen, Morbrødre) uncle ('mother's brother') (WS 16); **mɔ́:ʔrfà:r, mɔ́:ʔrfà:ərn** (Morfor, Morfaderen) grandfather ('mother's father') (WS 16); **mɔ́:ʔrmò:r, mɔ́:ʔrmò:ərn** (Mormor, Mormoderen) grandmother ('mother's mother') (WS 16)

mɔ:sgé:ʔ (maaske) maybe, probably (4)

najʔ (nej) no (1), oh, well (2)

nasjoná:ʔlmusɛ̀:əð (Nationalmuseet) the National Museum (5); **nasjoná:ʔlsàŋʔ, -ən, nasjoná:ʔlsàŋə** (Nationalsang, -en, -e) national anthem (17)

nat, -ən, nɛ́dər (Nat, -ten, Nætter) night (7)

navʔn, -əð, návnə (Navn, -et, -e) name (2)

nédən (nitten) nineteen (7); **nédənə** (nittende) nineteenth (WS 20)

nels (Niels) *man's name* (3); **nélsən** (Nielsen) *last name* (26)

ne:ʔð, né:ðə (ned, -e) down (13)

nɛ́dər; see **nat**

nɛ́dɔ̀p/nɛ́dɔp (netop) exactly (27)

nɛ́mli (nemlig) you see (16)

nɛ́rhèðˀən (Nærheden) vicinity (8); **i nɛ́rhèðˀən** (i Nærheden) in the vicinity, near (8)

nɛ́rmərə (nærmere) nearer (WS 19); **nɛ́rməst** (nærmest) nearest (19); see **nɛ:ˀr**

nɛ́sdə (næste) next (21)

nɛ́sdən (næsten) almost (26)

nɛ: (næh) no (1), oh, well (2)

nɛ:ˀr (nær) near (WS 19); **nɛ́rmərə** (nærmere) nearer (WS 19); **nɛ́rməst** (nærmest) nearest (19)

nɛ́:reŋsvàjˀ, -ən, nɛ́:reŋsvàjə (Næringsvej, -en, -e) means of livelihood (27)

nɛ́:sə, -n, -r (Næse, -n, -r) nose (29)

ni:ˀ (ni) nine (1); **ní:ˀənə** (niende) ninth (WS 20)

nobɛ́lprì:ˀs, -ən, nobɛ́lprì:sər (Nobelpris, -en, -er) Nobel prize (26)

nol, -ˀəð, -ˀər (Nul, -let, -ler) zero (17)

nómˀər, -əð, nómrə (Nummer, -et, Numre) number (10)

novɛ́mˀbər (November) November (WS 20)

nó:ən/no:n (nogle) some (1), any (5); (nogen) someone, anyone (21), some, any (26)

nó:ən sénə (nogen Sinde) ever (15)

no:ˀr (Nord) north (28); **no:ró:ˀst** (Nordost) *or* **no:røst** (Nordøst) northeast (WS 28); **no:rvɛ́st** (Nordvest) northwest (WS 28)

nu (nu) now (4)

nyt; see **ný:ðə** and **ny:ˀ**

ny:ˀ, nyt, ný:ə *or* **ny:ˀ** (ny) new (9); **-ərə, -əst**

ný:ðə, ný:ˀðər, nø:ˀð, nyt (nyde, nød, nydt) enjoy (26)

nø:ˀð; see **ný:ðə**

nɔ (naa!) well! (16)

nɔ́jˀəs (**nɔ́jəðəs**) [illegible] (nøjes) (nøjedes) (med) be content with, be satisfied with (22)

nɔk (nok) enough (4), probably (13)

nɔ́rɣə (Norge) Norway (17)

nɔ:ˀ, nɔ́:əðə, nɔ́:ˀəð (naa, -ede) reach, make (11)

nɔ́:əð (noget) something (4), anything (8), some, any (WS 9)

nɔ:ˀr (naar) when (8)

ónˀər (under) under (19), during (20)

ónərhɔ̀lˀə, ónərhɔ̀lˀt, ónərhɔ̀lˀt (underholde, underholdt, underholdt) support; **ónərhɔ̀lˀə saj sɛ́lˀ** (underholde sig selv) support yourself (26)

ónərsgò:lə, -n, -r (Underskole, -n, -r) grammar school (26)

ónərsgrè:ˀv; see **ónərsgrì:ˀvə**

ónərsgrè:ˀvəð; see **ónərsgrì:ˀvə**

ónərsgrì:ˀvə, ónərsgrè:ˀv, ónərsgrè:ˀvəð (underskrive, underskrev, underskrevet) sign (20)

ónərsø̀gdə; see **ónərsø̀:ˀɣə**

ónərsø̀:ˀɣə, ónərsø̀gdə (undersøge, -te) examine (21)

ónərtɔ̀j, -ˀəð (Undertøj, -et) underwear (10)

onivɛrsité:ˀt, -əð, -ər (Universitet, -et, -er) university (26)

ón?sda, ón?sda:?ən, ón?sda:ə (Onsdag, -en, -e) Wednesday (13); **i ón?sdas** (i Onsdags) last Wednesday

ónsgỳl?ə, -də (undskylde, -te) excuse (1); **ónsgỳl?** (Undskyld) Excuse me; **ónsgỳl?ə saj** (undskylde sig) excuse yourself; **ónsgỳl?neŋ, -?ən, -?ər** (Undskyldning, -en, -er) excuse (15)

on?t: gœ̀:ər (gœr, **gjò:ər, gjor?d**) **ón?t** (gøre) (gør, gjorde, gjort) (ondt) hurt (21)

oŋ? (ung) young (14); **øŋrə** (yngre) younger (WS 19); **øŋ?st** (yngst) youngest (WS 19)

óŋ?gəl, óŋ?glən, óŋ?glər (Onkel, -en, Onkler) uncle (WS 16)

órdəkrɛ̀mər, -ən, -ər (Urtekræmmer, -en, -er) grocer (*sells only canned goods and staples*) (22)

óst, -ən, -ə (Ost, -en, -e) cheese (22); **ósdəbutík, -ən, -ər** (Ostebutik, -ken, -ker) *or* **ósdəfɔrɛ̀dneŋ, -?ən, -?ər** (Osteforretning, -en, -er) cheese store (22)

ó:?bəra, ó:?bəra:?ən, ó:?bəra:?ər (Opera, -en, -er) opera (26)

ó:?ðənsə (Odense) *city on Fyn* (LI 26)

ó:ləsən (Olesen) *last name* (20)

ó:?lsən (Olsen) *last name* (LI 20)

o:?r, ó:?ərð, — (Ord, -et, —) word; **ó:rbɔ̀:?ɣ, -ən, ó:rbø̀:?ɣər** (Ordbog, -en, Ordbøger) dictionary

págə, -ðə (pakke, -de) pack (WS 14); **págə, -n, -r** (Pakke, -n, -r) package (11); **págəɛgsbədisjò:?n, -ən** (Pakkeekspedition, -en) package window (*at the post office*) (19); **págəpɔ̀st, -ən** (Pakkepost, -en) parcel post (19)

paŋsjoná:?t, -əð, -ər (Pensionat, -et, -er) boarding-house (8)

papí:?r, -əð, papí:?ər (Papir, -et, -er) paper (29)

par, -?əð, — (Par, -ret, —) couple, few (4), pair (10)

pará:ðə, -n, -r (Parade, -n, -r) parade (WS 25)

pará:?t, -ə (parat, -e) ready (14)

partí:?, -əð, -ər (Parti, -et, -er) party (*political*) (25)

pásə, -ðə (passe, -de) fit (10), suit (11), look after, take care of (26); **pàsə pɔ́:?** (passe paa) look out (for) (14); **pásə saj sɛ́l?** (passe sig selv) mind your own business (25)

patrió:?t, -ən, -ər (Patriot, -en, -er) patriot (29)

pé:?dər (Peter) Peter (3); **pé:?dərsən** (Petersen) Petersen (2)

pɛ́ŋə (Penge) (*plural*) money (WS 13)

pɛ:?l, -ən, pɛ́:lə (Pægl, -en, -e) *unit of liquid measure equal to 2.4 deciliters or about half a pint.* (WS 22)

pɛ:?n (pæn) good, nice (8); **-ərə, -əst**

pərɔ́ŋ, -?ən, -?ər (Perron, -en, -er) platform (*in a railroad station*) (13); **pərɔ́ŋ nòmər tré:?** (Perron Nummer 3) track 3

pí:ə, -n, -r (Pige, -n, -r) girl (7), maid (16)

plájə (-ðə) ɔ (pleje) (-de) (at) be accustomed to, be in the habit of (23)

plas, -ən, -ər (Plads, -en, -er) seat (13), square (WS 13)

plúsli (pludselig) sudden (16); **-ərə, -st**

polətík, -ən (Politik, -ken) politics (25)

polətí:ˀ, -əð (Politi, -et) police (14)

poŋˀt, -əð, póŋdər (Punkt, -et, -er) point (28)

poŋté:ˀər, -ðə (punktere, -de) puncture; **vὲ:ər (var, vὲ:ərð) poŋté:ˀərð** (være) (var, været) (punkteret) have a flat tire (15)

prágdfùlˀ (pragtfuld) beautiful, wonderful (28)

prεsidέnˀt, -ən, -ər (Præsident, -en, -er) president (25)

pri:ˀs, -ən, prí:sər (Pris, -en, -er) prize (WS 26)

prodógt, -ən, -ər (Produkt, -en, -er) product (WS 27)

produsé:ˀər, -ðə (producere, -de) produce (27)

prosέnˀt, -ən, -ər (Procent, -en, -er) percent (19)

prǿ:və, -ðə (prøve, -de) try (8)

pulˀs, -ən (Puls, -en) pulse (21)

punˀ, -əð, — (Pund, -et, —) pound (WS 22)

pú:ðə, -n, -r (Pude, -n, -r) pillow (21)

pydjá:mas (Pyjamas) pajamas (10)

pølsə, -n, -r (Pølse, -n, -r) frankfurt, hot dog, sausage (17)

pɔ́gər: vá pɔ́gər. (Hvad Pokker!) What the devil! (15)

pɔrsəlέnˀ, -əð (Porcelæn, -et) porcelain (27)

pɔrtjé:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Portier, -en, -er) desk clerk (*at a hotel*) (13)

pɔst, -ən (Post, -en) mail (WS 19); **pɔ́sdasisdὲnˀt, -ən, -ər** (Postassistent, -en, -er) post-office clerk (19); **pɔ́sdhù:ˀs, -əð, pɔ́sdhù:sə** (Posthus, -et, -e) post office (19)

pɔ:ˀ (paa) in (1), at (3), on (4), to (5)

rajˀn, -ən (Regn, -en) rain (7); **rájnə, -ðə** (regne, -de) rain (20)

rájnə, -ðə (regne, -de) figure, calculate (28); **rájnə mέ** (regne med) take into account (28); **rájneŋ, -ˀən, -ˀər** (Regning, -en, -er) bill, check (2)

rájsə, rájˀsər, -də (rejse, -te) travel (13); **rájsə, -n, -r** (Rejse, -n, -r) trip (WS 14); **rájsətjὲk, -ən, rájsətjὲgs** (Rejsecheck, -en, -s) traveler's check (19)

rájsə, rájˀsər, -də (rejse, -te) raise (16); **rájsə saj ɔ́p** (rejse sig op) get up (*out of a chair*) 16

rat, -əð, — (Rat, -tet, —) steering wheel (14)

rá:ˀdjo, rá:ˀdjo:ˀən, rá:ˀdjo:ˀər (Radio, -en, -er) radio (25)

rá:sənə (rasende) angry, furious (16)

reá:ˀlegsàmən, -ən, reá:ˀlegsàmnər (Realeksamen, -en, -er) exam taken at end of year's course which follows *Mellemskole*, 'junior high school' (26)

régdi (rigtig) right (21); **régdi gó:ˀ bέðreŋ**; (Rigtig god Bedring!) Hope you feel better soon.

regé:ˀreŋ, -ˀən, -ˀər (Regering, -en, -er) government (25)

réŋə, -ðə (ringe, -de) ring, call up (*on the telephone*) (13); **réŋə έfdεr** (ringe efter) call for, ring for (13)

resdoráŋ, -ˀən, -ˀər (Restaurant, -en, -er) restaurant (1)

resέbt, -ən, -ər (Recept, -en, -er) prescription (22)

resiké:ˀər, -ðə (risikere, -de) risk (29)

ré:bilbàgər (Rebildbakker) Rebild Hills (*in Julland*) (28)

ré:ˀəl, -ən, ré:ˀlər (Regel, -en, Regler) rule (7); **sɔm ré:ˀəl** (som Regel) *or* **i ré:ˀələn** (i Regelen) as a rule, generally (7)

re:ˀn (ren) clean (8); **-ərə, -əst; gœ̀:ər (gjò:ər, gjorˀd) ré:ˀnt** (gøre) (gjorde, gjort) (rent) clean (16)

rɛ́ndə, -n, -r (Rente, -n, -r) interest (*on money*) (19)

rɛnsərí:ˀ, -əð, -ər (Renseri, -et, -er) cleaner (11)

rɛst, -ən, -ər (Rest, -en, -er) rest, remainder (22)

rɛt (ret) quite (8)

rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t, -ən, -ər (Returbillet, -ten, -ter) round-trip ticket (13)

rigt; see **ri:ˀ**

ri:ˀ, rigt, rí:ə (rig) rich (26)

ronˀt (rundt) around (5)

ro:ˀð, róðˀən, røðˀər (Rod, -den, Rødder) root (WS 22)

ró:li (rolig) calm, quiet (17); **bá:ər ró:li.** (Bare rolig!) Take it easy!, Don't worry! (17)

ru:ˀ, -ən (Rug, -en) rye (23); **rúbrø̀:ˀð, -ən** (Rugbrød, -en) pumpernickel (23)

rý:ə, rý:ˀər, rɔjˀ, rɔ́jəð (ryge, røg, røget) smoke (3)

røðˀər; see **ro:ˀð**

røk, -ən, -ə (Ryg, -gen, -ge) back (21)

rø:ˀðgrø̀:ˀð, -ən (Rødgrød, -en) fruit pudding (9)

rœ́nˀdgənfodografè:ˀər, -ðə (røntgenfotografere, -de) take X-rays (of), X-ray (21)

rœ́:ər, rœ́:rdə (røre, -te) move (21); **rœ́:ər saj** (røre sig) move

rɔ́ðhusplàsən (Raadhuspladsen) City Hall Square (*in the center of Copenhagen*) (5)

rɔjˀ; see **rý:ə**

rɔ́jəð; see **rý:ə**

rɔ:ˀð: ha (hà:ðə, hafd) rɔ́:ˀð te (have) (havde, haft) (Raad til) have the means to, be able to afford; **fɔ: (feg, fɔ̀:əð) rɔ́:ˀð te** (faa) (fik, faaet) (Raad til) get the means to, become able to afford (see *Word Study*, Unit 27)

rɔ:ˀp, -əð, — (Raab, -et, —) shout, cry (WS 22); **rɔ́:bə, rɔ́bdə** (raabe, -te) shout, cry (17)

sabotá:sjə, -n (Sabotage, -n) sabotage (29)

sádə; see **sɛ́də**

sagt; see **sí:ə**

sáɣfø̀:ər, -(ə)n, -ə (Sagfører, -en, -e) lawyer (3)

sájlə, -ðə (sejle, -de) sail (28); **sájlsbɔ̀rt, -ən** (Sejlsport, -en) sailing (17)

sájsdən (seksten) sixteen (7); **sájsdənə** (sekstende) sixteenth (WS 20)

salá:ˀt, -ən, -ər (Salat, -en, -er) salad (WS 13); **salá:ˀdhò:ðə, -ð, -r** (Salathovede, -t, -r) head of lettuce (22)

salˀt, -əð (Salt, -et) salt (9)

sámə (samme) same (25); **mɛ de sámə** (med det samme) right away (21)

sámʔən (sammen) together (23)

sámlə, -ðə (samle, -de) gather, collect; **sámləð, -ə** (samlet, samlede) united (29)

sámtìðʔi (samtidig) at the same time (27); **sámtìðʔi mɛ a** (samtidig med at) at the same time that (27)

sanʔ (sand) true (5); **égə sánʔt** (ikke sandt) *used at the end of a statement to change it into a question* (5); **sánəli** (sandelig) truly (28)

saŋʔ, -ən, sáŋə (Sang, -en, -e) song (WS 17)

sa:ʔð; see **séðə**

sá:ə; see **sí:ə**

sbel, -ʔəð, — (Spil, -let, —) game (WS 22); **sbélə, -ðə** (spilie, -de) play (17); **sbélər, -ən, -ə** (Spiller, -en, -e) player (17)

sbetágəl, sbetágləð, sbetáglər (Spektakel, -et, Spektakler) noise (20)

sbɛ́nənə (spændende) exciting (17)

sbí:sə, sbí:ʔsər, -də (spise, -te) eat (4); **sbí:səvɔ̀γʔn, -ən, sbí:səvɔ̀γnə** (Spisevogn, -en, -e) dining car (13)

sbórdə; see **sbœ́rγə**

sbɔ́rvɔ̀γʔn, -ən, sbórvɔ̀γnə (Sporvogn, -en, -e) streetcar (5)

sbrídfabrèk, -ən, -ər (Spritfabrik, -ken, -ker) distillery (27)

sbrɔ:ʔγ, -əð, — (Sprog, -et, —) language (26)

sbø̂də, -ðə (spytte, -de) spit (28)

sbœ́rγə/sbœ́rə, sbórdə, sborʔt (spørge, spurgte, spurgt) ask (13); **sbœ́rγə ɔ́mʔ** (spørge om) ask about (13)

sbɔrt, -ən, — (Sport, -en, —) sport (17)

sdajʔ, -ən, sdájə (Steg, -en, -e) roast (9); **sdájə, sdɛ́gdə/sdégdə** (stege, -te) roast, fry (WS 22)

sdalʔ, -ən, sdálə (Stald, -en, -e) stable (WS 23)

sdánsə, -ðə (standse, -de) stop (14)

sdasjó:ʔn, -ən, -ər (Station, -en, -er) station (1)

sdá:ʔdsminìsdər, -ən, sdá:ʔdsminìsdrə (Statsminister, -en, Statsministre) prime minister (25)

sdá:və, -ðə (stave, -de) spell

sdégdə; see **sdájə**

sdɛð, sdɛ́ðʔəð, sdɛ́:ðər (Sted, -et, -er) place (14); **a sdɛ́ð** (af Sted) away (14); **i sdɛ́ðʔəð fɔ́r** (i Stedet for) instead (of) (27)

sdɛ́fənsən (Stephensen) *last name* (LI 26)

sdɛ́gdə; see **sdájə**

sdɛ́mə, -də (stemme, -te) vote (25)

sdɛrk (stærk) strong (25); **-ərə, -əst**

sdi:ʔ, -ən, sdí:ər (Sti, -en, -er) path, lane (WS 23); in the compound **sví:nəsdì:ʔ**, it means ‘sty’ or ‘pen’.

sdo:ʔð; see **sdɔ:ʔ**

sdo:ʔl, -ən, sdó:lə (Stol, -en, -e) chair (21)

sdo:ʔr, -t, sdó:ər (stor) large, big (10); **sdœ́rə** (større) larger, bigger (WS 19); **sdœrst** (størst) largest, biggest (WS 19); **sdó:ərbɛ̀lʔt** (Storebælt) *body of water between Zealand and Fyn* (28)

sdrágdə; see **sdrɛ́gə**

sdranʔ, -ən, sdránə (Strand, -en, -e) beach (15)

sdrɛ́gə, sdrágdə (strække, strakte) stretch; **sdrɛ́gə saj** (strække sig) extend, stretch (28)

sdrɔ́tàːˀɣ, -əð, sdrɔ́tàːɣə (Straatag, -et, -e) thatched roof (23)

sdudéːˀər, -ðə (studere, -de) study (26)

sdudɛ́nˀt, -ən, -ər (Student, -en, -er) student, graduate of a 'Gymnasium' (26)

sdúːə, -n, -r (Stue, -n, -r) room (WS 21)

sdøgə, -ð, -r (Stykke, -t, -r) piece (9), play (26); **sdøgəð** (Stykket) apiece (10)

sdœ́rə (større) larger, bigger; **sdœrst** (størst) largest, biggest (WS 19); see **sdɔːˀr**

sdœ́rəlsə, -n, -r (Størrelse, -n, -r) size (10)

sdɔrk, -ən, -ə (Stork, -en, -e) stork (23)

sdɔːˀ, sdoːˀð, sdɔ́ːəð (staa, stod, staaet) stand (13); **sdɔː ɔ́p** (staa op) get up (*out of bed*) (16)

sdɔ́ːəð; see **sdɔːˀ**

séðə, saːˀð, séðəð (sidde, sad, siddet) sit (16)

séðəð; see **séðə**

ségər, -t, ségrə (sikker, -t, sikre) sure (17)

semɛ́nˀdfabrèk, -ən, -ər (Cementfabrik, -ken, -ker) cement factory (27); **semɛ́nˀdindusdrìːˀ, -ən, -ər** (Cementindustri, -en, -er) cement industry (27)

seːˀ, sɔːˀ, seːˀt (se, saa, set) see (5); **seːˀs** (ses) see each other (13); **séːˀ pɔ́ːˀ** (se paa) look at (5); **séːˀ saj fɔ́r** (se sig for) look where you are going, look in front of you (15); **seː úːˀð** (se ud) appear, look (8)

seːˀnt (sent) late (16)

seːˀt; see **seːˀ**

sɛbtɛ́mˀbər (September) September (WS 20)

sɛ́də, sádə (sætte, satte) put, set (22); **sɛ̀də énˀ** (sætte ind) deposit (19); **sɛ́də saj** (sætte sig) sit, sit down (16)

sɛ́ðˀəl, sɛ́ðˀlən, sɛ́ðlər (Seddel, -en, Sedler) bill (*money*) (19); **tíkroːnəsɛ̀ðˀəl** (Tikroneseddel) ten-crown bill (19)

sɛføləli; see **sɛlføləli**

sɛgrətɛ́ːˀr, sɛgrətɛ́ːˀərn, sɛgrətɛ́ːˀər (Sekretær, -en, -er) secretary (20)

sɛgs (seks) six (1)

sɛlˀ (selv) self (11), even (25); **sɛ́lˀ ták** (selv Tak) you're welcome (1)

sɛlføləli/sɛføləli (selvfølgelig) of course (15)

sɛ́nə, -də (sende, -te) send (11)

sɛ́ntimèːˀdər, -ən, — (Centimeter, -en, —) centimeter (WS 22)

sɛŋˀ, -ən, sɛ́ŋə (Seng, -en, -e) bed (21)

sɛ́ŋgə, -ðə (sænke, -de) sink, scuttle (29)

sɛ́rli (særlig) special (21)

sɛt, -əð, — (Sæt, -tet, —) set (10); **sɛd tɔ́j** (Sæt Tøj) suit (*man's*) (10)

sɛ́ːbə, -n (Sæbe, -n) soap (11); **sɛ́ːbəhùːˀs, -əð, sɛ́ːbəhùːsə** (Sæbehus, -et, -e) 'soap store' (*selling soap, razors, toothbrushes, combs, etc.*) (11)

səmɛ́nˀ/sɔ́mən (saamænd) really (21)

sga; see **sgúlə**

sgalˀ; see **sgúlə**

sgam (skam) certainly (14)

sgá:ðəsdù:ə, -n, -r (Skadestue, -n, -r) emergency ward (21)

sgá:ˀɣən (Skagen) *the northern tip of Jutland* (28)

sge:ˀ, sgé:də, sge:ˀt (ske, -te) happen (15)

sgi:ˀp, -əð, sgí:bə (Skib, -et, -e) ship (27); **sgíbsvὲrft, -əð, -ər** (Skibsværft, -et, -er) shipyard (27)

sgjórdə, -n, -r (Skjorte, -n, -r) shirt (10)

sgjú:lə, sgjú:ˀlər, -də (skjule, -te) hide (29)

sgo:ˀ, -ən, — (Sko, -en, —) shoe (10)

sgó:lə, -n, -r (Skole, -n, -r) school (26)

sgre:ˀv; see **sgrí:və**

sgré:vəð; see **sgrí:və**

sgrí:və, sgre:ˀv, sgré:vəð (skrive, skrev, skrevet) write (19); **sgrí:vmasgì:nə, -n, -r** (Skrivemaskine, -n, -r) typewriter (20)

sgu; see **sgúlə**

sgúlə, sgalˀ/sga, sgulə/sgu, sgúləð (skulle, skal, skulde, skullet) be going to, be supposed to, have to; **sgalˀ/sga** (skal) shall (3), am, is, are going to (3), have to (4), am, is, are supposed to (WS 22); **sgúlə/sgu** (skulde) should (10), was, were going to (11), was, were supposed to (21)

sgut; see **sgý:ðə**

sgý:ðə, sgý:ˀðər, sgø:ˀð, sgut (skyde, skød, skudt) shoot (29)

sgǿnə (-də) saj (skynde) (-te) (sig) hurry (7)

sgø:ˀð; see **sgý:ðə**

sgɔvˀ, -ən, sgɔ́və (Skov, -en, -e) woods, park (5)

sgɔvˀ (Schou) *last name* (20)

sgɔ́vgɔ̀:ˀr (Skovgaard) *last name* (26)

sgɔ:ˀl, -ən (Skaal, -en) *drinking toast* (9); **sgɔ́:lə, -ðə** (skaale, -de) drink a toast (WS 22)

sigá:ˀr, sigá:ˀərn, sigá:ˀər (Cigar, -en, -er) cigar (23)

sígəl, síglən, síglər (Cykel, -en, Cykler) bicycle (15); **sígəllø:ˀp, -əð, —** (Cykelløb, -et, —) bicycle race (17); **sígəlsmèð, -ˀən, sígəlsmè:ðə** (Cykelsmed, -en, -e) bicycle repairman (15); **síglə, -ðə** (cycle, -de) bicycle, ride a bicycle (15)

sigərét, -ən, -ər (Cigaret, -ten, -ter) cigarette (1)

silˀ, -ən, — (Sild, -en, —) herring (27)

sist, -ə (sidst, -e) last (7); **tág fɔr síst** (Tak for sidst) *said the first time you meet a person after he has entertained you* (7); **te síst** (til sidst) finally (16)

sivilisé:ˀərð, -ə (civiliceret, civilicerede) civilized (29)

sí:ðə, -n, -r (Side, -n, -r) side (14)

sí:ðən (siden) since (15); **fɔr . . . sí:ðən** (for . . . siden) ago (16): **ve sí:ðən á:ˀ/a** (ved Siden af) beside, next to (16), next door (23)

sí:ə, síər, sá:ə, sagt (sige, sagde, sagt) tell (2), say (4)

si:ˀn, sit, sí:nə (sin, sit, sine) his (own); her (own), hers (14)

sjέlànˀ (Sjælland) Zealand (28)

sjέ:də (sjette) sixth (WS 20)

sjiká:go (Chicago) Chicago (2)

sjogolá:ðə, -n, -r (Chokolade, -n, -r) chocolate (16)

slágdər, -ən, -ər (Slagter, -en, -er) butcher (22); **slagdərí:ˀ, -əð, -ər** (Slagteri, -et, -er) slaughterhouse (WS 27)

slags, -ən, — (Slags, -en, —) kind (9)

slebs, -əð, — (Slips, -et, —) tie (10)

slɛt: sléd égə (slet ikke) not at all (22); **sléd éŋən** (slet ingen) no one at all, none at all

slɔt, -əð, -ə (Slot, -tet, -te) castle (5)

smágdə; see **smá:ɣə**

sma:ˀɣ, -ən (Smag, -en) taste (WS 22); **smá:ɣə, smágdə** (smage, -te) taste (9)

smeð, -ˀən, smé:ðə (Smed, -en, -e) blacksmith (WS 15)

smet (Smith) Smith (2)

smí:lə, smí:ˀlər, -ðə (smile, -de) smile (28)

smórdə; see **smœ́:ər**

smœr, -ˀəð (Smør, -ret) butter (9); **smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð, -əð** (Smørrebrød, -et) open sandwiches (4); **smœ́:ər, smórdə** (smøre, smurte) butter, oil, grease (WS 22)

smɔ:ˀ (smaa) little, small (10); *used with plural nouns* (see **lílə**); **smɔ́pɛ̀ŋə** (Smaapenge) (*plural*) small change (11)

snabs, -ən (Snaps, -en) aquavite (16)

snágə, -ðə (snakke, -de) talk, converse (21)

snávsətɔ̀j, -ˀəð (Snavsetøj, -et) dirty clothes, laundry (11)

sna:ˀrt (snart) soon (17)

sné:ˀ, sné:əðə, sné:ˀəð (sne, -ede, -et) snow (7); **sne:ˀ, -ən** (Sne, -en) snow (WS 14)

sne:ˀs, -ən, sné:sə (Snes, -en, -e) score (*twenty*) (22)

sóbə, -n, -r (Suppe, -n, -r) soup (9)

sógər, -əð (Sukker, -et) sugar (4)

soldá:ˀt, -ən, -ər (Soldat, -en, -er) soldier (17)

sonˀ, -əð, — (Sund, -et, —) sound (*body of water*) (14)

so:ˀl, -ən, só:lə (Sol, -en, -e) sun (8); **só:lə (-ðə) saj** (sole) (-de) (sig) sunbathe (WS 22)

súlˀdən, súlˀdnə (sulten, sultne) hungry (9)

svɛnˀsk, svɛ́nsgə (svensk, -e) Swedish (17)

svɛ́rˀi (Sverrig) Sweden (17)

svɛ:ˀr, -t, svɛ́:ər (svær) difficult, hard (25); **svɛ́:ərə, svɛ́:ərst**

svíːnəsdì:ˀ, -ən, svínəsdì:ər (Svinesti, -en, -er) pigsty (23)

svœ́mə, -ðə (svømme, -de) swim (15); **svœ́mneŋ, -ˀən** (Svømning, -en) swimming (17)

syð (Syd) south (28); **syðó:ˀst** (Sydost) *or* **syðø̂st** (Sydøst) southeast (28); **syðvɛ́st** (Sydvest) southwest (WS 28)

sygt; see **sy:ˀ**

sýnəs/syns, sýndəs/syns (synes, syntes) think (9); **syns ɔ́mˀ** (synes om) like (26)

sysdé:ˀm, -əð, -ər (System, -et, -er) system (WS 27)

syvˀ (syv) seven (1); **sývˀənə** (syvende) seventh (WS 20)

sy:ˀ, sygt, sý:ə (syg) sick (22); **sý:əkàsə, -n, -r** (Sygekasse, -n, -r) health insurance organization (26); **sý:əplàjˀərsgə, -n, -r** (Sygeplejerske, -n, -r) nurse (21)

sǿdən (sytten) seventeen (7); **sǿdənə** (syttende) seventeenth (WS 20)

sǿgɔ̀:ˀr (Søgaard) *last name* (LI 22)

søl, -ˀəð (Sølv, -et) silver (27)

sǿsdər, -ən, sǿsdrə (Søster, -en, Søstre) sister (16)

sǿsgənə (Søskende) brothers and sisters (WS 16)

søt; see **sø:ˀð**

sø:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Sø, -en, -er) lake, sea (28)

sø:ˀð, søt, sǿ:ðə (sød, -t, -e) nice, sweet (7)

sœn, -ˀən, -ər (Søn, -nen, -ner) son (4); **sœ́nədàdər, -ən, sœ́nədø̀drə** (Sønnedatter, -en, Sønnedøtre) granddaughter ('son's daughter') (WS 16); **sœ́nəsœ̀n, -ˀən, -ər** (Sønnesøn, -nen, -ner) grandson ('son's son') (WS 16)

sœ́nˀda, sœ́nˀda:ˀən, sœ́nˀda:ə (Søndag, -en, -e) Sunday (13); **i sœ́nˀdas** (i Søndags) last Sunday (WS 19)

sœ́rɣə (-ðə) fɔr (sørge) (-de) (for) take care of, see to it (21)

sœ́rɣli (sørgelig) sad (26)

sɔ (saa) so, then (2); **sɔ . . . sɔm** (saa . . . som) as . . . as (7); **sɔ . . .** (saa . . .) as . . . as (17)

sɔk, -ən, -ər (Sok, -ken, -ker) sock (10)

sɔm (som) who, which, that (3, WS 15), as (7)

sɔ́mən; see **səmɛ́nˀ**

sɔ́mər, -ən, sɔ́mrə (Sommer, -en, Somre) summer (7)

sɔvˀ; see **sɔ́və**

sɔ́və, sɔ́vˀər, sɔvˀ, sɔ́vəð (sove, sov, sovet) sleep (23)

sɔ́vəð; see **sɔ́və**

sɔ:ˀ, sɔ́:əðə, sɔ́:ˀəð (saa, -ede, -et) plant, sow (23)

sɔ:ˀ; see **se:ˀ**

ta; see **ta:ˀ**

tágsa, tágsa:ˀən, tágsa:ˀər (Taxa, -en, -er) taxi (13)

tak (Tak) thank you (1); **máŋə ták** (mange Tak) thank you very much (1)

tánbœ̀rsdə, -n, -r (Tandbørste, -n, -r) toothbrush (11)

tándə, -n, -r (Tante, -n, -r) aunt (WS 16)

taŋˀk, -ən, táŋgə (Tank, -en, -e) tank (WS 14)

ta:ˀ/ta, to:ˀ, tá:əð (tage, tog, taget) take (5), go (13), come (20)

tá:əð; see **ta:ˀ**

ta:ˀɣ, -əð, tá:ɣə (Tag, -et, -e) roof (23)

tá:lə, tá:ˀlər, -də (tale, -te) speak, talk (1); **tá:lə, -n, -r** (Tale, -n, -r) speech (14); **égə tá:lə ɔ́mˀ.** (Ikke Tale om!) That's out of the question! (14)

teá:ˀdər, -əð, teá:ˀdrə (Teater, -et, Teatre) theatre (16)

tel/te (til) to (1), for (5), until (WS 13); **en (ed) tél** (en) (et) (til) another (21)

telbá:ɣə/tebá:ɣə (tilbage) back (11)

teləfó:ˀn, -ən, -ər (Telefon, -en, -er) telephone (8); **teləfoné:ˀər, -ðə** (telefonere, -de) telephone (19); **teləfó:ˀnnɔ̀mˀər, -əð, teləfó:ˀnnɔ̀mrə** (Telefon-

nummer, -et, Telefonnumre) telephone number (11)
telegrám?, -əð, -ər (Telegram, -met, -mer) telegram (19)
télsdan?, -ən, télsdanə (Tilstand, -en, -e) condition (29)
teŋ?, -ən, — (Ting, -en, —) thing (10)
te:?, -ən (Te, -en) tea (1)
tébə, -ð, -ɾ (Tæppe, -t, -r) blanket (23)
témli (temmelig) rather, quite (20)
ténəs (Tennis) tennis (17)
ténə, -də (tænde, -te) light, turn on (*a light*) (20)
ténsdek, -ən, -ər (Tændstik, -ken, -ker) match (1)
téŋgə, -də (tænke, -te) think (15); **téŋgə pɔ́:?** (tænke paa) think of (15); **téŋgə saj** (tænke sig) imagine (16)
tíðli (tidlig) early (4); **-ərə, -st**
tívoli (Tivoli) ***an amusement park in Copenhagen*** (5)
ti:? (ti) ten (1); **tí:?ənə** (tiende) tenth (WS 20)
ti:?ð, -ən, tí:ðər (Tid, -en, -er) time (5); **ve ni: tí:?ðən** (ved ni Tiden) around nine o'clock (23)
tí:mə, -n, -ɾ (Time, -n, -r) hour (11)
tí:?rsda, tí:?rsda:?ən, tí:?rsda:ə (Tirsdag, -en, -e) Tuesday (13); **i tí:?rsdas** (i Tirsdags) last Tuesday (13)
tjek, -ən, tjegs (Check, -en, -s) check (WS 19); **tjéghɛfdə, -ð, -ɾ** (Checkhæfte, -t, -r) checkbook (19); **tjégkɔnto, tjégkɔnto:?ən, tjégkɔnto:?ər** (Checkkonto, -en, -er) checking account (19)
tjé:nə, tjé:?nər, -də (tjene, -te) earn, make (27)
tjé:nər, -ən, -ə (Tjener, -en, -e) waiter (2)
toalét, -əð, -ər (Toilet, -tet, -ter) toilet (1)
tuŋ? (tung) heavy (22); **-ərə, -əst**
torvál?sən (Thorvaldsen) last name (26)
to:? (to) two (1)
to:?; see **ta:?**
trábə, -n, -ɾ (Trappe, -n, -r) stairs, staircase (20); **ne:?ð a trábən** (ned ad Trappen) down the stairs (20)
traf; see **tréfə**
trav?l (travl) busy (20); **ha (há:ðə, hafd) trav?lt** (have) (havde, haft) (travlt) be busy, have a lot to do (20)
tréðjə (tredie) third (WS 20)
tres (tres) *or* **trésensty:və** (tresindstyve) sixty (7); **trésensty:vənə** (tresindstyvende) sixtieth (WS 20)
tre:? (tre) three (1)
trédən (tretten) thirteen (7); **trédənə** (trettende) thirteenth (WS 20)
tréðvə (tredive) thirty (7); **tréðvdə** (tredivte) thirtieth (WS 20)
tréfə, traf, trófəð (træffe, traf, truffet) meet, become acquainted with (4)
tréŋə (treŋ?ər, -də) tél (trænge) (-te) (til) need (19)
tret, -ə (træt, -te) tired (16); **-ərə, -əst**
trófəð; see **tréfə**
tro:?, tró:ðə, tró:?əð (tro, -ede, -et) think, believe (7)
tró:nə, -n, -ɾ (Trone, -n, -r) throne (25)
trøgə, -ðə (trykke, -de) press, squeeze; **trøgə i hɔ́n?ən** (trykke i Haanden) shake hands (17)
turíst, -ən, -ər (Turist, -en, -er) tourist (28)

tu:ʔr, tù:ʔarə, tù:ʔar (Tur, -en, -e) trip (13)
tu:ʔsən (tusind) thousand (7); **en tu:ʔsən** (et Tusind) one thousand (7); **tu:ʔsənə** (tusinde) thousandth (WS 20)
tysk, -ə (tysk) German (20); **tysgər, -ən, -ə** (Tysker, -en, -e) German (25); **tysglanʔ** (Tyskland) Germany (27)
ty:və (tyve) twenty (5); **e:ʔn ɔ ty:və** (en og tyve) twenty-one; **ty:vənə** (tyvende) twentieth; **e:ʔn ɔ ty:vənə** (en og tyvende) twenty-first (WS 20)
tømərmɛnʔ (Tømmermænd) hangover (16)
tømərmɛ̀sdər/tømrərmɛ̀sdər, -ən, tømərmɛ̀sdrə (Tømrermester, -en, Tømrermestre) carpenter (3)
tønə, (-n, -r) lánʔ (Tønde) (-n, -r) (Land) *measure of land equal to 1.37 acres* (23)
tœrsdi (tørstig) thirsty (9); **-ərə, -st**
tɔj, -ʔəð (Tøj, -et) clothes (10)
tɔlʔ (tolv) twelve (1); **tɔ̀ldə** (tolvte) twelfth (WS 20)
tɔmʔ (Tom) Tom (2)
tɔrsk, -ən, — (Torsk, -en, —) codfish (27)
tɔ:ʔv, -əð, — (Tog, -et, —) train (1)
tɔ́:ʔrsda, tɔ́:ʔrsda:ʔən, tɔ́:ʔrsda:ə (Torsdag, -en, -e) Thursday (13); **i tɔ́:ʔrsdas** (i Torsdags) last Thursday (WS 19)

ualmēnʔli (ualmindelig) exceptional (20)
ubəsdɛmʔt, -ə (ubestemt) uncertain (WS 22)
ubrɔgt, -ə (ubrugt) unused (WS 22)

ūðarbajʔdə, -ðə (udarbejde, -de) prepare, work out (25)
ūðfylʔə, -də (udfylde, -te) fill out (19)
ūðgæ:ʔ; see **ūðgi:ʔ**
ūðgi:ʔ, ūðgæ:ʔ, ūðgi:ʔəð (udgive, udgav, udgivet) publish (29)
ūðgi:ʔəð; see **ūðgi:ʔ**
ūðlɛnʔeŋ, -ʔəŋ, -ə (Udlænding, -en, -e) foreigner (28)
ūðmɛrgəð/ūðmɛrgəðə, -ə (udmærket, udmærkede) excellent, fine (11)
ūðnɛvʔnə, -də *or* **-ðə** (udnævne, -te *or* -de) appoint (25)
ūðta:ʔlə, -də (udtale, -te) pronounce
uentrəsánʔt, -ə (uinteressant) uninteresting (WS 22)
ufi:ʔn (ufin) not nice (*of behavior or thinking*) (WS 22)
ufɔrsigdi (uforsigtig) careless (WS 22); **-ərə, -st**
ugift, -ə (ugift) unmarried (WS 22)
uhɛ́lʔdi (uheldig) unlucky (WS 22); **-ərə, -st**
uhýgəli (uhyggelig) unpleasant (WS 22); **-ərə, -st**
ulájʔliə, -ðə (ulejlige, -de) bother, trouble (14)
umú:ʔli (umulig) impossible (16); **-ərə, -st**
uré:ʔn (uren) unclean, impure (WS 22)
uró:ʔli (urolig) restless, worried (WS 22); **-ərə, -st**
usánʔ (usand) untrue (WS 22)
uségər, -t, uségrə (usikker, -t, usikre) unsure (WS 22)
uvɛ́nʔli (uvenlig) unkind (WS 22); **-ərə, -st**
uvirgli (uvirkelig) unreal (WS 22); **-ərə, -st**
u:ʔð, ú:ðə (ud, -e) out (8)
ú:ðənfɔr/ú:ðənfɔr (udenfor) outside (5). In the regular

Danish spelling, this is written as two words, uden for, when it is used with a noun.

ú:ə, -n, -r (Uge, -n, -r) week (13)

vað/va (hvad) what (1); **va for en (et)** . . . (hvad for en (et) . . .) which . . ., what . . . (16)

vágdparà:də, -n (Vagtparade, -n) parade of the guard (generally the king's guard) (25)

vajʔ, -ən, vájə (Vej, -en, -e) way (15), road (22); **i vajʔən** (i Vejen) wrong (15)

vájə, -ðə (veje, -de) weigh (19)

váldə; see **vɛljə**

váldəmar (Valdemar) *man's name* (LI 28)

valʔɣ, -əð, — (Valg, -et, —) election, choice (25)

vanʔ, -əð (Vand, -et) water (1); **vánə, -ðə** (vande, -de) water (WS 22)

vanʔt; see **vénə**

vánʔt te (vant til) accustomed to, used to (28)

var; see **vɛ́:ər**

varʔm (varm) warm, (7), hot; **-ərə, -əst**

vasgəri:ʔ, -əð, -ər (Vaskeri, -et, -er) laundry (11)

vá:ər, -ðə (vare, -de) last, endure (25)

vá:ər, -n, — (Vare, -n, -r) commodity; *plural* wares, things, provisions (22)

veð/ve (ved) at (16), by (22); **ve si:ðən a:ʔ/a** (ved Siden af) beside, next to (16), next door (22); (23); **li:ə véð/vé** (lige ved) near (3); **vɛ:ər** (var, **vɛ:ərð**) **véð at/vé ə** (være) (var, været) (ved at) be in the process of (20); **vɛ:ər li:ə véð at/vé ə** (være lige ved at) be about to (16)

végdi (vigtig) important (21); **-ərə, -əst**

ve; see **vélə, veð**

vel; see **vélə**

vélə, vel/ve, véla, vélað (ville, vil, vilde, villet) want to; **vel/ve** (vil) will, want to (1); **vélə** (vilde) would (9), wanted to (13)

vénʔdər, -ən, vénʔdrə (Vinter, -en, Vintre) winter (7)

vendu, vendu:ʔəð, vendu:ʔər (Vindue, -t, -r) window (8)

vénə, vénʔər, vanʔt, vónəð (vinde, vandt, vundet) win (17)

véŋgə, -ðə (vinke, -de) wave (25)

ves (hvis) if (7)

vésdə; see **ví:ðə**

vest (vist) probably (15)

ve:ʔ; see **ví:ðə**

ve:ʔð; see **ví:ðə**

vé:ðə, -n (Hvede, -n) wheat (23)

végslə, -ðə (veksle, -de) change (*money*) (11)

vɛk (væk) away, gone (13)

vɛl (vel) I guess, have you?, etc. (WS 28)

vɛ́lbəkɔmʔə (velbekomme) *said by the head of the family at the end of a meal* (4)

vɛ́ldi (vældig) very (21)

vɛ́ljə, váldə (vælge, valgte) elect, choose (25)

vɛmʔ (hvem) who (4)

vɛn, [illegible] (Ven, -nen, -ner) friend (1); vɛ́nli (venlig) kind (1), pleasant (6), friendly (16); [illegible]ə, -st; ve [illegible] (Vil De være (saa) venlig at [illegible]) Will you please [illegible] (4)

vɛ́ndə, -ðə (vente, -de) wait (6), expect (10); vɛ́ndə pɔ: (vente paa) wait for (11)

vɛ́nə (-ðə) sæj tɛ (vænne) (-de) (sig til) get used to (25)

vɛ́nsdrə (venstre) left (1); tɛ vɛ́nsdrə (til venstre) to the left

vɛ́rdən, -ən, vɛ́rdnər (Verden, -en, -er) world (25); vɛ́rdənskri:ʔ, -ən, vɛ́rdənskri:ə (Verdenskrig, -en, -e) world war (29)

vɛ́rə (værre) worse (29)

vɛrft, -əð, -ər (Værft, -et, -er) shipyard (WS 27)

vɛrk, -əð, -ər (Værk, -et, -er) work (WS 23)

vɛ́rs gó:ʔ (værsaagod) here you are (2)

vɛst (Vest) west (WS 28); vɛ́sdkøst, -ən (Vestkyst, -en) west coast (28)

vɛ̀:ər, ɛr, var, vɛ̀:ərð (være, er, var, været) be (1); vɛ̀:ər lì:ə véð at/ vé ɔ (være lige ved at) be on the point of, be about to (14); vɛ̀:ər véð at/ vé ɔ (være ved at) be in the process of, be in the act of (20)

vɛ́:ərð; see vɛ́:ər

vɛ́:ərlsə, -ð, -r (Værelse, -t, -r) room (8)

vɛ:ʔr, vɛ́:ʔərð (Vejr, -et) weather (7)

vɛ:ʔr, -t (hver, -t) each, every (17)

vɛ́:ʔsən, vɛ́:ʔsnəð, vɛ́:ʔsnər (Væsen, -et, -er) department, service (WS 29)

vi (vi) we (2)

vírgə, -ðə (virke, -de) act, work; **vírgə pɔ́:ʔ** (virke paa) affect, influence (28)

vírgli (virkelig) really (15)

vit; see **vi:ʔð**

vi:ʔð, vit, ví:ðə (hvid, -t, -e) white (10)

ví:ðə, ve:ʔ/ve:ʔð, vésdə, vest (vide, ved, vidste, vidst) know (4)

ví:ðənsgà:ʔp, -ən, -ər (Videnskab, -en, -er) science (26); **ví:ðənsgabsmànʔ, -ən, ví:ðənsgabsmɛ̀nʔ** (Videnskabsmand, -en, Videnskabsmænd) scientist (26)

ví:ðənsgabsmɛ̀nʔ; see **ví:ðənsgabsmànʔ**

ví:ðərə (videre) farther (22)

vi:ʔn, -ən, ví:nə (Vin, -en, -e) wine (9)

ví:ʔnərbrø:ʔð, -əð (Wienerbrød, -et) Danish pastry (22)

ví:sə, ví:ʔsər, -də (vise, -te) show (5)

vɔ́nəð; see **vénə**

vɔ́rdən; see **vɔrdán**

vɔ́gsən, vɔ́gsnə (voksen, voksne) adult, grown-up (26)

vɔɣʔn, -ən, vɔ́ɣnə (Vogn, -en, -e) car (WS 13)

vɔr (hvor) how (1); **vɔr máəð** (hvor meget) how much (1); (WS 9, 15)

vɔrdán/vɔ́rdən (hvordan) how (1)

vɔ́rəs (vores) our, ours (11); **vɔr, vɔrt, vɔ́rə** (vor, vort, vore) our, ours (*used only in formal writing and speaking*)

vɔ́rfɔ̀r/vɔ́rfɔr (hvorfor) why (7)

vɔrnɔ́:ʔr (hvornaar) when (1)

vɔ́:ˀbən, vɔ́:ˀbnəð, — (Vaaben, -et, —) weapon (29)
vɔ:ˀr (hvor) where (1); **vɔ́:ˀr . . . ɛ́n** (hvor . . . end) wherever, no matter where (25); **lí:əgỳlˀdi vɔ́:ˀr** (ligegyldigt hvor) wherever, no matter where (28)

ǿl, -ˀəð (Øl, -let) beer (1); **en ǿl** (en Øl) a beer (WS 2)
ǿlgɔ̀:ˀr (Ølgaard) *last name* (LI 27)
ǿnsgə, -ðə (ønske, -de) wish (15); **ǿnsgə, -ð, -r** (Ønske, -t, -r) wish (LI 26)
ǿŋrə (yngre) younger; **øŋˀst** (yngst) youngest (WS 19); see **oŋˀ**
øst (Øst) east (28); **ǿsdkø̀st, -ən** (Østkyst, -en) east coast (28); **øsdərsø̀:ˀən** (Østersøen) the Baltic Sea (28)
ǿvri (øvrig) remaining, rest of (28)
ø:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Ø, -en, -er) island (28)
ǿ:ər, -n, — (Øre, -n, —) *Øre* (*unit of money*) **(1)**

œ́rstɛð (Ørsted) *last name* (26)

ɔ; see **ɔ:**, **ɔɣ**, **at**
ɔ́brɛ̀də, -ðə (oprette, -de) establish, found (26)
ɔ́bsdànˀ, -ən, ɔ́bsdànə (Opstand, -en, -e) revolt (29)
ɔ́dənə (ottende) eighth (WS 20)
ɔ́fdə (ofte) often (29)
ɔfisé:ˀr, ɔfisé:ˀərn, ɔfisé:ˀər (Officer, -en, -er) officer (29)
ɔgtó:ˀbər (Oktober) October (WS 20)

ɔɣ/ɔ (og) and (1)
ɔ́jə, -ð, ɔ́jnə (Øje, -t, Øjne) eye (15); **ɔ́jəblèk, -əð, -ə** (Øjeblik, -ket, -ke) moment (15); **fɔr ɔ́jəblègəð** (for Øjeblikket) at the moment, right now (20)
ɔ́jnə; see **ɔ́jə**
ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr (Aalborg) *city in northern Jutland* (13)
ɔmˀ (om) around (1), in (7), if, whether (23); **ɔ́m jɛ gœ́r.** (Om jeg gør.) Of course I do. (20)
ɔmkréŋˀ (omkring) around, about (15)
ɔp, -ə (op, oppe) up (14)
ɔ́rˀdən: i ɔ́rˀdən (i Orden) in order, O.K. (19)
ɔrganisé:ˀər, -ðə (organisere, -de) organize (29)
ɔ́rhù:ˀs (Aarhus) *city in Jutland* (26)
ɔrkɛ́sdər, -əð, ɔrkɛ́sdrə (Orkester, -et, Orkestre) **or**chestra (17)
ɔs/əs (os) us (2)
ɔ́sə (ogsaa) too (5)
ɔ́vˀər, ɔ́vrə (over, ovre) over, past, across (11)
ɔ́vˀərfɔ̀r/ɔ́vˀərfɔr (overfor) opposite (16)
ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən: i ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən (i Overmorgen) day after tomorrow (WS 19)
ɔ́vrə; see **ɔ́vˀər**
ɔ:/ɔ (aah) oh (3)
ɔ:ˀ, -ən, -ər (Aa, -en, -er) stream, small river (28)
ɔ́:bnə, -ðə (aabne, -de) open (16)
ɔ́:də (otte) eight (1)
ɔ:ˀr, ɔ́:ˀərð, — (Aar, -et, —) year (7); **i ɔ́:ˀr** (i Aar) this year (7)

ENGLISH-DANISH WORD LIST

If you should forget any of the Danish words you have learned in this course, you can refresh your memory by using the following list, which is arranged alphabetically according to the English equivalents. The Danish words are given here only in the *Aids to Listening*, and just the basic forms of nouns, adjectives and verbs are included. To find the other forms and the regular Danish spelling, you can refer back to the preceding *Danish-English Word List.*

In this list, as in the preceding one, related words are grouped together under one entry. "American", for instance, is given under "America", "amusing" under "amuse", etc.

English words which may be both nouns and verbs like "hope", or both adjectives and verbs like "clean" are not entered separately if they are related. The Danish equivalents are given with no indication as to which is the noun, which the verb, and which the adjective. If you have forgotten which is which, you can easily find out by looking in the *Danish-English Word List.*

Different forms of the same Danish word are separated by commas; for instance, *a, an* **en, et**. Different Danish equivalents of an English word are separated by semi-colons; for instance, *about* **ɔmkréŋˀ; mɛð.**

a, an **en, et**
Aalborg (*city in Jutland*) **ɔ́lbɔ̀:ˀr**
Aarhus (*city in Jutland*) **ɔ́rhù:ˀs**
able: be able to **kúnə; fɔ: lɔ́v te; ha lɔ́v te**
about **ɔmkréŋˀ; mɛð**
absolutely **aldé:ˀləs**
account **kɔ́nto**
accustomed to (used to) **vánˀd te;** be accustomed to (be in the habit of) **plájə ɔ**
acquainted: be acquainted with **kɛ́nə;** become acquainted with **trɛ́fə**
across **ɔ́vˀər**
act **vírgə**
actually **é:ˀɣənli**
address **adrɛ́sə**
admit (confess) **énrœ̀mˀə;** (*to a hospital*) **énlɛ̀gə**
adult **vɔ́gsən**
affect **vírgə pɔ́:ˀ**
afraid **báŋə;** afraid of **báŋə fɔr**
after **ɛ́fdər**
afternoon **ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ;** this afternoon **i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ, i ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀs**
afterwards **bá:ˀɣɛ̀fdər**
again **ádər; igɛ́n**
against **imó:ˀð**
ago **fɔr . . . sí:ðən**
agreement **ávtà:lə**
air force **flý:vəvɛ̀:ˀsən;** airmail **lófdpɔ̀st;** airplane **flý:vmasgìnə;** air raid **lófdangrè:ˀp**
all **alˀ;** all together **áləsàmˀən**

allied **aljé:ˀərð**
allow: be allowed to **fɔ: lɔ́v te; ha lɔ́v te; mɔ́də**
almost **nɛ́sdən**
alone **alé:nə**
along **mɛð; laŋˀs**
already **aləré:ðə**
always **álˀtiðˀ**
ambulance **ambuláŋsə**
America **amé:ˀrika**; American **àməriká:ˀnər; àməriká:ˀnsk**
among **imɛ́lˀəm**
amount **bəlǿ:ˀp**
amuse **mó:ər**; amusing **mórsɔmˀ**
and **ɔγ**
angry **rá:sənə**
annoying **kéðəli**
another **en ánən, ed ánəð; en** (**ed**) **tél**
any **nó:ən, nɔ́:əð**; anyone **nó:ən**; anything **nɔ́:əð**
anyway **alí:əvɛ̀lˀ**
apiece **sdǿgəð**
appear **se: ú:ˀð**
appoint **úðnɛ̀vˀnə**; appointment **ávtà:lə**
approve **góðkɛ̀nˀə**
April **aprí:ˀl**
aquavite **snabs; agvavít**
army **hɛ:ˀr**
around **ronˀt; ɔmˀ; ɔmkréŋˀ**; around nine o'clock **ve ni: tí:ˀðən**
arrest **arəsdé:ˀər**
art **konˀst**; applied art **kónsdindusdrì:ˀ**
as **sɔm**; as . . . as **sɔ . . . sɔm, sɔ . . .**
ask **be:ˀ; sbœ́rγə**; ask for **bé:ˀ ɔ́mˀ**; ask about **sbœ́rγə ɔ́mˀ**
assistant **asisdɛ́nˀt**
at **pɔ:ˀ; veð**; at least (not less than) **menˀst**; (in any case) **i vɛ́:ˀrd fálˀ**
attack **ángrè:ˀp**
attention: pay attention to **lɛ̀gə mɛ́rgə te**
August **avgóst**
aunt **tándə; mɔ́sdər; fásdər**
author **fɔrfádər**
automobile **bi:ˀl**
away **a sdɛ́ð**; (gone) **vɛk**
awful **frǿgli**

back **telbá:γə; røk**
bacon **bé:kɔn**
bad **dɔ́rli; ga:ˀl**
baggage **bagá:sjə**
baker **bá:γər**
ball **bɔlˀt**
ballet **balɛ́t**
Baltic Sea, the **ǿsdərsǿ:ˀən**
bank **baŋˀk**; bankbook **báŋgbɔ̀:ˀγ**; bank clerk **báŋgasisdɛ̀nˀt**
barber **barbé:ˀr**
barley **byk**
bathing beach **bá:ðəsdrànˀ**; bathing things **bá:ðətɔ̀j**
bathroom **bá:ðəvɛ̀:ərlsə**
be **vɛ́:ər**; (*in passive sentences*) **blí:və**
beach **sdranˀ**
bean **bœ́nə**
beautiful **prágdfùlˀ**
because **fɔr; fɔrdí:ˀ**; because of **fɔr**
become **blí:və**
bed **sɛŋˀ**
beefsteak **bøf**
beer **øl**
before **fœ:ˀr; énən**
begin **bəgǿnˀə**
behind **ba:ˀγ**
believe **tro:ˀ**
bell **klɔ́gə**
belt (*narrow body of water*) **bɛlˀt**
beside **ve sí:ðən á:ˀ**
besides **desú:ðən**
best **bɛst**

better **bέðrə**
between **imέlˀəm, mέlˀəm**
bicycle **sígəl**; ride a bicycle **síglə**; bicycle race **sígəllø:ˀp**; bicycle repairman **sígəlsmèð**
big **sdo:ˀr**; bigger **sdœ́rə**; biggest **sdœrst**
bill **rájneŋ**; (*money*) **sέðˀəl**; ten crown bill **tíkro:nəsὲðˀəl**
birthday **føsəlsdà:ˀ**
blacksmith **smeð**
blade **blað**
blank **blaŋkέt**
blanket **tέbə**
blow **blέ:sə**
boarding house **paŋsjoná:ˀt**
boat **bɔ:ˀð**
bone **be:ˀn**
book **bɔ:ˀɣ**; booklet **hέfdə**
bore **ké:ðə**; be bored **ké:ðə saj**; boring **kéðəli**; very boring **døðkèðəli**
Bornholm (*island in the Baltic Sea, southeast of Zealand*) **bɔrnhɔ́lˀm**
borrow **lɔ́:nə**
both **bέgə**; both . . . and **bɔ̀:ðə . . . ɔ**
bother **ulájˀliə**
bottle **flásgə**
box **έsgə**; (*large*) **kásə**
boy **drεŋˀ**
bread **brø:ˀð**
break **brέgə**
bridge **bro:ˀ**
brilliant **glémrənə**
brother **bro:r**; brothers and sisters **søsgənə**
brown **bru:ˀn**
brush **bœ́rsdə**
build **býgə**; building **býgneŋ**
bus **bus**
business **fɔrέdneŋˀər**; on business **i fɔrέdneŋˀər**; mind your own business **pásə saj sέlˀ**
busy **travˀl**; be busy **ha trávˀlt**
but **mεn**
butcher **slágdər**
butter **smœr**; **smœ́:ər**
buy **kø:bə**
by **a:ˀ**; **mεð**; **veð**; **fɔrbí:ˀ**; by the way **fɔrέsdən**

cabinet member **minísdər**
cake **ká:ɣə**
calculate **rájnə**
call **kálə**; call up (*on the telephone*) **réŋə (té)**; call for **réŋə έfdər**; be called **héðə**
calm **ró:lí**
camp **lajˀr**
can (am, is, are able) **kanˀ**
can (tin) **dɔ́:sə**; canned goods **konsέrvəs**
car **bi:ˀl**; **vɔɣˀn**
card **kɔrt**
careful **fɔrsígdi**; careless **ufɔrsígdi**
carpenter **tømərmὲsdər**
carrot **gú:lərò:ˀð**
carry **bέ:ər**
cash **hέ:və**
cashier **kasé:ˀər**
castle **slɔt**; Amalienborg Castle **amá:ˀljənbɔ̀:ˀr slɔ́t**
cattle **kvε:ˀɣ**
celebrate **fájrə**
cement factory **semέnˀdfabrèk**; cement industry **semέnˀdindusdrì:ˀ**
centimeter **sέntimè:ˀdər**
certain **bəsdέmˀt**; certainly **bəsdέmˀt**; **sgam**
chair **sdo:ˀl**
change **fɔránˀdrə**; (*money*) **vέgslə**; **smɔ́pὲŋə**
cheap **bíli**
check **tjεk**; (*bill*) **rájneŋ**; check through (*baggage*) **énsgrì:ˀvə**;

checkbook **tjɛ́ghɛ̀fdə**; checking account **tjɛ́gkɔ̀nto**
cheese **ost**; cheese store **ósdəfɔrɛ̀dneŋ**; **ósdəbutìk**
chicken **kýleŋ**; chickens (poultry) **hœnˀs**
child **barˀn**
chocolate **sjogolá:ðə**
choice **valˀγ**
choose **vɛ́ljə**
church **kírgə**
cigar **sigá:ˀr**
cigarette **sigərɛ́t**
city **by:ˀ**
civilized **sivilisé:ˀərð**
class **klásə**
clean **re:ˀn**; **gœ̀:ər ré:ˀnt**; cleaners **rɛnsərí:ˀ**
clear **kla:ˀr**
clerk **asisdɛ́nˀt**
cliff **klenˀt**
close **lógə**
clothes **tɔj**
coast **køst**
coat **frágə**
codfish **tɔrsk**
coffee **káfə**
cold **kɔlˀ**; **fɔrkǿ:ˀləlsə**; be cold **frý:sə**; catch cold **blì:ə fɔrkǿ:ˀləð**
collar **flep**; detachable collar **lǿ:ˀs flép**
collect **sámlə**
comb **kamˀ**
come **kɔ́mə**; **ta:ˀ**
commerce **hánˀəl**
commodity **vá:ər**
company **kompaní:ˀ**
compartment **kupé:ˀ**
compete **kɔŋkuré:ˀər**
completely **he:ˀlt**
composer **komponíst**
concentration camp **kɔnsəntrasjó:ˀnslàjˀr**
condition **télsdànˀ**
conductor **kondugtǿ:ˀr**
confess **énrœ̀mˀə**
consist of **bəsdɔ́:ˀ á:ˀ**
contract **kontrágt**
converse **snágə**
cooperative dairy **ándelsmajərì:ˀ**; cooperative slaughter-house **ándelsslagdərì:ˀ**; cooperative system **ándelssysdè:ˀm**
Copenhagen **købənhávˀn**
corner **jœ́rnə**
cost **kɔ́sdə**
could **kúnə**
country **lanˀ**
couple **par**
cow **ko:ˀ**; cow stable **kó:ˀsdàlˀ**
cream **flǿ:ðə**
crowd **másə**
crown **kró:nə**
crush **knú:sə**
cry **rɔ:ˀp**; **rɔ́:bə**
cucumber salad **agúrgəsalà:ˀt**
cultivate **dýrgə**
cup **kɔp**
curse **fɔrbánˀə**
customer **kónə**
cut (*with scissors*) **klébə**; have a haircut **blì:ə klébəð**

dairy **majərí:ˀ**
dance **danˀs**; **dánsə**
Dane **dánsgər**; Danish **danˀsk**; Danish pastry **ví:ˀnərbrǿ:ˀð**
dangerous **fá:rli**
dark **mœrk**
darn **fɔrbánˀəð**
daughter **dádər**
day **da:ˀγ**
dead **dø:ˀð**

dealer **krɛ́mər**
December **desɛ́mˀbər**
decide **bəsdɛ́mˀə**
deciliter **dé:silìdər**
decimeter **dé:simè:ˀdər**
defend **fɔrsvá:ˀər**
deliver **ávləvè:ˀər**
Denmark **dánmark**
department **vɛ́:ˀsən**
deposit **sɛ̀də énˀ**
desire **løst**
desk clerk (*at a hotel*) **pɔrtjé:ˀ**
dessert **desɛ́:ˀrt**
dictionary **ó:rbɔ̀:ˀγ**
die **dø:ˀ**
difference **fɔ́rsgɛ̀lˀ**; difference between **fɔ́rsgɛ̀lˀ pɔ́:ˀ**; make any difference **gǿ:ər nɔ́:əð**; different **fɔrsgɛ́lˀi**
difficult **svɛ:ˀr**
dining car **sbí:səvɔ̀γˀn**
dinner **méda**
director **dirɛgtø:ˀr**
dirty clothes **snávsətɔ̀j**
distillery **sbrídfabrèk**
disturb **fɔrsdýrˀə**
do **bəsdélˀə**; **gǿ:ər**; be done **la saj gǿ:ər**
doctor **lɛ́:γə**; **dɔ́gdər**
door **dœ:ˀr**
down **ne:ˀð**; down here **hɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð**; down there **dɛ́:ˀrnè:ˀð**
drink **drégə**; drink a toast **sgɔ́:lə**; *drinking toast* **sgɔ:ˀl**
drive **kø:ər**; driver's license **kø:ərkɔ̀rt**
dune **klit**
during **ónˀər**
Dyrehaven (*a park outside Copenhagen*) **dý:ərhà:vən**

each **vɛ:ˀr**; each other **hinánən**
early **tíðli**
earn **tjɛ́:nə**
earth **jo:ˀr**
east **øst**; east coast **øsdkø̀st**
easy **lɛt**
eat **sbí:sə**
egg **ɛ:ˀk**
eight **ɔ́:də**; eighth **ɔ́dənə**; eighteen **ádən**; eighteenth **ádənə**; eighty **fi:ˀrs, fí:ˀrsenstỳ:və**; eightieth **fí:ˀrsenstỳ:vənə**
either **hɛ́lˀər** (*generally in the phrase* **hɛ́lˀər égə**, 'not either'); either . . . or **ɛ́ndən . . . ɛ́lər**
elect **vɛ́ljə**; election **valˀγ**
elegant **flɔt**
eleven **ɛ́lvə**; eleventh **ɛ́lfdə**
else **ɛ́lˀərs**
emergency ward **sgá:ðəsdù:ə**
endure **vá:ər**
enemy **fjɛ́nə**
engaged **fɔrlɔ́:ˀvəð**; get engaged (to) **fɔrlɔ́:ˀvə saj** (**mɛ**)
engineer **ensjənjø:ˀr**
England **ɛ́ŋlànˀ**; English **ɛ́ŋˀəlsk**
enjoy **vɛ̀:ər gláð fɔr**; **ný:ðə**; enjoy yourself **mó:ər saj**; enjoyable **hýgəli**
enormous **mɛ́gdi**
enough **nɔk**
entertain **mó:ər**
entirely **aldé:ˀləs**
equal **lí:ə**
establish **ɔ́brɛ̀də**
Europe **evró:pa**
even **sɛlˀ**
evening **áfdən**; this evening **i áfdən**; last evening **i áfdəs**
ever **nó:ən sénə**
every **vɛ:ˀr**; everyone **envɛ́:ˀr**; everything **álˀtèŋˀ**
exactly **nɛ́dɔ̀p**

exam **egsámən**
example **ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl**; for example **fɔr ɛgsɛ́mˀbəl**
excellent **úðmɛrgəð**
exceptional **ualménˀli**
exciting **sbɛ́nənə**
excuse **ónsgỳlˀneŋ**; **ónsgỳlˀə**; excuse me **ónsgỳlˀ**
expect **vɛ́ndə**
expensive **dy:ˀr**
explain **fɔrklá:ˀər**
export **ɛbsbɔrté:ˀər**
express train **lý:ntɔ̀:ˀγ**
extend **sdrɛ́gə saj**
extra **ɛ́gsdrə**
eye **ɔ́jə**

factory **fabrék**
fairy tale **ɛ́:vəntỳ:ˀr**
fall (autumn) **ɛ́fdərɔ̀:ˀr**
fall **falˀ**; **fálə**; fall in love (with) **fɔrɛ́lˀsgə saj (i)**
Falster (*island south of Zealand*) **fálˀsdər**
family **famí:ˀljə**
famous **bərœ́mˀt**
far **laŋˀ**; farther **lɛ́ŋərə**; farthest **lɛŋˀst**
farm **gɔ:ˀr**; farmer **bónə**; **gɔ́ràjˀər**; **lánmànˀ**
farther **ví:ðərə**
fast **hórdi**
father **fá:r**
February **fébrua:ˀr**
feel **fø:lə**, **fø:lə saj**
ferry **fɛ́rγə**
few: a few **ed pár**
field **mark**
fifth **fɛ́mdə**; fifteen **fɛ́mˀdən**; fifteenth **fɛ́mˀdənə**; fifty **haltrés**, **haltrésenstỳ:və**; fiftieth **haltrésenstỳ:vənə**
figure **rájnə**; figure out **fènə ú:ˀð á:ˀ**
fill out **úðfỳlˀə**
finally **te síst**; **ɛ́nəli**
find **fénə**
fine **fi:ˀn**; **úðmɛrgəð**
finished **fɛ́rdi**; **fɔrbí:ˀ**
first **fœrst**
fish **fesk**; **fésgə**; fisherman **fésgər**; fishing **fesgərí:ˀ**
fit **pásə**
five **fɛmˀ**
fix **gœ̀:ər i sdánˀ**
flag **fla:ˀγ**; fly a flag **flá:γə**
flat **fla:ˀð**
flee **fløgdə**
fleet **flɔ́:ðə**
fly **flý:və**; fly a flag **flá:γə**; flier **flý:vər**
folk school (*for adults*) **hɔ́jsgɔ̀:lə**
food **mað**
for **fɔr**; **tel**; **i**
foreigner **úðlɛ̀nˀeŋ**
forget **glɛ́mə**
form **dánə**
fortieth **fœ́rətỳ:vənə**; forty **fœ́rə**, **fœ́rətỳ:və**
fortunate **hɛ́ldi**; fortunately **hɛ́ldivì:ˀs**
found **ɔ́brɛ̀də**
four **fí:ər**; fourth **fjɛ́:ər**; fourteen **fjórdən**; fourteenth **fjórdənə**
France **fráŋkri**
frankfurt **pølsə**
free **fri:ˀ**; free of charge **grá:tis**; freedom **frí:hè:ˀð**
freeze **frý:sə**
Friday **fré:ˀda**; last Friday **i fré:ˀdas**
friend **vɛn**; friendly **vɛ́nli**
from **fra:ˀ**; from here **hɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ**; from there **dɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ**
fruit **frogt**; fruit pudding **rø:ˀðgrø̀:ˀð**

fry **sdájə**
full **fulˀ**; (*of food*) **mɛt**
furious **rá:sənə**

game **kamˀp; sbel**
garden **há:və**
gas, gasoline **bɛnsí:ˀn**; gas station, gas pump **bɛnsí:ˀntàŋˀk**
gather **sámlə**
generally **i ré:ˀələn, sɔm ré:ˀəl**
gentleman **hɛ́rə**
German **týsgər; tysk**; Germany **týsglànˀ**
Gestapo **gesdá:po**
get **fɔ:ˀ**; (become) **blí:və**; (go and get) **hɛ́ndə**; (*get to a place*) **kɔ́mə**; get along **klá:ər saj**; get lost **gɔ: fɔrké:ˀrt**; get up (*out of a chair*) **rájsə saj ɔ́p**; (*out of bed*) **sdɔ: ɔ́p**; get to **kɔ̀mə tél at**
gift **gá:və**
girl **pí:ə**
give **gí:ˀ**
glad **glað**; be glad about **vɛ̀:ər gláð fɔr**; gladly **gɛ́rnə**
glance **blek**
glass **glas**
go **gɔ:ˀ; ta:ˀ**; be going to **sgúlə**
goal **mɔ:ˀl**
good **go:ˀð; pɛ:ˀn**; good-by **farvɛ́l**; better **bɛ́ðrə**; best **bɛst**
gosh **i:**
government **regé:ˀreŋ**
gradually **ɛfdərhɔ́nˀən**
grain **korˀn**
gram **gramˀ**
grammar school **ónərsgò:lə**
granary **lá:ðə**
grandchild **bárnəbàrˀn**; granddaughter **dádərdàdər; sœ́nədàdər**; grandfather **bɛ́sdəfà:r; fá:ˀrfà:r; mɔ́:ˀrfà:r**; grandmother **bɛ́sdəmò:r; fá:ˀrmò:r; mɔ́:ˀrmò:r**; grandson **dádərsœ̀n; sœ́nəsœ̀n**
grease **smœ́:ər**
Greenland **grœ́nlànˀ**
greet **hílsə**
grocer **órdəkrɛ̀mər**
grown-up **vɔ́gsən**
guest **gɛst**

habit: be in the habit of **plájə ɔ**
half **halˀ**; halftimbering **béneŋsvɛ̀rk**
hamburg steak **hágəbøf**
hand **hɔnˀ**; shake hands **trøgə i hɔ́nˀən**; handicraft **hɔ́nvɛ̀rk**
hangover **tǿmərmɛ̀nˀ**
happen **sge:ˀ**; happen to **kɔ̀mə tél at**
happy **glað**
hard **svɛ:ˀr**
have **ha:ˀ; fɔ:ˀ**; have to **mɔ́də; sgúlə; kɔ̀mə tél at**
he **han**
head **hó:ðə**; headache **hó:ðəpì:nə**; head of lettuce **salá:ˀdhò:ðə**
health insurance organization **sý:əkàsə**
hear **hǿ:ər**
heaven: for heaven's sakes **dɔɣ**
heavy **toŋˀ**
hectoliter **hɛ́gtolìdər**
hello **godá:ˀ**
help **jɛlˀp; jɛ́lbə**
her **hénə**; her, hers **hénəs**; her (own) **si:ˀn, sit, sí:nə**
here **hɛ:ˀr; hɛ́:ˀrhɔ̀nˀ; hɛ́:ˀrtèl**; from here **hɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ**; in here **hɛ́:ˀrènˀ**; out here **hɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð**; over here **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər**; up here **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p**
herring **silˀ**
hers **hénəs**
hide **sgjú:lə**
high **hɔjˀ**; high school **gymná:ˀsjəm**

hill **bágə**; Rebild Hills (*in Jutland*) **ré:bilbàgər**
him **ham**
Himmelbjerget (*hill in Jutland*) **híməlbjɛ̀rˀɣəð**
his **hans**; his (own) **si:ˀn, sit, sí:nə**
history **hisdó:ˀrjə**
home **jɛmˀ**; at home **jɛ́mə**
homely **gremˀ**
honest **ɛ́rli**
hope **hɔ:ˀp**; **hɔ́:bə**; Hope you feel better soon. **régdi gó:ˀ bɛ́ðreŋ.**
horse **hɛst**; horse stable **hɛ́sdəsdàlˀ**
hospital **hosbitá:ˀl**
hot **varˀm**
hotel **hotɛ́lˀ**
hour **tí:mə**
house **hu:ˀs**; house arrest **húsarɛ̀st**; House of Commons (Lower House) **fɔ́lgətɛ̀ŋˀ**; House of Lords Upper House) **lánˀstɛ̀ŋˀ**
Hovedbanegaarden (*the main railway station in Copenhagen*) **hó:ðəba:nəgɔ̀:ˀərn**
how **vɔrdán**; **vɔr**; How are you? **vɔrdán há:ˀr di də?**; how do you do **godá:ˀ**
human being **mɛ́nəsgə**
hundred, hundredth **húnrəðə**
hungry **súlˀdən**
hurrah **hurá:**
hurry **sgǿnə saj**
hurt **gœ̀:ər ónˀt**
husband **manˀ**

I jaj
ice, ice cream **i:ˀs**
idea **idé:ˀ**
if **ves**; **ɔmˀ**
illegal **íllegà:ˀl**
imagine **tɛ́ŋgə saj**
important **végdi**
impossible **umú:ˀli**
improvement **bɛ́ðreŋ**
impure **uré:ˀn**
in **enˀ**; **i**; **pɔ:ˀ**; **ɔmˀ**; in here **hɛ́:ˀrènˀ**; in there **dɛ́:ˀrènˀ**; in town **i bý:ˀən**; in the field of **énənfɔ̀r**; in order to, in order that **fɔ́r at**
incidentally **fɔrɛ́sdən**
income **éntɛ̀gt**
industry **indusdrí:ˀ**; **nɛ́:reŋsvàjˀ**
influence **vírgə pɔ́:ˀ**
inhabitant **énbỳgər**
ink **blɛk**
inlet **fjo:ˀr**
inside **énənfɔ̀r**
instead (of) **i sdɛ́ðˀəð fɔr**
interest **entrəsé:ˀər**; (*on money*) **rɛ́ndə**; interesting **entrəsánˀt**; **mórsɔmˀ**
invasion **envasjó:ˀn**
invite **invité:ˀər**
island **ø:ˀ**
it **dɛn, de**

January **jánua:ˀr**
July **jú:ˀli**
June **jú:ˀni**
junior high school **mɛ́ləmsgò:lə**
just **lí:ə**
Jutland **jýlànˀ**

keep **bəhɔ́lˀə**
kill **drɛ́:bə**
kilogram **kílo, kílogràmˀ**
kilometer **kilomé:ˀdər**
kind **vɛ́nli**; kind (of) **slags**
king **kɔ́ŋə**
knock **báŋgə**
know **ví:ðə**; **kɛ́nə**; known, well-known **kɛnˀt**

label **mɛ́rgə**
lady **dá:mə**
lake **sø:ˀ**
land **lanˀ**
landscape **lánsgà:ˀp**
lane **sdi:ˀ**
language **sbrɔ:ˀɣ**
large **sdo:ˀr**; larger **sdœ́rə**; largest **sdœrst**
last **sist**; (endure) **vá:ər**
late **se:ˀnt**
laundry **vasgərí:ˀ**; (dirty clothes) **snávsətɔ̀j**
lavish **flɔt**
law **lɔv**; lawyer **sáɣfø̀:ər**
lay **lɛ́gə**
leader **fø:ər**
learn **lɛ́:ər**
least **menˀst**; at least **menˀst**; **i vɛ́:ˀrd fálˀ**
leave **gɔ:ˀ**
left **vɛ́nsdrə**; to the left **te vɛ́nsdrə**
leg **be:ˀn**
lend **lɔ́:nə**
less **méndrə**
let **lá:ðə**
letter **bre:ˀv**
lettuce, head of **salá:ˀdhò:ðə**
lie **légə**
life **li:ˀv**
light **ly:ˀs**; **tɛ́nə**
like **syns ɔ́mˀ**; **ka lí:ðə**; would like to **ve gɛ́rnə**; look like **lí:ɣnə**
listen **hø:ər**
liter **lídər**
literature **lidəratú:ˀr**
little **lílə**, **smɔ:ˀ**; a little **let**
live **lé:və**; **bo:ˀ**
Lolland (*island south of Zealand*) **lɔ́lànˀ**
long **laŋˀ**; **lɛ́ŋə**; longer **lɛ́ŋərə**; longest **lɛŋˀst**
look **blek**; **se: ú:ˀð**; look at **sé:ˀ pɔ́:ˀ**; look in front of you, look where you're going **sé:ˀ saj fɔ́r**; look after **pásə**; look out (for) **pàsə pɔ́:ˀ**; look forward to **glɛ́:ðə saj tel**
loose **lø:ˀs**
lose **mésdə**
lot **de:ˀl**
loud **hɔjˀ**
lucky **hɛ́ldi**
luggage **bagá:sjə**
lunch **frógɔst**
Lutheran **ludərá:ˀnər**
machine **masgí:nə**
mackerel **makrɛ́lˀ**
magazine **blað**
maid **pí:ə**
mail **pɔst**
make **lá:və**; (earn) **tjɛ́:nə**; (reach) **nɔ:ˀ**
man **manˀ**
manner **mɔ́:ðə**
many **maŋə**; more **flé:ər**; most **fle:ˀst**
March **mards**
mark **mɛ́rgə**
married **gift**
master **mɛ́sdər**
match **tɛ́nsdek**
matter **gœ́:ər nɔ́:əð**; no matter where **lí:əgỳlˀdi vɔ́:ˀr**; **vɔ́:ˀr . . . ɛ́n**
may **mɔ:ˀ**
May **majˀ**
maybe **mɔ:sgé:ˀ**
me **maj**
mean **mé:nə**; **bətý:ˀðə**
meantime, in the **imɛ́nˀs**
meanwhile **imɛ́nˀs**
meat **køð**
medicine **medəsí:ˀn**

meet **mø:ðə; trɛ́fə**; meeting **mø:ðə**
member **mɛ́ðlɛ̀mˀ**
menu **menýkɔ̀rt**
merchant marine **hánˀəlsflɔ̀:ðə**
mermaid **hávfrù:ə**
message **bəsgé:ˀð**
meter **mé:ˀdər**
might **mɔ́də**
mild **milˀ**
mile (*Danish*) **mi:ˀl** (= 4.68 *English miles*); for miles and miles **mí:ləvìt**
milk **mɛlˀk**
milligram **míligràmˀ**
millimeter **mílimè:ˀdər**
million **miljó:ˀn**
mine **mi:ˀn, mit, mí:nə**
minister (cabinet member) **minísdər**
minute **minút**
moment **ɔ́jəblèk**
Monday **mánˀda**; last Monday **i mánˀdas**
money **pɛ́ŋə**
month **mɔ́:nəð**
moor **hé:ðe**
more **flé:ər; mé:ər**
morning **mɔ́rən**; this morning **i mɔ́rən, i mɔ́rəs**
most **fle:ˀst; me:ˀst**
mother **mo:r**
mountain **bjɛrˀɣ**
move **fløđə; rœ́:ər, rœ́:ər saj**
movie **biografá:ˀf**
Mr. **hɛr**
Mrs. **fru**
much **máəð**; more **mé:ər**; most **me:ˀst**
museum **musɛ́:əm**, the National Museum **nasjoná:ˀlmusɛ̀:əð**
music **musík**
must **mɔ:ˀ**
my **mi:ˀn, mit, mí:nə**
Møen (*island south of Zealand*) **mø:ˀən**; Møen's Cliff **mø:ˀəns klénˀt**

name **navˀn**
national anthem **nasjoná:ˀlsàŋˀ**
navy **flɔ́:ðə**
near **lí:ə véð; nɛ:ˀr**; nearer **nɛ́rmərə**; nearest **nɛ́rməst**
need **trɛ́ŋə tel; bəhø:ˀvə**
never **áldri**
new **ny:ˀ**
newspaper **aví:ˀs**
next **nɛ́sdə**; next to, next door **ve sí:ðən á:ˀ**
nice **fleŋˀk; pɛ:ˀn; sø:ˀð**
night **nat**; tonight **i áfdən; i nát**; last night **i áfdəs; i nát**
nine **ni:ˀ**; ninth **ní:ˀənə**; nineteen **nédən**; nineteenth **nédənə**; ninety **halfɛ́mˀs, halfɛ́mˀsenstỳ:və** ninetieth **halfɛ́mˀsenstỳ:vənə**
no **najˀ; nɛ:**; no one **éŋən**; no . . . **éŋən . . .** ; no one at all **slɛ́d éŋən**; no . . . at all **slɛ́d éŋən . . .**
noise **sbetágəl**
none **éŋən**; none at all **slɛ́d éŋən**
north **no:ˀr**; northeast **no:ró:ˀst, no:røst**; northwest **no:rvɛ́st**
Norway **nɔ́rɣə**
nose **nɛ́:sə**
not **égə**; not at all **slɛ́d égə**; not any **éŋən**; not any at all **slɛ́d éŋən**
nothing **éŋəntèŋˀ**
notice **lɛ̀gə mɛ́rgə te**
November **novɛ́mˀbər**
now **nu**; right now **fɔr ɔ́jəblègəð**
number **nómˀər**
nurse **sý:əplàjˀərsgə**

oatmeal **hávrəgrø:ˀð**; oats **hávrə**

occupation (job) **nɛ́:reŋsvàjˀ**; (*by enemy*) **bəsɛ́dəlsə**
ocean **hav**
o'clock: one o'clock **klɔ̀gən ét**
October **ɔgtó:ˀbər**
Odense (*city on Fyn*) **ó:ˀðənsə**
of **a:ˀ**; of course **sɛlføləli**; **jo:ˀ**
office **kontó:ˀr**
officer **ɔfisé:ˀr**
often **ɔ́fdə**
oh **ɔ:**; **najˀ**; **nɛ:**
oil **smœ́:ər**
old **gáməl**; older **ɛ́ldrə**; oldest **ɛlˀst**; old age assistance **ɑ́lˀərsrɛ̀ndə**
on **pɔ:ˀ**
one **e:ˀn, en, et**
only **kon**; **é:nəsdə**; **bá:ər**
open **ɔ́:bnə**
opera **ó:ˀbəra**
opposite **ɔ́vˀərfɔ̀r**
or **ɛ́lər**
orange **abəlsí:ˀn**
orchestra **ɔrkɛ́sdər**
order **bəsdélˀə**; in order **i ɔ́rˀdən**; in order to (that) **fɔ́r at**
ordinary **alménˀli**
organize **ɔrganisé:ˀər**

other **ánən, ánəð, ándrə**; others **ándrə**
otherwise **ɛ́lˀərs**
our, ours **vɔ́rəs**
out **ú:ˀð**; out here **hɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð**; out there **dɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð**; outside **ú:ðənfɔ̀r**
over **fɔrbí:ˀ**; **ɔ́vˀər**; over here **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər**; over there **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər**
owner **ájˀər**

pack **págə**; package **págə**; package window (*in post office*) **págəɛgsbədisjò:ˀn**
painting **malərí:ˀ**
pair **par**
pajamas **pydjá:mas**
paper **papí:ˀr**
parade **pará:ðə**
parcel post **págəpɔ̀st**
park **sgɔvˀ**; park a car **hɔ́lə**
part **de:ˀl**
party (*political*) **partí:ˀ**
past **ɔ́vˀər**; **fɔrbí:ˀ**
path **sdi:ˀ**
patriot **patrió:ˀt**
pay **bətá:ˀlə**
pea **ɛrˀt**
peace **freð**

peasant **bő́nə**
people **fɔlˀk**; **mɛ́nəsgər**; **bəfɔ́lˀgnəŋ**
percent **prosɛ́nˀt**
permission **lɔv**; get permission to **fɔ: lɔ́v te**; have permission to **ha lɔ́v te**
person **mɛ́nəsgə**
pharmacy **aboté:ˀk**
pick up **hɛ́ndə**
picture **bíldə**
piece **sdøgə**; apiece **sdøgəð**
pig **gri:ˀs**; pigsty **sví:nəsdì:ˀ**
pillow **pú:ðə**
place **sdɛð**
plant **sɔ:ˀ**
platform (*in a railroad station*) **pərɔ́ŋ**
play **sdøgə**; **sbélə**; player **sbélər**
pleasant **hýgəli**; **dájli**; **vɛ́nli**
pleasure **fɔrnɔ́jˀəlsə**
poet **dégdər**
point **poŋˀt**
police **polətí:ˀ**
politics **polətík**
poor **fádi**
population **bəfɔ́lˀgneŋ**
porcelain **pɔrsəlɛ́nˀ**
porridge **grø:ˀð**
porter **drá:ɣər**
possible **mú:li**

post office **pósdhù:ˀs**; post-office clerk **pósdasisdɛ̀nˀt**
potato **kartɔ́fəl**
poultry **hœnˀs**
pound **punˀ**
power **magt**
prepare **úðarbàjˀdə**
prescription **resɛ́bt**
present **gá:və**
preserve **bəhɔ́lˀə**
president **prɛsidɛ́nˀt**; (*of a company*) **dirɛgtø:ˀr**
press **trøgə**
prime minister **sdá:ˀdsminisdər**
prize **pri:ˀs**
probably **nɔk**; **vest**; **mɔsgé:ˀ**
produce **produsé:ˀər**
product **prodógt**
promise **lɔ́:və**
pronounce **úðtà:ˀlə**
proportion **fɔ́rhɔ̀lˀ**
provisions **vá:ər**
publish **úðgì:ˀ**
pulse **pulˀs**
pumpernickel **rúbrø̀:ˀð**
puncture **poŋté:ˀər**
put **lɛ́gə**; **sɛ́də**

quantities **másəvì:ˀs**
quarter **kvart**; quarter of an hour **kvarté:ˀr**
queen **drɔ́neŋ**
quiet **ró:li**
quite **tɛ́mli**; **rɛt**

Raadhuspladsen (*square in Copenhagen*) **rɔ́ðhusplàsən**
race **lø:ˀp**
radio **rá:ˀdjo**
rain **rajˀn**; **rájnə**
raise **rájsə**
rather **tɛ́mli**; **hɛ́lərə**
razor **barbé:ˀrmasgì:nə**; razor blade **barbé:ˀrblàð**
reach **nɔ:ˀ**
read **lɛ́:sə**
ready **pará:ˀt**
real **vírgli**; really **vírgli**; **səmɛ́nˀ**
reason **gronˀ**
reception **móðtà:ˀɣəlsə**
recovery **bɛ́ðreŋ**
remainder **rɛst**; remaining **øvri**
remarkable **mɛ́rgli**
remember **húsgə**
repair **gœ̀:ər i sdánˀ**
resemble **lí:ɣnə**
reserve **bəsdélˀə**
resign **gɔ: á:ˀ**
rest (remainder) **rɛst**; the rest of . . . **det øvriə . . .**
restaurant **resdoráŋ**
restless **uró:ˀli**
revolt **ɔ́bsdànˀ**
rich **rí:ˀ**
ride **kø:ərtù:ˀr**; **kø:ər**; ride a bicycle **síglə**
right **régdi**; **lí:ə**; **hɔ́jrə**; to the right **te hɔ́jrə**; right away **mɛ de sámə**
ring **réŋə**
risk **resiké:ˀər**
river (*small*) **ɔ:ˀ**
road **vajˀ**
roast **sdajˀ**; **sdájə**; roast lamb **láməsdàjˀ**
roof **ta:ˀɣ**
room **vɛ́:ərlsə**; **sdú:ə**
root **ro:ˀð**
round-trip ticket **rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t**
royal **kɔ́ŋəli**
rule **ré:ˀəl**; as a rule **sɔm ré:ˀəl, i ré:ˀələn**
run **lø:bə**; run over (*with a car, bicycle, etc.*) **kø̀:ər né:ˀð**
rye **ru:ˀ**

sabotage **sabotá:sjə**
sad **sœ́rγli**
sail **sájlə**; sailing **sájlsbɔ̀rt**; sailor **matró:ˀs**
salad **salá:ˀt**
salt **salˀt**
same **sámə**; the same to you **i lí:ə mɔ́:ðə**; at the same time (that) **sámtìðˀi (mɛ a)**
sandwiches, open **smœ́rəbrø̀:ˀð**
Saturday **lœ́rda**; last Saturday **i lœ́rdas**
sausage **pølsə**
say **sí:ə**
school **sgó:lə**
science **ví:ðənsgà:ˀp**; scientist **ví:ðənsgabsmànˀ**
score (*twenty*) **sne:ˀs**
sculptor **bíləðhɔ̀gər**
scuttle **sɛ́ŋgə**
sea **hav**; **sø:ˀ**
seat **plas**
second **ánən, ánəð**
secretary **sɛgrɛtɛ́:ˀr**
see **se:ˀ**; see you again **pɔ: gɛ́nsỳnˀ**
self **sɛlˀ**
send **sɛ́nə**
September **sɛbtɛ́mˀbər**
serious **alvɔ́:ˀrli**
service **vɛ́:ˀsən**; **ɛgsbədisjó:ˀn**
set **sɛt**; **sɛ́də**
seven **syvˀ**; seventh **sýˀvənə**; seventeen **sødən**; seventeenth **sødənə**; seventy **halfjɛ́rs, halfjɛ́rsenstỳ:və**; seventieth **halfjɛ́rsenstỳ:vənə**
shall **sgalˀ**
share **dé:lə**
shave **barbé:ˀər, barbé:ˀər saj**
she **hun**
ship **sgi:ˀp**; shipyard **vɛrft**; **sgíbsvɛ̀rft**
shirt **sgjórdə**
shoe **sgo:ˀ**
shoot **sgý:ðə**
shore **køst**
short **kɔrt**
should **sgúlə**
shout **rɔ:ˀp**; **rɔ́:bə**
show **ví:sə**
sick **sy:ˀ**
side **sí:ðə**
sign **mɛ́rgə**; **ónərsgrì:ˀvə**
silver **søl**
since **sí:ðən**
single **é:nəsdə**; single room **ɛ́ŋˀgəldvɛ̀:ərlsə**
sink **sɛ́ŋgə**
sir **hɛr**
sister **søsdər**
sit **séðə**; **sɛ́də saj**
six **sɛgs**; sixth **sjɛ́:də**; sixteen **sájsdən**; sixteenth **sájsdənə**; sixty **tres, trésenstỳ:və**; sixtieth **trésenstỳ:vənə**
size **sdœ́rəlsə**
Skagen (*northern tip of Jutland*) **sgá:ˀγən**
skillful **døgdi**
slaughter-house **slagdərí:ˀ**
sleep **sɔ́və**
slow **láŋsɔmˀ**
small **lílə, smɔ:ˀ**; smaller **méndrə**; smallest **menˀst**
smile **smí:lə**
smoke **rý:ə**
snow **sné:ˀ**
so **sɔ**; **álˀdsɔ**; So long **farvɛ́l sɔ lɛ́ŋə**
soap **sɛ́:bə**; ‘soap store’ **sɛ́:bəhù:ˀs**
soccer **fóðbɔ̀lˀt**; soccer game **fóðbɔldkàmˀp**
sock **sɔk**
soldier **soldá:ˀt**
some **nó:ən, nɔ́:əð**; something **nɔ́:əð**
son **sœn**

song **saŋˀ**
soon **sna:ˀrt**
sorry about **ké:ˀð á:ˀ**
sound **lý:ðə**; (*body of water*) **sonˀ**
soup **sóbə**
south **syð**; southeast **syðó:ˀst, syðøst**; southwest **syðvέst**
sow (plant) **sɔ:ˀ**
speak **tá:lə**
special **sέrli**; special delivery package **ílpàgə**
speech **tá:lə**
spell **sdá:və**
spit **sbødə**
splendid **glémrənə**
sport **sbɔrt**
spring **fɔ́rɔ̀:ˀr**
square **plas**; **kvadrá:ˀt**; square kilometer **kvadrá:ˀd kilomé:ˀdər**
squeeze **trøgə**
stable **sdalˀ**
staircase, stairs, **trábə**; down the stairs **né:ˀð a trábən**
stamp **frí:mὲrgə**
stand **sdɔ:ˀ**
station **sdasjó:ˀn**
stay **blí:və**
steering wheel **rat**

still **enú**
stop **sdánsə**; **hɔ́lə**
store **fɔrέdneŋ**; **butík**
stork **sdɔrk**
story **hisdó:ˀrjə**
straight ahead **lí:ə ú:ˀð**
S-train **έstɔ̀:ˀγ**
strange **mέrgli**
stream **ɔ:ˀ**
street **gá:ðə**; streetcar **sbórvɔ̀γˀn**
stretch **sdrέgə, sdrέgə saj**
strong **sdεrk**
study **sdudé:ˀər**
succeed **løgəs**; he succeeds **det løgəs ham**
sudden **plúsli**
sugar **sógər**
suit **pásə**; suit of clothes (*man's*) **sεd tɔ́j**
suitcase **kófərt**
summer **sɔ́mər**
sun **so:ˀl**; sunbathe **só:lə saj**
Sunday **sœ́nˀda**; last Sunday **i sœ́nˀdas**
support **ónərhɔ̀lˀə**; support yourself **ónərhɔ̀lˀə saj sέlˀ**
supposed: be supposed to **sgúlə**
sure **ségər**

Sweden **svέrˀi**; Swedish **svεnˀsk**
sweet **sø:ˀð**
swim **svœ́mə**; swimming **svœ́mneŋ**; go swimming **gɔ: i vánˀəð**
system **sysdé:ˀm**

table **bó:ˀr**
take **ta:ˀ**; take care of **pásə**; take into account **rájnə mέ**; take place **fɔ́rəgɔ̀:ˀ**; Take it easy! **bá:ər ró:li.**
talk **tá:lə**; **snágə**
tank **taŋˀk**
taste **sma:ˀγ**; **smá:γə**
taxi **tágsa**
tea **te:ˀ**
teach **lέ:ər**
team **hɔlˀ**
telegram **teləgrámˀ**
telephone **teləfó:ˀn**; **teləfoné:ˀər**; telephone number **teləfó:ˀnnɔ̀mˀər**
tell **fɔrtέlˀə**; **sí:ə**
ten **ti:ˀ**; tenth **tí:ˀənə**
tennis **ténes**
terrible **frøgli**
than **εn**

thank you **tak**; thanks very much **máŋə ták**
that **dɛnˀ, de**; **sɔm**; **dɛr**; **at**
thatched roof **sdrɔ́tà:ˀɣ**
the (*before adjectives*) **dɛn, de, di**
theatre **teá:ˀdər**; the Apollo Theatre **apɔ́loteà:ˀdərəð**
their, theirs **dɛ́rəs**
them **dɛm**
then **sɔ**; **álˀdsɔ**; **da**
there **dɛ:ˀr**; **hɛnˀ**; **dɛ́:ˀrhɛ̀nˀ**; **dɛ́:ˀrtèl**; from there **dɛ́:ˀrfrà:ˀ**; in there **dɛ́:ˀrènˀ**; out there **dɛ́:ˀrù:ˀð**; over there **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀vˀər**; up there **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p**
therefore **dɛ́:ˀrfɔ̀r**
these **dísə**
they **di**
thing **teŋˀ**; things (provisions) **vá:ər**
think **sýnəs**; **tro:ˀ**; **tɛ́ŋgə**; think of **tɛ́ŋgə pɔ́:ˀ**; I think so. **dé tró:ˀr jɛ.**
third **tréðjə**; thirteen **trɛ́dən**; thirteenth **trɛ́dənə**; thirty **trɛ́ðvə**; thirtieth **trɛ́ðvdə**
thirsty **tœ̀rsdi**
this **dɛ́nə, dɛ́də**
those **di**

thousand **tú:ˀsən**; thousandth **tú:ˀsənə**
three **tre:ˀ**
throne **tró:nə**
through **gɛ́nˀəm, igɛ́nˀəm**; (finished) **fɛ́rdi**
Thursday **tɔ́:ˀrsda**; last Thursday **i tɔ́:ˀrsdas**
ticket **bilɛ́t**; round-trip ticket **rətú:ˀrbilɛ̀t**
tie **slebs**
time **gaŋˀ**; **ti:ˀð**; What time is it? **vá ɛr klɔ́gən?**
tip **drégəpɛ̀ŋə**
tired **trɛt**
Tivoli (*amusement park in Copenhagen*) **tívoli**
to **tel**; **pɔ:ˀ**; **i**; **at**
today **i dá:ˀ**
together **sámˀən**
toilet **toalɛ́t**
tomorrow **i mɔ́rən**; tomorrow morning **i mɔ̀rən tíðli**; tomorrow afternoon **i mɔ̀rən ɛ́fdərmedà:ˀ**; tomorrow evening, tomorrow night **i mɔ̀rən áfdən**; day after tomorrow **i ɔ́vˀərmɔ̀rən**
tonight **i áfdən**; **i nát**

too **fɔr**; much too **álˀd fɔr**; (also) **ɔ́sə**
toothbrush **tánbœ̀rsdə**
tourist **turíst**
toward **mo:ˀð**
town **by:ˀ**; in town **i bý:ˀən**
train **tɔ:ˀɣ**
travel **rájsə**; traveler's check **rájsətjɛ̀k**
treat **bəhánˀlə**
trip **rájsə**; **tu:ˀr**
trouble **ulájˀliə**
true **sanˀ**; truly **sánəli**
try **prø̂:və**
Tuesday **tí:ˀrsda**; last Tuesday **i tí:ˀrsdas**
twelve **tɔlˀ**; twelfth **tɔ́ldə**
twenty **tý:və**; twentieth **tý:vənə**; twenty-one **é:ˀn ɔ tý:və**; twenty-first **é:ˀn ɔ tý:vənə**
two **to:ˀ**
typewriter **sgrí:vmasgì:nə**

uncertain **ubəsdɛ́mˀt**
uncle **óŋˀgəl**; **fá:ˀrbrò:r**; **mɔ́:ˀrbrò:r**
unclean **uré:ˀn**
under **ónˀər**
understand **fɔrsdɔ́:ˀ**
underwear **ónərtɔ̀j**

unfortunately **desvɛ́rə**
uninteresting **uentrəsánˀt**
university **univɛrsité:ˀt**
unkind **uvɛ́nˀli**
unless **mɛ méndrə**
unlucky **uhɛ́lˀdi**
unmarried **ugíft**
unpleasant **uhýgəli**
unreal **uvírgli**
unsure **uségər**
until **tel**
untrue **usánˀ**
unused **ubrógt**
up **ɔp**; up here **hɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p**; up there **dɛ́:ˀrɔ̀p**
us **ɔs**
use **bru:ˀ**; **brú:ə**
used to: be used to **vɛ̀:ər vánˀt te**; get used to **vɛ́nə saj te**; used to (was, were in the habit of) **plájəðə ɔ**
usually **ɛ́lˀərs**

vegetable **grœ́nsà:ˀɣ**
very **máəð**; **vɛ́ldi**; **he:ˀlt**
vicinity **nɛ́rhèðˀən**
visit **bəsø:ˀɣ**; **bəsø:ˀɣə**; visiting hours **bəsø:ˀstì:ˀð**
vote **sdɛ́mə**

wait **vɛ́ndə**; wait for **vɛ́ndə pɔ:**
waiter **tjɛ́:nər**
walk **gɔ:ˀ**
want **ha løsd te**; want to **vélə**
war **krí:ˀ**
wares **vá:ər**
warm **varˀm**
water **vanˀ**; **vánə**
wave **véŋgə**
way **vajˀ**; **mɔ́:ðə**
we **vi**
weapon **vɔ́:ˀbən**
weather **vɛ:ˀr**
Wednesday **ónˀsda**; last Wednesday **i ónˀsdas**
week **ú:ə**
weigh **vájə**
welcome **móðtà:ˀɣəlsə**; you're welcome (*in reply to* **tak**) **sɛ́lˀ ták**
well **nɔ**; **nɛ:**; **najˀ**; **ja**; **jo:ˀ**; (good) **gɔt**; well-known **kɛnˀt**
west **vɛst**; west coast **vɛ́sdkøst**
what **vað**; what ... **vá fɔr en (ed)** ...; What did you say? **va bəhá:ˀr**;
wheat **vé:ðə**
when **vɔrnɔ́:ˀr**; **nɔ:ˀr**; **da**
where **vɔ:ˀr**; wherever **vɔ́:ˀr . . . ɛ́n**, **lí:əgỳlˀdi vɔ́:ˀr**

whether **ɔmˀ**
which **sɔm**; **dɛr**; which . . . **vá fɔr en (ed)** . . .
while **mɛnˀs**, **ɛ́nˀs**
white **vi:ˀð**
who **vɛmˀ**; **sɔm**; **dɛr**
whole **he:ˀl**; on the whole **i de hé:lə tá:ˀəð**
why **vɔ́rɔ̀r**
wife **kó:nə**; **frú:ə**
will **vel**; **sgalˀ**; **kɔ̀mər tél at**; will be **blí:ˀər**
win **vénə**
window **véndu**
wine **vi:ˀn**
wing (*of a building*) **lɛ́ŋə**
winter **vénˀdər**
wish **ønsgə**; **løst**
with **mɛð**; **hos**
woman **frú:ə**
wonderful **hɛ́rli**; **prágdfùlˀ**; **dájli**
woods **sgɔvˀ**
word **o:ˀr**
work **árbajˀdə**; **vɛrk**; **vírgə**; work out **úðarbàjˀdə**
world **vɛ́rdən**; world war **vɛ́rdənskrì:ˀ**
worried **uró:ˀli**

worse **vέrə**
would **vélə**
write **sgrí:və**
wrong **i váj?ən; fɔrké:?rt**

X-ray, take X-rays of **rœ́n?dgənfodografè:?ər**

yard **gɔ:?r**

year **ɔ:?r**; this year **i ɔ́:?r**
yes **ja; jo:?**
yesterday **i gɔ́:?r**; yesterday morning **i gɔr mɔ́rəs**; yesterday afternoon **i gɔr έfdərmedà:?s**; day before yesterday **i fɔ́rgɔ̀r?s**
yet **enú**
you (*informal*) **du, daj; i, jεr**; (*formal*) **di, dεm**; (*general*) **man, e:?n**

young **oŋ?**; younger **øŋrə**; youngest **øŋ?st**; young lady **frø:?gən**
your, yours (*informal*) **di:?n, dit, dí:nə; jέrəs**; (*formal*) **dέrəs**; (*general*) **e:?ns**

Zealand **sjέlàn?**
zero **nol**